

LƯU HOÀNG TRÍ

(GV chuyên Anh - Trường THPT Nguyễn Thượng Hiển - TP. Hồ Chí Minh)

TỔNG ÔN TẬP

CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ



Tiếng Anh

Ôn thi
THPT
Quốc gia

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

DH
QG
Ha Noi

Lời nói đầu

Qua kì thi THPT Quốc gia 2015, hẳn các em cũng nhận ra có nhiều thay đổi trong cấu trúc của các đề thi, trong đó, đặc biệt là đề thi môn Tiếng Anh.

Để giúp các em làm quen với sự thay đổi và có tài liệu ôn thi hiệu quả, chúng tôi tổ chức biên soạn cuốn "*Tổng ôn tập các chuyên đề Tiếng Anh, ôn thi THPT Quốc gia*".

Đây là cuốn sách được biên soạn bám sát cấu trúc đề thi do Bộ Giáo dục Và Đào tạo ban hành mới nhất cho kì thi THPT Quốc gia theo hình thức thi tự luận và trắc nghiệm khách quan năm 2015.

Sách được chia theo các chuyên đề sau:

- Chuyên đề 1: Ngữ âm
- Chuyên đề 2: Từ vựng
- Chuyên đề 3: Ngữ pháp
- Chuyên đề 4: Chức năng giao tiếp
- Chuyên đề 5: Kỹ năng đọc
- Chuyên đề 6: Kỹ năng viết

Bên cạnh đó, chúng tôi cũng giới thiệu một số **Đề thi đề nghị THPT Quốc gia** để các em tham khảo và thử sức mình khi ôn tập.

Trong mỗi chuyên đề (từ 1 đến 6), chúng tôi giúp các em ôn tập lại đầy đủ và chi tiết các kiến thức quan trọng và cần thiết để có thể làm được các bài tập. Hệ thống các bài tập đã được chọn lọc mang tính khái quát cao nhằm giúp các em củng cố vững chắc kiến thức đã học và chuẩn bị tốt cho các kì thi với thời gian tiết kiệm nhất.

Trong lần tái bản này, chúng tôi có bổ sung một số bài tập mới trong các chuyên đề để cập nhật kiến thức và phù hợp với những thay đổi trong các kì thi gần đây. Đặc biệt là bổ sung phần bài tập chuyên hoá câu (sentence transformation), bài tập phát hiện & sửa chữa lỗi sai (error identification/ correction). Những bổ sung này được sắp xếp theo các chủ điểm ngữ pháp để các em biết cách vận dụng kiến thức cho các dạng bài tập này. Phần bài tập viết đoạn văn cũng được chúng tôi chia theo từng chủ điểm, có hướng dẫn cụ thể nội dung và có gợi ý viết thật chi tiết.

Với cuốn sách này chúng tôi hi vọng các em sẽ có được khởi kiến thức tiếng Anh vững vàng, kỹ năng làm bài tập thành thạo để tự tin khi bước vào kì thi quan trọng tới.

Mặc dù chúng tôi đã rất cố gắng, song cuốn sách sẽ khó tránh khỏi thiếu sót. Rất mong sự đóng góp ý kiến của quý thầy, cô, bạn đọc và các em học sinh.

Mọi góp ý xin gửi về : Nhà sách Hồng Án, 20C Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai, Q.1, TP. HCM

Tác giả

Bài tập ngữ âm trong các đề thi trắc nghiệm tiếng Anh thường kiểm tra cách phát âm đúng các từ, trong đó có các nguyên âm, phụ âm và trọng âm từ, bao gồm hai dạng bài tập sau:

- Bài tập về cách phát âm (nguyên âm, phụ âm, tập hợp âm)
- Bài tập về trọng âm từ

Bài tập về cách phát âm có thể kiểm tra cách phát âm của một chữ cái hoặc nhiều chữ cái.

Ví dụ: Chọn phương án A, B, C hoặc D ứng với từ có phần gạch chân được phát âm khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu sau:

1. A. such B. cut C. put D. shut (đáp án C)
2. A. shown B. flown C. grown D. crown (đáp án D)

Các chữ cái được kiểm tra trong một câu có thể giống nhau, nhưng cũng có thể khác nhau.

Ví dụ: Chọn phương án A, B, C hoặc D ứng với từ có phần gạch chân được phát âm khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu sau:

1. A. accountant B. amount C. founding D. country (đáp án D)
2. A. forget B. forty C. comfort D. mother (đáp án D)

Trong hệ thống ngữ âm của tiếng Anh có 24 phụ âm (consonants), 22 nguyên âm (vowels) và nguyên âm đôi (diphthongs). Các nguyên âm và phụ âm tiếng Anh có cách phát âm nhất định, chúng ta hãy chú ý đến một số cách phát âm thông thường của một số chữ cái tiếng Anh sau:

I. NGUYÊN ÂM

Chữ cái a thường được phát âm là:

1. /ae/: map, national
2. /eɪ/: take, nature
3. /ɔ/ (đặc biệt trước chữ cái l): all, altogether
4. /ɒ/: want, quality
5. /e/: many, any
6. /ʌ/: message, dosage
7. /ə/: afraid, familiar
8. /ɑ/: after, car

Chữ cái e thường được phát âm là:

1. /e/: educate, flexible
2. /ɪ/: explore, replace
3. /i/: fever, gene
4. /ə/: interest, camera

Chữ cái i thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɪ/: fit, slippery
2. /aɪ/: strive, mice
3. /ə/: terrible, principle

Chữ cái o thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɒ/: bottle, floppy
2. /ɔ:/: boring, lord
3. /ʌ/: son, done
4. /əʊ/ go, post
5. /ə/: computer, purpose
6. /wʌ/: one /wʌn/, once /wʌns/

Chữ cái u thường được phát âm là:

1. /ʊ/: put, push
2. /u/: include
3. /ju:/: computer, human
4. /ʌ/: much, cut
5. /ə/: success
6. /ɜ:/: burn

Chữ cái y thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɪ/: physics, myth
2. /i/: city, worry
3. /aɪ/: shy, multiply

Một số nhóm chữ cái nguyên âm thường gặp:

Nhóm chữ cái	Cách phát âm thường gặp	Ví dụ
-ai-	/eɪ/	main, entertain
	/eə/	fair, armchair
-ay-	/eɪ/	say, stay
-au-	/əʊ/	audience, naughty
-aw-	/əʊ/	awful, law
	/e/	dead
	/eɪ/	great, break
	/i:/	bean, beat
	/ɪə/	fear, year
-ea-	/ɜ:/	heard, earth
	/eɪ/	dead
	/i:/	great, break
-ei-	/i:/	bean, beat
	/əɪ/	fear, year
	/ɜ:/	heard, earth
-ei-	/eɪ/	eight, weight
	/i:/	deceive, ceiling
	/aɪ/	height

-ey-	/eɪ/ /i:/	hey, convey, key
-ee-	/i:/ /ɪə/	cheese, employee engineer, deer
-ie-	/i:/	piece, relieve
	/aɪ/	tie, lie
	/ə/	ancient, proficient
	/aɪə/	quiet, society
-oa-	/əʊ/	load, toast
	/ɔ:/	abroad, broaden
-oe-	/əʊ/	toe, foe
-oi- hoặc -oy-	/ɔɪ/	voice, join, joy
-oo-	/u:/	tool, moon
	/ʊ/	book, foot
	/ʌ/	flood, blood
—ou—	/ʊ/	could, would
	/u:/	group, souvenir
	/ə/	famous, tremendous
	/ʌ/	trouble, couple
	/əʊ/	soul, mould
	/ao/	mouse, account
-ow-	/au/	cow, brown
	/əʊ/	throw, know
-ui-	/i/	build, guitar
-uy-	/aɪ/	buy, guy
-ew-	/ju:/	new, dew

Chú ý:

Những quy tắc trên chỉ là những cách đọc phổ biến, chúng ta còn gặp những trường hợp ngoại lệ. Chúng ta nên ghi nhớ cách phát âm của các từ khi học từ vựng mới.

Cách phát âm các nguyên âm còn khác nhau ở các từ loại khác nhau:

invite /in'veɪt/ (v); invitation /ɪn'veɪ'teɪʃn/ (n)

nature /'neɪtʃn(r)/ (n); natural /'nætʃrəl/ (adj)

II. PHỤ ÂM

Chúng ta hãy chú ý đến một số trường hợp sau.

Chữ cái c thường được phát âm là:

1. /k/: can, close

- /s/ (đặc biệt khi nó đứng trước i, e hoặc y): city, certify, cycle
- /ʃ/: special, ocean

Chữ cái d thường được phát âm là:

- /d/: day, demand
- /dʒ/: educate, graduate

Chữ cái g thường được phát âm là:

- /g/: gain, regular
- /dʒ/ (đặc biệt khi nó đứng trước i, e, hoặc y): origin, germ, gymnast
- /ʒ/: garage, beige

Chữ cái n thường được phát âm là:

- /n/: not, fun
- /ŋ/: uncle, drink

Chữ cái s thường được phát âm là:

- /s/: son, economist
- /z/: rise, resumption
- /ʃ/: sure, sugar
- /ʒ/: usually, occasion

Chữ cái t thường được phát âm là:

- /t/: ten, pretend
- /tʃ/: culture, question
- /ʃ/: mention, initial

Chữ cái x thường được phát âm là:

- /gz/: example, exist
- /ks/: box, mixture
- /kʃ/: luxury, anxious

Một số nhóm chữ cái phụ âm thường gặp:

Nhóm chữ cái	Cách phát âm thường gặp	Ví dụ
-ch-	/k/	<u>ch</u> emist, <u>mech</u> anic
	/tʃ/	<u>ch</u> air, <u>lunch</u>
	/ʃ/	<u>mach</u> ine, <u>chef</u>
-gh- hoặc -ph-	/f/	<u>roug</u> h, <u>laugh</u> <u>photograph</u> , <u>paragrap</u> h
-qu-	/kw/	<u>que</u> en, <u>requir</u> e
-sh-	/ʃ/	<u>sh</u> are, <u>smash</u>
-th-	/θ/	<u>think</u> , <u>depth</u>
	/ð/	<u>them</u> , <u>without</u>

Cách phát âm tận cùng -s hoặc -es

Đối với cách phát âm của tận cùng -s hoặc -es của động từ ngôi thứ ba số ít thì Hiện tại

đơn hoặc danh từ số nhiều, ta có 3 cách đọc khác nhau dựa vào âm cuối của từ đó.

1. Phát âm là /s/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là: /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/, /θ/.

Ví dụ: laughs /la:fs/, parks /pa:ks/, hopes /həups/, hates /heits/, cloths /klɒθs/.

2. Phát âm là /z/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là: /b/, /d/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /r/, /v/, /ð/, /ŋ/ và các nguyên âm.

3. Phát âm là /iz/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /z/, /dʒ/.

Ví dụ: crosses /krɔ:sɪz/, pushes /poʃɪz/, watches /wɒtʃɪz/, buzzes /'bʌzɪz/, changes /'tʃeɪndʒɪz/.

Cách phát âm của tận cùng -ed của động từ có quy tắc

Đối với cách phát âm của tận cùng -ed của động từ có quy tắc (regular verbs), ta có 3 cách phát âm khác nhau dựa vào âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu.

1. Phát âm là /t/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /f/, /k/, /p/, /s/, /tʃ/, và /ʃ/.

Ví dụ: coughed /kɒft/, talked /tɔ:kt/, stopped /stɒpt/, watched /wɒtʃt/, brushed

/brʌʃt/.

2. Phát âm là /d/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /b/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /dʒ/, /r/, /v/, /z/ và các nguyên âm.

3. Phát âm là /id/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /t/, /d/.

Ví dụ: waited /'weɪtɪd/, added /'ædɪd/.

III. ÂM CÂM

Một số chữ cái trong một số từ bao gồm phụ âm và nguyên âm không được phát âm thành tiếng được gọi là âm câm (silent sounds). Sau đây là một số âm câm thường gặp:

Chữ cái – Trường hợp thường gặp	Ví dụ
b đứng cuối trong một số từ (thường đi sau <i>m</i>) b đứng trước <i>t</i>	climb <u>_</u> , dumb <u>_</u> , comb <u>_</u> doubt <u>_</u> , debt <u>_</u>
c đứng trước <i>k</i> c đứng sau <i>s</i> trong một số từ	snack <u>_</u> , dock <u>_</u> scene <u>_</u> , muscle <u>_</u> , science <u>_</u>
d trong một số từ	handsome <u>_</u> , Wednesday <u>_</u>
h trong một số từ	hour <u>_</u> , exhausted <u>_</u>
gh trong một số từ (đặc biệt là sau <i>i</i>)	weigh <u>_</u> , sight <u>_</u>
k đứng trước <i>n</i>	know <u>_</u> , knee <u>_</u> , knife <u>_</u>
l trong một số từ	half <u>_</u> , could <u>_</u>
n đứng sau <i>m</i>	autumn <u>_</u> , condemn <u>_</u>
p đứng đầu một từ, theo sau là một phụ âm và một số trường hợp khác	psychology <u>_</u> , receipt <u>_</u>
r đứng trước một phụ âm khác hoặc đứng cuối từ đó	card <u>_</u> , park <u>_</u> , farm <u>_</u> , burn <u>_</u> , neighbour <u>_</u> , volunteer <u>_</u>
t trong một số từ	listen <u>_</u> , castle <u>_</u>

w đúng trước r hoặc h trong một số từ

wreck, who

IV. TRỌNG ÂM

Đối với những từ trong tiếng Anh có từ hai âm tiết trở lên, có một âm tiết được nhấn mạnh với cao độ và trường độ lớn hơn những âm tiết còn lại. Đó chính là âm tiết mang trọng âm (stress) của từ đó.

Những từ có ba âm tiết trở lên thường có thêm trọng âm phụ (secondary stress) (.) được nhấn nhẹ hơn so với trọng âm chính (primary stress) (').

Ta thường gặp bài tập tìm từ có trọng âm chính nhấn vào âm tiết có vị trí khác với ba từ còn lại. Ngoài ra, có thể có bài tập tìm từ có trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết đầu, thứ hai... hoặc âm tiết cuối trong mỗi từ.

Nhìn chung, chúng ta có một số quy tắc sau:

- Đa số các động từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai:

attract, begin, deny, forget, enjoy, pollute, relax...

Trường hợp ngoại lệ: *answer, enter, happen, offer, open...*

- Đa số các danh từ và tính từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất:

children, hobby, habit, labour, trouble, standard...

basic, busy, handsome, lucky, pretty, silly...

Trường hợp ngoại lệ:

advice, reply, machine, mistake...

alone, abrupt, absorbed, amazed...

- Một số từ có hai âm tiết vừa là danh từ và cũng là động từ thì danh từ có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, còn động từ thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Danh từ	Động từ
'contrast (sự tương phản)	con'trast (tương phản)
'decrease (sự giảm)	de'crease (giảm)
'desert (sa mạc)	de'sert (rời bỏ)
'export (hàng xuất khẩu)	ex'port (xuất khẩu)
'import (hàng nhập khẩu)	im'port (nhập khẩu)
'present (món quà)	pre'sent (trình bày)
'produce (sản phẩm nói chung)	pro'duce (sản xuất)
'progress (sự tiến bộ)	pro'gress (tiến bộ)
'protest (sự phản đối)	pro'test (phản đối)
'rebel (kẻ nổi loạn)	re'bel (nổi loạn)
'record (hò sơ, đĩa hát)	re'cord (ghi lại, giữ lại)
'suspect (kẻ bị tình nghi)	su'spect (nghi ngờ)

Ngoại lệ: Một số từ sau vừa là danh từ và động từ nhưng có trọng âm chính không đổi.

'answer (n, v): câu trả lời/ trả lời

'offer (n, v): lời đề nghị/ đề nghị

'picture (n, v): bức tranh/ vẽ một bức tranh

'promise (n, v): lời hứa/ hứa

'travel (n, v): du lịch/ đi du lịch

'visit (n, v): cuộc viếng thăm/ viếng thăm

advice (n, v): lời khuyên/ khuyên bảo

re'ply (n, v): lời đáp/ trả lời

4. Đôi với các danh từ ghép được viết liền nhau thì trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

airport, birthday, bookshop, gateway, guidebook, filmmaker...

Danh từ ghép tạo thành từ ngữ động từ (phrasal verbs) có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ nhất còn ngữ động từ tương ứng có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ hai và động từ nhận trọng âm phụ.

Danh từ ghép:

'check-up (sự kiểm tra toàn bộ nhất là sức khỏe)

'check-in (sự đăng ký ở khách sạn, sự đăng ký đi máy bay)

'dropout (người nghỉ học nửa chừng)

'breakdown (sự hỏng máy)

'tryout (sự thử)

'walkout (sự đình công đột ngột)

Ngữ động từ:

, check 'up, , Cheek 'in, drop 'out, break 'down, , try 'out, , Walk 'out...

5. Một số tính từ ghép có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ nhất.

'airsick (say máy bay)

'airtight (kín hơi)

'homesick (nhớ nhà)

'praiseworthy (đáng khen)

'trustworthy (đáng tin cậy)

'waterproof (không thấm nước)...

Ngoại lệ:

, duty-free (miễn thuế), snow-white (trắng như tuyết)

6. Các tính từ ghép có thành phần đầu tiên là tính từ hoặc trạng từ và thành phần thứ hai tận cùng là -ed thì trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ hai.

, bad-'tempered (xấu tính, dễ nổi nóng)

, short-'sighted (cận thị)

, ill-'treated (bị đối xử tệ)

, well-'done (tốt, được nấu kỹ)

, well-in'formed (thông thạo, có được thông tin)
, well-'known (nổi tiếng)

7. Đối với các từ có tiền tố thì nhin chung trọng âm không thay đổi so với từ gốc (nghĩa là trọng âm ít khi rơi vào tiền tố).

successful /sək'sesfl/ → unsuccessful /ʌnsək'sesfl/
able /'eɪbl/ → unable /ʌn'eɪbl/

Tuy nhiên, có một số trường hợp ngoại lệ đặc biệt là các từ có tiền tố **under-**: underlay /'ʌndəleɪ/
underpass /'ʌndəpɑ:s/

8. Đối với các từ có hậu tố thì trọng âm có thể thay đổi, nhưng cũng có thể không thay đổi, và nếu có sự thay đổi về trọng âm thì cũng có thể thay đổi về cách phát âm.

protect /prə'tekt/ → protection /pro'tekʃn/ (không thay đổi về trọng âm)

accident /'ækſɪdənt/ → accidental /,ækſɪ'dentl/ (thay đổi về trọng âm)

Tuy nhiên đối với các trạng từ được tạo thành từ tính từ bằng cách thêm hậu tố **-ly** thì không thay đổi vị trí trọng âm.

careful /keəfl/ → carefully /'keəfəli/

Các hậu tố thường không làm thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc là:

-ment	agree /ə'gri:/	→ agreement /ə'gri:mənt/
-ship	relation /r'leɪʃn/	→ relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/
-ness	happy /'hæpi/	→ happiness /'hæpiɳəs/
-er/-or	manage /'mænidʒ/	→ manager /'mænidʒə(r)/
-hood	neighbour /'neibə(r)/	→ neighbourhood /'neibəshəd/
-ing	excite /ik'saɪt/	→ exciting /ik'saɪtɪŋ/
-ise/-ize	modern /'mɒdn/	→ modernize /'mɒdnənaɪz/
-en	shorten /ʃɔ:tən/, lengthen /'lenθən/	
-full	success /sək'ses/	→ successful /sək'sesfl/
-less	meaning /mi:minɡ/	→ meaningless /'mi:s/niŋləs/
-able	rely /rɪ'lai/	→ reliable /rɪ'laiəbl/
-ous	poison /'pɔɪzn/	→ poisonous /'pɔɪzənəs/

9. Các danh từ có hậu tố là **-sion**, **-tion**, hoặc **-cian** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết ngay trước đó (chính là âm tiết thứ hai từ cuối lén).

precision /prɪ'sɪʒn/

communication /kə'mju:nɪ'keɪʃn/

mathematician /'mæθəmæ'tɪʃn/

10. Các danh từ có hậu tố là **-ity**, **-logy**, hoặc **-graphy** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba từ cuối lén.

ability /'e:bɪləti/

technology /tek'nɒlədʒi/

geography /dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi/

11. Các tính từ có hậu tố là **-ic** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết ngay trước đó (chính là âm tiết thứ hai từ cuối lên).

scientific /'saɪəntifik/

Còn những tính từ có hậu tố là **-ical** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba từ cuối lên.

electrical /ɪ'lektrɪkl/

mathematical /'mæθə'mætɪkl/

12. Những từ có hậu tố như sau thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết cuối (chính là hậu tố đó).

-ee agree /ə'gri:/, trainee /'treɪnɪ:/

-eer volunteer /vɒlən'taɪ(r)/, engineer /'endʒɪ'nɪə(r)/

-ese Vietnamese /vjetnə'mi:z/

-ique/-esque unique /ju'ni:k/, picturesque /pɪk'tʃə'resk/

-ain (đôi với động từ) retain /rɪ'teɪn/, maintain /meɪn'teɪn/

Ngoại lệ: committee /kə'mɪtɪ/, coffee /'kɒfɪ/, employee /'emplɔɪ:/

BÀI TẬP VỀ PHÁT ÂM

Exercise 1: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>matter</u> | B. <u>b<u>a</u>ck</u> | C. <u>ba<u>g</u></u> | D. <u>ta<u>lk</u></u> |
| 2. A. <u>tha<u>t</u></u> | B. <u>c<u>a</u>tch</u> | C. <u>ba<u>d</u></u> | D. <u>wa<u>sh</u></u> |
| 3. A. <u>da<u>y</u></u> | B. <u>ta<u>ke</u></u> | C. <u>fa<u>ce</u></u> | D. <u>a<u>ny</u></u> |
| 4. A. <u>la<u>zy</u></u> | B. <u>la<u>pel</u></u> | C. <u>la<u>bel</u></u> | D. <u>la<u>borer</u></u> |
| 5. A. <u>bu<u>tter</u></u> | B. <u>pu<u>t</u></u> | C. <u>sug<u>ar</u></u> | D. <u>pu<u>sh</u></u> |
| 6. A. <u>too</u> | B. <u>fo<u>od</u></u> | C. <u>so<u>on</u></u> | D. <u>go<u>od</u></u> |
| 7. A. <u>wou<u>ld</u></u> | B. <u>ab<u>out</u></u> | C. <u>rou<u>nd</u></u> | D. <u>ou<u>t</u></u> |
| 8. A. <u>cre<u>w</u></u> | B. <u>ble<u>w</u></u> | C. <u>se<u>w</u></u> | D. <u>thre<u>w</u></u> |
| 9. A. <u>co<u>me</u></u> | B. <u>lo<u>ve</u></u> | C. <u>wome<u>n</u></u> | D. <u>so<u>me</u></u> |
| 10. A. <u>ha<u>ppy</u></u> | B. <u>ma<u>n</u></u> | C. <u>ma<u>ny</u></u> | D. <u>fa<u>t</u></u> |

Exercise 2: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>pre<u>tt</u>y</u> | B. <u>get</u> | C. <u>se<u>nd</u></u> | D. <u>we<u>ll</u></u> |
| 2. A. <u>chi<u>ldr</u>en</u> | B. <u>chi<u>ld</u></u> | C. <u>li<u>ne</u></u> | D. <u>si<u>gn</u></u> |
| 3. A. <u>wa<u>it</u></u> | B. <u>tr<u>ai</u>n</u> | C. <u>sa<u>id</u></u> | D. <u>pa<u>id</u></u> |
| 4. A. <u>me<u>an</u></u> | B. <u>we<u>ather</u></u> | C. <u>he<u>ad</u></u> | D. <u>re<u>ady</u></u> |

5. A. those B. lose C. both D. goes
 6. A. bus B. busy C. but D. bunch
 7. A. wait B. rain C. laid D. hair
 8. A. reply B. climb C. sign D. limb
 9. A. neighbour B. receive C. weight D. great
 10. A. warm B. wash C. wall D. walk

Exercise 3: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. come B. roll C. comb D. grow
 2. A. replace B. purchase C. surface D. palace
 3. A. liable B. limit C. revival D. final
 4. A. put B. pudding C. pull D. puncture
 5. A. ghost B. hostage C. lost D. frosty
 6. A. measure B. dreadful C. treasure D. breathe
 7. A. suitable B. biscuit C. guilty D. building
 8. A. physical B. mythology C. rhythm D. psychology
 9. A. nature B. change C. gravity D. basis
 10. A. talent B. campus C. many D. marry

Exercise 4: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. hasty B. nasty C. tasty D. wastage
 2. A. distribute B. tribe C. triangle D. trial
 3. A. creature B. creative C. creamy D. crease
 4. A. item B. Idiom C. idle D. ideal
 5. A. title B. invest C. divine D. income
 6. A. taught B. laugh C. naughty D. slaughter
 7. A. double B. enough C. thorough D. couple
 8. A. punctual B. rubbish C. frustrate D. furious
 9. A. manage B. sat C. add D. black
 10. A. plenty B. marry C. merry D. heaven

Exercise 5: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. climb B. find C. tin Do tiny
 2. A. traffic B. landscape C. examination D. park
 3. A. boot B. book C. hook D. foot
 4. A. gather B. father C. hat D. mariage

- | | | | | |
|-----|------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 5. | A. bus | B. bury | C. up | D. cut |
| 6. | A. head | B. heat | C. seat | D. need |
| 7. | A. wild | B. driven | C. alive | D. sign |
| 8. | A. penalty | B. scenic | C. epidemic | D. level |
| 9. | A. food | B. look | C. took | D. good |
| 10. | A. nourish | B. flourish | C. courageous | D. southern |

Exercise 6: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. | A. dealt | B. dreamt | C. heal | D. jealous |
| 2. | A. slogan | B. motor | C. total | D. proper |
| 3. | A. university | B. unique | C. unit | D. undo |
| 4. | A. portrait | B. painting | C. railing | D. complaint |
| 5. | A. review | B. science | C. client | D. variety |
| 6. | A. examine | B. famine | C. determine | D. miner |
| 7. | A. knowledge | B. flower | C. shower | D. coward |
| 8. | A. practice | B. device | C. service | D. inactive |
| 9. | A. teacher | B. clear | C. reason | D. mean |
| 10. | A. complete | B. command | C. common | D. community |

Exercise 7: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | A. release | B. pleasure | C. leaver | D. creamy |
| 2. | A. too | B. good | C. soon | D. food |
| 3. | A. most | B. cost | C. coast | D. host |
| 4. | A. head | B. heat | C. seat | D. need |
| 5. | A. faithful | B. failure | C. fairly | D. fainted |
| 6. | A. course | B. court | C. coursing | D. courage |
| 7. | A. watch | B. want | C. bank | D. what |
| 8. | A. low | B. bow | C. know | D. slow |
| 9. | A. none | B. tomb | C. tongue | D. onion |
| 10. | A. name | B. flame | C. man | D. fame |

Exercise 8: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|----|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. | A. count | B. sound | C. found | D. mould |
| 2. | A. noon | B. tool | C. foot | D. spoon |

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 3. A. bush | B. brush | C. bus | D. cup |
| 4. A. dead | B. bead | C. thread | D. bread |
| 5. A. soul | B. mould | C. foul | D. shoulder |
| 6. A. says | B. bays | C. days | D. rays |
| 7. A. too | B. food | C. soon | D. good |
| 8. A. butter | B. put | C. sugar | D. push |
| 9. A. gear | B. beard | C. pear | D. dear |
| 10. A. reject | B. regard | C. represent | D. religion |

Exercise 9: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. chooses | B. houses | C. rises | D. horses |
| 2. A. suit | B. seven | C. sugar | D. sun |
| 3. A. accurate | B. accept | C. accident | D. success |
| 4. A. cat | B. ceiling | C. nice | D. centre |
| 5. A. think | B. thanks | C. that | D. three |
| 6. A. happy | B. hour | C. high | D. hotel |
| 7. A. who | B. where | C. what | D. why |
| 8. A. off | B. of | C. safe | D. knife |
| 9. A. get | B. gentle | C. give | D. guest |
| 10. A. chair | B. cheap | C. chemist | D. child |

Exercise 10: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. whole | B. when | C. which | D. while |
| 2. A. measure | B. decision | C. pleasure | D. permission |
| 3. A. while | B. which | C. who | D. white |
| 4. A. chorus | B. cherish | C. chaos | D. scholarship |
| 5. A. honourable | B. honesty | C. historic | D. heir |
| 6. A. research | B. resent | C. resemble | D. resist |
| 7. A. decision | B. occasion | C. expansion | D. erosion |
| 8. A. performed | B. finished | C. interviewed | D. delivered |
| 9. A. theatre | B. therefore | C. throughout | D. thunder |
| 10. A. measure | B. leisure | C. ensure | D. pleasure |

Exercise 11: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>looked</u> | B. <u>moved</u> | C. <u>tried</u> | D. <u>opened</u> |
| 2. A. <u>gentle</u> | B. <u>get</u> | C. <u>game</u> | D. <u>gift</u> |
| 3. A. <u>church</u> | B. <u>each</u> | C. <u>much</u> | D. <u>ache</u> |
| 4. A. <u>pitch</u> | B. <u>watch</u> | C. <u>butcher</u> | D. architect |
| 5. A. <u>page</u> | B. <u>game</u> | C. <u>go</u> | D. gift |
| 6. A. <u>sense</u> | B. <u>practise</u> | C. <u>necessary</u> | D. <u>advertise</u> |
| 7. A. <u>chin</u> | B. <u>champagne</u> | C. <u>child</u> | D. <u>charge</u> |
| 8. A. <u>measure</u> | B. <u>please</u> | C. <u>his</u> | D. <u>disease</u> |
| 9. A. <u>practised</u> | B. <u>raised</u> | C. <u>rained</u> | D. <u>followed</u> |
| 10. A. <u>hour</u> | B. <u>honest</u> | C. <u>heir</u> | D. <u>hospital</u> |

Exercise 12: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>characteristic</u> | B. <u>chapter</u> | C. <u>chaotic</u> | D. <u>archive</u> |
| 2. A. <u>tiles</u> | B. <u>follows</u> | C. <u>letters</u> | D. <u>books</u> |
| 3. A. <u>tension</u> | B. <u>precision</u> | C. <u>provision</u> | D. <u>decision</u> |
| 4. A. <u>laugh</u> | B. <u>enough</u> | C. <u>plough</u> | D. <u>cough</u> |
| 5. A. <u>thank</u> | B. <u>thought</u> | C. <u>thin</u> | D. <u>farther</u> |
| 6. A. <u>think</u> | B. <u>there</u> | C. <u>theme</u> | D. <u>thumb</u> |
| 7. A. <u>south</u> | B. <u>truth</u> | C. <u>smooth</u> | D. <u>both</u> |
| 8. A. <u>loose</u> | B. <u>lose</u> | C. <u>cease</u> | D. <u>dose</u> |
| 9. A. <u>exchange</u> | B. <u>ache</u> | C. <u>stomach</u> | D. architect |
| 10. A. <u>ploughed</u> | B. <u>fixed</u> | C. <u>laughed</u> | D. <u>coughed</u> |

Exercise 13: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. <u>breath</u> | B. <u>breathe</u> | C. <u>thank</u> | D. <u>threat</u> |
| 2. A. <u>beds</u> | B. <u>doors</u> | C. <u>students</u> | D. <u>plays</u> |
| 3. A. <u>myth</u> | B. <u>with</u> | C. <u>both</u> | D. <u>tenth</u> |
| 4. A. <u>cell</u> | B. <u>centre</u> | C. <u>city</u> | D. <u>cube</u> |
| 5. A. <u>though</u> | B. <u>enough</u> | C. <u>cough</u> | D. <u>rough</u> |
| 6. A. <u>kicked</u> | B. <u>blocked</u> | C. <u>naked</u> | D. <u>locked</u> |
| 7. A. <u>breathe</u> | B. <u>breath</u> | C. <u>myth</u> | D. <u>thigh</u> |
| 8. A. <u>cheese</u> | B. <u>choice</u> | C. <u>chord</u> | D. <u>chunk</u> |
| 9. A. <u>worth</u> | B. <u>eighteenth</u> | C. <u>path</u> | D. <u>with</u> |
| 10. A. <u>likes</u> | B. <u>sighs</u> | C. <u>heaps</u> | D. <u>fuss</u> |

Exercise 14: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | A. government | B. glory | C. worry | D. wonder |
| 2. | A. promise | B. devise | C. surprise | D. realize |
| 3. | A. weight | B. height | C. eight | D. vein |
| 4. | A. hood | B. hook | C. stood | D. tool |
| 5. | A. natural | B. nature | C. native | D. nation |
| 6. | A. terrace | B. territory | C. terrific | D. terror |
| 7. | A. kite | B. blind | C. right | D. rigid |
| 8. | A. fond | B. off | C. follow | D. honey |
| 9. | A. pretty | B. level | C. lesson | D. length |
| 10. | A. eight | B. weight | C. heighten | D. freight |

Exercise 15: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. | A. that | B. hat | C. park | D. taxi |
| 2. | A. bad | B. fan | C. catch | D. wash |
| 3. | A. worker | B. teacher | C. better | D. prefer |
| 4. | A. monk | B. boss | C. shop | D. got |
| 5. | A. tribe | B. distribute | C. triangle | D. trial |
| 6. | A. clown | B. cow | C. plough | D. tough |
| 7. | A. below | B. beverage | C. begin | D. beneath |
| 8. | A. south | B. brown | C. soup | D. house |
| 9. | A. comb | B. come | C. dome | D. home |
| 10. | A. surgical | B. surround | C. surrender | D. survival |

Exercise 16: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. | A. opportunity | B. menu | C. aptitude | D. muscular |
| 2. | A. karate | B. hazard | C. glad | D. blanket |
| 3. | A. master | B. ask | C. aspect | D. castle |
| 4. | A. adult | B. husband | C. mutual | D. culture |
| 5. | A. bound | B. ground | C. bounce | D. cough |
| 6. | A. addition | B. adventure | C. advertise | D. advantage |
| 7. | A. dealt | B. dreamt | C. steal | D. jealous |
| 8. | A. fame | B. change | C. champagne | D. blame |
| 9. | A. nourish | B. enough | C. courage | D. encounter |
| 10. | A. use | B. umbrella | C. union | D. unit |

➤ **BÀI TẬP VỀ TRỌNG ÂM**

Exercise 17: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. superman | B. synthetic | C. conversion | D. professor |
| 2. A. forests | B. singing | C. concerning | D. burning |
| 3. A. promise | B. expensive | C. constructive | D. original |
| 4. A. simultaneous | B. feedback | C. different | D. errors |
| 5. A. appropriate | B. emotional | C. pronounce | D. situation |
| 6. A. before | B. arrive | C. imply | D. countless |
| 7. A. incredible | B. humidity | C. environment | D. definition |
| 8. A. begin | B. mountain | C. kingdom | D. passage |
| 9. A. dinosaur | B. calendar | C. eternal | D. history |
| 10. A. document | B. develop | C. opponent | D. astonish |

Exercise 18: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. definition | B. production | C. situation | D. politician |
| 2. A. photography | B. qualification | C. occasion | D. Canadian |
| 3. A. ancient | B. edible | C. visual | D. delicious |
| 4. A. conscious | B. speedometer | C. thermometer | D. parameter |
| 5. A. sufficient | B. deficient | C. ancient | D. efficient |
| 6. A. personal | B. entry | C. personnel | D. sample |
| 7. A. temperature | B. decorator | C. calculator | D. individual |
| 8. A. particular | B. subordinate | C. several | D. constructive |
| 9. A. cultivate | B. machine | C. terminate | D. operate |
| 10. A. prediction | B. judgment | C. intelligent | D. compulsion |

Exercise 19: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. industry | B. memory | C. ambiguous | D. advertise |
| 2. A. tunnel | B. nightmare | C. retain | D. thesis |
| 3. A. rainfall | B. inquire | C. confide | D. machine |
| 4. A. tableland | B. artistic | C. contribute | D. substantial |
| 5. A. colony | B. maintaining | C. maintenance | D. credible |
| 6. A. priority | B. relationship | C. enthusiastic | D. engineering |
| 7. A. address | B. include | C. imply | D. common |
| 8. A. urbanization | B. modernization | C. communication | D. unexpectedly |

9. A. computation B. unemployment C. desirable D. satisfaction
10. A. associate B. influential C. accountancy D. variety

Exercise 20: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. committee B. internal C. involvement Do margarine
2. A. negative B. pioneer C. interchange D. understand
3. A. relax B. wonder C. problem D. special
4. A. imagine B. confidence C. appearance D. discussion
5. A. sleepy B. trophy C. facial D. exact
6. A. original B. responsible C. reasonable Do comparison
7. A. authority B. necessity C. academic D. commercially
8. A. emotional B. simultaneous C. astrology D. applicable
9. A. reflection B. division C. industry D. remember
10. A. punctuality B. recommendation C. undergraduate D. solidarity

Exercise 21: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. orientation B. electricity C. disadvantageous D. developmental
2. A. autobiography B. responsibility C. familiarization D. availability
3. A. adventurous B. petroleum C. recovery D. artificial
4. A. millennium B. congratulate C. corporation D. evacuate
5. A. intensive B. irritate C. implement D. enterprise
6. A. sacrifice B. waterproof C. attendant D. literal
7. A. recruit B. retail C. answer D. shortage
8. A. surface B. profound C. pursue D. perform
9. A. conclusion B. opponent C. arrival D. stadium
10. A. popular B. politics C. exciting D. origin

Exercise 22: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. community B. peninsula C. participant D. concentration
2. A. accuracy B. individual C. recreation D. independence
3. A. accident B. direction C. factory D. hospital
4. A. beginner B. encounter C. disappear D. remember
5. A. ambulance B. another C. government D. institute
6. A. attractive B. laboratory C. investigate D. knowledgeable
7. A. capacity B. language C. dangerous D. courage
8. A. delicate B. promotion C. volcanic D. resources

9. A. disease B. design C. moustache D. aspect
10. A. material B. apologize C. disappointed D. informative

Exercise 23: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. exception B. linguistics C. paragraph D. specific
2. A. authority B. calculation C. exceptional D. photographer
3. A. almost B. solar C. statement D. annoy
4. A. around B. legend C. question D. special
5. A. family B. mythical C. serious D. umbrella
6. A. product B. purpose C. postcard D. postpone
7. A. conversation B. potentially C. identify D. magnificent
8. A. champion B. composer C. research D. machine
9. A. beauty B. mutual C. Europe D. reduce
10. A. facilitate B. volume C. expensive D. significant

Exercise 24: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. altogether B. amphibian C. historical D. psychology
2. A. enjoyable B. enthusiasm C. intelligent D. territory
3. A. overlook B. overnight C. overcome D. overcoat
4. A. bulletin B. enjoyable C. colorful D. beautiful
5. A. amusement B. autograph C. criticize D. fluoride
6. A. ability B. already C. retirement D. uniform
7. A. excellent B. gymnastics C. stadium D. restaurant
8. A. champion B. common C. peaceful D. respect
9. A. eventual B. qualify C. president D. volleyball
10. A. penalty B. personal C. position D. powerful

Exercise 25: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. village B. begin C. column D. pity
2. A. average B. aquatic C. athletic D. available
3. A. schedule B. report C. promise D. orbit
4. A. accurate B. customer C. computer D. exercise
5. A. fancy B. portrait C. endless D. require
6. A. disappear B. government C. hurricane D. triangle
7. A. synthetic B. thoroughly C. tornado D. formation
8. A. basket B. blossom C. firewood D. perhaps

9. A. disease B. people C. upset D. upstairs
10. A. grapefruit B. personal C. release D. pumpkin

Exercise 26: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. authority B. disadvantage C. photographer D. relationship
2. A. combination B. satisfaction C. transportation D. necessary
3. A. hockey B. involve C. review D. select
4. A. defensive B. spectator C. technician D. wonderful
5. A. eleven B. example C. origin D. synthetic
6. A. exhaust B. expect C. extra D. except
7. A. discharge B. honey C. decide D. appoint
8. A. captain B. belong C. respect D. avoid
9. A. evaluate B. favorable C. convenient D. relationship
10. A. signature B. scholarship C. terminal D. transaction

Bài tập từ vựng trong các đề thi trắc nghiệm tiếng Anh thường bao gồm các dạng bài tập sau:

- Bài tập về cấu tạo từ hoặc dạng thức của từ (word formation).
- Bài tập về chọn từ (word choice) hoặc sự kết hợp của từ (collocations).

I. PHƯƠNG THỨC CẤU TẠO TỪ (Word formation)

Bài tập cấu tạo từ thường kiểm tra tất cả các dạng từ loại như danh từ, tính từ, trạng từ, động từ. Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, trước hết, học sinh cần phải có một vốn từ vựng phong phú. Khi học một từ mới các em nên học tất cả các từ loại liên quan, bao gồm cả tiền tố hoặc hậu tố cấu tạo từ trái nghĩa.

Ví dụ: succeed (v), success (n), successful (adj), successfully (adv), unsuccessful (adj), unsuccessfully (adv)

Khi lựa chọn đáp án đúng cho bài tập cấu tạo từ ta cần chú ý những điểm sau:

- Xác định từ loại của từ cần tìm
- Danh từ cần tìm số ít hay số nhiều
- Động từ trong câu chia ở thì nào, theo chủ ngữ số ít hay số nhiều
- Đáp án Cần tìm có nghĩa肯定 (positive) hay phủ định (negative)
- Nếu đáp án cần tìm là danh từ thì xác định đó là danh từ chỉ người, vật hay sự vật cần cân nhắc về nghĩa trong câu với những từ có cùng từ loại

Ví dụ minh họa 1:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

He cycled _____ and had an accident.

- A. careful B. careless C. carefully D. carelessly

Hướng dẫn: Ta dùng trạng từ bỏ nghĩa cho động từ *cycle*, ta lại chọn *carelessly* thay vì *carefully* vì nghĩa của câu.

Đáp án là **D**.

He cycled carelessly and had an accident. (Anh ấy đi xe máy ẩu và gặp tai nạn)

Ví dụ minh họa 2:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

Peter _____ opened the door of the cellar, wondering what he might find.

- A. cautious B. cautiously C. cautional D. cautiously

Hướng dẫn: Peter _____ opened the door of the cellar, wondering what he might find. (Peter mở cửa tầng hầm _____, tự hỏi rằng mình có thể tìm thấy gì.)

B Đáp án đúng: **cautiously** (trạng từ) = (một cách) thận trọng.

A Phương án sai: *cautious* (tính từ) = thận trọng,

C, D Phương án sai: không có các từ này trong tiếng Anh.

Ví dụ minh họa 3:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

The new dress makes you more _____. .

- A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautifully D. beautify

Hướng dẫn: make + danh từ/đại từ + tính từ/tính từ so sánh hơn: làm cho, khiến cho....

Đáp án là **B**. “The new dress makes you more beautiful.” (Chiếc áo đầm mới làm cho bạn xinh đẹp hơn.)

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập từ vựng, ta cần lưu ý các điểm sau đây:

1. Thay đổi loại từ

Trong tiếng Anh có nhiều từ được sử dụng với những loại từ khác nhau và có nghĩa khác nhau.

Ví dụ: a cook (danh từ): đầu bếp, to cook (động từ): nấu ăn

a graduate (danh từ): sinh viên tốt nghiệp

to graduate (động từ): tốt nghiệp

2. Từ ghép

Danh từ ghép:

Phương thức thông thường nhất là sự ghép tự do hai danh từ với nhau để tạo thành danh từ mới. Cách ghép tự do này có thể áp dụng đối với nhiều trường hợp và danh từ ghép có thể là hai từ hoặc một từ, đôi khi mang một nghĩa mới.

Phần lớn danh từ ghép được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + danh từ

a tennis club: câu lạc bộ quần vợt

a phone bill: hóa đơn điện thoại

a train journey: chuyến đi bằng tàu hỏa

- Danh động từ + danh từ

a swimming pool: hồ bơi

a sleeping bag: túi ngủ

washing powder: bột giặt

- Tính từ + danh từ

a greenhouse: nhà kính

a blackboard: bảng viết

quicksilver: thủy ngân

a black sheep: kẻ hư hỏng

- Một số ít danh từ ghép có thể gồm ba từ hoặc nhiều hơn:

merry-go-round (trò chơi ngựa quay)

forget-me-not (hoa lưu ly)

mother-in-law (mẹ chồng/ mẹ vợ)

Danh từ ghép có thể được viết như:

- Hai từ rời: book seller (người bán sách), dog trainer (người huấn luyện chó)

- Hai từ có gạch nối ở giữa: waste-bin (giỏ rác), living-room (phòng khách)
- Một từ duy nhất: watchmaker (thợ chế tạo đồng hồ), schoolchildren (học sinh), chairman (chủ tịch)

Trong câu tạo “danh từ + danh từ”, danh từ đi trước thường có dạng số ít nhung cũng có trường hợp ở dạng số nhiều:

- a vegetable garden (vườn rau)
- an eye test (kiểm tra mắt)
- a sports shop (cửa hàng bán đồ thể thao)
- a goods train (tàu chở hàng)

Tính từ ghép:

Tính từ ghép thường gồm hai hoặc nhiều từ kết hợp với nhau và được dùng như một từ duy nhất. Tính từ ghép có thể được viết thành:

- Một từ duy nhất:

- life + long → lifelong (cả đời)
- home + sick → homesick (nhớ nhà)

- Hai từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:

- after + school → after-school (sau giờ học)
- back + up → back-up/ backup (giúp đỡ)

- Nhiều từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:

- a two-hour-long test (bài kiểm tra kéo dài 2 giờ)
- a ten-year-old boy (cậu bé lên mười)

Tính từ ghép có thể được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + tính từ:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| duty-free (miễn thuế) | noteworthy (đáng chú ý) |
| nationwide (khắp nước) | blood-thirsty (khát máu) |

- Danh từ + phân từ:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| handmade (làm bằng tay) | time-consuming (tốn thời gian) |
| breath-taking (đáng kinh ngạc) | heart-broken (đau khổ) |

- Trạng từ + phân từ:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ill-equipped (trang bị kém) | outspoken (thẳng thắn) |
| well-behaved (lễ phép) | high-sounding (huênh hoang) |

- Tính từ + phân từ:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| good-looking (xinh xắn) | easy-going (thoải mái) |
| beautiful-sounding (nghe hay) | middle-ranking (bậc trung) |

- Tính từ + danh từ kết hợp với tận cùng -ed:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| old-fashioned (lỗi thời) | absent-minded (đang trí) |
| fair-skinned (da trắng) | artistic-minded (có óc thẩm mĩ) |

3. Thay đổi phụ tố (affixation)

Bằng cách thêm phụ tố (affixation) bao gồm tiền tố (prefixes) vào đầu một từ gốc hoặc

hậu tố (suffixes) vào cuối từ gốc ta có cách cấu tạo một hình thái từ mới rất phổ biến trong tiếng Anh.

➤ Hậu tố tạo động từ:

- ise/ -ize: modernize, popularize, industrialize...
- ify : beautify, purify, simplify ©

➤ Tiền tố phủ định của tính từ

<i>Tiền tố phủ định</i>	<i>Ví dụ</i>
im- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu <i>m</i> hoặc <i>p</i>)	immature, impatient
ir- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu <i>r</i>)	irreplaceable, irregular
il- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu <i>l</i>)	illegal, illegible, illiterate
in-	inconvenient, inedible
dis-	disloyal, dissimilar
un-	uncomfortable, unsuccessful

Lưu ý: Đối với các tiền tố *in-*, *im-*, ngoài ý nghĩa phủ định chúng còn mang nghĩa “bên trong; vào trong”. **Ví dụ:** internal, income, import...

➤ Các tiền tố *un-* và *dis-* còn được dùng để thành lập từ trái nghĩa của động từ: tie/untie, appear/disappear... hoặc đảo ngược hành động của động từ: disbelieve, disconnect, dislike, disqualify, unbend, undo, undress, unfold, unload, unlock, unwrap...

Ngoài ra ta còn có tiền tố phủ định *de-* và *non*: decentralize, nonsense...

➤ Hậu tố tạo tính từ

- y: bushy, dirty, hairy
- ic: atomic, economic, poetic
- al: cultural, agricultural, environmental
- ical: biological, grammatical
- fill: painful, hopeful, careful
- less: painless, hopeless, careless
- able: loveable, washable, breakable
- ive: productive, active
- ous: poisonous, outrageous

➤ Hậu tố tạo danh từ

Các hậu tố hình thành danh từ thường gặp.

Hậu tố	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
-er	- chỉ người thực hiện một hành động	writer, painter, worker,
-or	- ta còn dùng hậu tố này cho rất nhiều động từ để hình thành danh từ	actor, operator

-er/-or	dùng chỉ vật thực hiện một công việc nhất định	pencil-sharpener, grater, bottle-opener, projector
-ee	chỉ người nhận hoặc trải qua một hành động nào đó	employee, payee
-tion -sion -ion	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ động từ	complication admission donation, alteration
-ment	chỉ hành động hoặc kết quả	bombardment development
-ist -ism	-chỉ người -chỉ hoạt động hoặc hệ tư tưởng (hai hậu tố này dùng cho chính trị, niềm tin và hệ tư tưởng hoặc ý thức hệ của con người)	Buddhist, Marxist, Buddhism, communism
-ist	còn dùng để chỉ người chơi một loại nhạc cụ, chuyên gia một lĩnh vực...	guitarist, violinist, pianist, economist, biologist
-ness	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ tính từ	goodness, readiness, forgetfulness, happiness, sadness, weakness
-hood	chỉ trạng thái hoặc phẩm chất	childhood, falsehood
-ship	chỉ trạng thái, phẩm chất, tình trạng, khả năng hoặc nhóm	friendship, citizenship, musicianship, membership

➤ Sau đây là các tiền tố khác trong tiếng Anh, một số từ có dấu gạch nối.

Tiền tố	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
anti-	chống lại	anti-war, antisocial
auto-	tự động	auto-pilot, autograph
bi-	hai, hai lần	bicycle, bilingual
ex-	trước đây	ex-wife, ex-smoker
micro-	nhỏ bé	microwave, microscopic
mis-	tối tệ, sai	misunderstand, misinform
mono-	một, đơn lẻ	monotone, monologue
multi-	nhiều	multi-national, multi-purpose
over-	nhiều, quá mức	overdo, overtired, overeat
post-	sau	postwar, postgraduate
pre-	trước	pre-war, pre-judge

pro-	tán thành, ủng hộ	pro-government, pro-revolutionary
pseudo-	giả	pseudo-scientific
re~	lần nữa, trở lại	retype, reread, rewind
semi-	phân nửa	semi-final, semicircular
sub-	bên dưới	subway, subdivision
under-	thiếu, không đủ	underworked, undercooked

➤ Bảng từ loại thông dụng

Động từ	Danh từ	Tính từ	Trạng từ
<i>accept</i> (chấp nhận)	<i>acceptance</i>	<i>acceptable</i> <i>unacceptable</i>	
	<i>advantage</i> (sự thuận lợi) ý <i>disadvantage</i>	<i>advantaged</i> (có điều kiện tốt) <i>disadvantaged</i> <i>advantageous</i> (có lợi)	<i>advantageously</i>
<i>apologize</i> (xin lỗi)	<i>apology</i>	<i>apologetic</i>	
<i>appreciate</i> (đánh giá cao, trân trọng)	<i>appreciation</i>	<i>appreciative</i>	
<i>attend</i> (tham dự)	<i>attention</i> (sự chú ý) <i>attendance</i> (sự tham dự, sự có mặt)	<i>attentive</i> (chú tâm, chú ý) <i>inattentive</i>	
<i>appear</i> (xuất hiện) <i>disappear</i> (biến mất)	<i>appearance</i> <i>disappearance</i>	<i>apparent</i> (hiện nhiên, rõ ràng)	<i>apparently</i>
<i>apply</i> (nộp hồ sơ)	<i>application</i> (lời xin, đơn xin) <i>applicant</i> (người nộp hồ sơ)		
<i>approve</i> (tán thành) <i>disapprove</i> (không tán thành)	<i>Approval</i> <i>disapproval</i>		
<i>attract</i> (thu hút)	<i>attraction</i> (sự thu hút, điểm thu hút) <i>attractiveness</i> (tính thu hút, sự hấp dẫn)	<i>Attractive</i> (hấp dẫn, thu hút) <i>unattractive</i> <i>attracted</i> (bị thu hút)	<i>attractively</i>
<i>Advertise</i> (quảng cáo)	<i>advertising</i> (sự quảng cáo)		

cáo)	cáo) <i>advertisement</i> (sự quảng cáo, mục quảng cáo) <i>advertiser</i> (nhà quảng cáo)		
<i>benefit</i> (giúp ích, làm lợi cho)	<i>benefit</i> (lợi ích)	<i>beneficial</i> (có lợi)	
<i>believe</i> (tin tưởng)	<i>belief</i> (niềm tin) <i>believer</i> (tín đồ)	<i>believable</i> (có thể tin được) ≠ <i>unbelievable</i>	<i>believably</i> ≠ <i>unbelievably</i>
	<i>biology</i> (sinh vật học) <i>biologist</i> (nhà sinh vật học)	<i>biological</i>	<i>biologically</i>
<i>compete</i> (cạnh tranh, tranh đua)	<i>competition</i> (cuộc thi, sự cạnh tranh) <i>competitor</i> (người tham gia thi đấu)	<i>competitive</i>	<i>competitively</i>
<i>construct</i> (xây dựng)	<i>construction</i>	<i>constructive</i> (tích cực, mang tính xây dựng)	<i>constructively</i>
<i>continue</i> (tiếp tục)	<i>continuation</i>	<i>continuous</i> (tiếp diễn, liên tục) <i>continual</i> (lặp đi lặp lại, thường xuyên)	<i>continuously</i> <i>continually</i>
<i>contribute</i> (đóng góp)	<i>contribution</i> (sự đóng góp) <i>contributor</i> (người đóng góp)	<i>contributory</i> ≠ <i>non-contributory</i>	
<i>conserve</i> (bảo tồn)	<i>conservation</i> (sự bảo tồn, sự bảo quản) <i>conservationist</i> (nhà bảo tồn)	<i>conservative</i> (bảo thủ)	<i>conservatively</i>
<i>create</i> (tạo ra)	<i>creation</i> (sự sáng tạo) <i>creativity</i> (tính sáng tạo) <i>creator</i> (người tạo ra)	<i>creative</i> (sáng tạo)	<i>creatively</i>
<i>endanger</i> (gây nguy hiểm)	<i>danger</i> (sự nguy hiểm)	<i>dangerous</i> (nguy hiểm) <i>endangered</i> (bị nguy hiểm)	<i>dangerously</i>

<i>develop</i> (phát triển)	<i>development</i> (sự phát triển)	<i>developed</i> (phát triển) <i>developing</i> (đang phát triển) <i>underdeveloped</i> (chậm phát triển)	
<i>decide</i> (quyết định)	<i>decision</i> (quyết định) <i>decisiveness</i> (tính quyết đoán)	<i>decisive</i> (quyết đoán) ≠ <i>indecisive</i> (do dự)	<i>decisively</i>
<i>depend</i> (phụ thuộc)	<i>dependence</i> (sự phụ thuộc) ≠ <i>independence</i> (sự độc lập)	<i>dependent</i> (phụ thuộc) ≠ <i>independent</i> (độc lập)	
<i>destroy</i> (phá hủy)	<i>destruction</i> (sự phá hủy) <i>destructiveness</i> (tính phá hoại)	<i>destructive</i> (có tính chất phá hoại)	<i>destructively</i>
<i>direct</i> (chỉ dẫn)	<i>direction</i> (sự chỉ dẫn, hướng) <i>director</i> (giám đốc, đạo diễn)		
<i>differ</i> (khác, không giống)	<i>difference</i> (sự khác biệt)	<i>different</i> (khác biệt) <i>indifferent</i> (hờ hững)	<i>differently</i>
<i>disappoint</i> (làm thất vọng)	<i>disappointment</i> (sự thất vọng)	<i>disappointed</i> (bị thất vọng) <i>disappointing</i> (thất vọng)	<i>disappointingly</i>
<i>economize</i> (tiết kiệm)	<i>economy</i> (nền kinh tế) <i>economics</i> (kinh tế học)	<i>economic</i> (thuộc về kinh tế) <i>economical</i> (tiết kiệm)	<i>economically</i>
<i>educate</i> (giáo dục)	<i>education</i> (sự/nên giáo dục) <i>educator</i> (người làm công tác giáo dục) <i>educationalist</i> (nhà giáo dục)	<i>educational</i> (thuộc giáo dục, mang tính giáo dục) <i>educated</i> (được giáo dục)	<i>educationally</i>
<i>employ</i> (thuê, tuyển dụng)	<i>employment</i> (việc làm) ≠ <i>unemployment</i> <i>employer</i> (người chủ) <i>employee</i> (nhân viên)	<i>employed</i> (có việc làm) ≠ <i>unemployed</i>	

	<i>environment</i> (môi trường) <i>environmentalist</i> (người bảo vệ môi trường)	<i>environmental</i> (thuộc về môi trường)	<i>environmentally</i>
<i>excite</i> (kích thích, gây hào hứng)	<i>excitement</i> (sự hào hứng)	<i>excited</i> <i>exciting</i>	<i>excitedly</i> <i>excitingly</i>
<i>experience</i> (trải qua)	<i>experience</i> (trải nghiệm, kinh nghiệm)	<i>experienced</i> (có kinh nghiệm) ≠ <i>inexperienced</i>	
<i>explain</i> (giải thích)	<i>explanation</i> (sự/ lời giải thích)	<i>explanatory</i> (có tính giải thích)	
<i>Afforest</i> (trồng rừng)	<i>forest</i> (rừng) <i>afforestation</i> (sự trồng rừng) ≠ <i>deforestation</i> (sự phá rừng)		
<i>harm</i> (gây hại)	<i>harm</i> (sự tổn hại) <i>harmfulness</i> (tính gây hại) ≠ <i>harmlessness</i>	<i>harmful</i> (có hại) <i>harmless</i> (vô hại)	<i>harmfully</i> ≠ <i>harmlessly</i>
<i>hope</i> (hi vọng)	<i>hope</i> (niềm hi vọng) <i>hopefulness</i> (tính đầy hi vọng) ≠ <i>hopelessness</i>	<i>hopeful</i> (đầy hi vọng) <i>hopeless</i> (vô vọng)	<i>hopefully</i> <i>hopelessly</i>
<i>inform</i> (thông báo)	<i>information</i> (thông tin) <i>informer</i> (người cung cấp thông tin)	<i>informative</i> (chứa nhiều thông tin) <i>informed</i> (có hiểu biết)	
<i>imagine</i> (tưởng tượng)	<i>imagination</i> (sự tưởng tượng)	<i>imaginary</i> (không thật, do tưởng tượng) <i>imaginative</i> (giàu trí tưởng tượng)	<i>imaginatively</i>
<i>impress</i> (gây ấn tượng)	<i>impression</i> (ấn tượng)	<i>impressive</i> (gây ấn tượng)	<i>impressively</i>
<i>improve</i> (cải thiện)	<i>improvement</i> (sự cải thiện)	<i>improved</i> (được cải thiện)	
<i>know</i> (biết)	<i>knowledge</i> (kiến thức, sự hiểu biết)	<i>knowledgeable</i> (hiểu biết)	<i>knowledgeably</i>

<i>live</i> (sống)	<i>life</i> (cuộc sống) <i>lifestyle</i> (lối sống) <i>living</i> (sự kiếm sống) <i>livelihood</i> (sinh kế) <i>lifespan</i> = <i>life expectancy</i> (tuổi thọ)	<i>alive</i> (còn sống) <i>lively</i> (sống động) <i>living</i> (đang tồn tại) <i>lifelong</i> (suốt đời) <i>live</i> (trực tiếp) <i>lifelike</i> (giống như thật)	
	<i>major</i> (chính yếu) ≠ <i>minor</i> (nhỏ, thứ yếu)	<i>majority</i> (đa số) ≠ <i>minority</i> (thiểu số)	
<i>marry</i> (kết hôn)	<i>marriage</i> (hôn nhân)	<i>married</i> ≠ <i>unmarried</i>	
<i>necessitate</i> (làm cho cái gì cần thiết)	<i>necessity</i> (thứ cần thiết)	<i>necessary</i> (cần thiết) ≠ <i>unnecessary</i>	<i>unnecessarily</i>
<i>obey</i> (tuân theo)	<i>obedience</i> (sự tuân theo) ≠ <i>disobedience</i>	<i>obedient</i> (vâng lời) ≠ <i>disobedient</i>	<i>obediently</i> ≠ <i>disobediently</i>
<i>oppose</i> (chống đối)	<i>opposition</i> (sự chống đối) <i>opponent</i> (đối thủ)	<i>opposed</i> <i>opposing</i>	
	<i>patience</i> (sự kiên nhẫn) ≠ <i>impatience</i>	<i>patient</i> (kiên nhẫn) ≠ <i>impatient</i>	<i>patiently</i> ≠ <i>impatiently</i>
<i>popularize</i> (phổ cập)	<i>popularity</i> (tính phổ biến)	<i>popular</i> ≠ <i>unpopular</i>	<i>popularly</i>
	<i>possibility</i> (khả năng, sự có thể) ≠ <i>impossibility</i>	<i>possible</i> (có thể) ≠ <i>impossible</i>	<i>possibly</i> ≠ <i>impossibly</i>
<i>prefer</i> (thích hơn)	<i>preference</i> (sự ưu tiên)	<i>preferential</i> (ưu đãi) <i>preferable</i> (thích hơn)	<i>preferably</i>
<i>produce</i> (sản xuất, tạo ra)	<i>product</i> (sản phẩm) <i>produce</i> [U] (sản phẩm nói chung) <i>productivity</i> (năng suất) <i>producer</i> (nhà sản xuất)	<i>productive</i> (sinh lợi, có năng suất)	
	<i>profit</i> (lợi nhuận) <i>profitability</i> (tính có lợi)	<i>profitable</i> (có thể mang lại lợi nhuận) <i>non-profit</i> (phi lợi nhuận) <i>profitless</i> (vô dụng)	<i>profitably</i>

<i>protect</i> (bảo vệ)	<i>protection</i> (sự bảo vệ)	<i>protective</i> (bảo hộ, che chở) <i>protected</i> (được bảo vệ)	<i>protectively</i>
<i>pollute</i> (làm ô nhiễm)	<i>pollution</i> (sự ô nhiễm) <i>pollutant</i> (chất gây ô nhiễm)	<i>polluted</i> (bị ô nhiễm)	
<i>publicize</i> (quảng cáo, làm cho mọi người biết)	<i>public</i> (công chúng, quần chúng) <i>publicity</i> (sự công khai, sự quảng cáo) <i>publicist</i> (người làm quảng cáo)	<i>public</i> (công cộng)	<i>publicly</i>
<i>recognize</i> (nhận ra)	<i>recognition</i>	<i>recognizable</i> (có thể nhận ra được) ≠ <i>unrecognizable</i>	<i>recognizably</i>
<i>reduce</i> (làm giảm)	<i>reduction</i> (sự cắt giảm)		
<i>refuse</i> (từ chối)	<i>refusal</i>		
<i>repeat</i> (lặp lại)	<i>repetition</i>	<i>repeated</i> (lặp đi lặp lại) <i>repeatable</i> (có thể nhắc lại)	<i>repeatedly</i>
	<i>responsibility</i> (trách nhiệm)	<i>responsible</i> (có trách nhiệm) ≠ <i>irresponsible</i>	<i>responsibly</i>
<i>satisfy</i> (làm hài lòng, thoả mãn)	<i>satisfaction</i>	<i>satisfied</i> (thoả mãn) <i>satisfactory</i> (thoả đáng)	
	<i>science</i> (khoa học) <i>scientist</i> (nhà khoa học)	<i>scientific</i>	<i>scientifically</i>
<i>secure</i> (bảo vệ)	<i>security</i> (sự an toàn)	<i>secure</i> (an toàn) ≠ <i>insecure</i>	<i>securely</i>
<i>shorten</i> (làm ngắn lại)	<i>shortage</i> (sự thiếu hụt) <i>shortlist</i> (danh sách rút gọn) <i>shortcoming</i> (thiếu sót)	<i>short</i>	<i>shortly</i> (nhanh, sớm)
<i>signify</i> (làm cho có ý nghĩa)	<i>significance</i> (ý nghĩa, tầm quan trọng)	<i>significant</i> (có ý nghĩa)	<i>significantly</i>

<i>solve</i> (giải quyết)	<i>solution</i> (giải pháp) <i>solver</i> (người tìm ra giải pháp)	<i>solvable</i> (có thể giải quyết được)	
<i>submit</i> (nộp)	<i>submission</i> (sự nộp, bài nộp)		
<i>succeed</i> (thành công)	<i>success</i>	<i>successful</i> ≠ <i>unsuccessful</i>	<i>successfully</i> ≠ <i>unsuccessfully</i>
<i>survive</i> (sống sót)	<i>survival</i> (sự sống sót)		
<i>value</i> (đánh giá, định giá)	<i>value</i> (giá trị)	<i>valuable</i> (có giá trị) ≠ <i>unvaluable</i> <i>invaluable</i> (vô giá)	
<i>vary</i> (thay đổi)	<i>variety</i> (sự đa dạng)	<i>various</i> (nhiều, đa dạng) <i>variable</i> (hay thay đổi) <i>varied</i> (khác nhau)	<i>variably</i>
<i>widen</i> (mở rộng)	<i>width</i> (bề rộng)	<i>wide</i> (rộng rãi) <i>widespread</i> (rộng khắp)	<i>widely</i>
	<i>wisdom</i> (sự khôn ngoan)	<i>wise</i> (khôn ngoan) ≠ <i>unwise</i>	<i>wisely</i>

II. CHỌN TỪ - SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ (Word choice - Collocations)

Để làm tốt bài tập chọn từ hoặc sự kết hợp của từ ta cần chú ý những điểm sau:

- Đọc kỹ câu hỏi và chú ý dạng từ loại cần điền vào;
- Đọc kỹ 4 lựa chọn và ngữ nghĩa của chúng;
- Lựa chọn đáp án đúng dựa vào kiến thức từ vựng đã học;
- Nếu chưa quyết định dứt khoát đáp án đúng thì hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phương án sai.

Ví dụ minh họa 1:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

English is now an effective medium of international _____ .

A. communication B. talking C. speech D. saying

Hướng dẫn: Câu này hỏi sự sử dụng đúng từ trong ngữ cảnh.

A Đáp án đúng. English is now an effective medium of international communication. (Bây giờ tiếng Anh là phương tiện giao tiếp quốc tế hiệu quả), *communication* = sự giao tiếp.

B *talking* = sự nói; câu chuyện (không thể kết hợp với *international*),

C *speech* — lời nói; cách nói; bài diễn văn.

D *saying* — tục ngữ, châm ngôn.

Ví dụ minh họa 2:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

It was such a boring speech that I fell _____.

- A. asleep B. sleep C. sleepy D. sleepily

Hướng dẫn: Câu này hỏi về khả năng kết hợp từ của động từ *fall*: *fall asleep* = ngủ thiếp đi; dạng quá khứ của *fall* là *fell*.

Ngoài ra ta có: *feel sleepy* (cảm thấy buồn ngủ); quá khứ của *feel* là *felt*.

Đáp án là A.

It was such a boring speech that I fell asleep. (Bài diễn văn chán đến nỗi tôi ngủ thiếp đi.)

Ví dụ minh họa 3:

Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

He kindly offered to _____ me the way to the station.

- A. explain B. direct C. describe D. show

Hướng dẫn:

D Đáp án đúng: *show someone the way* = chỉ đường cho ai.

He kindly offered to show me the way to the station. (Ông ta từ tết chỉ đường cho tôi đến nhà ga.)

A Phương án sai: *explain* = giải thích.

B Phương án sai: *direct someone to somewhere* = chỉ đường cho ai.

Ví dụ: *Could you direct me to the airport?* (Ông làm ơn chỉ đường cho tôi đến sân bay.)

C Phương án sai: *describe* = mô tả.

SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ VỚI CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

➤ DO (= *accomplish, carry out* - hoàn thành, thực hiện một công việc)

do an assignment:	làm một nhiệm vụ được giao
do business (with):	kinh doanh
do one's best:	cố gắng hết sức
do a crossword:	choi ô chữ
do damage:	gây thiệt hại
do a course:	theo một khóa học
do history/ economics:	học lịch sử/ kinh tế học...
do an experiment:	làm thí nghiệm
do good:	bổ ích
do harm:	gây hại
do a job:	làm một công việc
do one's duty:	làm nghĩa vụ

do one's hair:	làm tóc
do one's homework:	làm bài tập về nhà
do research:	nghiên cứu
do someone a favour:	làm giúp ai điều gì
do the shopping:	mua sắm
do wonders/ miracles:	mang lại kết quả kì diệu
do without:	làm mà không có cái gì
do wrong:	làm sai

➤ **MAKE (= produce, manufacture - làm ra, chế tạo ra)**

make an appointment:	thu xếp một cuộc hẹn
make an attempt:	cố gắng, nỗ lực
make an announcement:	thông báo
make the bed:	dọn giường
make a cake:	làm bánh
make changes:	thay đổi
make a choice:	chọn lựa
make a comment:	nhận xét
make a complaint:	phàn nàn, than phiền
make a comparison:	so sánh
make a contribution:	đóng góp vào
make a decision:	quyết định
make a difference:	tạo sự khác biệt
make a distinction:	tạo sự khác biệt/ tương phản
make an effort:	nỗ lực
make an excuse:	viện cớ
make a law:	thông qua đạo luật
make a mistake:	mắc sai lầm
make money:	kiếm tiền
make progress:	tiến bộ
make a plan:	vạch kế hoạch
make a phone call:	gọi điện thoại
make preparation for:	chuẩn bị cho
make a profit:	thu lời nhuận
make a promise:	hứa hẹn
make a speech:	đọc bài diễn văn
make noise:	làm ồn

make a start:	khởi hành
make a suggestion:	đề nghị
make a will:	làm di chúc
make up one's mind:	quyết định
make use of:	sử dụng

➤ **TAKE**

take sb/sth for granted:	xem ai/ cái gì là tất nhiên
take place:	xảy ra
take part in:	tham gia vào
take effect:	có hiệu lực
take advantage of sth:	tận dụng cái gì
take notice of sth:	chú ý đến cái gì
take responsibility for sth:	chiệu trách nhiệm về cái gì
take interest in:	quan tâm đến
take offence:	thất vọng, phật ý
take power/ office:	nhậm chức
take a pity on sb:	thông cảm cho ai
take a view/ attitude:	có quan điểm/ thái độ
take sth as a compliment:	xem cái gì như lời khen tặng
take sth as an insult:	xem cái gì như lời sỉ nhục

➤ **HAVE**

have difficulty (in) doing sth:	gặp khó khăn khi làm cái gì
have a problem:	có vấn đề, gặp khó khăn
have a go/ a try:	thử

➤ **PAY**

pay attention to:	chú ý đến
pay a compliment:	khen
pay a visit to sb:	dến thăm ai
pay tribute to:	bày tỏ lòng kính trọng

SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ VỚI CÁC DANH TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

Danh từ	Cụm từ kết hợp
advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - follow/ take/ listen to/ act on sb 's advice (nghe theo lời khuyên của ai) - get/ obtain/ receive advice (nhận lời khuyên)

bill	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>pay/settle/pick up a bill</i> (trả một hóa đơn) - <i>be landed with/face a bill</i> (chịu một hóa đơn) - <i>an unpaid bill</i> (một hóa đơn chưa thanh toán)
career	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>at the height/ peak of one's career</i> (ở đỉnh cao sự nghiệp) - <i>embark on a career</i> (dấn thân vào một nghề) - <i>have a career in</i> (có sự nghiệp trong lĩnh vực) - <i>climb the career ladder</i> (thăng tiến nghề nghiệp) - <i>wreck/ruin one's career</i> (hủy hoại sự nghiệp của mình) - <i>a promising/ brilliant career</i> (sự nghiệp đầy hứa hẹn)
chance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>get/have a chance</i> (có cơ hội) - <i>give/offer/provide a chance</i> (tạo cơ hội) - <i>jump at/seize/grab a chance</i> (nắm lấy cơ hội) - <i>not stand a chance of doing sth</i> (không có khả năng làm gì) - <i>sheer/pure chance</i> (sự tình cờ hoàn toàn) - <i>good/fair/high/ strong chance</i> (khả năng cao) - <i>minimal/ slight/ little chance</i> (khả năng mong manh)
demand	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>meet/ satisfy/ cope with a demand</i> (đáp ứng/ thoả mãn nhu cầu) - <i>increase/ boost/ stimulate demand</i> (tăng nhu cầu) - <i>big/ huge/ great/ considerable/ enormous/ strong demand</i> (nhu cầu lớn/ cao)
difference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>make a difference</i> (tạo/ mang lại sự khác biệt) - <i>make all the difference</i> (thay đổi lớn) - <i>tell the difference</i> (phân biệt) - <i>feel/ know/ notice/ see/ perceive the difference</i> (cảm nhận, nhận thức sự khác biệt) - <i>considerable/enormous/major/profound/dramatic/sharp difference</i> (sự khác biệt đáng kể, rõ rệt) - <i>with a difference</i> (đặc biệt khác thường)
Difficulty	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>have/ experience/ encounter/ face/ get into/ run into difficulties</i> (gặp khó khăn) - <i>do sth with/ without difficulty</i> (làm gì một cách khó khăn/ dễ dàng) - <i>solve/ cope with/ deal with difficulties</i> (giải quyết khó khăn) - <i>overcome/surmount difficulties</i> (vượt qua khó khăn) - <i>great/ enormous/ considerable/ serious difficulty</i> (khó khăn lớn, nghiêm trọng)

fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>find/ locate/ identify/discover fault</i> (tìm lỗi) - <i>correct/ fix/ repair/ rectify a fault</i> (sửa chữa một lỗi) - <i>be all/ entirely one's own fault</i> (hoàn toàn do lỗi của ai) - <i>be hardly one's own fault</i> (hầu như không phải lỗi của ai) - <i>ái fault</i> (chịu trách nhiệm về một sai lầm)
favour	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>do sb a favour</i> (làm giúp ai điều gì) - <i>ask a favour</i> (hỏi xin một ân huệ) - <i>owe sb a favour</i> (mang ơn ai) - <i>return a favour</i> (đáp lại một ân huệ) - <i>find/ gain/ win favour</i> (có được sự ủng hộ) - <i>enjoy/ have/ stand in favour</i> (được sự ủng hộ) - <i>in favour of sth</i> (ủng hộ, tán thành cái gì)
habit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>be in/have the habit of</i> (có thói quen) - <i>form/ get into/ fall into/ make/ develop/ acquire a habit</i> (hình thành, tạo thành một thói quen) - <i>change a habit</i> (thay đổi một thói quen) - <i>break/ give up/ get out of a habit</i> (bỏ một thói quen) - <i>by habit</i> (do thói quen) - <i>out of habit</i> (vì thói quen)
measure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>adopt/ take/ implement/ impose/ introduce a measure</i> (thực hiện/ áp dụng một giải pháp) - <i>appropriate/ effective/ necessary/ practical measure</i> (giải pháp thích hợp/ hiệu quả/ cần thiết/ thực tế) - <i>short-term/ temporary measure</i> (giải pháp tạm thời)
occupation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>follow/ take up an occupation</i> (theo một nghề) - <i>choose an occupation</i> (chọn một nghề) - <i>give up one's occupation</i> (bỏ nghề)
opportunity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>have/find/get an opportunity</i> (có/ tìm được một cơ hội) - <i>have ample/ considerable/ plenty of opportunity</i> (có nhiều cơ hội) - <i>have limited/ little/ not much opportunity</i> (có ít cơ hội) - <i>a good/ great/ wonderful/ golden opportunity</i> (cơ hội tốt, cơ hội tuyệt vời, cơ hội vàng)
problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>encounter/ be faced with/ confront/ be confronted with a problem</i> (gặp phải một vấn đề) - <i>solve/ deal with/ clear up/ overcome a problem</i> (giải quyết/ vượt qua một vấn đề) - <i>big/great/ serious/ acute problem</i> (vấn đề lớn/ nghiêm trọng)

popularity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>gain/ grow/ enjoy popularity</i> (ngày càng được ưa thích) - <i>at the peak of sb' s/ sth 's popularity</i> (ở đỉnh cao của sự nổi tiếng) - <i>an increase/ a rise in popularity</i> (sự ưa chuộng gia tăng) - <i>a decline/ drop in popularity</i> (sự giảm/ ít nổi tiếng)
relationship	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>have/enjoy a close/good relationship</i> (có mối liên hệ gần gũi/ tốt) - <i>build (up)/ develop/ establish/ foster a relationship</i> (xây dựng/ thiết lập mối quan hệ) - <i>improve/strengthen a relationship</i> (cải thiện/ củng cố mối quan hệ)
standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>set a Standard</i> (đưa ra, lập ra một tiêu chuẩn) - <i>meet/ achieve/ conform to/ comply with standards</i> (đáp ứng/ đảm bảo tiêu chuẩn) - <i>raise/ improve standards</i> (nâng cao/ cải thiện chất lượng)
subject	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>bring up a subject</i> (đưa ra một đề tài) - <i>cover/ discuss/ talk about/ touch a subject</i> (đề cập/ thảo luận một đề tài) - <i>drop a subject</i> (thôi nói về một đề tài) - <i>get off a subject</i> (chán nói về một đề tài)
time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>spend time doing sth</i> (dành thời gian làm gì) - <i>take sb time to do sth</i> (mất thời gian làm gì) - <i>find/ make time to do sth</i> (có thời gian làm gì) - <i>kill/pass time</i> (giết thời gian) - <i>time + pass/go by/ elapse</i> (thời gian trôi qua)
title	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>hold a title</i> (giữ một danh hiệu) - <i>defend/ retain a title</i> (bảo vệ/ duy trì danh hiệu) - <i>lose a title</i> (mất danh hiệu) - <i>award/ bestow/ confer a title</i> (ban một danh hiệu) - <i>under a/ the title</i> (với tựa đề)
trouble	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>bring/cause/give sb double</i> (gây phiền toái) - <i>take the trouble to do sth</i> (nhọc công làm gì) - <i>have trouble with sth</i> (gặp rắc rối với cái gì) - <i>run into/get into trouble</i> (gặp rắc rối)

THÀNH NGỮ (Idioms)

➤ Một số thành ngữ thông dụng

Section 1: (dùng cho Exercise 1 – Phần thành ngữ)

- *take someone/something for granted*: cho là điều dễ dàng
- *take something into account/consideration*: tính đến cái gì, kể đến cái gì
- *take it easy*: không làm việc quá căng thẳng

- *keep an eye on someone/something*: để mắt đến
- *lose touch with someone*: mất liên lạc
- *pay attention to someone/something*: chú ý đến
- *catch sight of someone/something*: nhìn thấy (trong chốc lát)
- *at someone's disposal*: có sẵn cho ai sử dụng theo ý muốn
- *splitting headache*: nhức đầu như búa bô
- *beat about the bush*: nói vòng vo tam quốc
- *off the peg*: (quần áo) may sẵn
- *on the house*: không phải trả tiền
- *on the shelf*: (đồ vật) xếp xó, bỏ đi, không còn có ích nůa
- *hit the roof*: giận dữ
- *make someone's blood boil*: làm cho ai giận điên lên
- *bring down the house*: làm cho cả rạp hát vỗ tay nhiệt liệt
- *pay through the nose*: trả giá mac
- *by the skin of one's teeth*: sát sao
- *pull someone's leg*: trêu chọc ai

Section 2: (dùng cho Exercise 2 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *get butterflies in one's stomach*: cảm thấy bồn chồn
- *sell like hot cakes*: bán đắt như tôm tươi
- *shooting star*: sao băng
- *sow one's wild oats*: trải qua thời kì theo đuổi những thú vui bừa bãi
- *close shaves*: những lần thoát hiểm trong gang tấc
- *have a bee in one's bonnet about something*: hay chú trọng, đặt nặng vấn đề gì
- *blow one's own trumpet*: huênh hoang
- *fight tooth and nail*: chiến đấu ác liệt, đánh nhau ác liệt
- *head over heels*: lăn lông lốc, hoàn toàn
- *smell a rat*: nghi ngờ có âm mưu, nghi ngờ có sự dối trá
- *know something like the back of one's hand*: biết rõ điều gì
- *the last straw*: giọt nước tràn ly
- *fly off the handle*: mất bình tĩnh, thình lình nổi nóng

Section 3: (dùng cho Exercise 3 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *drop someone a line*: viết thư cho ai
- *have/get cold feet*: sợ hãi
- *beside the point*: không thích hợp
- *for the time being*: trong lúc này
- *off the record*: không được ghi, không chính thức
- *piece of cake*: việc dễ làm
- *chip off the old block*: người có tính cách giống bố

- *one's cup of tea*: người hoặc vật mình ưa thích
- *get something on one's mind*: đang bận tâm điều gì
- *down at heel*: tàn tạ xơ xác
- *make money hand over fist*: vớ được lợi lộc béo bở
- *in/ out of practice*: có/ không có thời gian luyện tập
- *burn the candle at both ends*: làm việc hết sức, không biết giữ sức
- *play with fire*: chơi với lửa
- *go to town (on something)*: làm cái gì rất hăng hái (nhất là bằng cách chi tiền)
- *have something on the tip of one's tongue*: sắp nhớ ra, sắp nói ra

Section 4: (dùng cho Exercise 4 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *put one's feet in it*: làm phiền ai
- *kill two birds with one stone*: một công đôi việc, nhất cử lưỡng tiện
- *hit the nail on the head*: nói chính xác
- *put two and two together*: cùi thế mà suy ra
- *keep one's fingers crossed for someone*: cầu mong điều tốt đẹp cho ai
- *it's no use/good crying over spilt milk*: kêu ca cũng bằng thừa
- *by a hair's breath*: trong đường tơ kẽ tóc
- *have a narrow/hairbreadth escape*: suýt nữa thì bị tóm, may mà thoát được hình phạt
- *a sight for sore eyes*: cảnh tượng dễ chịu
- *keep one's chin up*: giữ vững can đảm
- *come out of one's shell*: trở nên dạn dĩ, cởi mở
- *catch someone on the hop*: đến một cách bất ngờ
- *on the spot*: lập tức, tại chỗ
- *(like) water off a duck's back*: nước đổ đầu vịt (không có tác dụng đối với ai)
- *fight windmills*: đánh nhau với kẻ địch tưởng tượng
- *spitting image*: có mặt giống như khuôn đúc

Section 5: (dùng cho Exercise 5 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *money for old rope*: cách làm ra tiền một cách dễ dàng
 - *old wives' tale*: chuyện mê tín huyền hoặc
 - *long shot*: biện pháp xa vời, ít có cơ may thành công
 - *fly in the ointment*: mắc míu nhỏ
 - *crying shame*: sự xấu hổ
 - *wet blanket*: người làm cho tập thể cụt hứng (vì bản thân ủ rũ buồn rầu)
 - *in every nook and cranny*: trong mọi ngóc ngách
 - *general dogsbody*: người gánh công việc cho người khác
 - *a soft spot for someone/something*: thích ai/ cái gì
 - *a last/final fling*: trò đùa, ăn chơi cuối cùng
- **Một số thành ngữ thông dụng về so sánh**

Section 6: (dùng cho Exercise 6 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *as strong as a horse/an ox:* khỏe như voi
- *as thin as a rake:* gầy đét
- *as tough as old boots* (nhất là về thịt): rất dai, khó nhai
- *as white as a sheet:* trắng bêch, xanh như tàu lá (do sợ hãi, chói nắng)
- *as cool as a cucumber:* bình tĩnh, không hề nao núng
- *as deaf as a post:* điếc đặc
- *as different as chalk and/from cheese:* hoàn toàn khác nhau
- *fit as a fiddle:* khỏe như vâm, rất sung sức
- *like a lamb:* hiền lành
- *as good as gold:* có đạo đức rất tốt, rất có giáo dục

Section 7: (dùng cho Exercise 7 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *as light as air/a feather:* rất nhẹ
- *as old as the hills:* rất cũ, cõi xưa
- *as plain as the nose on one's face:* rõ như ban ngày
- *as flat as a pancake:* đét như cá mắm
- *with knobs on* (dùng để đáp lại một câu lăng mạ hoặc sự đồng ý dứt khoát): chẳng kém gì, đực đấm
- *as pleased as Punch:* rất hài lòng
- *as keen as mustard:* hết sức hăng hái hoặc nhiệt tình
- *as clear as a bell:* rành rọt, dễ nghe
- *as fresh as a daisy:* tươi như hoa
- *as hard as nails:* cứng rắn, tàn nhẫn
- *as large as life:* được thấy xuất hiện bằng xương bằng thịt (không thể nhầm lẫn)
- *as stubborn as a mule:* cứng đầu cứng cổ, ương bướng

Section 8: (dùng cho Exercise 8 - Phần thành ngữ)

- *as sober as a judge:* tinh táo không hề say rượu
- *(as) steady as a rock:* vững như bàn thạch
- *as thick as thieves:* rất ăn ý với nhau, rất thân
- *as red as a beetroot:* đỏ như gác
- *to sleep like a log:* ngủ say như chết
- *to hold on like grim death:* bám chặt không rời
- *to eat/work like a horse:* ăn/ làm khỏe
- *to smoke like a chimney:* hút thuốc lá cả ngày
- *to fit like a glove:* vừa khít
- *to spread like wildfire:* (tin đồn) lan rất nhanh
- *like a house on fire:* rất nhanh, mạnh mẽ
- *as peas in a pod:* giống nhau như hai giọt nước
- *like a clockwork:* đều đặn như một cái máy

➤ BÀI TẬP VỀ PHƯƠNG THỨC CÂU TẠO TÙ

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Opera singer Maria Callas was known for her _____, powerful voice.
A. intensity B. intensify C. intense D. intensely
2. Many readers will disagree with the selection and the assessments as any guide will inevitably be_____.
A. subject B. subjected C. subjective D. subjectivism
3. Politicians_____ blame the media if they don't win the election. They're so predictable.
A. variable B. variety C. various D. invariably
4. This is very_____! Can't you practise your violin somewhere else?
A. convenient B. conveniently C. inconvenient D. convenience
5. I would like to show you my latest_____, which I have called "Boats on a Lake".
A. creativity B. creator C. create D. creation
6. During the festival _____ were hanging from every tree.
A. decorator B. decorations C. decorative D. decorativeness
7. He offered to give me a _____ of how the machine worked.
A. demonstrator B. demonstration C. demonstrate D. demonstrative
8. Those countries are_____ on other countries for most of their food.
A. dependent B. independence C. dependable D. dependability
9. He acted in an extremely _____ manner, which made him very unpopular.
A. dictation B. dictatorial C. dictate D. dictatorship
10. He hoped the_____ agency would find him a job.
A. employee B. unemployed C. employer D. employment

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I'm afraid they weren't very _____ about your idea of going out this evening.
A. enthusiastically B. enthusiastic C. enthusiasm D. enthusiast
2. The student did not do well in the class; he had a problem with _____.
A. absenteeism B. absently C. absentee D. absent
3. The information in that article is _____ inaccurate.
A. historian B. historical C. history D. historically
4. Some people show _____ attitude toward the misery of others, totally untouched by their suffering.
A. passionate B. dispassionate C. passion D. passionately
5. The charity organization received a large gift from the _____.

- A. donation B. donor C. donate D. donated
6. The sick child must stay away from others because he has a _____ disease.
A. communicate B. communicable
C. communicator D. communication
7. The technician applying for the position was asked to supply a _____ list of her former places of employment.
A. chronological B. chronologically
C. chronologist D. chronology
8. I do not understand what these results _____.
A. significant B. signify C. significance D. significantly
9. They said my illness was _____. Don't they realize I'm in a lot of pain?
A. imaginary B. imagination C. imagine D. imaginative
10. She was a much less _____ student than her sister.
A. industrial B. industrious C. industrialist D. industrialized

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. It was very _____ of you to notice that.
A. observant B. observatory C. observation D. observe
2. There is a _____ of carrots because of the bad weather.
A. shortly B. shorten C. shortage D. short
3. The factory manager was so _____ that the employees left in disgust.
A. dictator B. dictatorial C. dictatorship D. dictate
4. Their failure to act is _____ of their lack of interest.
A. indicate B. indicator C. indication D. indicative
5. The company was _____ and made a tremendous amount of money.
A. progress B. progressive C. progression D. progressively
6. The _____ account given by the witness convinced the jury of the plaintiffs right to a settlement.
A. description B. describing C. descriptive D. describe
7. We drove at five miles an hour because the _____ was so poor.
A. visible B. visual C. view D. visibility
8. They handled the merchandise _____ for the manufacturer.
A. exclude B. exclusion C. exclusive D. exclusively
9. The job was done _____, and we were extremely displeased.
A. incompetence B. incompetency C. incompetent D. incompetently
10. "Since the goal seems _____, I believe we should begin at once," Tom argued.
A. achievements B. achieve C. achievable D. achieving

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She seemed always to speak _____, especially at our club meeting.
A. controversy B. controversial C. controversially D. controvert

2. When the automobile salesman described the car so _____, we became very uneasy about buying it.
A. ambiguity B. ambiguousness
C. ambiguous D. ambiguously

3. He is under 25, hard-working and _____.
A. energy B. energize C. energizing D. energetic

4. Phil was sentenced to three years' _____ for his part in the robbery.
A. prisoner B. imprison C. imprisonment D. prison

5. Julia is being kept in an isolation ward because she is highly _____.
A. infectious B. infection C. infected D. infecting

6. The Pikes live in a four-bedroomed bungalow in a very nice _____ area.
A. residing B. resident C. residence D. residential

7. Don't put David in charge of arranging the theatre trip; he's too _____.
A. organized B. disorganized C. unorganized D. organization

8. The rhinoceros, whose numbers have dropped alarmingly recently, has been declared a/an _____ species.
A. danger B. endanger C. endangered D. dangerous

9. David's compositions are full of mistakes but they are very _____.
A. imaginative B. imaginary C. imagination D. imaginable

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Our professor _____ said we should turn in the assignment on Friday.
A. specific B. specifically C. specifying D. specification
 - Students can gain _____ benefits from learning to work together.
A. considerate B. considering C. consideration D. considerable
 - The _____ dressed woman in the advertisement has a posed smile on her face.
A. stylish B. stylishly C. stylistic D. stylistically
 - Most people can _____ clearly between a real and a simulated smile.
A. differ B. different C. difference D. differentiate
 - Many citizens say they are _____ of the political policies of the candidates in a local election.
A. ignoring B. ignorant C. ignorantly D. ignorance
 - Although the professor gave _____ directions for the research paper, I was still confused.
A. define B. definite C. definitely D. definition

7. I am currently researching the reasons why birds _____ in winter.
A. migrate **B.** migrating **C.** migrant **D.** migration
8. During the Industrial Revolution, there was a complete _____ of society in urban areas.
A. transforming **B.** transformer **C.** transformation **D.** transformable
9. It's a very depressed area and almost 20% of young adults are _____.
A. employed **B.** unemployed
C. employment **D.** unemployment
10. I don't know why it caused so much _____.
A. embarrass **B.** embarrassed
C. embarrassing **D.** embarrassment

➤ **BÀI TẬP CHỌN TỪ - SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ**

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "How was your exam?" "A couple of questions were tricky, but on the _____ it was pretty easy."
A. spot **B.** general **C.** hand **D.** whole
2. If you practise regularly, you can learn this language skill in a short _____ of time.
A. period **B.** aspect **C.** arrangement **D.** activity
3. Students can _____ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.
A. concern **B.** install **C.** appear **D.** memorize
4. A few years ago, a fire _____ much of an overcrowded part of the city.
A. battled **B.** devastated **C.** mopped **D.** developed
5. I have learned a lot about the value of labour from my _____ at home.
A. credit **B.** energy **C.** chores **D.** pot plants
6. Although he tried to hide it, it was _____ that Peter didn't like his birthday present.
A. foolish **B.** basic **C.** obvious **D.** vigorous
7. Environmental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful _____ on their crops.
A. economy **B.** agriculture **C.** investments **D.** chemicals
8. If you _____ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.
A. concentrate **B.** develop **C.** organize **D.** complain
9. Good health and good methods of study are very necessary, or _____ for success in college.
A. available **B.** dependable **C.** essential **D.** efficient
10. In order to _____ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum

amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.

- A. manage B. catch C. establish D. achieve

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Parents have great hopes or great _____ when they send their children to school.
A. wishes B. obligations C. expectations D. plans
 2. No one ever takes any notices of what I say. They never pay _____ to what I say.
A. reply B. opinion C. attention D. support
 3. She has changed so much that I didn't _____ her right away.
A. admit B. recognize C. know D. believe
 4. After graduation, she found _____ with a local finance company.
A. career B. workplace C. service D. employment
 5. Education in Britain has improved since the government started a programme of educational _____.
A. reform B. resources C. experience D. system
 6. The group leader wanted that everyone worked together; she asked for everyone's _____.
A. combination B. responsibility C. competition D. cooperation
 7. With hard work and study, you can _____ the goals you set for yourself.
A. establish B. succeed C. achieve D. increase
 8. David never wastes his time; he tries to improve himself at every _____.
A. technique B. opportunity C. consideration D. operation
 9. All students in the school are free to _____ any youth club they wish.
A. perform B. become C. join D. participate
 10. His _____ has always been to become a movie director. He wants very much to achieve it.
A. direction B. ambition C. business D. study
- Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**
1. All the negative violence on television has had a negative _____ on children.
A. damage B. programme C. process D. effect
 2. My mother _____ her services for an environmental group. She helps raise money to protect wildlife.
A. identifies B. encourages C. shares D. volunteers
 3. Students can _____ a lot of information just by attending class and taking good notes of the lectures.
A. absorb B. provide C. transmit D. read
 4. Some people _____ that you can learn more by travelling to a place than by

reading about it. They say firmly that it is true.

- A. require B. encourage C. insist D. offer
5. Electric cars are better for the environment. _____, they can save money on gas.
A. In brief B. In conclusion
C. In contrast D. In addition
6. Overpopulation tends to create conditions which may result in _____ of food in developing countries.
A. supplies B. surpluses C. shortages D. failures
7. Because of the intensive farming, it's now hard to find certain wild birds in the region. Actually, they have become _____ birds.
A. unknown B. frightened
C. hungry D. rare
8. While some areas are suffering from _____, others are experiencing heavy rains and floods.
A. the weather B. the climate
C. drought D. problems
9. It will certainly enhance your _____ of reading when you are aware of very slight differences in the writer's expression.
A. condition B. recommendation
C. material D. enjoyment
10. A nurse must be _____ to the patients' needs; she must understand what they need, and be helpful and kind to them.
A. sensitive B. elegant
C. aware D. likeable

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The area has an _____ of wildlife; there are lots of animals, birds, fish, and insects living there.
A. abundance B. impression C. entertainment D. organization
2. You should read this novel. It has been _____ recommended by all the critics.
A. deeply B. fully C. highly D. truly
3. True learning does not _____ in gathering facts from the teachers; it requires active assimilation of knowledge.
A. achieve B. consist C. depend D. come
4. There should be a law against _____.
A. violent family B. fights for households
C. violent domestics D. domestic violence
5. The documentary was so _____ that many viewers cried.
A. moody B. touching C. touchy D. moved

6. _____ of patience, no one can beat Martha.
A. In front B. In spite C. In terms D. Regardless
7. The manager of the hotel always puts a _____ on the service quality.
A. pressure B. great stress C. stressed D. stressful
8. Human carelessness has been _____ damaging marine life.
A. warned against B. said to
C. prevented D. accused of
9. During the flood, many local people ran out of food and starved to _____.
A. dying B. die C. death D. dead
10. The saying that “Misfortunes never come _____ means that many problems can happen at the same time.
A. soon B. at once C. single D. singly

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. In fairy tales, bad witches often try to cast a spell on the _____.
A. innocent B. innovative C. innovation D. initiative
2. The assistant manager is going to present a complete report on the _____ situation of the company.
A. funded B. financial C. financing D. finance
3. The environmental impact of tourism can be shocking and upsetting, but many governments think it is _____.
A. negative B. comprehensive
C. bad D. acceptable
4. In the recent decades, greater cultural _____ has been encouraged by tourism.
A. contact B. relation C. touch D. details
5. The majority of people agree that modern drugs are the most effective way to cure a(n) _____.
A. treatment B. symptom C. illness D. sicken
6. The government should take _____ to reduce the current high unemployment rate.
A. solutions B. charge C. measures D. steps
7. Janet has to travel a lot in her new job. She is on the _____ all the time.
A. field B. mood C. way D. go
8. Many companies now advertise their new products by distributing free _____ in public places.
A. deals B. examples C. instances D. samples
9. While there has been a significant _____ in the sales figures, there has been no corresponding profit growth because of increased production costs.
A. addition B. form

- C. boost** **D. encouragement**

10. There can be no doubt that recent statements _____ the company's true financial position were misleading.

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several _____ including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.

A. turns B. factors C. remarks D. sides

2. The Business Advisory Council has been specially designed for those in _____ or advice about setting up new businesses.

A. absence B. duty C. want D. need

3. The city has _____ of young consumers who are sensitive to trends, and can, therefore, help industries predict the potential risks and success of products.

A. a high rate B. a high proportion
C. a high tendency D. a great level

4. Don't _____ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.

A. hurry B. jump C. rush D. run

5. I wonder if you could _____ me a small favour, Tom?

A. bring B. make C. give D. do

6. Scientists warn that many of the world's great cities are _____ flooding.

A. being B. at risk C. in danger of D. endangered

7. The boy's strange behavior aroused the _____ of the shop assistant.

A. thought B. consideration
C. expectations D. suspicions

8. The young should _____ themselves in social activities.

A. determine B. serve C. involve D. promote

9. I know from _____ that everything will be all right.

A. conscience B. experience C. wisdom D. care

10. Your second essay _____ improvement on the first one.

A. showed B. made C. cast D. presented

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The Women's World Cup is _____ in popularity.
A. competing B. establishing C. advancing D. growing

2. Our class team has won _____ four football matches.
A. successful B. unsuccessful C. success D. successive

3. We interviewed a number of candidates but none of them _____ us.
A. enlivened B. encouraged C. delighted D. impressed

4. _____ to British universities depends on examination results.
A. Admission B. Admittance C. Permission D. Permit
5. I prefer _____ jobs because I don't like keep on moving and changing all the time.
A. demanding B. challenging C. tough D. secure
6. The investment has had _____ on the development of our project.
A. results B. progress C. interruptions D. effects
7. In China, there are still a lot of _____ families sharing the same house.
A. extent B. extension C. extended D. extensive
8. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of _____ problems.
A. unsolving B. dissolved C. unsolved D. solving
9. He received a medal in _____ for his bravery.
A. turns B. response C. favour D. reward
10. He left the country _____ arrest if he returned.
A. in fear that B. with fear of
C. under threat of D. with threat of

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Governments have _____ laws to protect wildlife from commercial trade and overhunting.
A. practised B. acted C. enacted D. observed
2. He was chosen for the post because of his keenness and _____ of responsibility.
A. sense B. meaning C. from D. way
3. My brother rarely _____ responsibilities in the family, which makes my father really angry.
A. gets B. takes C. receives D. puts on
4. My mother always _____ that we leave home for school with breakfast.
A. ensures herself B. checks again
C. takes certain D. makes sure
5. The shop assistant is ready to _____ me a helping hand. She was very nice.
A. offer B. take C. get D. lend
6. Many people do not realize that they are causing disasters _____ themselves.
A. for B. to C. with D. about
7. Forests all over the world are being _____ into deserts.
A. switched B. turned C. sent D. transferred
8. Many countries have built _____ to carry water to desert areas.
A. rivers B. channels C. canals D. lakes
9. People living in that area are _____ the threat _____ lead poisoning.
A. in—on B. with-to C. under-of D. on-for
10. Maps are made with the help of _____ photography.

- A. air B. aeronautics C. aerial D. aeroplane

Exercise 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The dunes in the Simpson Desert have gently _____ western faces and _____ eastern faces.
A. sloping - steep B. downward - upward
C. shallow - deep D. low - high
2. The great stretches of sandy desert almost _____ the centre of Australia.
A. round B. circle C. hold D. keep
3. Spinifex grows on the slopes of the dunes, which are up to 20 metres _____.
A. in high B. of height C. high D. tall
4. Hummock grasses grow in _____ sand on the crest, the top of the slope.
A. loose B. lost C. lose D. loosened
5. I saw a very nice apartment, _____ I decided to rent it right away.
A. if B. because C. so D. but
6. A newborn baB, Can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, _____, can run with minutes of birth.
A. however B. so C. otherwise D. even though
7. Endangered animals should be well protected in their natural _____.
A. position B. condition C. habitat D. status
8. The government has _____ different measures to protect the wildlife.
A. made B. listed C. done D. taken
9. One of the conservation efforts is the development of wildlife _____.
A. conserves B. reserves C. reservoirs D. reverses
10. Commercial exploration has driven many species to the _____ of extinction.
A. verge B. bank C. limit D. edge

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The biggest company in our local area is _____ the verge of bankruptcy.
A. in B. on C. at D. to
2. The Congress has _____ laws to protect wildlife from commercial trade and overhunting.
A. implied B. carried C. acted D. passed
3. The book is so interesting that I can hardly _____ it _____.
A. get - down B. pick - up
C. put - down D. not put - down
4. Books are a wonderful _____ of knowledge.
A. source B. resource C. flow D. provision
5. She had just enough time to _____ the report before the meeting.

- A. turn round B. dip into C. get through D. go into
6. Penicillin, the first antibiotic that successfully killed bacteria and cured infections, was discovered _____.
- A. B. Comparison B. by accident C. by Choice D. by heart
7. If a water polo game is tied, there are two _____ periods of three minutes each.
- A. overdue B. overlong C. overwork D. overtime
8. The player was ejected after committing five personal _____.
- A. mistakes B. faults C. fouls D. errors
9. Sports competitions are held to _____ cooperation and solidarity among countries.
- A. grow B. upgrade C. spring up D. promote
10. We have made careful preparations to welcome the _____ from 40 countries.
- A. acquaintances B. attendants C. delegates D. hosts

Exercise 11: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The footballers often sing the national _____ at the beginning of a match.
- A. version B. lyrics C. anthem D. composition
2. The 22nd Southeast Asian Games were the first big sports event Vietnam _____.
- A. owned B. hosted C. presented D. led
3. _____ swimming involves the players who perform beautiful maneuvers to music underwater.
- A. Athletic B. Synchronized C. Aquatic D. Artistic
4. Our basketball team successfully_____ the championship.
- A. protected B. held C. assured D. defended
5. When we reached the top of the hill, it was getting _____.
- A. darkest B. the darker and the darker
C. darker and darker D. the darkest
6. Michael is obviously _____ anybody else here.
- A. more and more talented B. talented as
C. more talented than D. the most talented among
7. _____ you give the answer, _____.
- A. The quicker - the better you can get marks
B. The more quickly - the better marks you can get
C. More quickly - better marks you can get
D. The quickest - the best marks you can get
8. As you get _____, your memory gets _____.
- A. old - worse B. older - worse
C. oldest - worst D. older - bad
9. I am having _____ my colleagues.
- A. responsibilities more than B. more than responsibilities

Exercise 12: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. _____ the Tet holidays come, _____ the children feel.

 - A. The more near - the more exciting
 - B. The nearer - the more exciting
 - C. The nearer - the more excited
 - D. Nearer - more excited

2. They solved the problems _____ we had expected.

 - A. more effective than
 - B. most effectively as
 - C. more effectively than
 - D. as effective as

3. Although I have _____ my cousin, I felt _____.

 - A. fewer money – happier
 - B. more money - more happy
 - C. much money than - less happy
 - D. less money than - happier

4. The institute was _____ by a famous scientist.

 - A. put up
 - B. set out
 - C. erected
 - D. founded

5. Women in developing countries have spent time looking for _____ and encouragement from the society.

 - A. realization
 - B. modernization
 - C. development
 - D. recognition

6. The Red Cross is _____ to giving medical aid and other help to victims of disasters.

 - A. aimed
 - B. promoted
 - C. dedicated
 - D. designed

7. In 1864, twelve nations signed the first Geneva Convention, _____ down rules for the treatment and protection of the wounded.

 - A. laying
 - B. lying
 - C. lied
 - D. laid

8. THE RED CROSS ALL OVER THE WORLD HAS CARRIED OUT A LOT OF .

 - A. JOBS
 - B. WORKS
 - C. MISSIONS
 - D. RESPONSIBILITIES

9. THE TSUNAMI IN 2004 SOME COUNTRIES AND CAUSED A LOT OF DAMAGE.

 - A. REACHED
 - B. BEAT
 - C. DEFEATED
 - D. HIT

10. THE BELIEF THAT A WOMAN'S PLACE IS IN THE HOME IS .

 - A. SEATING-DEEP
 - B. DEEP-SEATING
 - C. SEATED-DEEP

D. DEEP-SEATED

Exercise 13: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

Exercise 14: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. You can't get a soda from that machine. There's a sign on it says that " _____ ".

A. Out of job. B. Out of hand.

C. Out of order. D. Out of mind.

2. I don't have much cash _____ , but I can get some from an automatic teller machine.

A. in hand B. on hand C. into hand D. under hand

3. "I like that painting you bought. Did it cost much?" "No, the artist sold it to me for _____."
A. close to nothing B. next to anything
C. next to nothing D. anything next
4. "What's Peter's cousin's name?" "It's on the tip of my _____ but I can't quite remember."
A. mouth B. lips C. tongue D. memory
5. What a confusing story! I can't make _____ of it.
A. sense B. meaning C. logic D. understanding
6. Women have struggled for the same social, economic, and political _____ for them as for men.
A. state B. status C. being D. welfare
7. Women now are more _____ in the public life than years ago.
A. involved B. ensured C. felt D. influenced
8. Every citizen can enjoy the same _____ to vote, to gain education and to work.
A. authority B. right C. way D. chance
9. The local council _____ campaigns against illiteracy.
A. requires B. advocates C. admits D. affects
10. Widespread _____ about women's intellectual ability restricted their job opportunities.
A. suspicion B. challenge C. doubt D. rumour

➤ BÀI TẬP THÀNH NGỮ (Idioms)

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I just took it _____ that he'd always be available.
A. into consideration B. easy
C. into account D. for granted
2. I accidentally _____ Mike when I was crossing a street downtown yesterday.
A. kept an eye on B. lost touch with
C. paid attention to D. caught sight of
3. I was glad when he said that his car was _____.
A. for my use B. for me use
C. at my use D. at my disposal
4. I really must go and lie down for a while; I've got a _____ headache.
A. cutting B. splitting C. ringing D. cracking
5. Stop _____ about the bush. John! Just tell me exactly what the problem is.
A. rushing B. hiding C. beating D. moving
6. I usually buy my clothes _____. It's cheaper than going to a dress-maker.

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I always get _____ in my stomach before visiting the dentist.

A. worms B. butterflies C. crabs D. hedgehogs

2. Those smart phones are selling like _____. If you want one, you'd better buy one now before they're all gone.

A. shooting stars B. fresh bread
C. hot cakes D. wild oats

3. I haven't had an accident yet but I've had a number of _____ shaves.

A. narrow B. near C. close D. tiny

4. My father refused to eat meat that had been fried. He had _____ in his bonnet about it causing cancer.

A. a bug B. a bee C. a bull D. an ant

5. I can't stand Mr. Brian. He's always blowing his own _____ telling everyone how good he is at everything.

A. balloon B. breath C. mind D. trumpet

6. The escaped prisoner fought _____ before he was finally overpowered.

A. head over heels B. tooth and nail
C. heart and soul D. foot and mouth

7. I didn't suspect anything at first, but when I noticed her going through the office drawers I began to smell _____ .

A. a rat B. a pig C. a thief D. a culprit

8. Peter was born and brought up in Hastings and knows it like the _____.

A. nose on his face B. tip of his tongue
C. back of his hand D. hair on his head

9. I was already fed up with the job, but when the boss walked into my office and told me he expected me to work overtime that was the _____. I quit.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| A. final curtain | B. last straw |
| C. end of the line | D. last waltz |

10. He has a quick temper and easily _____ off the handle.

- A. leaps B. goes C. runs D. flies

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before she left for Australia she promised her parents that she would drop them _____ at least once a month.

A. a note B. a word C. the news D. a line

2. I was all set to take the job in Tokyo, but at the last minute I _____ and decided to stay in Britain.

A. pulled my finger out B. got cold feet
C. held my horses D. called it a day

3. "What I've got to say to you now is strictly _____ and most certainly not for publication," said the government official to the reporter.

A. beside the point B. for the time being
C. by the way D. off the record

4. I've never enjoyed going to the ballet or the opera; they're not really my _____.
A. piece of cake B. chip off the old block
C. biscuit D. cup of tea

5. "What's wrong with Tom today? He's unusually quiet." "He's got something on his _____. I expect."

A. brain B. mind C. thoughts D. brow

6. He was wearing very shabby, dirty clothes and looked very _____.
A. easy-going B. down to earth
C. out of shape D. down at heel

7. Since he started his own business he has been making money hand over _____.
A. fist B. heel C. head D. palm

8. I can't see us beating them at tennis this year - we're so out of _____.
A. step B. practice C. fitness D. breath

9. I'm not surprised that Tom is ill. He's been _____ for a long time. It was bound to affect his health sooner or later.

A. having his cake and eating it B. burning the candle at both ends
C. playing with fire D. going to town

10. I just couldn't remember her name even though it was on the _____ of my tongue.

A. edge B. tip C. top D. front

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. That's exactly what I mean, Tom. You've

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Writing rhymes for birthday cards is really easy. It's money for old _____.
A. rags B. bread C. rope D. rubbish
 - Of course you won't become more intelligent if you eat a lot of fish — that's just an old _____ tale.
A. maids' B. ladies' C. mothers' D. wives'
 - I agree that this is a bit of a _____ shot, but we're desperate - we have to do something to try to save the company.
A. hot B. long C. wild D. high
 - I like my new job; the only fly in the _____ is the fact that I have to work every other weekend.
A. fat B. porridge C. soup D. ointment

5. It's a _____ shame that so little is done nowadays to help the homeless in our large cities.

- A. sweeping B. crying C. dying D. pitying

6. My aunt is a bit of a wet _____. She's always spoiling everyone's fun.

- A. rag B. sheep C. rat D. blanket

7. We looked in every _____ and cranny for the missing ring, but we couldn't find it anywhere.

- A. nook B. gap C. hole D. niche

8. Everyone bosses me about at work. I'm nothing but a_____.

- A. lame duck B. general dogsbody
C. blue-eye boy D. marked man

9. He had a soft _____ for his granddaughter and thoroughly spoilt her.

- A. heart B. way C. smile D. spot

10. He just wanted one _____ before setting down and getting married.

- A. final fling B. last leap
C. happy hop D. joyful jump

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. ASK DAVID TO GIVE YOU A HAND MOVING THE FURNITURE. HE'S AS STRONG AS_____.

- A. AN ELEPHANT B. A MOUNTAIN
C. A GORILLA D. A HORSE

2. YOU'RE NOT GETTING ENOUGH TO EAT, JANE! LOOK AT YOU! YOU'RE AS THIN AS A_____.

- A. STICK INSECT B. RAKE C. FINGER
D. WIRE

3. WE CAN'T EAT THIS MEAT - IT'S AS TOUGH AS_____!

- A. CANVAS B. OLD BOOTS C. RUBBER
D. STALED BREAD

4. YOU SHOULDN'T HAVE FRIGHTENED HER LIKE THAT. POOR THING! SHE WENT AS WHITE AS_____!

- A. a sheet B. snow C. milk D. whitewash

5. Nothing ever seems to bother Colin. No matter what happens, he always seems to remain as cool as_____.

- A. cool feet B. ice-cream C. a cucumber D. Eskimo

6. You'll have to shout, I'm *afraid*. My father's as deaf as_____.

- A. a leaf B. a post C. a politician D. a stone

7. It's hard to believe Brian and Stephen are brothers, isn't it? They're as different as_____.

- A. Mars from Jupiter B. milk from honey
 C. chalk from cheese D. margarine from butter
8. Ever since I've given up smoking I feel as fit as _____.
 A. a fighter B. a fiddle C. a frog D. an athlete
9. Our dog looks very ferocious, but don't worry, Liz. It's gentle like _____.
 A. a pony B. snowflakes
 C. a lamb D. washing-up liquid
10. "I hope the children didn't play you up, Doris?" "No, not at all, Mrs. Gardener.
 They've been as good as _____.
 A. religion B. gold C. God D. brass

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "The suitcase isn't too heavy, is it?" "No, it's as light as _____.
 A. dust B. lightning C. a feather D. a fish
2. "By the way, have you heard the one about the Welshman, the Irishman and the pig?" "Yes, we have. That joke's as old as _____.
 A. Solomon B. the hills C. a dinosaur D. Jupiter
3. Of course he loves you! It's as plain as _____.
 A. a pancake B. the knob on your door
 C. the nose on your face D. a bell
4. Kate was as pleased as _____ when she heard she had passed the exam.
 A. Punch B. a poppy C. a sunflower D. pound notes
5. I hope the computer course starts this term. We're all as keen as _____ to get going.
 A. coffee B. mustard C. a gigolo D. cornflakes
6. He was a natural singer with a voice that was as clear as _____.
 A. a waterfall B. a lake C. a bell D. a mirror
7. After a good night's sleep he woke up feeling as fresh as _____ and eager to start work again.
 A. fruit B. a daisy C. a kitten D. a maiden
8. He might look kind and sympathetic, but deep down he's as hard as _____.
 A. nails B. a mountain C. a gangster D. an iceberg
9. Pauline can't have emigrated to New Zealand because I saw her last night at Peter's party, as _____ as life.
 A. true B. real C. good D. large
10. It's no use arguing with him, he won't listen. He's as stubborn as _____.
 A. a mule B. a spoilt child C. a strawberry D. a trade union

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You're drunk!" "No, I'm not. I'm as sober as _____.
A. a priest B. Sunday C. a judge D. a Muslim
2. AM I NERVOUS? OF COURSE NOT. LOOK AT MY HAND - IT'S AS STEADY AS _____.
A. A BRIDGE B. A ROCK C. STEEL BARS D. A STEPLADDER
3. AS STUDENTS, DAVID, KEVIN AND WILLIAM WERE AS THICK AS _____.
A. THIEVES B. BOY SCOUTS C. A TEAM D. THISTLES
4. WHENEVER I FEELEMBARRASSED I ALWAYS GO AS RED AS _____.
A. a rose B. lipstick C. a raspberry D. a beetroot
5. She was so tired last night that she slept like _____ until 10 o'clock this morning.
A. a squirrel B. death C. a log D. a zombie
6. We'd better get some extra food in if your brother is coming to stay with us. He eats like _____.!
A. a lion B. a starving man
C. an eagle D. a horse
7. Normally she smoked 15-20 cigarettes a day, but whenever she was worried or nervous she smoked like _____.
A. a chimney B. a forest fire
C. a steam engine D. a salmon
8. "Is the dress too big?" "No, not at all. It fits like _____.
A. a mould B. a glove C. glue D. a pillowcase
9. News of the new pay agreement spread like _____ throughout the factory.
A. wildfire B. butter C. the plaque D. a flood
10. From the moment they first met they got on like _____.
A. two peas in a pod B. fish and chips
C. a house on fire D. clockwork
- Exercise 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**
1. _____ the weather forecast, Ha Long City should get more than fifteen inches of snow this rainy season.
A. At will of B. According to C. Depending on D. Agreeing with
2. _____ the simplified characters used on the Chinese mainland, traditional Chinese characters are used for writing in Taiwan and Hong Kong.
A. As far as B. On behalf of C. In regards to D. In contrast to
3. Storeowners removed outdoor signs and decorations in _____ of the windstorm.
A. damages B. relation C. recovering D. anticipation

4. For technical questions _____ the website, please email this address or call our help desk.
- A. after B. toward C. regarding D. throughout
5. Airline passengers may board the plane with only one carry-on bag _____ a purse or laptop.
- A. as far as B. on behalf of C. in addition to D. with regard to
6. Motorists were cautioned to _____ using the highway during rush hour.
- A. avoid B. decide C. quickly D. purchase
7. A bachelor's degree and at _____ five years of experience is required for this position.
- A. last B. times C. least D. stake
8. Mark's Warehouse Clearance Store is having a sale with savings up to 40 percent off on a clothing this weekend _____ celebration of its 25th anniversary.
- A. in B. at C. on D. of
9. Everybody was busy with the spring cleaning, except Stanley, who always refused to pull his _____.
- A. weight B. socks C. finger D. share
10. _____ the flood has receded, people can move back into their homes.
- A. Now that B. For C. So D. As much as

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The players' protests _____ no difference to the referee's decision at all.
- A. caused B. created C. made D. did
2. Poor management brought the company to _____ of collapse.
- A. the edge B. the foot C. the ring D. the brink
3. Computers are said to be _____ for the development of mankind.
- A. here today, gone tomorrow B. here and there
C. here to stay D. neither here nor there
4. _____, dolphins have no sense of smell.
- A. As known as far B. As far as is known
C. It is known as far D. Known as far it is
5. Recently, the company has received a _____ of complaints from the customers about poor products.
- A. pack B. barrage C. pool D. bank
6. When I got my case back, it had been damaged _____ repair.
- A. over B. further C. above D. beyond
7. Unsalted butter is best for this recipe, but _____ that, margarine will do.
- A. except B. failing C. for all of D. given
8. We were _____ looking for a manager when the impeccable candidate showed up.

A. Only a little B. In spite of the C. However little D. No matter what

5. He didn't ____ to help her, even though she was very ill.
A. open an eye B. lift a finger C. bend his arm D. shake a leg

6. Sara brought in a lot of business last month; she should ask for a pay rise while she is still on a _____.

- A. roll B. roam C. run D. rush

7. He bought the cottage _____ renovating it and then selling at a large profit.

A. with a view to B. with a target of
C. his goal being D. aiming to

8. UNEMPLOYMENT IS ON THE RISE AGAIN, WHICH MEANS THAT GOOD JOBS ARE _____.

A. FAR AND AWAY B. FAR FROM IT
C. FEW AND FAR BETWEEN D. AS FAR AS THEY GO

9. HE IS A NICE GUY, ALWAYS READY TO DO SOMEBODY A GOOD _____.

A. PRESENT B. PLAY C. TURN
D. PLEASURE

10. THROUGH THE INTERNET PEOPLE ARE DISCOVERING NEW WAYS TO SHARE RELEVANT INFORMATION WITH _____.

A. the other B. another C. other D. one another

Exercise 12: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

I. THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

1. Simple Present (Thì hiện tại đơn)

a) **Hình thức:** S+ V/ V-s/es

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một thói quen hoặc hành động thường xuyên ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *I usually have bread and eggs for breakfast.*

(Tôi thường ăn sáng với bánh mì và trứng.)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ: *always* (luôn luôn), *usually* (thường thường), *generally* (nói chung), *normally* (thông thường), *regularly* (thường xuyên), *frequently* (thường xuyên), *often* (thường), *repeatedly* (lặp đi lặp lại), *sometimes* (thỉnh thoảng), *occasionally* (đôi khi), *hardly ever* (hầu như không), *rarely* (hiếm khi), *seldom* (ít khi), *never* (không bao giờ) và các cụm từ như: *once a week* (một tuần một lần), *twice a year* (một năm hai lần), *three times a day* (một ngày ba lần)...

- Diễn tả một trạng thái ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *I know many things about him.* (Tôi biết nhiều điều về anh ấy.)

- Diễn tả một sự thật hiển nhiên, một điều đúng trong thực tế.

Ví dụ: *The earth goes round the sun.* (Trái đất quay quanh mặt trời.)

Asian people grow rice for food. (Người châu Á trồng lúa làm lương thực)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc sẽ xảy ra theo thời gian biểu.

Ví dụ: *Clerk: The next train leaves at 11 am.*

(Nhân viên: Chuyến tàu kế tiếp khởi hành lúc 11 giờ sáng.)

2. Present Continuous (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** S+ am/is/are + V-ing

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ngay tại thời điểm nói chuyện.

Ví dụ: *She is writing a letter now.* (Bây giờ cô ấy đang viết một bức thư.)

Cách dùng này thường dùng với các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như: *now* (bây giờ), *at the moment* (ngay lúc này), *at present* (bây giờ).

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ở hiện tại, nhưng không nhất thiết đang diễn ra tại thời điểm nói chuyện.

Ví dụ: *He is writing another novel this year.* (Năm nay ông ấy đang viết một cuốn tiểu thuyết nữa.) (Nhưng không nhất thiết ông ấy đang viết tiểu thuyết khi ta nói câu này.)

- Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ: *today* (hôm nay), *this week* (tuần này), *this year* (năm nay), *these days* (dạo này), *currently* (hiện nay), *at the*

moment (ngay lúc này), **at present** (bây giờ)...

- Bày tỏ sự phàn nàn khi được dùng với trạng từ **always, continually**.

Ví dụ: You are always making noise in class. (Em lúc nào cũng làm ồn trong lớp.)

- Diễn tả sự thay đổi.

Ví dụ: The weather is getting hotter and hotter. (Thời tiết ngày càng trở nên nóng hơn.)

3. Present Perfect (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

a) **Hình thức:** I/ We/ You/ They + have + past participle

He/ She/ it + has + past participle

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã diễn ra tại thời điểm không xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: Have you ever talked to a film star? - No, I haven't.

I've already bought a new bicycle.

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với trạng từ: **ever, never, already, yet**.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện vừa mới xảy ra, thường dùng với trạng từ **just**.

Ví dụ: My uncle has just called me from London.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra có kèm theo số lần thực hiện.

Ví dụ: I have watched that film 4 times.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện bắt đầu từ quá khứ và kéo dài đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: I have read this book for a week.

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các giới từ và trạng từ: **since, for, so far, up to now**.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã hoàn tất trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả của hành động đó vẫn còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: She has sold her motorbike. Now, she takes the bus to work.

4. Present Perfect Continuous (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** S + have/has + been + V-ing

b) **Cách dùng:** Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn có cách dùng tương tự như thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện bắt đầu từ quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: He has been waiting for you for two hours. Will you meet him now? (Anh ấy đã chờ anh trong suốt hai giờ. Bây giờ anh có muốn gặp anh ấy không?)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các giới từ và trạng từ: **since** (kể từ), **for** (trong vòng), **so far** (cho đến nay)...

- Diễn tả một sự kiện vừa mới kết thúc trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả của hành động đó vẫn còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: You're out of breath. Have you been running up here? (Anh thở hổn hển. Có phải anh vừa chạy đến đây không?)

Ta dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn khi muốn nhấn mạnh về sự diễn tiến của hành động hoặc sự việc.

5. Past Simple (Thì quá khứ đơn)

a) **Hình thức:** Subject + Verb-ed/ V₂

Động từ ở quá khứ có hai dạng:

- Động từ có quy tắc (regular verbs): ta thêm “ed” vào sau động từ.

Đối với các động từ kết thúc bằng một phụ âm, trước phụ âm đó là một nguyên âm thì ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm “ed” vào sau động từ.

Ví dụ: rub → rubbed

- Các động từ kết thúc bằng “y” mà ngay trước nó là một phụ âm thì ta đổi “y” thành “i” trước khi thêm “ed” vào.

Ví dụ: carry → carried

- Động từ bất quy tắc (irregular verbs): ta phải học thuộc cột thứ hai trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc.

Ví dụ: go → went; lose → lost; see → saw

b) **Cách dùng**

Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I enjoyed the TV show last night.

She did her homework yesterday.

Thì quá khứ đơn thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ như: **yesterday** (hôm qua), **last night** (tối qua), **last month** (tháng rồi), **three days ago** (cách đây ba ngày), **in 2008** (vào năm 2008)....

6. Past Continuous (Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** I/ He/ She/ It + was + V-ing

We/ You/ They + were + V-ing

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ngay tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I was watching a film at 8.00 last night.

Some of my friends were doing homework at that time.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra quanh một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ, nhưng không nhất thiết phải diễn ra ngay tại thời điểm đó.

Ví dụ: At that time, I was looking for a new job.

7. Past Perfect (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành)

a) **Hình thức:** S + had + past participle (PP)

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I had finished my homework by 8.00 last night. (Tôi đã hoàn thành bài tập ở nhà trước 8 giờ tối hôm qua.)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã xảy ra trước một hành động hoặc sự việc khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I had finished my homework before I went to bed.

(Tôi đã hoàn thành bài tập ở nhà trước khi đi ngủ.)

The little girl started crying. She had lost her doll.

(Đứa bé gái bật khóc. Nó đã đánh mất con búp bê.)

Thường được dùng với các trạng từ hoặc giới từ như: **by the time** (cho đến lúc), **by (= before)** (trước khi), **after** (sau khi), **when** (khi)...

8. Past Perfect Continuous (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** S + had + been + V-ing

b) **Cách dùng:** Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn có cách dùng tương tự như thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài đến một thời điểm trước một thời điểm khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had been living in New York for 10 years by September last year.*

(Đến tháng 9 năm ngoái tôi đã ở New York được 10 năm.)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài đến một thời điểm trước một sự việc khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had been living in New York for 10 years before I moved to London.*

(Tôi đã ở New York được 10 năm trước khi dọn đến London.)

Thường được dùng với các trạng từ hoặc giới từ như: **by the time** (cho đến lúc), **by (= before)** (trước khi), **after** (sau khi), **when** (khi)...

9. Simple Future (Thì tương lai đơn)

a) **Hình thức:** S + will + V (bare infinitive)

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Dự đoán một sự kiện sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai nhưng không có bằng chứng cụ thể.

Ví dụ: *I think Mary will stay here for a few days.*

(Tôi nghĩ Mary sẽ ở đây trong vài ngày.) (Nhưng tôi không chắc.)

- Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ: **tomorrow** (ngày mai), **next week** (tuần tới), **next month** (tháng tới), **in 2020** (vào năm 2020), **in 10 minutes** (10 phút nữa)....

- Diễn tả một quyết định tức thời.

Ví dụ: *Hey, today's Ann's birthday. - Really? I'll buy her something.* (À, hôm nay là sinh nhật của Ann. - Thật ư? Tôi sẽ mua món quà nào đó cho cô ấy.)

- Diễn tả một đề nghị giúp đỡ người khác (*an offer*).

Ví dụ: *The phone's ringing. I'll answer it for you.* (Chuông điện thoại reo kìa, Tôi sẽ trả lời giúp anh.)

- Diễn tả một lời hứa.

Ví dụ: *I promise I'll study better next semester.*

(Em hứa học kì sau sẽ học tập tốt hơn.)

10. Thì tương lai “going to”

a) **Hình thức:** S + am/is/are + going to + V (bare infinitive)

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Dự đoán một sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai dựa vào bằng chứng ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.

(Hãy nhìn những đám mây đen kia. Trời sắp mưa rồi.)

- Diễn tả một kế hoạch cho tương lai.

Ví dụ: I'm going to watch that film on TV tonight.

(Tối nay tôi sẽ xem bộ phim đó trên truyền hình.)

Chú ý: Thì tương lai “going to” thường không đi chung với động từ **come** hoặc **go**. Khi đó ta dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn: **be going/coming**.

Ví dụ: She is going to the cinema tonight. (Tôi nay cô ấy sẽ đi xem phim.)

They are coming back next month. (Họ sẽ trở lại vào tháng tới.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian tương lai như: **tomorrow** (ngày mai), **next week** (tuần tới), **next month** (tháng tới), **tonight** (tối nay), **soon** (chẳng bao lâu), **in 10 minutes** (10 phút nữa)...

11. Future Continuous (Thì tương lai tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** S + will + be + V-ing

b) **Cách dùng:**

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: At 8.00 tomorrow morning, I will be studying at the library.

(Vào lúc 8 giờ sáng mai tôi đang học ở thư viện.)

- Diễn tả một sự việc sẽ xảy ra theo mong đợi hoặc theo một xu hướng chung.

Ví dụ: In the next 20 years, all Vietnamese people will be using running water.

(Trong 20 năm nữa, tất cả người Việt Nam sẽ dùng nước máy.) (diễn tả sự mong đợi)

People will be using more and more modern devices.

(Người ta sẽ ngày càng sử dụng nhiều thiết bị hiện đại hơn.) (diễn tả xu hướng chung)

12. Future Perfect (Thì tương lai hoàn thành)

a) **Hình thức:** S + will + have + past participle (PP)

b) **Cách dùng:**

Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc sẽ hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: My father will have retired by the year 2020.

(Đến năm 2020 thì cha tôi đã nghỉ hưu rồi.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian như: **by** (trước lúc), **by this time** (cho đến khi), **next week/month/...** (tuần tới/ tháng tới/...), **by that time** (cho đến lúc đó), **by then** (cho đến lúc đó)...

13. Future Perfect Continuous (Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) **Hình thức:** S + will have been + V-ing

b) *Cách dùng:*

Điển tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài được một khoảng thời gian cho đến một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: I will have been working here for 5 years next month.

(Đến tháng tới tôi đã làm việc ở đây được 5 năm.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian như: *by, by this time, next week/month/ by that time, by then...*

➤ **BÀI TẬP VỀ THÌ CÙA ĐỘNG TỪ**

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She came into the room while they _____ television.
A. watched B. have watched C. are watching D. were watching
2. I _____ a headache since yesterday.
A. had B. was having C. have had D. would have
3. The teacher _____ into the room.
A. has still come B. has already come
C. has yet come D. has recently come
4. When he failed to meet us, we _____ without him.
A. left B. would leave C. was leaving D. has left
5. He _____ book the tickets, but he had no time to call at the cinema.
A. would B. will C. is going to D. was going to
6. Peter has been trying for an hour, but his car still _____ start.
A. won't B. wouldn't C. didn't D. hasn't
7. It's an hour since he _____, so he must be at the office now.
A. is leaving B. was leaving C. has left D. left
8. Most students _____ hard for the last few weeks.
A. were working B. worked C. are working D. have been working
9. He _____ up his mind yet.
A. didn't make B. hasn't made C. wasn't made D. wasn't making
10. The baby _____ non-stop for the last two hours.
A. cried B. was crying C. is crying D. has been crying

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The girl weeps whenever she _____ such a story.
A. hears B. has heard C. will hear D. heard
2. As soon as we _____ this new apartment, we _____ .

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. By the year 2050, many people currently employed _____ their jobs.
A. have lost B. will be losing C. will have lost D. are losing
 2. Susan _____ as a nurse for three years before her marriage.
A. has been working B. has worked
C. worked D. is working
 3. Since they had that big argument, he crosses the street whenever he ____ her.
A. saw B. sees C. will see D. is seeing
 4. This time tomorrow I ____ in the swimming pool.
A. am relaxing B. relax C. will be relaxing D. relaxed
 5. At the end of this month, we _____ here for ten years.
A. will have been living B. are living
C. live D. will be living
 6. The beach was so crowded the other day that we _____ difficulty finding empty spot.
A. have B. have had C. had D. have been having
 7. Robert _____ for the company for very long before he was promoted.
A. hasn't been working B. didn't work

10 In 1875 archeologists found the ruins of the Olympic Stadium in Greece.

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. By the time you finish cooking they _____ their homework.
A. will have done B. are doing C. have been doing D. have done
2. Can you tell me how _____?
A. they escaped B. they were escaped
C. did they escape D. have they escaped
3. "Does Tom own that car?" "No, I think his brother _____ it now."
A. has owned B. is owning C. owns D. can own
4. Fish _____ on the earth for ages.
A. exists B. are existing C. exist D. have existed
5. Firemen _____ to receive an increase in pay next month.
A. will be B. are C. have been D. would be
6. How many times _____ him since he went to Hanoi?
A. have you seen B. do you see C. did you see D. had you seen
7. He _____ as a cashier for twenty-five years. Then he _____ and went to live the country.
A. worked - retired B. had been working - retired
C. has worked - had retired D. had been working - had retired
8. He wrote to her a month ago, but I'm sure he _____ since then.
A. has not written B. didn't write
C. was not writing D. was not written
9. How many lessons _____ before you passed your tests?
A. did you have B. do you have
C. have you had D. were you having
10. How _____ to stop in time when that car shot out in front of you?
A. did you manage B. were you managing
C. do you manage D. had you managed

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I do not feel good. I _____ home from work tomorrow.
A. am staying B. will be staying
C. will have stayed D. stayed
2. I'm sorry for keeping you waiting. I _____ to make a telephone call to London.
A. have tried B. will try C. tried D. have been trying
3. I cannot begin sewing my dress until my mother _____ it out for me.
A. will cut B. cut C. has cut D. will be cutting
4. I _____ everywhere for the pen I _____ yesterday.
A. am searching – had lost B. searched - lost
C. have searched - lost D. searched - has lost

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When I last saw him, he _____ in London.
A. has lived B. is living C. was living D. has been living

2. We _____ Dorothy since last Saturday.
A. don't see B. haven't seen C. didn't see D. hadn't seen

3. The train _____ half an hour ago.
A. has been leaving B. left C. has left D. had left

4. Be careful! Jack _____ the door.
A. has just painted B. paint C. will have painted D. painting

5. My sister _____ for you since yesterday.
A. is looking B. was looking C. has been looking D. looked

6. I _____ Texas State University now.
A. am attending B. attend C. was attending D. attended

7. He has been selling motorbikes _____.
A. ten years ago B. since ten years C. for ten years ago D. for ten years

8. Christopher Columbus _____ America more than 500 years ago.
A. discovered B. has discovered C. had discovered D. had been discovering

9. He fell down when he _____ towards the church.
A. run B. runs C. was running D. had run
10. We _____ there when our father died.
A. still lived B. lived still
C. was still living D. were still living

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. They _____ table-tennis when their father comes back home.
A. will play B. will be playing C. play D. would play
2. B, Christmas, I _____ for Mr. Smith for six years.
A. shall have been working B. shall work
C. have been working D. shall be working
3. I _____ in the room right now.
A. am being B. was being C. have been being D. am
4. I _____ to New York three times this year.
A. have been B. was C. were D. had been
5. I'll come and see you before I _____ for the States.
A. leave B. will leave C. have left D. shall leave
6. The little girl asked what _____ to her friend.
A. has happened B. happened
C. had happened D. would have been happened
7. John _____ a book when I saw him.
A. is reading B. read C. was reading D. reading
8. He said he _____ return later.
A. will B. would C. can D. would be
9. Our teacher told us yesterday that he _____ England in 2004.
A. was visited B. visited C. has visited D. would be visiting
10. I have been waiting for you _____.
A. since early morning B. since 9 A.m.
C. for two hours D. All are correct
- Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. Oil _____ if you pour it on water.
A. floated B. floats C. will be floated D. float
2. The movie was very boring and many people began to leave early. By the end, most people _____.
A. had already left B. were already leaving
C. were already left D. had already been leaving
3. The dancing club _____ north of this district.

- A. lays B. lies C. locates D. lain
4. Almost everyone _____ for home by the time we arrived.
A. leave B. left C. leaves D. had left
5. By the age of 25, he _____ two famous novels.
A. wrote B. writes C. has written D. had written
6. While her husband was in the army, Mary _____ to him twice a week.
A. was writing B. wrote C. was written D. had written
7. I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower _____ a few days previously.
A. broke down B. has been broken
C. had broken down D. breaks down
8. Up to then I _____ such a fat man.
A. never saw B. had never seen C. never had seen D. will never see
9. I have never played badminton before. This is the first time I _____ to play.
A. try B. tried C. have tried D. am trying
10. Since _____ , I have heard nothing from him.
A. he had left B. he left C. he has left D. he was left

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. After I _____ lunch, I looked for my bag.
A. had B. had had C. has had D. have had
2. By the end of next year, George _____ English for ten years.
A. will have learned B. will learn
C. has learned D. would learn
3. The man got out of the car, _____ round to the back and opened the boot.
A. walking B. walked C. walks D. walk
4. For several years, his ambition _____ to become a pilot.
A. is B. has been C. was D. had been
5. Henry _____ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.
A. was going B. went C. has gone D. had gone
6. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he _____ dinner.
A. finish B. finishes C. will finish D. shall have finished
7. Before you asked, the letter _____.
A. was written B. had been written
C. had written D. has been written
8. I shall be glad when he _____.
A. had gone B. did go C. went D. has gone
9. Ask her to come and see me when she _____ her work.
A. finish B. has finished C. finished D. finishing

- 10.** After you finish your work, you _____ a break.
A. should take B. have taken
C. might have taken D. takes

II. ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI (Modal verbs)

Động từ tình thái hay còn được gọi là động từ khiêm khuyết là loại động từ đặc biệt, có chức năng làm rõ các tính chất của hành động diễn tả bởi động từ chính trong câu.

Các động từ tình thái: *will, would, can, could, may, might, shall should, must*.

Hình thức: modal verb + bare infinitive

Ví du: *I can swim very well.*

May I go out?

We shouldn't bring him to that party.

Ngoài ra, còn có các cụm động từ có tính chất và ý nghĩa gần giống với động từ tình thái như: ***have to, have got to, had better, ought to, would rather, would prefer***.

Ví du: *She has to be there before 3 pm today.*

Cách dùng của các động từ tình thái:

1. Diễn tả một khả năng hoặc kĩ năng (ability).

Động từ tình thái: **can**, **could** hoặc **be able to**.

Ví du: *He can speak five languages.*

She could swim when she was only six years old.

We will be able to swim very fast after this swimming course.

Chú ý: Không dùng *con* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc kỹ năng mà mình chưa có ở hiện tại nhưng sẽ có trong tương lai, thay vào đó ta dùng *will be able to*.

Ví dụ: He Will be able to speak Japanese very well after this course.

2. Diễn tả một khả năng xảy ra trong tương lai (future possibility).

Động từ tình thái: **may, might, can could** hoặc **be likely to**. **Could** và **might** diễn tả một sự việc ít chắc chắn hơn **may, can** và **be likely to**.

Ví du: *He may win the race.*

She might not visit us tomorrow.

I could leave tomorrow.

Dùng động từ *will* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện mà người nói cảm thấy chắc chắn xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví du: *She will leave tomorrow. She's ready now.*

Dùng *will* với các trạng từ *maybe*, *probably*, hoặc *perhaps* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện không chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra.

Ví du: *Maybe she will move next summer.*

They will probably ask you about this.

Chú ý: Không dùng *could not* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện có thể hoặc không thể xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: We *may not/might not/could not* find a good solution to the pollution.

3. Đưa ra một yêu cầu (request).

Dùng động từ **can**, **could**, **will** hoặc **would** để yêu cầu người khác làm một điều gì đó. **Could** và **would** được dùng trong những tình huống trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *Can you close the door?*

Will you send this package on your way home?

Could you please help me with this exercise?

Would you look at my report?

Chỉ được dùng **can** hoặc **will** để trả lời các yêu cầu này, hoặc có thể dùng các cụm từ: **OK**, **Sure**, **Certainly**, **Sorry**...

Ví dụ: *Can you close the door for me? - OK.*

Will you send this package on your way home? — Yes, I will.

Would you look at my report? - Sorry, but I don't have enough time.

Dùng **be required to** để diễn tả một yêu cầu được đưa ra đối với ai.

Ví dụ: *I was required to work overtime last week.*

They are required to go to class on time.

4. Đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ (offer).

Dùng **Can/Shall I?** hoặc **Can/Shall we?** để đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ người khác.

Ví dụ: *Can I help you?*

Shall we do it for you now?

Để trả lời lời đề nghị này, có thể dùng các cụm từ: **OK**, **Thanks**, **That would be very nice**, **Yes, please**...

Ví dụ: *Can I help you? - Yes, please.*

Shall we do it for you now? – That's OK. I can do it by myself.

Chú ý: Cũng có thể dùng **Would you like** để đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ.

Ví dụ: *Would you like me to help you?*

Would you like us to clean the house for you?

5. Đưa ra một lời xin phép (permission).

Dùng **Can/Could/May I/we?** để đưa ra một lời xin phép.

Could và **may** được dùng trong những tình huống trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *Can we go to the movies tonight, Mum?*

Could I use your computer for a moment?

May I leave early today?

Dùng **can**, **may** (không dùng **could**) hoặc các cụm từ **Sure**, **Go ahead**, **Certainly**, **I'm sorry but** để trả lời các lời xin phép này.

Ví dụ: *Can we go to the movies tonight, Mum? - Yes, you can.*

Could I use your computer for a moment?

- Yes, you can/may/could.

Chú ý: dùng **be allowed to/be permitted to** diễn tả những việc được phép hoặc không được phép làm.

Ví dụ: *We were not allowed to play games before finishing our homework.*
They are permitted to enter the house at any time.

6. **Diễn tả lời khuyên (advice), sự bắt buộc (obligation), sự cần thiết (necessity).**

- Dùng động từ **should** hoặc **ought to** để đưa ra một lời khuyên.

Ví dụ: *She should prepare for her trip carefully.*

We ought to look for a safer apartment.

- Dùng động từ **should** hoặc **ought to** để đưa ra một ý kiến tổng quát, (general opinion).

Ví dụ: *People should try their best to stop environmental problems.*

Students ought not to do too much homework.

- Dùng cụm động từ **be supposed to** để diễn tả một quy định hoặc mong đợi (expectation), việc gì đó sẽ được thực hiện hoặc sẽ diễn ra.

Ví dụ: *I'm supposed to attend the meeting.*

The meeting is supposed to start tomorrow. (It is scheduled.)

- Dùng động từ **had better** để đưa ra một lời cảnh báo (warning) về một sự việc hoặc hành động (có thể mang lại hậu quả).

Ví dụ: *You'd better study for the test if you don't want to fail.*

He'd better go to work on time.

Chú ý: thê phủ định của *had better* là *had better not*.

I'd better not call him. He may get angry with me.

- Dùng động từ **must**, **have to** hoặc **have got to** để diễn tả một sự bắt buộc (obligation).

Ví dụ: *You have to stop when the red light is on.*

Motorists must obey all traffic lights in the city.

They've go I to leave soon.

- Dùng cụm động từ **be to** để diễn tả một mệnh lệnh (command) cần phải thực hiện.

Ví dụ: *I am to be at the airport by 4 pm tomorrow. (My boss has told me to be there.)*

I was to call him last night. (That was what I was told to do.)

- Dùng các động từ **needn't/not... need to/not... have to** hoặc **haven't got to** để diễn tả một điều không bắt buộc hoặc không cần thiết.

Ví dụ: *They don't have to/haven't got to/needn't wear uniforms to that school.*

7. **Diễn tả sự ngăn cấm (prohibition).**

Dùng động từ **must not** để diễn tả một điều cấm đoán.

Ví dụ: *They mustn't bring pets into that restaurant.*

You mustn't blow your car horn in front of the hospital.

Chú ý: *must not* dùng để diễn tả một điều cấm đoán trong khi *not...have to* dùng diễn tả một điều không bắt buộc hoặc không cần thiết.

Ví dụ: *You mustn't bring your cell phone into the classroom.*

You don't have to bring your cell phone with you at any time.

8. Diễn tả một kết luận ở hiện tại (logical assumption).

Dùng động từ **must**, **may** (khẳng định) hoặc **can't**, **couldn't**, **might not** (phù định) để diễn tả một kết luận có cơ sở về một sự việc ở hiện tại (logical assumption).

Ví dụ: *You have worked all night these days. You must be very tired.*

Look at him. He looks very young. He can't be over forty years old.

Tom couldn't be at the library now. I just saw him five minutes ago.

9. Diễn tả một điều ưa thích (preference).

Dùng cụm động từ **would like**, **would prefer** hoặc **would rather** để diễn tả một điều ưa thích hoặc mong muốn.

Ví dụ: *I would prefer to watch Vietnam Idol.*

I would like to go camping today.

I would rather not at home.

Chú ý:

Thê khẳng định:

would like/would prefer + to-infinitive

would rather + bare infinitive

Thê phù định: *would prefer not + to-infinitive*

would rather not + bare infinitive

KHÔNG dùng *would like* ở thẻ phù định, dùng *not... want* để thay thế.

Ví dụ: *She would rather not stay here.*

They would prefer not to watch that movie.

They don't want to eat in this restaurant.

10. Diễn tả sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại.

Động từ tình thái có thẻ kết hợp với hiện tại phân từ (V-ing) để diễn tả các sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại.

Modal + be + V-ing

■ Diễn tả một kết luận ở hiện tại (present deduction)

Để diễn tả một kết luận về sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại, ta dùng:

must/may/could/might/couldn't/can't + be + V-ing

Ví dụ: *Tom is in the library now. He must be studying for his test tomorrow.*

Jane can't be working now. I just saw her at the coffee shop.

They couldn't be going on vacation. They are having an important project.

■ Diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ta dùng: *may/might/could + be + V-ing.*

Ví dụ: *Don't call me tonight. I could be going to the movies with my family.*

11. Diễn tả sự việc trong quá khứ.

Modal + have + past participle (PP)

■ Diễn tả một lời khuyên trong quá khứ.

should/ought to have + PP (đáng lẽ ra): diễn tả lời khuyên về một điều đáng lẽ nên làm trong quá khứ nhưng không được thực hiện.

shouldn't have/ought not to have + PP (lẽ ra không): diễn tả lời khuyên về một điều đáng lẽ KHÔNG nên làm trong quá khứ nhưng đã thực hiện.

Ví dụ: *She should have studied hard during the course last semester (but she didn't).*

They ought to have seen the doctor earlier (but they didn't).

I shouldn't have gone through the red light yesterday (but I did and got a ticket).

■ Diễn tả một kết luận trong quá khứ.

98% **must have + pp** *The grass is all wet. It must have rained very hard last night.*

50% **may have + pp** *John looks upset. Something bad may have happened to him.*

<50% **could have + pp** *Some students were late this morning. They could have got stuck in traffic.*
 might have + pp *Tom wasn't at the party. He might have forgotten about it.*

2% **couldn't have + pp** *You couldn't have talked to Tim yesterday.
He was not in town.*
 can't have + pp *Mary can't have been at home. She ate out with me.*

■ Diễn tả một điều không có thật trong quá khứ.

Ta dùng: *would/could/might have + pp*.

Nó tương đương với câu điều kiện loại III.

Ví dụ: *I would have accepted this job, but I didn't want to leave my country.*

I could have become an artist, but my parents made me study medicine.

➤ BÀI TẬP ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When she was young, she _____ swim across this river.
A. was able to B. had better C. would D. should
2. He _____ stop making personal calls at work, or he will lose his job.
A. would rather B. had better C. could D. will
3. _____ I clean the room before the guests arrive?
A. Shall B. Would C. Could D. Might
4. _____ I use your computer for a minute?
A. Might B. Could C. Must D. Would
5. My brother _____ attend a university in the USA, but he isn't sure yet.

- A. should B. will C. shall D. can
6. I think the principal of this school _____ give students more freedom in choosing the courses they want to study.
- A. would B. would like C. might D. ought to
7. You _____ ask for permission before going inside the room.
- A. have got to B. would C. will D. might
8. The exhibition is free for all students. We _____ pay any fee.
- A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. may not D. don't have to
9. Is that Tom over there? - No, it _____ be him. He's not tall at all.
- A. shouldn't B. might not C. can't D. won't
10. They are doing very hard on their project. It _____ be very important to them.
- A. should B. could C. must D. would

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We _____ protect the environment if we continue treating the earth this way.
- A. are permitted to B. are not allowed to
C. are unlikely to D. are required to
2. _____ me to deliver these flowers to the recipient for you? - That'd be nice.
- A. Will you want B. Would you like
C. Are you permitted D. Should
3. You look very tired this morning. You _____ up late last night.
- A. shouldn't have stayed B. mustn't stay
C. couldn't have stayed D. can't stay
4. Readers _____ bring food and drink to the library. Please leave them outside.
- A. aren't allowed to B. are permitted to
C. don't have to D. have to
5. You _____ disturb him. He has been very aggressive these days.
- A. had better not B. hadn't better
C. would rather not D. wouldn't rather
6. She _____ take a five-week business trip. That's what her boss told her yesterday.
- A. is able to B. would rather C. is to D. would like to
7. _____ skiing with us this weekend?
- A. Would you go B. Would you rather to go
C. Would you prefer go D. Would you like to go
8. Look at all the tools on the floor. He _____ somewhere around here. Let's find him.
- A. couldn't be working B. can't be working
C. couldn't be working D. must be working
9. Tom _____ finish the report as soon as possible. He needs it for the meeting tomorrow.
- A. is supposed to B. is allowed to

- 10.** _____ He very hard to get such a good result.
A. could be studying B. may be studying
C. must have studied D. should have studied

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She spoke in a low voice, but I _____ what she was saying.

A. can understand B. could understand

C. were able understand D. could have understood

2. The fire spread through the building very quickly, but everyone escape.

- A. could B. can be able C. was able to D. could be
3. We didn't go out last night. We _____ to the movies, but we decided to stay at home.
- A. could go B. can go C. could be going D. could have gone
4. You've been travelling all day. You _____ tired.
- A. must be B. have been C. are able to D. ought to be
5. I hear that your exams are next week. You _____ very hard right now.
- A. must to study B. must be studying C. had to study D. must have studied
6. The phone rang but I didn't hear it. I _____ asleep.
- A. must be B. had to be C. ought to be D. must have been
7. She passed me on the street without speaking. She _____ me.
- A. mustn't see B. can't see C. mustn't have seen D. can't have seen
8. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He _____ anybody.
- A. can beat B. is able to beat C. could beat D. was able to beat
9. It's really a good movie. You _____ and see it this evening.
- A. should have gone B. must have to go C. ought to go D. used to go
10. I'm not sure where to go on my vacation, but I _____ to Ha Long Bay.
- A. able to go B. may go C. can be going D. may not be going

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. This building _____ finished by the end of last year but there have been so many strikes that it isn't finished yet.
- A. will have been B. should have been C. was to have been D. may not have been
2. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It _____ have cost a fortune.
- A. can B. must C. could D. should
3. Tom painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He _____ a different colour.
- A. has to choose B. should have chosen C. must have chosen D. could have been choosing
4. I know you didn't see me yesterday because I was in Hanoi. You _____ me.
- A. may not have seen B. mustn't have seen C. shouldn't have seen D. can't have seen
5. They _____ married next week but now they have quarreled and the wedding has

been cancelled.

III. TÍNH TÙ, TRANG TÙ, CẤU TRÚC SO SÁNH

A. Tính từ

Tính từ thường có các vị trí:

- Trước danh từ nó mô tả:
We visited an old house.
 - Theo sau động từ nói như *be* (là, thì), *get* (trở nên), *become* (trở nên), *look* (trông có vẻ), *seem/appear* (dường như), *sound* (nghe có vẻ), *smell* (có mùi), *feel* (cảm thấy);

The flowers smelt beautiful and the garden looked wonderful.

Hầu hết các tính từ đều có thể dùng ở cả hai vị trí (*a noisy meeting/ the meeting is noisy*), nhưng một số tính từ chỉ đứng trước danh từ trong khi một số khác chỉ đứng sau động từ nối.

Tính từ chỉ đứng trước danh từ: chief, elder, eldest, former, indoor, inner, main, only, outdoor, outer, principal, sheer (= complete), upper, utter (= complete).

Ví du: *The chief problem is the shortage of oil.*

We walked for hours in utter darkness.

Tính từ chỉ đứng sau động từ nói: fine, well (= healthy), ill, ashamed, pleased, upset, và các tính từ có tiền tố a- như afraid, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake...

Ví du: The victim is still alive.

Tính từ có the đứng sau danh từ khi chúng được theo sau bởi các cụm giới từ như (*full*) of, (*tired*) of... hoặc có các đại từ bát định *{something, anything...}* đứng trước.

Ví dụ: *He found a box full of precious stones.*

Many people anxious for news are waiting at the gate.

There is nothing new.

Thứ tự của tính từ chỉ tính chất:

- (a) kích thước (size)
- (b) mô tả tổng quát (general description)
- (c) chỉ tuổi tác (age)
- (d) chỉ hình dáng (shape)
- (e) chỉ màu sắc (colour)
- (f) chất liệu (material)
- (g) chỉ nguồn gốc (origin)
- (h) chỉ mục đích (purpose)

Ví dụ: *two small black kittens*

two large white pocket handkerchiefs

a small square room

Khi có nhiều tính từ thuộc cùng một nhóm, chúng ta dùng dấu phẩy để tách ra và đặt tính từ ngắn hơn đứng trước.

a soft, comfortable chair

a bright, cheerful smile

Khi hai tính từ có độ dài tương đương thì tính từ nào đứng trước cũng được: *a peaceful, happy place* hoặc *a happy, peaceful place*

Tính từ tận cùng bằng -ing và -ed..

Tính từ có dạng hiện tại phân từ (V-ing): được dùng để chỉ tính chất của người, vật hoặc sự vật.

Tính từ có dạng quá khứ phân từ (V-ed/V₃): được dùng để chỉ cảm xúc, ấn tượng về một tính chất nào đó.

Ví dụ: *It's a boring film.* (Nó là một bộ phim nhảm chán.)

The visitors are bored. (Du khách nhảm chán.)

B. Trạng từ (còn gọi là phó từ)

Trạng từ được dùng để bô nghĩa cho động từ, tính từ, trạng từ khác hoặc cả mệnh đề. Ta có trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, cách thức, tần suất,...

Ta thường thêm -ly vào các tính từ để hình thành trạng từ.

Ví dụ: bad → badly; quick → quickly

Các quy tắc thay đổi chính tả khi thành lập trạng từ:

Ví dụ

tận cùng bằng -y

bô -y và thêm -ily

happily

tận cùng bằng -le

bô -e và thêm —y

miserably

tận cùng bằng -e giữ nguyên e và thêm —ly extremely

Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu

Trang từ trong tiếng Anh có nhiều vị trí khác nhau như đầu câu, giữa câu hoặc cuối câu.

- Đầu câu (*front position*) là vị trí của trạng từ và cụm trạng từ được dùng để bô nghĩa cả câu.

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

Luckily, the bicycle was still there when I got back.

Sure enough, there was an enormous queue at the booking office.

- Giữa câu (*mid position*): các trạng từ chỉ tần suất (*always, sometimes, never...*) và một vài trạng từ chỉ mức độ (*slightly, completely, quite...*) thường được đặt trước động từ chính.

They always deal with the mail first.

We hardly ever go out in the evening.

We quite agree with what you said.

- Cuối câu (*end position*): các trạng từ chỉ thời gian (*tomorrow, yesterday...*), thể cách (*slowly, quickly...*) và nơi chốn (*there, áí home...*) thường được đặt sau động từ chính hoặc ở cuối câu.

We planned to finish the project next month.

The sun still shown brightly in the quiet garden.

Các trang từ chỉ thẻ cách (tân cùng bằng -ly) thường có thể được đặt ở cả 3 vị trí trên.

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

We are naturally hope for good news.

We all hope for good news, naturally.

C. So sánh

1. Tính từ ngắn và tính từ dài.

Tính từ ngắn:

- có 1 âm tiết

Ví dụ: loud, short, long, fast, late, soft.

- có 2 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng: -y, -ow, -et, er, -le

Ví du: happy, narrow, quiet, clever, simple

Tính từ dài:

- có 1 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng **-ed**

Vídu: bored tired pleased

- có 2 âm tiết không kết thúc bằng -v, -ow, -ct, -er, -le

Vídu: useful afraid correct often

- có 3 âm tiết trở lên

Ví dụ: expensive intelligent

Chú ý: Các tính từ sau được xem vì là tính từ ngắn vì là tính từ dài: *free, keen*

safe, sure, true, wise, clever, common, gentle.

2. So sánh hơn (Comparatives)

Cấu trúc so sánh hơn được dùng để so sánh hai đối tượng, trong đó một đối tượng có các tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức... hơn đối tượng kia.

Với tính từ ngắn: **Adjective-ER + THAN**

Với tính từ dài: **MORE + Adjective + THAN**

Ví dụ: *Her house is bigger than mine.*

Some of my friends are more intelligent than me.

Chú ý:

A. Nhân đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm ‘-er’ nếu tính từ tận cùng là ‘một nguyên âm + một phụ âm’.

Ví dụ: *big → bigger; hot → hotter; thin → thinner*

B. Đôi với các tính từ vừa là tính từ ngắn vừa là tính từ dài:

Ví dụ: *She is cleverer than him. = She is more clever than him.*

Tom fell surer than I did. — Tom fell more sure than I did.

C. “than” trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn có thể được bỏ đi khi đối tượng so sánh thứ hai được hiểu ngầm (không đề cập).

Ví dụ: *What do you think about these two proposals? - I think this one is more practical (than the other one).*

D. Có thể sử dụng từ **even, much, far, a lot** trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn để làm tăng mức độ so sánh.

Ví dụ: *He is even better than his brother.*

This book is much more expensive.

E. Ngược lại, các từ **a bit, a little, slightly** được dùng trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn có tác dụng làm giảm mức độ so sánh.

Ví dụ: *He studies a bit harder than me.*

This hotel is slightly cheaper than that one.

3. So sánh nhất (Superlatives)

Cấu trúc so sánh nhất được dùng để so sánh ba đối tượng trên, trong đó một đối tượng có các tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức... hơn các đối tượng còn lại.

Với tính từ ngắn: **THE + Adjective-EST**

Với tính từ dài: **THE MOST + Adjective**

Ví dụ: *This film is the longest of the three.*

John is the most outgoing person in the class.

Chú ý:

A. Đôi với các tính từ vừa là tính từ ngắn vừa là tính từ dài:

Ví dụ: *This is the commonest mistake. = This is the most common mistake.*

B. Sau cấu trúc so sánh nhất, có thể dùng cụm giới từ bắt đầu bằng in hoặc of.

Ví dụ: *He is the smartest student in class.*

This book is the most interesting of the three (books).

4. Các trường hợp bất quy tắc.

NGUYÊN CẤP	SO SÁNH HƠN	SO SÁNH NHẤT
<i>good</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>the best</i>
<i>bad</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>the worst</i>
<i>much/many</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>the most</i>
<i>little</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>the least</i>
<i>far</i>	<i>farther/further</i>	<i>the farthest/furthest</i>
<i>old</i>	<i>older/elder</i>	<i>the oldest/eldest</i>

Chú ý:

A. “**farther**” có nghĩa là xa hơn, còn “**further**” có nghĩa là nhiều hơn, sâu hơn,...

Ví dụ: *His house is farther away than mine.*

For further information, please contact our office.

B. **Elder/eldest** luôn đứng trước danh từ và thường được dùng để so sánh về tuổi tác giữa các thành viên trong gia đình. **Older/oldest** được dùng cho mọi đối tượng.

Ví dụ: *He is my eldest brother.*

He is the oldest player in the team.

5. So sánh bằng với “as...as”:

Ta dùng “**as + tính từ/trạng từ + as**” để so sánh hai người hoặc hai vật có các **tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức**...bằng nhau, hoặc “**not as/so + tính từ/trang từ + as**” để so sánh không bằng nhau.

Ví dụ: *John said that no other car could go as fast as his car.*

The facilities of the older hospital are as good as those of the new hospital.

Ann cannot cook as/so well as her sister does.

Ta có thể dùng **twice** (gấp đôi) hoặc **half** (bằng nửa) trước “**as... as**”.

Ví dụ: *Your room is twice as large as mine.*

He works half as hard as he used to.

Tuy nhiên, khi dùng **three times, four times,...** thì chúng ta dùng với tính từ hoặc trạng từ so sánh hơn.

Ví dụ: *The trip was three times longer than we expected.*

She can type four times faster than you.

6. So sánh kép (double comparison)

Ta dùng “**cấp so sánh hơn + and + cấp so sánh hơn**” (càng ngày càng).

Ví dụ: *Their business is getting better and better.*

It rained more and more heavily as the game was going on.

Ta còn có thể dùng “**the + cấp so sánh hơn..., the + cấp so sánh hơn...**” (càng...thì càng...). Với danh từ, ta dùng: **the more + danh từ**.

Ví dụ: *The earlier she leaves, the sooner she will arrive.*

The more you study, ***the more*** knowledge you gain.

➤ BÀI TẬP TÍNH TỪ, TRẠNG TỪ, CẤU TRÚC SO SÁNH

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The examination was _____. All the students passed.

A. surprising easy B. surprisingly easy
C. surprising easily D. surprisingly easily

2. Tom sounded _____ when I spoke to him on the phone.

A. angry B. angrily C. to be angry D. to be angrily

3. Jane is _____ because her job is _____.
A. bored - bored B. boring - boring
C. boring - bored D. bored - boring

4. Her illness was _____ than we had thought first.

A. much serious B. more serious C. serious D. most serious

5. The garden looks _____ since you tidied it up.

A. better B. well C. more good D. more well

6. Petrol is twice _____. It was a few years ago.

A. more expensive than B. much expensive as
C. as expensive as D. as expensive than

7. That house over there is _____ building in the city.

A. the eldest B. the oldest C. the elder D. the older

8. Thank you for the money. It was _____ of you.

A. more generous B. the more generous
C. most generous D. the most generous

9. We were lucky to have one of _____ rooms in the hotel.

A. a nice B. a nicer C. the nicer D. the nicest

10. Your English is improving. It is getting _____.
A. well and better B. good and well
C. better and better D. good and better

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. In the kitchen there is a _____ table.

A. beautiful large round wooden B. large beautiful wooden round

C. wooden round large beautiful D. round large wooden beautiful

2. Ann works _____ than most of her friends.

A. much harder B. a lot more hardly

C. more hardly D. many harder

3. The shop wasn't crowded this morning
it usually is.

A. as - than B. so - as C. more - than D. so - than

4. It's film that I have ever watched.

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Don't walk so _____ ! Can't you walk _____ ?
A. fast - slower B. fast - more slowly
C. fastly - slower D. fastly - more slowly

2. It was _____ that she passed the exam. Everyone had thought that she failed.
A. surprising B. surprised C. surprisingly D. surprisedly

3. There is a _____ bag in the corner of the room.
A. small black plastic B. black small plastic
C. plastic small black D. plastic black small

4. The driver of the car was _____ in the accident.
A. serious injured B. seriously injured
C. serious injuredly D. seriously injuredly

5. Could you speak _____ so I can understand what you mean?
A. a bit slowly B. a little slower
C. a bit slowlier D. a little more slowly

6. Please cut my hair _____ the style in this magazine.
A. the same long as C. the same long like
B. the same length like D. the same length as

7. The chef tasted the meat _____ before presenting it to the President.
A. cautious B. cautiously
C. more cautious D. much cautiously

8. The climate in Sa Pa is much colder _____ of Hanoi.
A. than it B. than that C. than there D. than this
9. Please give me _____ of the two pieces of the cake.
A. smaller B. the smaller C. smallest D. the smallest
10. This is the _____ dog I've ever seen.
A. dirtier-looking B. dirtiest-looking
C. more dirty-looking D. most dirty-looking

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. So far as Mrs. Brown was concerned she did not seem to be in the least _____.
A. embarrassed B. embarrassment C. embarrassing D. embarrass
2. He did not come and she looked rather _____.
A. worrying B. worry C. worrier D. worried
3. The rise of crime is _____.
A. depressing B. depressed C. depressive D. depression
4. The pictures made a ___ impression on him.
A. depressed B. depressing C. depression D. depressive
5. She is not ____ with her position.
A. satisfying B. satisfaction C. satisfactory D. satisfied
6. I don't like horror films. I think they are _____ and _____.
A. frightening - boring B. frightening - bored
C. frightened - boring D. frightened - bored
7. Don't look so _____. Of course, it was a _____ decision but we had no other choices.
A. surprised - surprised B. surprising - surprising
C. surprised - surprising D. surprising - surprised
8. It was a ___ journey. I wish I hadn't it. I feel completely _____ later.
A. tiring - exhausting B. tired - exhausted
C. tired - exhausting D. tiring - exhausted
9. The football match was _____. Our team lost the game and we left the stadium quite _____.
A. disappointing - disappointing B. disappointing - disappointed
C. disappointed - disappointed D. disappointed - disappointing
10. He can't remember his pupils' names. It seemed funny at first, but now it is rather
A. embarrassed B. embarrassment C. embarrassing D. embarrass

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That is _____ story I have ever heard.
A. more incredible B. as incredible
C. the most incredible D. most incredible

2. It is not always _____ students who do well in tests.
A. brighter B. most bright C. more bright D. the brightest
3. Terylene shirts are _____ to wear, but cotton shirts are much _____.
A. harder - most comfortable B. hardest - more comfortable
C. harder - more comfortable D. more hard - more comfortable
4. Which is _____, Lake Michigan or Lake Superior?
A. deeper B. the deepest C. deepest D. deep
5. She is far _____ than she used to be.
A. self-confident B. more self-confident
C. self-confidenter D. most self-confident
6. _____ man among the guests is a basketball player.
A. The tallest B. Taller C. The taller D. Tallest
7. I like both of them, but I think Kate is _____ to talk to.
A. more easy B. as easy C. as easy as D. easier
8. Most people are _____ than their parents used to be.
A. better off B. the best off C. as well off D. best off
9. She has a lot to be thankful for; but _____ thing of all is that she does not realize it.
A. the sadder B. sadder C. the saddest D. saddest
10. I want to buy a car _____ one you have.
A. more powerful B. the more powerful C. as most powerful D. the most powerful

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Actually, today I feel _____ than I did yesterday.
A. bad B. worst C. worse D. the worst
2. This is _____ interesting exhibition I've ever visited.
A. more B. less C. most D. the most
3. At college the work is harder than the work we did at school, but it is much_____ interesting.
A. more B. many C. most D. a few
4. We didn't think you were _____ in ancient history.
A. interested B. not interesting C. interesting D. less interesting
5. My _____ brother studies at college.
A. old B. older C. elder D. the eldest
6. This is _____ film I have ever seen.
A. good B. worse C. the best D. better
7. I'll feel _____ when my exams are over.
A. happy B. more happily C. happily D. happiest
8. I felt _____ because I had fever.

A. badly B. worse bad C. bad D. the worst

9. The more you work, the _____ you'll pass your exams.

A. good B. best C. better D. the best

10. Prices go up and up. Everything gets _____ expensive.

A. most B. more C. least D. less

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That was great! It was _____ meal you have ever cooked.

A. good B. best C. better D. the best

2. This exhibition is _____ interesting than the previous one.

A. little B. least C. less D. the least

3. The last film I saw was _____ frightening than this one.

A. little B. least C. less D. the least

4. Today is _____ cold than yesterday. So I'm wearing my shorts.

A. little B. least C. less D. the least

5. Everyone in your team played _____ except the captain.

A. bad B. worst C. badly D. the worst

6. You know much, but you know _____ than your teacher.

A. little B. least C. less D. much

7. Small shops are not as _____ as supermarkets.

A. more convenient B. most convenient

C. convenient D. the most convenient

8. The child studied hard, and as a result he passed the exams _____ of all.

A. good B. best C. better D. the best

9. This is _____ film I've ever seen.

A. more interesting B. most interesting

C. the most interesting D. not interesting

10. We were disappointed as the film was _____ than we expected.

A. entertaining B. most entertaining

C. less entertaining D. entertaining

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Though the dish smelt _____, he refused to eat saying he was not hungry.

A. good B. well C. bad D. worse

2. She looked at me _____ and told me to leave the room.

A. angry B. angrily C. angrier D. as angry

3. She spends a lot of money on her clothes but they always look _____.

A. cheap B. cheaply C. cheaper D. cheapest

4. "Have you seen him?" "Yes, he looks _____ but he says he feels

- A. good - bad B. well - badly C. well - bad D. good - badly
5. His cough sounds _____. He should see a doctor.
 A. terrible B. terribly C. as terrible D. less terrible
6. Be _____! Stop talking, behave yourselves.
 A. quiet B. quietly C. quieter D. quietest
7. The situation looks _____. We must do something.
 A. bad B. badly C. more badly D. as bad
8. He seemed to me a bit _____ today.
 A. strange B. strangely C. more strangely D. as strange
9. The fish tastes _____. I won't eat it.
 A. awful B. awfully C. more awfully D. as awful
10. He looked _____ in his new suit.
 A. good B. well C. gooder D. much good

IV. THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

a) Hình thức

- ACTIVE : Subject + Verb + Object
- PASSIVE : Subject + be + Past participle + By-phrase

Những điều cần làm khi đổi câu chủ động sang câu bị động:

- Lấy tên ngữ (object) của câu chủ động làm chủ ngữ (subject) câu bị động.
- Không thay đổi thì của động từ, và động từ “be” phải có hình thức thích hợp tương ứng với chủ ngữ mới.
- Động từ chính luôn được dùng ở dạng quá khứ phân từ (past participle).
- Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động có thể dùng sau giới từ “by” với ý nghĩa là tác nhân gây ra hành động (*agent of the passive*).

Ví dụ: *My father bought the computer last week.*

→ *The computer was bought by my father last week.*

Chú ý: Nhiều câu bị động không cần thiết phải có tác nhân với giới từ “by” khi tác nhân đó không được xác định rõ hoặc không quan trọng.

Ví dụ: *People have built many new' buildings in recent years.*

→ *Many new buildings have been built in recent years.*

b) Bảng đổi chiều câu chủ động và bị động qua các thì khác nhau:

Tenses	Active	Passive
Simple Present	S + V / V+s/es <i>Sue writes the book.</i>	S + a m/is/a re + PP <i>The book is written by Sue.</i>
Simple Past	S +V-ed/V2 <i>Sue wrote the book.</i>	S + was/were + PP <i>The book was written by Sue.</i>

Present Continuous	S+ am/is/are + V-ing <i>Sue is writing the book.</i>	S+ am/is/are +being + PP <i>The book is being written by Sue.</i>
Past Continuous	S+ was/were + V-ing <i>Sue was writing the book.</i>	S+ was/were + being + PP <i>The book was being written by Sue.</i>
Present Perfect	S+ have/has + PP <i>Sue has written the articles.</i>	S+ have/has + been + PP <i>The articles have been written by Sue.</i>
Past Perfect	S + had + PP <i>Sue had written the articles.</i>	S+ had + been + FP <i>The articles had been written by Sue.</i>
Future Perfect	S + will have + PP <i>Sue will write the book.</i>	S + will have been + PP <i>The book will be written by Sue.</i>
Have to/ Be going to	S+ have to/ be going to + bare infinitive <i>Sue is going to write the book.</i>	S + have to/ be going to + be + PP <i>The book is going to be written by Sue.</i>

Ghi chú: PP = past participle

Ngoài các cấu trúc bị động cơ bản, thể bị động còn được thể hiện dưới các dạng sau:

1) VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ NEED

I need to borrow some money.

need + to-infinitive → active

John needs to be told the truth.

need + to be + PP → passive

The house needs painting.

the gerund carries a passive meaning

The house needs to be painted.

(danh động từ mang nghĩa bị động)

2) VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU LÀ *to-infinitive* HOẶC *gerund*

Active	Passive
Verb + to-infinitive	→ Verb + to be + PP
Verb + gerund	→ Verb + being + PP
Verb + to have + PP	→ Verb + to have been + PP
Verb + having + PP	→ Verb + having been + PP

Ví dụ: *I hope to be invited to the wedding.*

They wanted the story to be told again.

She avoided being disturbed.

I want these dishes to have been washed when

I come back. She forgot having been given a big sum of money that day.

3) VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ CHỈ GIÁC QUAN (*verbs of perception*)

Các động từ chỉ giác quan: *see, watch, hear, smell, taste...*

Active	Passive
Verb + O + bare infinitive	→ be + PP + to-infinitive
Verb + O + gerund	→ be + PP + gerund

Ví dụ: They saw the man **run** away. → The man was seen **to run** away.
They saw the man **running** away. → The man was seen **running** away.

4) Với động từ MAKE và LET.

Active	Passive
make + O + bare infinitive	→ be + made + to-infinitive
let + O + bare infinitive	→ be + allowed + to-infinitive

Ví dụ: The manager **made all the employees work** at the weekend.

All the employees **were made to work** at the weekend.

(Tất cả nhân viên bị buộc phải làm việc vào cuối tuần.)

She **lets her son play computer games** on Sunday afternoon.

→ Her son **is allowed to play computer games** on Sunday afternoon.

(Con trai bà ấy được phép chơi trò chơi vi tính vào chiều chủ nhật.)

5) Với thê nhờ bão (Causative form)

Ta dùng động từ **have** hoặc **get**.

Active	Passive
have somebody do something	→ have something done by sb
get somebody to do something	→ get something done by sb

Ví dụ: I had a technician **repair** my computer.

→ I had my computer **repaired** by a technician.

(Tôi nhờ một kỹ thuật viên sửa máy tính cho tôi.)

I got a technician **to repair** my computer.

→ I got my computer **repaired** by a technician.

6) Với động từ tường thuật hoặc bày tỏ ý kiến (verbs of reporting or opinion)

Động từ tường thuật: say, claim, report, show...

Động từ chỉ ý kiến: think, believe, consider, expect, feel, hope, know, prove, understand...

Dạng 1:

Active: People/They + V₁ + (that) + S + V₂

Passive: It + be + PP (V₁) + (that) + S + V₂

Ví dụ: People **believe that the weather is changing dramatically**.

→ It is believed that the weather is changing dramatically.

(Người ta tin rằng thời tiết sẽ thay đổi đáng kể.)

They **said that he served in the army**.

→ It was said that he served in the army.

(Người ta nói rằng ông ấy đã phục vụ trong quân đội.)

Dạng 2:

Active: People/They + V₁+ (that) + S + V₂

Passive:

S + be + PP(V₁) +	to-V₂	(chủ động)
	to be + PP (V₂)	(bị động)
	to be + V2-ing	(tiếp diễn)
	to have + PP (V₂)	(hoàn thành)
	to have been + PP (V₂)	(hoàn thành bị động)

Ví dụ: *They say that he is 100 years old.*

→ *He is said to be 100 years old.*

(Người ta nói rằng ông ấy 100 tuổi.)

People believe that rice is grown well in the Mekong Delta.

→ *Rice is believed to be grown well in the Mekong Delta.*

(Người ta tin rằng lúa mọc rất tốt ở đồng bằng sông Cửu Long.)

They thought that he was working in the office.

→ *He was thought to be working in the office.*

(Họ tin rằng ông ấy đang làm việc trong văn phòng.)

People say that he served in the army.

→ *He is said to have served in the army.*

(Người ta nói rằng trước đây ông ấy phục vụ trong quân đội.)

People say that the project has been completed.

→ *The project is said to have been completed.*

(Người ta nói rằng dự án đã được hoàn thành.)

➤ BÀI TẬP THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That book _____ by a famous author.
 A. wrote B. was written C. is writing D. has written
2. The children's song _____ by one of the parents.
 A. is taping B. are being taped C. are taping D. is being taped
3. The pollution in the city _____ our breathing.
 A. was affecting B. will be affected
 C. was being affected D. will be affecting
4. A special committee _____ the dispute.
 A. is going to settle B. is going to be settled
 C. going to settling D. will be settled
5. Mark _____ a lot by his friends, isn't he?
 A. is influenced B. is influencing
 C. isn't influenced D. isn't influencing
6. A few days ago, Tom's car _____ by one of the teenagers in his neighborhood.
 A. was stealing B. was stole C. has been stolen D. was stolen
7. Pencils _____ at the test, so please bring your own.

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. They recommend that a hotel _____ on the edge of the lake.
A. should be built B. must be built
C. was built D. could build

2. He dislikes _____ what to do.
A. people tell him B. being told
C. to be told D. they telling him

3. The music at the party was very loud and _____ from far away.
A. can hear B. could hear
C. can be heard D. could be heard

4. Both domestic and imported automobiles must _____ anti-pollution devices.
A. equipped with B. be equipped with
C. equipped by D. be equipped by

5. "Can't we do something about the situation?" "Something _____ right now."
A. is doing B. is done C. is being done D. has been doing

6. Despite all my anxiety, I _____ for the job I wanted.
A. was hiring B. hired C. got hiring D. got hired

7. "Has _____ about the eight o'clock flight to Chicago?" "Not yet."
A. been an announcement made B. an announcement been made
C. an announcement made D. been made an announcement

8. "Come back at 5 o'clock," he said, "the job _____ by then."
A. will have been done B. has been done
C. is being done D. was being done

9. Renoir's paintings _____ masterpieces all over the world.
A. had considered B. are considered
C. are considering D. consider

10. Are you quite sure you know why _____ ?
A. was he dismissed B. did he dismiss

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- I don't want any conclusion _____ before we have all the evidence.
A. be made B. to be made C. being made D. to have been made
 - More than five thousand people _____ in the earthquake in Indonesia last year.
A. was said to be died B. were said to be died
C. was said to die D. were said to die
 - Gunpowder was said _____ by the Chinese several centuries ago.
A. to have invented B. to be invented

- C. to have been inventing D. to be inventing
4. I heard him _____ to himself after coming back from the party last night.
 A. singing B. sung C. to be singing D. to be sung
5. He was seen _____ a stone and _____ it at the police.
 A. pick up - throw B. picking up - throw
 C. picked up - thrown D. to pick up - throw
6. "Those eggs of different colors are very artistic." "Yes, they _____ in Russia."
 A. were painted B. were paint C. were painting D. painted
7. "David is in prison for smoking drugs." "He _____ that it was against the law."
 A. is telling B. was told C. told D. tells
8. "The maintenance people didn't remove the chairs from the ballroom." "Don't worry. They _____ them before the dance begins."
 A. will have been moved B. will have moved
 C. were moved D. moved
9. Gold _____ in California in the 19th century.
 A. was discovered B. has been discovered
 C. was discover D. they discovered
10. _____ that military spending is extremely high.
 A. We are felt B. It feels C. It is felt D. We feel that it is

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. All planes _____ before departure.
 A. will checked B. will have checked
 C. will be checked D. will been checked
2. I wanted _____ by the head of the company, but it was impossible.
 A. to see B. to be seen C. seeing D. being to see
3. Nancy _____ at Bob's house every night this week.
 A. has been eaten B. has eating
 C. is being eaten D. has been eating
4. "Where did you get these old dresses?" "We _____ them in the old trunk."
 A. were found B. finding C. found D. have been found
5. "What happened to the old mail carrier?" "He _____ to a new neighborhood to work."
 A. has sent B. was send C. was sent D. sent
6. "The longest fish in the contest was eighteen inches long." "It _____ by Peter."
 A. was catching B. caught C. was caught D. catch
7. "I heard you decided to take up tennis." "Yes, I have _____ every day."
 A. been played B. been playing C. playing D. play
8. "Are we about to have dinner?" "Yes, it _____ in the dining room."

- A. is serving B. serves C. is being served D. served
9. "Why is Tony in prison?" "He _____ of robbery."
- A. has been convicted B. has been convicting
C. has convicted D. convicted
10. "Where are Jack and Joseph?" "They _____ the boxes you asked for into the house."
- A. have been bringing B. bringing
C. have been brought D. to bring

V. CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

A. Các thay đổi trong câu gián tiếp

1. Thay đổi các đại từ, tính từ/đại từ sở hữu.

Các đại từ chỉ ngôi (*personal pronouns*), đại từ phản thân (*reflexive pronouns*), và tính từ/đại từ sở hữu (*possessive adjectives/pronouns*) trong câu gián tiếp sẽ được thay đổi so với câu trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: Mr. Nam said to Hoa, “ **You** take **your** book out and show it to **me**. ”

Thầy Nam nói với Hoa: “Em hãy lấy vở ra và đưa cho thầy xem.”

Tình huống 1: Một người bạn của Hoa tường thuật với một người bạn khác.

*Mr. Nam told Hoa that **she** took **her** book out and showed it to **him**.*

Tình huống 2: Hoa tường thuật với một người bạn khác.

*Mr. Nam told me that **I** took **my** book out and showed it to **him**.*

Tình huống 3: Thầy Nam tường thuật với ba mẹ của Hoa hoặc một người khác.

*I told Hoa that **she** look **her** book out and showed it to **me**.*

2. Thay đổi thời gian, địa điểm và các từ chỉ định

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
<i>now</i>	<i>then/at that time</i>
<i>an hour ago</i>	<i>an hour before/ at7 hour earlier</i>
<i>today</i>	<i>that day</i>
<i>yesterday</i>	<i>the day before/ the previous day</i>
<i>tomorrow</i>	<i>the next day/ the following day</i>
<i>this (week)</i>	<i>that (week)</i>
<i>these (days)</i>	<i>those (days)</i>
<i>last year</i>	<i>the year before/ the previous year</i>
<i>next month</i>	<i>the month after/ the following month</i>
<i>here, there</i>	<i>there</i>

3. Thay đổi thì của động từ.

Các trường hợp thay đổi thì.

Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp phải lùi về quá khứ một thì so với câu trực tiếp.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
Simple Present “I don’t know this man.”	Simple Past He said he didn’t know that man.
Present Continuous “I’m working for a foreign company.”	Past Continuous He said he was working for a foreign company.
Present Perfect “I’ve read a good book.”	Past Perfect He said he had read a good book.
Present Perfect Continuous “I have been writing my report.”	Past Perfect Continuous He said he had been writing his report.
Simple Past “I finished my assignment.”	Past Perfect He said he had finished his assignment.
Simple Future “I will do it later”	Future in the past He said he would do it later.
Modal verbs “I can work late today.” “I may see her tonight.” “I must/have to go now.”	Past forms of modals He said he could work late that day. He said he might see her that night. He said he had to go then.

Các trường hợp KHÔNG thay đổi thì.

*) Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì hiện tai, động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi thì.

Ví dụ: *He says, “I don’t know the answer to your question.”*

→ *He says to me that he doesn’t know the answer to my question*

*) Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi thì trong các trường hợp sau:

- Tường thuật một sự thật phổ quát hoặc một điều luôn luôn đúng.

Ví dụ: *My teacher said, “Russia is the biggest country in the world.”*

→ *My teacher said that Russia is the biggest country in the world.*

(Thầy tôi nói nước Nga là quốc gia lớn nhất trên thế giới.)

*) Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp là các động từ khiêm khuyết: **could, should, would, might, ought to, had to, used to.**

Ví dụ: *He said, “They might win the game.”*

→ *He said to me that they might win the game.*

(Anh ấy nói với tôi là họ có thể thắng trận đấu.)

He said, “I used to work all night.”

→ *He told me he used to work all night.*

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng trước đây anh ấy thường làm việc suốt cả đêm.)

*) Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp ở các thì: **Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous**, nếu thì **Simple Past** đi kèm một thời gian cụ thể thì có thể không thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *He said, “The Asian tsunami happened in 2004. ”*

→ *He said to me the Asian tsunami had happened/happened in 2004.*

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng trận sóng thần ở châu Á xảy ra năm 2004.)

He said, “I was eating when she called me. ”

→ *He told me he was eating when she called him.*

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy đang ăn thì cô ấy gọi điện thoại.)

*) Khi tường thuật mệnh đề ước muôn (**wish**), các câu điều kiện loại II, loại III, và cấu trúc "**It's (high) time...**"

Ví dụ: *He said, “If I had time, I would help you. ”*

→ *He said to me if he had time he would help me.*

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy sẽ giúp tôi nếu có thời gian.)

He said, .“I wish I were richer. ”

→ *He told me he wished he were richer.*

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy muốn giàu có hơn.)

He said, “It's time we went. ”

→ *He said it was time they went.*

(Anh ấy nói đã đến lúc họ phải đi.)

B. Các loại câu gián tiếp

1. Tường thuật câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu (*commands, orders, requests*)

Ta dùng các động từ *ask*, hoặc *tell* để tường thuật.

ask/tell + object + (not) + to-infinitive

Ví dụ: *They said, “Could you help us? ”*

→ *They asked me to help them.*

(Họ yêu cầu tôi giúp đỡ họ.)

She said, “Don't set fire in the room. ”

→ *She told him not to set fire in the room.*

(Bà ấy bảo cậu ta không được đốt lửa trong phòng.)

2. Tường thuật câu tràn thuật (*statements*)

Ta dùng các động từ *say* hoặc *tell*.

say + (to object) + (that) + S + V

tell + object + (that) + S + V

Ví dụ: *She said, “I'm happy to see you again. ”*

→ *She said that she was happy to see me again.*

→ *She said to me that she was happy to see me again.*

→ She told me that she was happy to see me again.

(Cô ấy nói rằng cô ấy rất vui khi gặp lại tôi.)

3. Tường thuật câu hỏi (*questions*)

Đối với câu hỏi trực tiếp (*Wh— questions*)

ask + object + wh-word + S + V

Ví dụ: She asked, “What is his job? ”

→ She asked what his job was.

(Cô ấy hỏi anh ta làm nghề gì?)

They asked me, “Where did you have lunch? ”

→ They asked me where I had lunch.

(Họ hỏi tôi rằng tôi ăn trưa ở đâu.)

Đối với câu hỏi Có/Không (*Yes-No questions*) hoặc câu hỏi lựa chọn (*OR questions*)

Khi tường thuật các loại câu hỏi này, cần phải thêm từ *if* hoặc *whether* trước chủ từ của câu hỏi được tường thuật.

ask + (object) + if/whether + S + V

Ví dụ: She asked, “Are you a teacher? ”

→ She asked him if/whether he was a teacher.

(Cô ấy hỏi anh ấy rằng có phải anh ấy là giáo viên không.)

They asked me, “Do you want to go or stay at home? ”

→ They asked me if/whether I wanted to go or stay at home.

(Họ hỏi tôi rằng tôi muốn đi hay muốn ở nhà.)

Chú ý: Câu hỏi đuôi được tường thuật giống như câu hỏi Yes/No nhưng phải bỏ phần đuôi phía sau.

Ví dụ: She asked, “You will stay here, won’t you? ”

→ She asked me if/whether I would stay there.

(Cô ấy hỏi tôi rằng tôi có ở lại đó không.)

➤ BÀI TẬP CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wondered _____ the right thing.

- A. whether I was doing B. if I am doing
C. was I doing D. am I doing He

2. He _____ that he was leaving for London that afternoon.

- A. told me B. told to me C. said me D. says to me

3. Bill asked Tom _____ in London.

- A. does the train arrive B. did the train arrive
C. whether the train arrives D. if the train arrived

4. I asked them when _____ changed.

- A. was the timetable B. the timetable is

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

8. The woman asked get lunch at school.

A. can the children B. whether the children could

C. if the children can D. could the children

9. Laura said that when she walked to school she saw an accident.

A. was walking B. has walked

C. had ben walking D. has been walking

10. Julia said that she will be there at noon.

A. is going to be B. was going to be C. will be D. can be

Exercise 3: Choose the answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. "You have not done your work well," said the teacher to me.

 - A. The teacher told me I hadn't done my work well.
 - B. The teacher told me I haven't done my work well,
 - C. The teacher told me I hadn't done your work well.
 - D. The teacher told me I hadn't done his work well.

2. "This man spoke to me on the road," said the woman.

 - A. The woman said that man had spoken to me on the road.
 - B. The woman said that man has spoken to her on the road,
 - C. The woman said that man spoke to her on the road.
 - D. The woman said that man had spoken to her on the road.

3. "I can't explain this rule to you," said my classmate to me.

 - A. My classmate told me he/she can't explain that rule to me.
 - B. My classmate told me he/she couldn't explain that rule to me.
 - C. My classmate told me he/she couldn't explain that rule to you.
 - D. My classmate said me he/she couldn't explain that rule to me.

4. The teacher said to class, "We shall discuss this subject tomorrow."

 - A. The teacher told the class they would discuss that subject the next day.
 - B. The teacher told the class they will discuss that subject the next day.
 - C. The teacher said the class they would discuss that subject the next day.
 - D. The teacher told the class they discussed that subject the next day.

5. The woman said to her son, "I am glad I am here."

 - A. The woman told her son I was glad she was there.
 - B. The woman told her son she was glad I was there.
 - C. The woman told her son she was glad she was there.
 - D. The woman told to her son she was glad she was there.

6. Mike said, "We have bought these books today."

 - A. Mike said they bought those books that day.
 - B. Mike said they had bought those books that day.
 - C. Mike said they have bought those books that day.

- D. Mike said they had bought those books today.
7. Sarah said, “I read *Jane Eyre* last year.”
- A. Sarah said she had read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
 - B. Sarah said she read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
 - C. Sarah said she has read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
 - D. Sarah said she would read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
8. Tony said, “I have never been to London. I think I shall go there next year.”
- A. Tony said he has never been to London and he thinks he would go there the following year.
 - B. Tony said he had never been to London and he thought he would go there the following year.
 - C. Tony said he had never been to London and he thinks he will go there the following year.
 - D. Tony said he would have never been to London and he thought he would go there the following year.
9. Barbara said, “I saw them at my parents’ house last year.”
- A. Barbara said I had seen them at my parents’ house the previous year.
 - B. Barbara said she saw them at her parents’ house the previous year.
 - C. Barbara said she had seen them at her parents’ house the previous year.
 - D. Barbara said they had seen her at her parents’ house the previous year.
10. He said, “I haven’t seen my cousin today.”
- A. He said he hasn’t seen his cousin that day.
 - B. He said he hadn’t seen my cousin that day.
 - C. He said he hadn’t seen his cousin that day.
 - D. He said I hadn’t seen his cousin that day.

Exercise 4: Choose the answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. Father said to me, “Don’t stay there long.”
- A. Father told me not stay there long.
 - B. Father told lo me not to stay there long,
 - C. Father told me not to stay there long.
 - D. Father said to me not to stay there long.
2. Peter said to them, “Don’t leave the room until I come back.”
- A. Peter told them not to leave the room until he came back.
 - B. Peter told them not to leave the room until he comes back,
 - C. Peter told them not to leave the room until they came back.
 - D. Peter told them not to leave the room until they come back.
3. “Take my luggage to Room 145,” he said to the porter.
- A. He told the porter take his luggage to Room 145.

- B. He said the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
C. He told the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
D. He said to the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
4. He said to me, “Ring me up tomorrow.”
A. He told me to ring him up the following day.
B. He told me ring him up the following day.
C. He said me to ring him up the following day.
D. He told me to ring me up the following day.
5. “Bring me a cup of black coffee,” she said to the waiter.
A. She told the waiter to bring me a cup of black coffee.
B. She told the waiter to bring her a cup of black coffee,
C. She told the waiter bring her a cup of black coffee.
D. She told the waiter bring me a cup of black coffee.
6. The teacher said to me, “Hand this note to your parents, please.”
A. The teacher asked me to hand that note to my parents.
B. The teacher asked me hand that note to my parents,
C. The teacher asked me to hand that note to his parents.
D. The teacher asked me hand that note to his parents.
7. “Please help me with this work, Henry,” said Robert.
A. Robert asked Henry help him with that work.
B. Robert asked Henry to help me with that work.
C. Robert asked to help Henry with that work.
D. Robert asked Henry to help him with that work.
8. “Please bring me some fish soup,” he said to the waitress.
A. He asked the waitress to bring him some fish soup.
B. He asked the waitress bring him some fish soup,
C. He asked the waitress to bring her some fish soup.
D. He asked the waitress bring her some fish soup.
9. “Don’t worry over such a small thing,” she said to me.
A. She told me not worry over such a small thing.
B. She told me to not worry over such a small thing,
C. She told me not to worry over such a small thing.
D. She told not to worry over such a small thing.
10. “Please don’t mention it to anybody,” Mary said to her friend.
A. Mary asked her friend not to mention it to anybody.
B. Mary asked her friend not mention it to anybody,
C. Mary asked her friend to not mention it to anybody.
D. Mary asked her friend did not mention it to anybody.

Exercise 5: Choose the answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. “Don’t forget to clean your teeth,” said Granny to Helen.
 - A. Granny told Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.
 - B. Granny told Helen to not forget to clean her teeth,
 - C. Granny said to Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.
 - D. Granny told Helen not forget to clean her teeth.
2. “Don’t sit up late,” said the doctor to Mary.
 - A. The doctor told Mary not sit up late.
 - B. The doctor told Mary not to sit up late,
 - C. The doctor said to Mary not to sit up late.
 - D. The doctor told Mary to not sit up late.
3. The doctor said to Pete, “Don’t go for a walk today.”
 - A. The doctor told Pete not to go for a walk today.
 - B. The doctor told Pete not go for a walk today.
 - C. The doctor said to Pete not to go for a walk that day.
 - D. The doctor told Pete not to go for a walk that day.
4. “Don’t eat too much ice-cream,” said Nick’s mother to him.
 - A. Nick’s mother said him not to eat too much ice-cream.
 - B. Nick’s mother told him not to eat too much ice-cream,
 - C. Nick’s mother told him not eat too much ice-cream.
 - D. Nick’s mother told him to eat not much ice-cream.
5. “Explain to me how to solve this problem,” said my friend to me.
 - A. My friend told me to explain to him how to solve that problem.
 - B. My friend told me to explain to me how to solve that problem,
 - C. My friend told me explain to him how to solve that problem.
 - D. My friend told me to explain to him how solve that problem.
6. The woman doctor said to Peter, “Open your mouth and show me your tongue.”
 - A. The woman doctor told Peter open his mouth and show her his tongue.
 - B. The woman doctor said Peter to open his mouth and show her his tongue,
 - C. The woman doctor told Peter to open his mouth and show her his tongue.
 - D. The woman doctor told Peter to open her mouth and show him his tongue.
7. “Don’t be afraid of my dog,” said the man to Kate.
 - A. The man said to Kate not to be afraid of his dog.
 - B. The man told Kate not be afraid of his dog.
 - C. The man told Kate not to be afraid of her dog.
 - D. The man told Kate not to be afraid of his dog.
8. “Take this book and read it,” said the librarian to the boy.
 - A. The librarian told the boy to take that book and read it.

- B. The librarian told the boy to take this book and read that,
 - C. The librarian said to the boy to take that book and read it.
 - D. The librarian told the boy take that book and read it.
9. He said to us, "Come here tomorrow,"
- A. He told us go there the next day.
 - B. He told us to go here the next day.
 - C. He told us to go there the next day.
 - D. He said to us to go there the next day.
10. I said to Mike, "Send me a telegram as soon as you arrive."
- A. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as he arrived.
 - B. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as he arrives,
 - C. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as I arrived.
 - D. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as I arrive.

VI. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. Câu điều kiện loại 1

Cáu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Simple Present	Simple Future
S + Verb/Verb-s/es	S + will/shall + bare infinitive

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 1 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện có thể xảy ra hoặc có thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: If the rain stops, I will go for a walk,

Chú ý:

Ta có thể dùng thì hiện tại đơn (*Simple Present*) ở mệnh đề chính để diễn tả một điều luôn luôn đúng hoặc một sự thật hiển nhiên.

Ví dụ: If you heat water to 100°C, it boils.

(Nếu bạn đun nước đến 100°C thì nó sôi.)

Thay vì dùng thì tương lai đơn (*Simple Future*) ở mệnh đề chính, ta có thể dùng *can/may + bare infinitive* hoặc có thể dùng mệnh lệnh cách (*imperative form*).

Ví dụ: If you try hard, you can pass the exam.

If you see Peter, give him this book.

2. Câu điều kiện loại 2

Cáu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Past Subjunctive/ Simple Past	Present Conditional
S + past form of the verb	S + would/could + bare infinitive

Thì quá khứ giả định (*Past subjunctive*) giống như thì quá khứ đơn, riêng động từ "be"

được chia là “were” cho tất cả các ngôi.

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 2 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện không thể xảy ra hoặc không thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: *If Nam were here, he would know the answer. (But he isn't here now.)*

Nếu Nam có mặt ở đây thì cậu ấy sẽ biết câu trả lời. (Nhưng thật ra cậu ấy không có mặt ở đây.)

If he knew' my phone number, he would call me. (But he doesn't have my phone number.)

Nếu anh ấy có số điện thoại của tôi thì anh ấy đã gọi tôi rồi. (Nhưng thật ra anh ấy không có số điện thoại của tôi.)

3. Câu điều kiện loại 3

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
F'ast Perfect	Perfect Conditional
S + had + past participle (PP)	S + would/could have + PP

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 3 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện không thể xảy ra hoặc không thể thực hiện được ở quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *If I had invited her to my party, it would have been more fun. (But I didn't.)*

Nếu tôi mời cô ấy đến buổi tiệc thì có lẽ đã vui hơn. (Nhưng tôi đã không mời cô ấy.)

4. Mixed conditionals

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện này diễn tả điều kiện giả định ở quá khứ và kết quả không thực hiện được ở hiện tại.

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Past Perfect	Present Conditional
S + had + past participle (PP)	S + would/could + bare infinitive

Ví dụ: *If I had gone to bed early last night, I wouldn't feel sleepy now.*

(Nếu tối qua tôi đi ngủ sớm thì bây giờ tôi không buồn ngủ.)

Chú ý:

Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện: khi được dùng một cách trang trọng, câu điều kiện sẽ có cấu trúc đảo ngữ. Khi đó, ta bỏ *if* và đảo trợ động từ trong mệnh đề *if* ra trước chủ ngữ, mệnh đề chính không thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *If he appears, please tell him to wait for me.*

→ **Should he appear, please tell him to wait for me.**

If I were in your position, I wouldn't do that.

→ **Were I** in your position, I wouldn't do that.

If I had more time, my report would be better.

→ **Were I to have** more time, my report would be better.

If I had invited her to my party, it would have been more fun.

→ **Had I invited** her to my party, it would have been more fun.

If he hadn't missed the train, he would be here now.

→ **Had he not missed** the train, he would be here now.

5. Các từ khác có thể thay cho if

- **unless = if...not** (trừ phi, trừ khi)

Ví dụ: If he doesn't come, I'll bring this package to him.

→ Unless he comes, I'll bring this package to him.

- **in case** (phòng khi điều gì có thể xảy ra)

Trong mệnh đề theo sau *in case*, ta thường dùng thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc Quá khứ đơn, không dùng *will* hoặc *would*.

Ví dụ: I always take an umbrella *in case* it rains.

(= I always take an umbrella because it may rain.)

- **with, without, và but for.**

with/ without (nếu có/nếu không), **but for** (nếu không có) được dùng như một dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề *if* (reduced form of the if clause).

with/ without/ but for+ a noun/a noun phrase

Ví dụ: If you help me, I can finish this assignment.

→ **With your help**, I can finish this assignment.

If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't have finished this assignment.

→ **Without your help**, I couldn't have finished this assignment.

(Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của anh, tôi không thể hoàn thành công việc này - nhưng thực tế anh đã giúp tôi.)

If it hadn't rained, we would have had a nice holiday.

→ **But for the rain**, we would have had a nice holiday.

(Nếu trời không mưa thì chúng tôi đã có một kì nghỉ vui vẻ.)

Như vậy, trong trường hợp này, *without* cũng tương đương với cấu trúc "**If it were not for...**" (loại 2) hoặc "**If it hadn't been for...**" (loại 3).

Ví dụ: Without your help, I couldn't finish this assignment.

= **If it were not for your help**, I couldn't finish this assignment.

But for/Without your map, we would have lost our way.

= **If it had not been for your map**, we would have lost our way.

Providing (that)/provided (that) (= miễn là): được dùng để thay thế cho *if* khi người nói có ý nhấn mạnh sự hạn chế.

Ví dụ: You can borrow my bike provided/ providing (that) you bring it back tomorrow

morning.

As long as/ so long as (= miễn là): có cách dùng tương tự như *providing (that)/ provided (that)*.

Ví dụ: You can stay with us as/ so long as you share the expenses.

Otherwise (= nếu không thì) được dùng để thay thế cho //và liên quan đến một ý tưởng đã nói trong câu trước.

Ví dụ: You must read the instructions; otherwise, you don't know how to use it.

➤ BÀI TẬP CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people _____ the same language?
A. spoke B. speak C. had spoken D. will speak
2. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, _____ this incident again.
A. I will never mention B. I never mention
C. will I never mention D. I don't mention
3. Unless you _____ all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
A. answered B. answer C. would answer D. are answering
4. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I _____ it.
A. would never have believed B. don't believe
C. hadn't believed D. can't believe
5. If John _____ to go on the trip, would you have gone?
A. doesn't agree B. didn't agree C. hadn't agreed D. wouldn't agree
6. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I _____ so much noise when I came in.
A. didn't make B. wouldn't have made
C. won't make D. don't make
7. If I _____ the same problem you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
A. have B. would have C. had had D. should have
8. I _____ you sooner had someone told me you were in hospital.
A. would have visited B. visited
C. had visited D. visit
9. _____ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
A. Had I known B. Did I know C. If I know D. If I would know
10. The lecturer last night didn't know what he was talking about, but if Professor Madison _____, I would have listened carefully.
A. had been lecturing B. was lecturing

- C. would lecture D. lectured

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wouldn't go there at night if I _____ you.
A. am C. were D. had been
2. If I _____ get a pole, I'll go fishing.
A. can B. could C. may D. might
3. If they had enough time, they _____ head south.
A. will B. can C. must D. might
4. If you had the chance, _____ you go fishing?
A. did B. may C. would D. do
5. If you _____ a choice, which country would you visit?
A. have B. had C. have had D. will have
6. Trees won't grow _____ there is enough water.
A. if B. when C. unless D. as
7. _____ she agreed, you would have done it.
A. If B. Had C. Should D. Would
8. If you _____ to be chosen for the job, you'll have to be experienced i
A. want B. wanted C. had wanted D. wants
9. If the doctor had arrived sooner, the boy _____.
A. might be saved B. have been saved
C. was saved D. might have been saved
10. If you just approach the job with the right attitude, things _____.well.
A. would have turned out B. will turn out
C. would turn out D. turns out

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Can I borrow your car for this evening?" "Sure if Jane _____ it back in time, you're welcome to borrow it."
A. brought B. brings C. will bring D. would bring
2. I would go swimming if the weather _____. better.
A. is B. will be C. would be D. were
3. I _____ Tom. with me if I had known you didn't get along with him.
A. hadn't brought B. didn't bring
C. wouldn't have brought D. won't bring
4. I _____ you if I need your help.
A. would call B. will call C. called D. call
5. If energy _____ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
A. is B. were C. will be D. would be

6. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed. _____ in the room, I would have been killed.
- A. Should I be B. Had I been C. Would I be D. Would I have been
7. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavourable if it _____ more money on imports than it gains from exports.
- A. will spend B. would spend C. can spend D. spends
8. ._____ any problem with the product, contact our local dealer.
- A. Do you have B. Should you have
C. Had you D. You have
9. Many people who live near nuclear plants are concerned. _____ go wrong, the impact on the surrounding area could be disastrous.
- A. Something would B. Something will
C. Should something D. Does something
10. Had I known the carpenter was going to take three days to show up, I _____ the materials and done the work myself. It would be finished by now.
- A. will get B. would have got C. might get D. will have got
- Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. The death rate would decrease if hygienic conditions _____ improved.
A. were B. was C. is D. would be
 2. The education in Japan _____ if the basic principles of education had not been taken into consideration.
A. would go down B. would have gone down
C. went down D. had gone down
 3. If there _____, the ricefields could have been more productive.
A. had been enough water B. were enough water
C. would be enough water D. are enough water
 4. The patient could not recover unless he _____ an operation.
A. had undergone B. would undergo
C. underwent D. was undergoing
 5. If she _____ him, she would be very happy.
A. would meet B. will meet C. is meeting D. should meet
 6. If he _____ a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.
A. had had B. had C. has D. has had
 7. If I had enough money, I _____ abroad to improve my English.
A. will go B. would go
C. should go D. should have to go
 8. The bench would collapse if they _____ on it.
A. stood B. stand C. standing D. stands

9. If it _____ convenient, let's go out for a drink tonight.
 A. be B. is C. was D. were
10. If you _____ time, please write to me.
 A. have B. had C. have had D. has

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- If the car _____ larger, we would have bought it.
 A. had been B. has been C. have been D. been
- If I were to leave my country, I _____ disappointed.
 A. probably be B. would have been C. will be D. would be
- If he hadn't wasted too much time, he _____ in his examination.
 A. would fail B. wouldn't fail C. wouldn't have failed D. won't fail
- If I had taken that English course, I _____ much progress.
 A. had made B. would have made C. made D. would make
- If I were in your place, I _____ a trip to England.
 A. will make B. had made C. would make D. made
- If you _____ inherited a million pounds, what with the money?
 A. do you do B. will you do C. would you do D. are you going to do
- If you _____ as I told you, you _____ in such predicament now.
 A. did - wouldn't be B. had done - had not been
 C. do - would not be D. had done - would not be
- Come and work for my company if you _____ better to do.
 A. have nothing B. will have nothing C. had something D. had nothing
- If you had done as I told you, I think you _____.
 A. would succeed B. would have succeeded
 C. could succeed D. had succeeded
- If he had got half a markmore, he _____ in the exam.
 A. wouldn't fail B. wouldn't have failed
 C. won't fail D. won't be failing

VII. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

A. Đại từ quan hệ và trạng từ quan hệ

1. Đại từ quan hệ (Relative pronouns).

Các đại từ quan hệ được dùng để thay thế các danh từ chỉ người hoặc chỉ vật, sự vật, và có thể đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ, tên ngữ hoặc mang nghĩa sở hữu trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

	Chỉ người	Chỉ vật
Chủ ngữ	who/that	which/that

He 's the man who/that talked to me I bought a book which/that is on last night.

music.

Tân ngữ	who/whom/that <i>The man <u>who/whom/that I saw last night</u> was a doctor.</i>	which/that <i>This is the CD <u>which/that I bought yesterday</u>.</i>
Sở hữu	whose <i>She 's the girl <u>whose car is over there</u></i>	whose/of which <i>That's the car <u>whose door/the door of which</u> is broken.</i>

Chú ý:

a) Đại từ quan hệ khi đóng vai trò tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được bỏ đi.

Ví dụ: *The man who/whom/that I saw last night was a doctor.*

→ *The man I saw Iasi night was a doctor.*

b) Các đại từ quan hệ **whom**, **which** (tân ngữ), và **whose** có thể theo sau một giới từ. Cách dùng này mang tính trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *The man whom you talked to this morning was a friend of mine.*

→ *The man to whom you talked this morning was a friend of mine.*

Tom is I he boy whose house we lived in.

→ *Tom is the boy in whose house we lived.*

c) Các từ chỉ so lượng như: **all of** (tất cả), **some of** (một số), **many of** (nhiều), **most of** (hầu hết), **none of** (không ai/không vật gì), **half of** (phân nửa), **each of** (mỗi một)... và các tính từ so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất có thể được đặt trước các đại từ quan hệ **whom** và **which**.

Ví dụ: *I bought a lot of books. All of them are on wildlife.*

→ *I bought a lot of books, all of which are on wildlife.*

Some of my friends are very rich. The richest of them owns two supermarkets.

→ *Some of my friends are very rich, the richest of whom owns two supermarkets.*

d) Đại từ quan hệ **that** được sử dụng tương đương với **who**, **whom** hoặc **which**, và thường được sử dụng nhiều hơn sau cấu trúc so sánh nhất, hoặc sau các đại từ bất định: **all**, **none**, **few**, **something**, **nothing**, **anything**, **someone**, **anyone**, **everyone**, **no one...**, hoặc tiền ngữ hỗn hợp vừa chỉ người vừa chỉ vật (*mixed antecedent*).

Ví dụ: *New Zealand is the most peaceful country that I've ever visited.*

Anyone that knows about the fact must be proud.

Look at the farmers and cattle that are going to the field.

2. Trạng từ quan hệ (Relative adverbs).

Các trạng từ quan hệ được dùng để chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn hoặc lí do.

	Trạng từ quan hệ	Ví dụ
Thời gian	when - on/at/...which	<i>I'll never forget the day <u>when I first met her</u>.</i>

Noi Chón	where - at/in/on... which	<i>The building where he works is the tallest one in town.</i>
Lí do	why = for which	<i>That's the reason why he left her.</i>

Chú ý: Các trạng từ quan hệ có thể được thay thế bằng: **preposition + which**.

Ví dụ: *I'll never forget the day on which (- when) I first met her.*

The building in which (where) he works is the tallest one in town.

B. Các loại mệnh đề quan hệ

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clauses).

Ví dụ: *The man who is standing at the door is my teacher.*

Mệnh đề “who is standing at the door” là mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, có chức năng xác định danh từ tiền ngữ “the man”. Nếu bỏ mệnh đề này, người đọc không biết đề cập đến ai.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (Non-defining relative clauses).

Ví dụ: *Mr. Richards, who is standing at the door, is my teacher.*

Mệnh đề “who is standing at the door” là mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định vì người đọc đã biết Mr. Richards là ai, nó chỉ thêm thông tin cho danh từ tiền ngữ.

Chú ý:

- Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định luôn ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.
- KHÔNG dùng thai trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

Ví dụ: *Tom, whom (tkai) I introduced you to, is a doctor.*

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được dùng trong các trường hợp sau.

- a) Dùng với **danh từ riêng** (proper nouns).

Ví dụ: *We have visited Sue, who had an accident two days ago.*

- b) Dùng với danh từ chỉ những **đối tượng duy nhất** như *the sun, the earth, the moon, my father/mother...*

Ví dụ: *My father, who is 60 years old, has just retired.*

- c) Dùng với danh từ đã được xác định, thường dùng với các từ chỉ định như *this, that, these, those...*

Ví dụ: *This house, which is very expensive, was bought by a very rich man.*

- d) Khi đại từ quan hệ đi kèm với các từ chỉ số lượng như: *all of, some of, many of, most of, none of, half of, each of...*

Ví dụ: *I bought a lot of books, all of which are about wildlife.*

3. Mệnh đề quan hệ bỗng nhiên cả câu (Sentence relative clauses).

Ví dụ: *Tom passed the driving test. This surprised everyone.*

→ *Tom passed the driving test, which surprised everyone.*

(Tom thi đậu kì thi láy bằng lái xe và điều này làm mọi người ngạc nhiên.)

Paul is always throwing his dirty clothes on the floor. That makes his mother annoyed.

→ Paul is always throwing his dirty clothes on the floor, which makes his mother annoyed.

(Paul luôn vứt quần áo bẩn xuống sàn nhà và điều này làm bà mẹ cậu ta bức mình.)

Mệnh đề quan hệ loại này không bô nghĩa cho danh từ tiền ngữ mà bô sung thông tin cho toàn bộ mệnh đề chính hoặc nêu ý kiêng, thái độ của người nói.

Chú ý:

— Mệnh đề quan hệ bô nghĩa cả câu phải được đặt sau mệnh đề chính, và ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.

— Chỉ được dùng đại từ quan hệ **which**, không dùng đại từ quan hệ **that**.

C. Sự lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ (Omission of relative pronouns)

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, khi đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ (*object*) thì đại từ quan hệ đó có thể được lược bỏ, nhất là trong tiếng Anh đàm thoại (*spoken English*) hoặc trong văn phong không trọng trọng (*informal style*).

Ví dụ: *The man who/whom I wanted to see was away on holiday.*

→ *The man I wanted to see was away on holiday.*

The dress which/that Mary bought doesn't fit her well.

→ *The dress Mary bought doesn't fit her well.*

Have you found the keys which/that you lost?

→ *Have you found the keys you lost?*

Chú ý:

- Ta không thể lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ khi nó làm chủ từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

Ví dụ: *The man who spoke to Sue is her boss.*

- Trong trường hợp đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ cho giới từ thì ta phải đem giới từ ra sau động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ rồi mới bỏ đại từ quan hệ được.

Ví dụ: *The teacher to whom you talked is my uncle.*

→ *The teacher you talked to is my uncle.*

D. Mệnh đề quan hệ thay thế bằng phân từ (Relative clauses replaced by participles)

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ được thay thế bằng hiện tại phân từ (Relative clauses replaced by present participles)

Hình thức: **Verb-ing**

Ta dùng cụm hiện tại phân từ để thay thế mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ chính ở dạng chủ động.

Ví dụ: *The woman who spoke to Mai is my sister.*

→ *The woman speaking to Mai is my sister.*

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ được thay thế bằng quá khứ phân từ (Relative clauses replaced by past participles)

Hình thức: **past participle** (Verb-ed/V₃)

Ta dùng cụm quá khứ phân từ để thay thế mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ chính ở dạng

bị động.

Ví dụ: *The students who were punished by the teacher are lazy.*

→ *The students punished by the teacher are lazy.*

➤ BÀI TẬP MÌNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Exercise 1: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. The Taj Mahal. _____ is recognized as one of the wonders of the world, was built by an Indian King in memory of his beloved wife.
A. which B. that C. where D. what
2. She is going to sell the business, _____ is a great shame.
A. that B. which C. it is D. what
3. I have two sisters, _____ are very good at computer science.
A. who B. whom C. both of them D. both of whom
4. He told her not to eat it, _____ that there was a risk of food poisoning.
A. explaining B. explained C. to explain D. he explained
5. I enjoyed talking to the people _____ I had dinner last night.
A. with whom B. whom with C. with who D. who with
6. The artist, _____ painting you bought, is a classmate of mine.
A. whom B. whose C. from whose D. from whom
7. Those _____ to join our club must fill in this form first.
A. when tried B. if wanting C. who want D. if they want
8. Mrs. Hoa, _____ son is studying at the University of Law, is a farmer.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. her
9. Louis Pasteur, _____ discovered a cure for rabies, was a French scientist.
A. he B. that C. who D. whom
10. Some of the boys _____ didn't come.
A. whom I invited them B. I invited them
C. I invited D. when I invited

Exercise 2: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. The preservation of ancient sites and historical buildings is a job _____ requires a person ready to fight a long battle.
A. whose B. which C. of which D. what
2. The restaurant _____ Bob recommended was too expensive.
A. which it B. that C. where D. at which
3. Mexico City. _____ is the capital of Mexico, is a cosmopolitan city.
A. which B. that C. where D. what
4. We went to different places _____ you find people _____ language was hard to

understand.

- A. where - which B. where — whose
C. that - whose D. which - whose

5. We came within sight of Everest, _____ has attracted so many climbers.
A. the summit of which B. which the summit
C. whose summit of D. of which the summit

6. The manager called in my new colleagues, _____ I had already met.
A. one of who B. one or two of whom
C. both of them D. all of them

7. The record _____, _____ has been produced by a completely new method, will be released next week.
A. which I told you about - Ø B. that I told you - which
C. I told you about — which D. about which I told you - Ø

8. A skilled workforce is essential, _____ why our training course program is so important.
A. that is B. which C. which is D. this is

9. They are the people _____ houses were destroyed by the flood.
A. their B. whose C. what D. which

10. I read about the child _____ life was saved by her pet dog.
A. whom B. who C. her D. whose

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

 1. My computer, _____ mouse doesn't work, cannot be used now.
A. whose B. which C. while D. because
 2. Some of the guests _____ I invited didn't come.
A. whose B. whom C. them D. which
 3. The police have to try to catch the men _____ drive dangerously.
A. who B. whom C. they D. which
 4. Jane did not fill her car up with petrol before she left, _____ was careless of her.
A. which B. it C. that D. what
 5. They always give the available seats to _____ comes first.
A. whoever B. whom C. which D. whomever
 6. A home computer _____ an opportunity for convenient and efficient work at home is becoming more and more common.
A. provides B. is provided C. which provides D. providing
 7. Near the White House is another famous landmark _____ the Washington Monument.
A. is which B. which call C. called D. it is called
 8. There was a small room into _____ wall crowded.
A. there was a small room into which the wall crowded. B. the wall crowded into which there was a small room.
C. the wall crowded into which there was a small room. D. there was a small room into which the wall crowded.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|-------|
| A. which | B. where | C. that | D. it |
|----------|----------|---------|-------|
9. I received two job offers, _____ I accepted.
- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| A. which neither | B. of which neither |
| C. neither of which | D. neither of that |
10. I have three brothers, _____ are professional athletes.
- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| A. two of whom | B. two of them |
| C. two of who | D. two of that |

VIII. TỪ NỐI MỆNH ĐỀ, TỪ NỐI CÂU

Có ba loại từ nối chính:

- Từ nối phụ thuộc (subordinators) như *while*, *because...* được dùng trong câu phức (complex sentences);
- Từ nối mệnh đề (coordinators) như *and*, *but*, *or*, *so...*;
- Từ nối câu (connectors) như *however*, *therefore*, *besides...* .được dùng để nối ý hai câu với nhau.

1. Từ nối phụ thuộc

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề quan hệ:

■ Đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns):

who: chỉ người (làm chủ ngữ)

whom: chỉ người (làm tân ngữ)

whose + danh từ: chỉ sở hữu của người và vật

that: chỉ người, vật (dùng trong mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn)

which: chỉ vật

■ Trạng từ quan hệ:

when (= on/at... which): chỉ thời gian

where (= at/ in... which): chỉ nơi chốn

why (= for which): chỉ lí do

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong câu điều kiện:

If: nếu

even if: thậm chí

only if: chỉ khi

unless (= if.. .not): trừ khi, trừ phi

as long as; so long as: miễn là

provided/providing (that): miễn là

on condition (that): với điều kiện là

suppose/ supposing (that): giả sử như

imagine (if): tưởng tượng (nếu như)

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề danh ngữ:

<i>thai:</i>	răng	<i>wherever:</i>	bất cứ nơi đâu
<i>who:</i>	người nào/ ai	<i>when:</i>	khi nào
<i>whoever:</i>	bất cứ người nào	<i>whenever:</i>	bất cứ khi nào
<i>what:</i>	những gì	<i>how much/many/often..:</i>	bao nhiêu/
<i>whatever:</i>	bất cứ cái gì		thường xuyên thế nào
<i>where:</i>	ở đâu/ nơi đâu	<i>whether (or not)/if</i>	liệu...(có không)

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ:

■ Thời gian

<i>when:</i>	khi	<i>after,</i>	sau khi
<i>while:</i>	trong khi	<i>until/ till:</i>	mãi đến khi
<i>as soon as:</i>	ngay sau khi	<i>since:</i>	kể từ khi
<i>before:</i>	trước khi	<i>as:</i>	khi, trong khi

■ Nơi chốn

<i>where:</i>	nơi
<i>wherever:</i>	bất cứ nơi nào
<i>everywhere:</i>	tất cả mọi nơi

■ Cách thức

as: giống như

■ Lý do

because/as/since/for: bởi vì

■ Kết quả

so + tính từ/ trạng từ + that: đến nỗi mà

such + a(n) + ngữ danh từ + that: đến nỗi mà

■ Mục đích

so thai/in order thai: vì thế

■ Đối lập/ sự nhượng bộ

although/ even though/ though: mặc dù

2. Từ nối mệnh đề, từ nối câu

Nghĩa	Từ nối mệnh đề	Từ nối câu
cung cấp thêm thông tin	<i>and</i> (và)	<i>furthermore besides in addition moreover also</i> (hơn nữa, thêm vào)
cho ý kiến trái ngược	<i>but, yet</i> (nhưng)	<i>however nevertheless in contrast on the contrary on the other hand</i> (tuy nhiên, dù sao, ngược lại)
lí do, sự lựa chọn giữa hai khả năng	<i>for</i> (vì, do đó) <i>or (else)</i> (nếu không)	<i>otherwise</i> (nếu không, hoặc là)
kết quả	<i>so</i> (vì vậy)	<i>consequence therefore thus accordingly as a result</i> (do đó, kết quả là)
sự lựa chọn phủ định	<i>nor</i> (cũng không)	



BÀI TẬP TỪ NỐI MỆNH ĐỀ, NỐI CÂU

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- _____ we got lost driving into the city, we were late for the meeting.
 A. Since B. Because of C. Consequently D. For
- During extremely hot weather, elephants require both mud and water to keep their skin cool _____ they have no sweat glands.
 A. and B. so C. because of D. due to the fact that
- I couldn't repair my bike, _____ I didn't have the right tools.
 A. so B. for C. because of D. therefore
- Two of the factories in our small town have closed. _____, unemployment is high.
 A. Consequently B. Because C. So that D. Furthermore
- _____ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
 A. For B. Since C. Due to D. Therefore
- Mr. Watson retired from his job early _____ his ill health.
 A. because B. due to C. since D. for

7. John's favourite show was on. He reached to turned on the TV _____ he could watch it.

- A. because of B. therefore C. so that D. for

8. She bought the book _____ she had heard it was good.

- A. due to B. due to the fact that C. so D. because of

9. _____ I get angry and upset, I try to take ten deep breaths.

- A. Until B. Whenever C. Therefore D. For

10. _____ I heard the telephone ring, I didn't answer it.

- A. Because B. Only if C. Even though D. Provided that

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. _____ the post office was closed, I couldn't mail my package.

- A. Therefore B. Because C. However D. Since

2. _____ the secret of how to make silk remained inside Asia, Europeans were forced to pay incredibly high sums of money for this mysterious material to be brought overland to Europe.

- A. Although B. Only if C. Due to D. As long as

3. My sister hates animals. She likes _____ cats dogs.

- A. both - and B. neither - nor
C. either - or D. not only - but also

4. _____ the parents the son have gone on holiday.

- A. Both - and B. Neither - nor
C. Either - or D. Not only - but also

5. _____ I was dead tired, I walked all the way home.

- A. Despite B. Although C. In spite of D. Even

6. Mr. Wilson hopes to avoid surgery. He will not agree to the operation _____ he is convinced that it is absolutely necessary.

- A. in the event that B. only if C. if D. unless

7. Some English words have the same pronunciation _____ they are spelled differently, for example, *dear* and *deer*.

- A. unless B. even though C. since D. only if

8. Olives are a principal source of cooking oil, but by no means the only source.

_____ olives, cooking oil can be extracted from coconuts, corn, and sunflower seeds. A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to

9. I couldn't use the pay phone, _____ I didn't have any coins with me.

- A. yet B. despite C. for D. even though

10. I have to eat breakfast in the morning. _____, I get hungry before my lunch break.

- A. Consequently B. Furthermore C. Otherwise D. However

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I need to find an apartment before I can move. _____ I can find one in the next

week or so, I will move to London the first of next month.

- A. Even if B. Due to C. Only if D. Provided that
2. Tom is trying to reduce the amount of fat he eats. Red meat is high in fat. Tom eats a lot of fish but avoids red meat _____ its high fat content.
- A. in the event of B. besides C. in spite of D. because of
3. _____ I want to take a train trip across western Canada, but my travelling companion wants to fly to Mexico City for our vacation.
- A. Although B. Even if C. Ø D. Nevertheless
4. Ms. Moore, the school counselor, had years of experience dealing with student problems. _____, she is sometimes confronted by a problem that she cannot handle by herself.
- A. Therefore B. Nevertheless
C. Otherwise D. On the other hand
5. Right now all the seats on that flight are taken, sir. _____ there is a cancellation, I will call you.
- A. In the event that B. Nevertheless
C. But D. Even if
6. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, _____, can run within minutes of birth.
- A. however B. nevertheless C. otherwise D. even though
7. You must obey the speed limits on public roads. They are designed to keep you safe. You shouldn't exceed the speed limit _____ you are an experienced race car driver.
- A. only if B. even if C. if D. provided that
8. My nose got sunburnt _____ I wore a hat with a wide brim to shade my face.
- A. if B. since C. because D. even though
9. Do you like jazz? You should go to the jazz festival _____ you like that kind of music.
- A. if B. unless C. although D. while
10. Peter works hard at everything he does. His brother, _____, seldom puts out much effort.
- A. on the other hand B. otherwise
C. furthermore D. consequently

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The festival has many attractions. It will include contemporary orchestral music and an opera. _____, there will be poetry readings and theatrical presentations.
- A. Otherwise B. Furthermore
C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand
2. The bread was old and stale, _____ Mary ate it anyway.
- A. and B. so C. besides D. but

3. Minerals _____ nickel, copper, and zinc can be found in sea water.
A. as samples B. such as C. in an example D. as
4. _____ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.
A. Due to B. Even if C. Provided that D. Unless
5. _____ excellent art museums, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.
A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
6. It is still a good idea to know how to type. _____ the many technological advances in typewriters and word processors, a skilled operator remains indispensable.
A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. in addition to
7. Even though a duck may live on water, it stays dry _____ the oil on its feathers. The oil prevents the water from soaking through the feathers and reaching its skin.
A. due to B. besides C. in spite of D. in the event of
8. Chris cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job _____ he improves his language skills.
A. otherwise B. if C. only if D. unless
9. _____ there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.
A. Unless B. Even though C. Even D. Only if
10. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen. _____, it will stop burning.
A. Consequently B. Furthermore C. Otherwise D. However

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Jane is a very good student of languages. Her brother Michael, _____, has never been able to master another language.
A. therefore B. even though
C. whereas D. on the other hand
2. The ancient Aztecs of Mexico had no technology for making tools from metal. _____, they had sharp knives and spears made from a stone called obsidian.
A. Whereas B. Although
C. Nevertheless D. Despite
3. Kimberly missed the meeting without a good reason _____. She had been told that it was critical that she be there.
A. despite B. despite the fact that
C. even D. however
4. I usually enjoy attending productions in small community theaters. The play we attended last night, _____ was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act.
A. therefore B. however C. whereas D. even though
5. Some snakes are poisonous, ____ others are harmless.
A. but B. so C. for D. despite
6. Most 15th century Europeans believed that the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth. _____, many sailors of the time refused

to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters.

- A. despite B. because C. although D. but
8. I got to class on time _____ I had missed my bus.
 A. even though B. nevertheless C. because D. despite
9. Mike used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities _____ problems with his health.
 A. nevertheless B. because of C. although D. in spite of
10. It should be easy for Peter to find more time to spend with his children _____ he no longer has to work in the evenings and on weekends.
 A. even though B. now that C. due to D. but

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. _____ Nancy is an honest person, I still wonder whether she's telling the truth about the incident.
 A. In spite of B. Since C. Though D. In the event that
2. The professor told me that I was doing well, _____ my final grade was awful!
 A. so B. therefore C. in spite of D. yet
3. _____ Daisy has a new car, she no longer takes the commuter train to work.
 She drives to work every day.
 A. Now that B. While C. Although D. In case
4. You'd better give me your answer quickly, _____ I'll withdraw the invitation.
 A. although B. nevertheless C. even though D. or else
5. I have to go to the meeting _____ I want to or not.
 A. provided that B. whether C. even if D. only if
6. What time do you expect Tom to be home? I must talk to him. I usually go to bed around ten, but tell him to call me tonight _____ it's past midnight.
 A. however B. in case C. even if D. as long as
7. you're going to the fruit market, would you please pick up a few apples for me?
 A. Even if B. Although C. So D. As long as
8. I guess I'm a soft touch. I just lent Jane some money for lunch _____ she never paid me back my last loan.
 A. even though B. unless C. or else D. only if
9. I think I did OK in my speech last night _____ I'd had almost no sleep for 24 hours.
 A. even B. in spite of C. unless D. despite the fact that
10. _____ I ask Mary to run the office while I'm away _____ I know I can depend on her.
 A. unless B. since C. although D. therefore

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The sky was grey and cloudy. _____ , we went to the beach.
 A. Consequently B. Nevertheless C. Even though D. In spite of
2. I turned on the fan _____ the room was hot.

- A. due to B. despite C. even though D. because
3. Sam and I will meet you at the restaurant tonight _____ we can find a babysitter.
A. although B. unless C. otherwise D. only if
4. Carol showed up for the meeting ____ I asked her ____ not to be there.
A. even though B. despite
C. provided that D. because
5. _____ You must lend me the money for the trip. _____, I won't be able to go.
A. Consequently B. Nevertheless C. Otherwise D. Although
6. The road will remain safe _____ the flood washes out the bridge.
A. as long as B. unless
C. providing that D. since
7. The roles of men and women were not the same in ancient Greece. For example, men were both participants and spectators in the ancient Olympics. Women, _____. were forbidden to attend or participate.
A. nevertheless B. on the other hand
C. therefore D. otherwise
8. The windows were all left open. _____, the room was a real mess after the windstorm.
A. Nevertheless B. However C. Consequently D. Otherwise
9. _____ I can't make the presentation myself, I've asked my assistant to be prepared to do it for me.
A. For B. In the event that
C. Only if D. On the other hand
10. It looks like they're going to succeed ____ their present difficulties.
A. despite B. because of C. even though D. yet

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife, _____, prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.
A. nevertheless B. consequently
C. on the other hand D. moreover
2. Some fish can survive only in salt water, _____ other species can live only in fresh water.
A. whereas B. unless C. if D. since
3. _____ Michael became famous, he has ignored his old friends. He shouldn't do like that.
A. If B. Ever since C. Even though D. Due to
4. We're going to lose this game _____ the team doesn't start playing better soon.
A. if B. unless C. although D. whereas

5. My two children are cooking dinner for the family for the first time tonight. _____ the food is terrible, I'm going to enjoy this meal very much. It will be fun to have them cook for me for a change.

A. Only if B. If C. Even if D. Provided that

6. Jack insisted that he didn't need any help, _____ I helped him anyway.

A. and B. so C. besides D. but

7. Florida is famous for its tourist attractions. Its coastline offers excellent white sand beaches. _____, it has warm, sunny weather.

A. Otherwise B. Furthermore

C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand

8. The flowers will soon start to bloom _____ winter is gone and the weather is beginning to get warmer.

A. even if B. now that C. so D. even though

9. Only if you promise to study hard _____ to tutor you.

A. will I agree B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree

10. Camels have either one hump or two humps. The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel, _____, has two humps.

A. nevertheless B. however C. furthermore D. otherwise

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Steel _____ with chromium to produce a noncorrosive substance known as stainless steel.

A. is combined B. that is combined

C. combining D. when combined

2. _____ the 1930s and 1940s, F.D. Roosevelt was elected to the presidency four times.

A. Since during B. During

C. Although during D. While during

3. _____ in 1636, Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.

A. Founding B. Founded

C. It was founded D. Being founded

4. Johnny Carson, _____ late night TV programme is watched by millions of insomniacs in the United States, has been on the air for over twenty years.

A. whose B. who has a C. which is a D. however his

5. _____, Jenny Churchill, was born in the United States and married an Englishman.

A. She was the mother of Winston Churchill

B. The mother of Winston Churchill

C. Her son was Winston Churchill

D. Winston Churchill was her son

6. A tornado touched down today in Kansas, _____ destruction to cornfield and telephone lines.
 A. caused B. causing C. that caused D. it caused
7. Until the 1950s, _____ were still used in some cities to deliver milk and vegetables.
 A. horses and carts B. there were horses and carts
 C. when horses and carts D. that horses and carts
8. _____ percentage of working women in the United States has doubled since 1940 has been the result of both economic and social factors.
 A. The B. That the C. There is the D. It is the
9. Laura is motivated to study _____ she knows that a good education can improve her life.
 A. therefore B. because of C. because D. so
10. Peter broke his leg in two places. _____ he had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.
 A. However B. Consequently C. For that D. Because

IX. MẠO TỪ & GIỚI TỪ

MẠO TỪ (Articles)

A) Khái quát

A/an là mạo từ bất định (*indefinite article*), và *the* là mạo từ xác định (*definite article*). Ta dùng *the* khi điều ta muốn nói đã rõ.

B) Mạo từ *a/an*

Mạo từ *a* được dùng trước một từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm hoặc một nguyên âm nhưng đọc bằng âm tiết là phụ âm.

a man/ a hai/ a university/ a European

Mạo từ *an* được dùng trước một từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (*a, e, i, o, u*) hoặc các từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm *h* cầm.

an apple/ an island/ cm uncle/ cm egg/ an onion/ an hour

Cách dùng:

- Dùng “*a/an*” khi người nghe/người đọc không biết đích xác ta đang nói về người nào hoặc cái gì.

Ví dụ: *There was a car outside the gate.*

I saw a man in the park.

- Dùng “*a/an*” khi nói về nghề nghiệp của một người nào đó.

Ví dụ: *My father is an engineer.*

- Không dùng “*a/an*” trước danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun) hoặc một danh từ số nhiều.

Ví dụ: *a/an KHÔNG* dùng với *information/furniture...* hoặc *houses...*

C) Mạo từ *the*

Mạo từ **the** có dạng như nhau đối với danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được, danh từ số ít và số nhiều: *the boy, the boys, the milk, the money*.

Chú ý: “**the**” được phát âm là /ði:/ khi dùng trước từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm hoặc “h” câm.

the apple, the Internet, the honor, the hour

Cách dùng: Mạo từ “the” được dùng trong các trường hợp sau:

- Danh từ được xác định bởi một CỤM TỪ hoặc một MỆNH ĐỀ.

Ví dụ: *The girl in blue...; ...the place where I met him.*

- Danh từ được xác định khi được đề cập đến LẦN THỨ HAI.

Ví dụ: *Yesterday I met a nice girl. I had cm interesting folk with the girl.*

- Khi tên ngữ là duy nhất hoặc được xem là DUY NHẤT (*unique*).

Ví dụ: *the earth/ the sun/ the moon/ the sea/ the sky*

- Dùng “**the + tính từ + (động từ số nhiều)**” để chỉ một nhóm người có cùng một tính chất nào đó.

the rich/ the poor/ the young/ the old

the sick/ the dead/ the injured/ the homeless/ the unemployed

Ví dụ: *The sick need better medical care.*

- Dùng “**the + quốc tịch + (động từ số nhiều)**” để chỉ một dân tộc.

Ví dụ: *The English are thought to be reserved.*

The Vietnamese are hospitable to foreign tourists.

- Dùng “**the**” trước một số địa danh sau:

đại dương, biển,	the Pacific (Ocean), the South China Sea, the Nile, the
sông, kênh đào	Suez Canal, the English Channel.
quần đảo	the Hawaii Islands
dãy núi	the Alps, the Himalayas
sa mạc	the Sahara, the Gobi
một vài khu vực	the Middle East (Trung Đông), the Far East (vùng Viễn Đông)

- KHÔNG dùng “**the**” trước một số địa danh sau:

châu lục	Asia, Europe, America
quốc gia, bang	England, Vietnam, California, Texas
đảo	Cat Ba Island, Bermuda
thành phố, thị trấn	Hanoi, London, New York
ngọn núi	Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
hồ	Lake Michigan, Hoan Kiem Lake
con đường	Oxford Street, North Road

Chú ý:

Ta dùng “**the**” với một số tên quốc gia như:

The United States = Hoa Kỳ

The United Kingdom = Vương quốc Anh

➤ **BÀI TẬP MẠO TỪ**

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We are late because we got stuck in _____ traffic jam.
A. an B. the C. a D. Ø
 2. Milan is in _____ of Italy.
A. a north B. the north C. northern D. north
 3. If you open the door, _____ air will circulate better.
A. an B. a C. few D. Ø
 4. _____ war is as old as mankind.
A. These B. A C. Ø D. An
 5. _____ have the future in their hands
A. c Young B. A young C. An young D. The young
 6. What time _____ on television?
A. is the news B. are the news C. is news D. are news
 7. _____ man is _____ reasoning animal.
A. The - a B. Ø - a C. Some - any D. Any - the
 8. Unemployment compensation is money to support an unemployed person while he is looking for _____
A. job B. a job C. a work D. works
 9. Carol isn't very well. She's gone to _____.
A. doctor B. a doctor C. the doctor D. doctors
 10. We visited _____.
A. Canada and United States C. Canada and the United States
B. Canada and the United States D. the Canada and United States
- Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. I'm on _____ night duty. When you go to _____ bed, I go to _____ work.
A. a - Ø - Ø B. Ø - Ø - Ø
C. Ø - the - the D. the - Ø - a
 2. The shape of _____ snowflake is unique.
A. Ø B. a C. an D. the
 3. _____ laughter is the best medicine.
A. A B. An C. Some D. Ø
 4. One of the best things we can do to help the environment is to encourage _____ recycling.
A. Ø B. the C. a D. some

5. _____ happiness means _____ different things to different people.
A. Some - these B. The - Ø
C. Ø - Ø D. The - the
6. _____ rain is in the forecast for this afternoon and early evening.
A. Ø B. Any C. An D. This
7. On the economy, we've made _____ of progress, but we still have more to do.
A. a great deal B. a great many C. a number D. a
8. I want to ask if I could have _____ more time on this month's payment.
A. little B. a little C. a few D. few
9. The Titanic, a British steamer, sank in _____ North Atlantic after hitting _____ iceberg.
A. Ø - an B. Ø - Ø C. a - an D. the - an
10. We're still spending _____ money on things we don't really need.
A. a few B. a lot of C. many D. lot

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. There isn't_____ airport near where I live. _____ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
A. an - A B. an The C. the - A D. the — The
2. Tom sat down on _____ chair nearest _____ door.
A. a - a B. a - the C. the - a D. the — the
3. Would you rather live in _____ town or in _____ country?
A. a - a B. a - the C. the - a D. the - the
4. I tried to park my car but _____ was too small.
A. space B. spaces C. a space D. the space
5. "Did you have __ nice holiday?" "Yes, it was _____ best holiday I've ever had."
A. a-a B. a-the C. the-a D. the-the
6. I lay down on _____ ground and looked up at_____ sky.
A. a - a B. a - the C. the - a D. the - the
7. We must do more to protect _____.
A. environment B. an environment
C. the environment D. environments
8. Don't drive _____ into that street. It is one-way street.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
9. Sir Humphrey has been _____ MP for five years.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø
10. I think everyone wants to make friends with John. He is honest person.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- Mary spends most of her free time watching _____.
 A. television B. a television C. the television D. televisions
 - I didn't have time for _____ breakfast this morning because I was in hurry.
 A. Ø - a B. a - the C. the - a D. Ø - Ø
 - Tom is _____ seaman. He spends most of his life at _____ sea.
 A. Ø - a B. a - Ø C. a - a D. a - the
 - _____ changed a lot in the last 30 years.
 A. Life has B. A life has C. The life has D. Lives have
 - _____ we were given wasn't correct.
 A. Information B. An information
 C. The information D. One information
 - _____ giraffe is the tallest of all ____ animals.
 A. Ø - the B. A - Ø C. A - the D. The - Ø
 - _____ bicycle is _____ excellent means of transport.
 A. Ø - the B. A - an C. The - an D. The - Ø
 - Do you think _____ should pay more taxes to help ?
 A. rich - poor B. a rich - a poor
 C. the rich - the poor D. riches - the poor
 - Call _____ ambulance. There's been _____ accident.
 A. the — the B. an - the C. the - an D. an - an
 - "Where are you going?" "I'm going to buy _____"
 A. a bread B. the breads C. a loaf of bread D. many breads
- Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
- Nicola works at a big hospital. She's _____.
 A. nurse B. a nurse C. the nurse D. nurses
 - She works six days ____ week.
 A. in B. for C. a D. the
 - There are millions of stars in _____.
 A. space B. spaces C. a space D. the space
 - Every day _____ begins at 9 A.m. and finishes at 3 p.m.
 A. school B. a school C. the school D. schools .
 - _____ a problem in most big cities.
 A. Crime is B. The crime is C. The crimes are D. A crime is
 - When _____ invented?
 A. was telephone B. were telephones
 C. was the telephone D. were the telephones
 - "Where did you have _____ lunch?" "We went to _____ restaurant."
 A. Ø - a B. Ø- Ø C. a - a D. a - Ø

8. Have you ever been to _____ ?
A. British Museum **B.** a British Museum
C. the British Museum **D.** British Museums
9. We had a very nice meal. _____ especially good.
A. Vegetables were **B.** The vegetables were
C. Vegetable was **D.** A vegetable was today
10. Why aren't your children at _____ today? Are they ill?
A. school **B.** a school **C.** the school **D.** the schools

GIÓI TỪ

A. Prepositions of time (Giới từ chỉ thời gian)

***) at + giờ/dip lố**

*at seven o 'clock/half past six
at Christmas/Easter
at the weekend (hoặc on the weekend)
at noon (lúc 12 giờ trưa)
at night (ban đêm)
at the age often (ở tuổi lên mươi)
at the same time (cùng một lúc, đồng thời)
at present/ at the moment (lúc này)
at bedtime (vào giờ đi ngủ)
at sunrise (lúc mặt trời mọc)
at sunset (lúc mặt trời lặn)*

***) on + ngày**

*on Monday/ September 5th/Tuesday October 2nd 2010
on Christmas Day/New Year's Day
on Saturday morning/Thursday evening
on my birthday
on New Year's Eve (lúc giao thừa)
on a cold night/a beautiful morning...*

***) in + tháng/năm/thập niên**

thé kỉ	<i>in January/2012/ the 1990s</i>
mùa	<i>in the 21st century</i>
khoảng thời gian trong ngày	<i>in spring/summer</i>
	<i>in the morning/the afternoon/the evening</i>

Một số giới từ chỉ thời gian hay nhầm lẫn:

- **By và until/ till'.**

- *By (vào lúc) chỉ việc gì đó xảy ra không trễ hơn, và có lẽ trước thời gian được nhắc đến.*

Cart we finish the work by four o 'clock?

(Chúng ta có thể hoàn thành công việc chậm nhất là vào 4 giờ không?)

- *Until/ till* chỉ điều gì đó kéo dài cho đến nhưng không trễ hơn thời gian được nêu.

The manager won't return until next Monday.

(Cho đến thứ hai tuần tới ông giám đốc mới trở về.)

A part of the motorway will remain closed until this afternoon.

(Một đoạn xa lộ sẽ còn đóng cho đến chiều nay - nó sẽ mở chiều nay.)

- *Until/ till* thường được dùng với câu phủ định, với nghĩa “không diễn ra trước”, thường nhấn mạnh sự trễ nải.

We can't eat until all the guests arrive.

(Chúng ta đợi đến khi khách đến đầy đủ mới ăn - Chúng ta chỉ ăn khi nào tất cả khách đều có mặt.)

■ ***In, during và for:***

- *In và during* thường có nghĩa giống nhau.

In/ During the summer, we often go for long walks.

(Vào mùa hè, chúng tôi thường hay đi dạo những quãng đường dài.)

- Tuy nhiên, *during* chỉ một sự việc cụ thể trên nền bối cảnh một khoảng thời gian nào đó, hoặc có sự gián đoạn.

He has a heart attack and was taken to hospital during the night.

(Ông ấy lên cơn đau tim và được đưa đến bệnh viện trong đêm.)

They walked out of the hall during the speech.

(Họ bỏ ra khỏi hội trường trong lúc người ta đang phát biểu.)

- *For* dùng để chỉ việc gì đó kéo dài trong bao lâu.

He will be on holiday for two days.

(Anh ấy đi nghỉ mát trong hai ngày.)

- *In* được dùng để chỉ việc gì đó sẽ diễn ra nhanh cỡ nào.

I'll meet you in ten minutes.

(Mười phút nữa tôi sẽ gặp anh.)

In less than an hour we had heard all about his adventures.

(Chỉ trong vòng không quá một giờ đồng hồ, chúng tôi đã nghe hết chuyện phiêu lưu của anh ta.)

Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động:

■ ***Across và over.***

Across = từ bên này di chuyển sang kên kia của một bề mặt

Over = lên trên và vượt qua

Chúng có thể dùng như nhau hoặc khác biệt:

a footbridge across/ over the motorway (cầu đi bộ bắc ngang qua xa lộ)

She made attempt to sail alone across the Pacific.

(Cô ấy nỗ lực một mình đong thuyền vượt Thái Bình Dương.)

The children climbed over the wall. (Bọn trẻ leo qua bức tường.)

■ *Along* (dọc theo), *past* (ngang qua) và *through* (xuyên qua):

- *Along* dùng để chỉ vật gì đó di chuyển dọc theo một đường thẳng, hoặc một nơi nào đó dài và hẹp.

- *I followed the manager along the corridor.*

(Tôi bước theo ông giám đốc dọc theo hành lang.)

Along đôi khi được dùng để chỉ một vị trí cụ thể so với một đường thẳng:
Somewhere along the path there is a signpost.

(Ở nơi nào đây dọc đường đi có một biển chỉ đường.)

- *Past* chỉ sự chuyển động ở trước mặt và đi qua một nơi nào đó:

We drove past your house on our way to the party.

(Chúng tôi lái xe ngang qua nhà anh trên đường đến dự tiệc.)

- *Through* chỉ sự chuyển động bên trong một không gian nào đó:

They couldn't get the new sofa through the door.

(Họ không thể đưa chiếc ghế sofa mới qua cửa đi.)

■ *In* (vào trong) và *on* (lên trên):

- *In* dùng để chỉ sự di chuyển vào phần bên trong của một vật chứa, nơi chôn, hoặc khu vực nào đó.

Can you put the milk in the fridge?

(Anh làm ơn cat sữa vào trong tủ lạnh?)

- *On* chỉ sự chuyển động lên trên một bề mặt:

We could hear the rain falling on the roof.

(Chúng tôi nghe thấy tiếng mưa rơi lên mái nhà.)

➤ **Chú ý:**

- a) So sánh cách dùng của “in the end” và “at the end”: in the end = at last, finally... (cuối cùng), at the end of sth (vào cuối...)

Ví dụ: *In the end, they sold their house and left the town.*

They intended to leave the town at the end of this month.

Tương tự với “in the beginning” (ban đầu) và “at the beginning of sth” (vào đầu...):

Ví dụ: *in the beginning, the work looked very difficult.*

At the beginning of work, we met a lot of difficulties.

- b) So sánh cách dùng của “in time” và “on time”:

in time + to-infinitive = kịp thời, kịp lúc để làm cái gì

on time = punctual = đúng giờ

Ta thường dùng “just” trước “in time” để nói “vừa kịp lúc để làm gì”.

Ví dụ: *I got to the station just in time to catch the train.*

John is always on time. He never comes to work late.

B. Prepositions of place (Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn)

***) in = ở trong**

Ví dụ: *They live in a nice house.*

Người ta thường dùng giới từ “in” trong các cụm từ sau:

- in a line/in a row = trong một hàng/một dãy
- in a picture/in a photograph = trong tranh/ảnh
- in a book/a newspaper/a magazine/a letter = trong sách/báo/tạp chí/thư
- in bed = đang nằm trên giường
- in hospital/in prison = đang nằm bệnh viện/dang ở tù
- in the rain/in the sun = trong mưa/ngoài nắng
- in the sky = trên trời
- in a boat = trên thuyền
- in a lift (elevator) = trong thang máy
- in a helicopter = trong máy bay lên thẳng
- in the dark/in the shade = trong bóng tối/trong bóng râm
- in good/bad weather = khi thời tiết tốt/xấu
- in ink/in pen/in pencil = (viết) bằng mực/bút máy/bút chì
- in cash = (trả/mua) bằng tiền mặt

***) at = ở tại.**

Ví dụ: *There were a lot of people waiting at the bus stop.*

Who will meet you at the airport?

Người ta thường dùng giới từ “at” trong các cụm từ sau:

- at the top/at the bottom (of a page/ a list...) = ở trên cùng/ở dưới cùng
 - at the end (of a street/a road...) = ở cuối (con đường...)
 - at home/at work = ở nhà/(đang làm việc) ở cơ quan
 - at school/at college/at university = (đang học) ở trường
- **Chú ý:** - at/on the corner of a Street = ở góc đường
- in the corner of the room/house = ở góc phòng/nhà

***) on = ở trên.**

Ví dụ: *She put her handbag on a chair.*

There was some litter on the floor.

Người ta thường dùng giới từ “on” trong các cụm từ sau:

- on the floor/on the ground = trên sàn nhà/trên mặt đất
- on the first/second/third floor (of a building) = trên tầng một/hai/ba (của một tòa nhà)
- on the grass/on the beach/on the sand = trên bãi cỏ/ bãi biển/bãi cát
- on the board/on the map = trên bảng/trên bản đồ
- on page 10 = ở trang 10
- on the left/on the right = phía bên trái/bên phải
- on a farm = ở trang trại

- on the street/on a river/on the coast = trên đường/trên sông /trên bờ biển
- on a bus/a train/a plane/a ship = trên xe buýt/trên tàu/máy bay/tàu thuyền
(BUT: in a car/in a taxi = trong xe hơi/xe taxi)
- on a bicycle/a motorbike/a horse = trên xe đạp/xe gắn máy/trên ngựa

***) above và over:**

- **Above** hoặc **over** được dùng để chỉ một vật này cao hơn một vật khác.

Ví dụ: *The workshop is over/ above the garage.*

(Phân xưởng nằm trên chỗ sửa xe.)

- **Over** được dùng khi một vật này phủ lên vật khác.

Ví dụ: *Put this rug over that old chair.*

(Hãy phủ tấm thảm này lên trên chiếc ghế cũ kia.)

- **Above** được dùng khi hai vật không trực tiếp chồng lên nhau.

Ví dụ: *The hotel is above the beach.*

(Khách sạn nằm trên cao nhìn ra biển.)

- **Above** được dùng trong các hồ sơ.

Ví dụ: *Please don't write above the line.*

(Xin đừng viết trên dòng.)

***) under và below:**

- Dùng **under** hoặc **below** nếu vật này thấp hơn vật kia.

Ví dụ: *The garage is under/ below the workshop.*

(Xưởng sửa xe nằm dưới phân xưởng.)

- **Under** trái nghĩa với **over**.

Ví dụ: *The old chair is under the rug.*

- **Below** trái nghĩa với **above**.

Ví dụ: *The beach is below the hotel.*

- **Below** được dùng trong các hồ sơ.

Ví dụ: *Please don't write below the line.*

(Xin đừng viết dưới dòng.)

***) between (ở giữa) và among (trong số):**

- **Between** được dùng khi chúng ta nói về hai nơi chốn, hai người hoặc hai vật.

Ví dụ: *The dictionary is between the grammar book and the atlas.*

(Cuốn từ điển nằm giữa cuốn ngữ pháp và tập bản đồ.)

- **Among** được dùng để nhận dạng vật gì hoặc người nào như là một phần của nhóm.

Ví dụ: *Is there a dictionary somewhere among these books?*

(Có cuốn từ điển nào nằm đâu đó trong những cuốn sách này không?)

***) beyond (bên kia, phía bên kia) và behind (d้าน sau):**

- **Beyond** dùng để chỉ nơi nào đáy cách chúng ta xa hơn vật khác.

Ví dụ: *You can't see the lake, it's beyond the forest.*

(Anh không nhìn thấy hồ được, nó nằm khuất ở phía bên kia khu rừng.)

If you are travelling west, New Mexico is beyond Texas.

(Nếu bạn đi về phía tây thì bang New Mexico nằm phía bên kia của bang Texas.)

- **Behind** được dùng để chỉ nơi nào đó bị che khuất một phần hoặc hoàn toàn bởi một vật thể đang trước nó.

Ví dụ: *The robber stood behind the door, hoping he wouldn't be seen.*

(Tên cướp nấp sau cửa, mong sao không ai phát hiện ra hắn.)

C. Prepositions following adjectives (Giới từ theo sau tính từ)

1. Adjectives + of

<i>afraid of:</i> sợ	<i>full of:</i> đầy
<i>ashamed of:</i> hổ thẹn	<i>guilty of:</i> có tội
<i>aware of:</i> có ý thức	<i>independent of:</i> độc lập
<i>capable of:</i> có khả năng	<i>jealous of:</i> ghen tị
<i>certain of/ about:</i> chắc chắn	<i>proud of:</i> hạnh diện
<i>confident of:</i> tự tin	<i>scared of:</i> sợ
<i>envious of:</i> ghen tị	<i>short of:</i> cạn kiệt
<i>fond of:</i> thích	<i>typical of:</i> tiêu biểu

2. Adjectives + for

<i>available for:</i> có sẵn	<i>famous for:</i> nổi tiếng về
<i>eager for:</i> nóng lòng chờ	<i>necessary for:</i> cần thiết cho
<i>eligible for:</i> xứng đáng cho	<i>useful for sth:</i> có ích cái gì

3. Adjectives + in

<i>disappointed in/ with:</i> thất vọng	<i>rich in:</i> giàu về
<i>interested in:</i> thích thú, quan tâm	<i>successful in:</i> thành công về

4. Adjectives + to

<i>accustomed to:</i> quen với	<i>harmful to:</i> có hại
<i>contrary to:</i> trái với	<i>important to:</i> quan trọng với
<i>equal to:</i> ngang bằng với	<i>married to sb:</i> kết hôn với ai
<i>essential to/for:</i> cần thiết cho	<i>open to:</i> mở ra cho
<i>grateful to sb for sth:</i> biết ơn	<i>similar to:</i> tương tự với

5. Adjectives + at

<i>amazed at:</i> kinh ngạc về	<i>good at:</i> giỏi về
<i>bad at:</i> dở về	<i>quick at:</i> nhanh nhẹn về
<i>clever at:</i> khéo léo về	<i>surprised at:</i> kinh ngạc về

6. Adjectives + with

<i>annoyed with sb:</i> bức tức	<i>friendly with:</i> thân thiện với
<i>acquainted with:</i> quen với	<i>happy with/ about:</i> hạnh phúc

angry with/at sb: giận
bored with/ fed up with: chán
busy with: bận rộn với
crowded with: đông đúc
disappointed with: thất vọng
familiar with sth: quen thuộc với

honest with sb: thành thật
identical with: giống hệt với
impatient with: mat kiên nhẫn
pleased/ satisfied with: hài lòng
popular with: phổ biến với

7. Adjectives + about

anxious about: lo lắng
careful about: cẩn thận
careless about: bất cẩn

confused about: nhầm lẫn về
excited about: phấn khích
serious about: nghiêm túc
sorry about/for: hối tiếc

8. Adjectives + from

absent from: vắng mặt ở
different from: khác với

free from: thoát khỏi
safe from: an toàn

D. Prepositions following verbs (Giới từ theo sau động từ)

1. Verbs + about

care about sb: quan tâm đến
dream about/of sb/sth: mơ về
hear about sth: nghe nói đến
remind sb about sth: nhắc ai nhớ

talk about sb/sth: nói về
tell sb about sb/sth: nói với ai về
think about sb/sih: nghĩ về
warn sb about/ of sth: cảnh báo về

2. Verbs + at

arrive at/in: đến nơi
glance at sb/sth: liếc nhìn
laugh at sb: cười nhạo ai
look at sb/sth: nhìn vào
point (sth) at sb/sth: chỉ vào

shout at sb: la mắng ai
(shout to sb: hét to gọi ai
smile at sb: mỉm cười với ai
stare at sb/sth: nhìn chằm chằm
throw sth at sb: ném vào ai

3. Verbs + for

apply for sth: nộp đơn xin
ask (sb) for sth: xin, yêu cầu
blame sb for sth: đổ lỗi cho ai về
forgive sb for sth: tha thứ
hope for slh: hi vọng

look for sb/sth: tìm kiếm
pay for sth: trả tiền
search for sb/sth: tìm kiếm
thank sb for sth: cảm ơn
wait for sb/sth: chờ đợi

4. Verbs + from

escape from: trốn thoát khỏi

protect sb from sth: bảo vệ

differ from: khác biệt

prevent sb from sth: ngăn chặn

suffer from sth: chịu đựng

5. Verbs + in

believe in: tin tưởng vào

specialize in sth: chuyên về

succeed in sth: thành công

fail in: thất bại

6. Verbs + into

crash into: đụng vào

cut into: cắt ra

divide into: chia ra

translate ... into: dịch ra

7. Verbs + of

accuse sb of sth: buộc tội

approve of sth: đồng ý, chấp thuận

consist of: bao gồm

die off from: chết vì

disapprove of sth: không đồng ý

suspect sb of sth: nghi ngờ

8. Verbs + on

concentrate on sth: tập trung vào

congratulate sb on slh: chúc mừng

depend on: lệ thuộc, tùy thuộc

insist on sth: cù khăng khăng

live on sb/sth: sống dựa vào

rely on: tin cậy vào

spend (money) on sth: tiêu tiền

9. Verbs + to

apologize to sb for sth: xin lỗi về

complain to sb about sth: than phiền

describe sth to sb: mô tả cho ai

explain slh to sb: giải thích

happen to sb/sth: xảy ra với

listen to: lắng nghe

prefer ...to...: thích... hơn...

talk/speak to sb: nói với ai

10. Verbs + with

collide with: đụng vào

compare with/to: so sánh với

fill with: làm đầy

equip with: trang bị

provide sb with sth: cung cấp

(provide sth for sb: cung cấp)

supply sb with sth: cung cấp

(supply slh to sb: cung cấp)

E. Prepositions following nouns (Giới từ theo sau danh từ)

- **a check for** (a sum of money): ngân phiếu có giá trị...

They send me a check for \$100.

- **a demand/ a need for** sth: yêu cầu/ nhu cầu về cái gì

The company closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its products.

- **a reason for** sth: lí do của cái gì

The train was late but no one knew' the reason for the delay.

- **a rise/ a fall/ a decrease in** sth: sự tăng/ giảm

There has been an increase in car accidents lately.

- **an advantage/a disadvantage of** (doing) sth: lợi thế/ sự bất lợi về cái gì

The advantage of living alone is that! you can do what you like.

Nhưng ta có thể nói:

There is an advantage in/to doing something.

- **a cause of** sth: nguyên nhân của cái gì

Nobody knows what cause of the explosion was.

- **a photograph of** sb/sth: hình của ai/ cái gì

He always keeps a photograph of his wife in his wallet.

- **damage to** sth: sự thiệt hại

The accident was my fault, so I paid for the damage to the other car.

- **an invitation to a party**...: lời mời đến buổi tiệc....

Did you get an invitation to the party?

- **a reaction to** sth: phản ứng lại cái gì

I was surprised at her reaction to what I said.

- **a solution to a problem/ an answer to a question/ a reply to a letter/ a key to a door:** giải pháp cho vấn đề/ câu trả lời cho một câu hỏi/ sự phúc đáp thư/ chìa khoá mở cửa

Do you think we'll find a solution to this problem?

The answer to your question is "No".

- **an attitude to/toward** sb/sth: thái độ đối với ai/ cái gì

His attitude to/toward his job is very negative.

- **a relationship/ a connection/ contact with** sb/sth: mối quan hệ/ sự liên quan/ sự giao tiếp với

Do you have a good relationship with your parents?

The police want to question a man if/ connection with the robbery.

- **a relationship/ a connection/ a difference between** two things: mối quan hệ/ sự liên quan/ sự khác biệt giữa hai vật

The police have said there is no connection between the two murders.

There is some difference between British English and American English.

F. Prepositions followed by nouns (Giới từ theo sau bởi danh từ)

- **(pay) by Check (but pay in cash or pay cash):** (trả) bằng ngân phiếu
Did you pay by Check or in cash ?

- **(to do sth) by accident/ by mistake/ by Chance:** tình cờ làm cái gì
We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by Chance.

- **a play by Shakespeare/ a painting by Rembrand/ a novel by Tolstoy:** vở kịch của Shakespeare/ bức tranh của Rembrand/ tiểu thuyết của Tolstoy

Have you read any books (written) by Tolstoy?

- **(to be/ to fall) in love with sb:** phải lòng ai

Have you ever been in love with anyone?

- **in one's opinion:** theo ý kiến/ quan điểm của ai
In my opinion the film wasn't good.

- (to be) **on fire**: đang cháy
Look! That car is on fire.
- (to be) **on the phone**: nói chuyện qua điện thoại
I've never met her but I've spoken to her on the phone.
- **on television/ on the radio**: trên truyền hình/ trên đài
I didn't watch the game on television. I listened to it on the radio.
- (to be/ to go) **on a diet**: ăn kiêng
I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet.
- (to be/ to go) **on strike**: đình công
There are no trains today. The railroad workers are on strike.
- (to be/to go) **on vacation/ on business/ on a trip/ on atour/ on a cruise/ on an expedition**: đi nghỉ mát/ đi công tác/ tham gia một chuyến đi/ đi chơi bằng thuyền/ đi thám hiểm
Did you go to Paris on business or on vacation?
- (go to a place) **for a vacation**: (đi đến đâu) để nghỉ mát
Tom has gone to France for a vacation.
- (to go/ to come) **for a walk/ for a swim/ for a meal..**đi dạo/ đi bơi/ đi ăn
*She always goes for a walk with her dog in the afternoon.
After work we went to the restaurant for a meal.*
- (to have sth) **for breakfast/ for lunch/ for dinner**: (dùng món gì) cho bữa ăn sáng/bữa trưa/bữa tối
What did you have for lunch?

➤ BÀI TẬP GIÓI TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We met a lot of people _____ our holiday.
 A. for B. during C. with D. of
2. We watched television _____ two hours last night.
 A. for B. during C. on D. in
3. I posted the letter today, so they should receive it _____ Monday.
 A. in B. at C. by D. for
4. Hurry up! We've got to go _____ five minutes.
 A. in B. at C. on D. to
5. The price of electricity is going up _____ October.
 A. in B. at C. on D. of
6. We traveled overnight to London and arrived _____ 4 o'clock _____ the morning.
 A. at - on B. in - on C. at - in D. in - on
7. I must hurry. I want to get home _____ to see the football match on TV.
 A. on time B. in time C. by time D. at time

8. The bus was late this morning but it's usually _____.
A. for times B. at times C. on time D. in time
9. ____ of the concert, there was great applause.
A. In the end B. At the end C. At finish D. In the stop
10. We had a lot of problem with our car. _____, we sold it and bought another one.
A. At finish B. By the end C. At the end D. In the end

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. _____ we didn't like each other very much, but _____ we became good friends.
A. At first - at the end B. By first - in the end
C. At first - in the end D. By first - at the end
2. Are you going away the beginning of August or _____ the end?
A. in - in B. in - at C. at - in D. at - at
3. What have you got _____ your mouth?
A. at B. in C. on D. of
4. Write your name _____ the top of the page.
A. in B. on C. at D. with
5. You will find details of TV programmes _____ page seven.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
6. Here's a shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not _____ the list.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
7. I was standing _____ the back, so I couldn't see very well.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
8. She got _____ the car and drove away.
A. on B. at C. into D. of
9. Look! That car is _____. Someone calls the fire brigade.
A. in fire B. into flame C. on flame D. on fire
10. We hadn't arranged to meet. We met _____.
A. on change B. B. Change
C. by opportunity D. for opportunity
- Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. John has gone away. He'll be back _____ a week.
A. on B. at C. in D. for
2. We're having a party _____ Sunday. Can you come?
A. on B. at C. in D. Do of
3. "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's one _____ the end of the road."
A. on B. at C. in D. by
4. You've got a dirty mark _____ your cheek. Have a look the mirror.

- A. at - on B. on - in C. on - on D. at - at
5. Bombay is _____ the west coast of India.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
6. Don't ask me to decide, I'm not very good _____ making decisions.
A. on B. at C. in D. about
7. He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact _____ other people.
A. for B. about C. among D. with
8. Linda is a keen photographer. She likes taking pictures _____ people.
A. at B. with C. of D. for
9. She looks quite hard. You can't accuse her _____ being lazy.
A. of B. for C. with D. on
10. I've got an interview next week. It's _____ 9.30 _____ Wednesday morning.
A. at - on B. at - in C. on - at D. on - on

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss it.
A. about B. with C. on D. Ø
2. Sue isn't usually here weekends. She goes away.
A. in B. at C. for D. within
3. The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always time.
A. for B. at C. on D. in
4. Look at the leaves _____ that tree. They're _____ a beautiful colour.
A. in - in B. of - at C. at - at D. on — in
5. "Have you ever been _____ Hanoi?" "No, I've never been _____ Vietnam."
A. in - in B. for - for C. to - to D. at - at
6. "Are you _____ this photograph?" "Yes, that's me, _____ the left."
A. in-on B. on-at C. at-of D. of-in
7. He's very brave. He's not afraid _____ anything.
A. at B. for C. of D. with
8. I'm surprised _____ the amount of traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.
A. about B. at C. with D. for
9. I prefer this chair _____ the other one. It's more comfortable.
A. with B. for C. to D. from
10. The river divides the city _____ two parts.
A. with B. into C. between D. among

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage _____ the other car.
A. of B. for C. to D. on
2. I'll be at home _____ Friday morning. You can phone me then.

- A. on B. at C. in D. of
3. I'm going away _____ the end of February.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
4. When we were in France, we spent a few days _____ Paris.
A. on B. at C. in D. to
5. Our flat is _____ the second floor of the building.
A. on B. at C. in D. of
6. What time did they arrive _____ the hotel?
A. to B. at C. in D. on
7. I saw Tom _____ a concert last Saturday.
A. on B. at C. in D. for
8. John's away at the moment. He's _____ holiday in France.
A. on B. at C. in D. for
9. We travelled _____ 7.30 train, which arrived at 10.00.
A. in the B. on the C. by the D. by
10. Have you read any books _____ Agatha Christie?
A. of B. from C. by D. with

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "What time will you arrive?" "I don't know. It depends _____ the traffic."
A. of B. from C. for D. on
2. Thank you. It was very nice _____ help me.
A. of you to B. for you to C. for you for D. of you for
3. Why were you so unfriendly _____ Linda? Have you had an argument with her?
A. of B. to C. for D. with
4. I'm not very good _____ repairing things.
A. at B. for C. in D. about
5. "Who is Tom Wilson?" "I've no idea. I've never heard _____ him."
A. about B. from C. after D. of
6. It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening _____ the same time.
A. at B. on C. in D. of
7. I couldn't decide whether to buy the sweater or not. _____, I decided not to.
A. At the end B. In the end C. By the end D. For the end
8. The road is busy all the time, even _____.
A. on night B. at the evening
C. at night D. on the evening
9. We went _____ the theatre last night. We had seats _____ the front row.
A. to - in B. for - on C. at - of D. in - at

10. "Where's the light switch?" "It's _____ the wall _____ the door."
- A. in - on B. on - in C. on - by D. by - in

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He was bitterly ashamed _____ her for doing such things.
A. for B. by C. in D. of
 2. Admission to this club is open _____ people under 30 only.
A. with B. for C. to D. by
 3. Contrary _____ what most people used to believed, these minerals are not renewable.
A. with B. for C. against D. to
 4. Don't you get tired _____ watching that TV programme every night?
A. with B. by C. of D. at
 5. Don't be afraid _____ the dog. He is quite harmless.
A. in B. of C. at D. for
 6. My little son was interested _____ fixing broken objects and making new things.
A. on B. at C. with D. in
 7. His solution to the math problem is similar _____ many of his colleagues.
A. with B. as C. for D. to
 8. Is the government capable _____ finding a solution to the unemployment among school-leavers?
A. of B. to C. for D. at
 9. It was very good _____ you to help Susan with her homework.
A. for B. to C. with D. of
 10. Many young people want to be independent _____ their parents.
A. of B. from C. with D. agaisnt
- Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. Now the manager is no longer as indifferent _____ criticism as he used to be.
A. against B. to C. towards D. with
 2. Since all vehicles were banned from the city centre, the air has been safe _____ pollution.
A. about B. apart from C. from D. against
 3. Seven o'clock will be convenient _____ me to come to your birthday party.
A. for B. to C. with D. of
 4. The chemical that his company is producing is dangerous _____ humans.
A. to B. for C. with D. against
 5. The public are very concerned _____ the increasing crime rates in the city.
A. with B. at C. about D. for
 6. The students are bored _____ learning the same subjects this semester.

- A. of B. at C. in D. with
7. The scientists are well aware _____ the seriousness of environmental pollution.
A. about B. of C. with D. for
8. We must hurry, otherwise we should be late _____ school.
A. for B. to C. from D. on
9. We were lucky to be able to finish the project ahead _____ schedule.
A. for B. of C. before D. by
10. The buildings in this city are typical _____ Western architectural styles.
A. of B. for C. with D. about

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. You'd better not approach him, he is concerned _____ a difficult problem that needs all his attention.
A. about B. on C. for D. with
2. Contrary _____ my expectation, they didn't feel uneasy _____ the result of the match.
A. to - with B. for - at C. on - for D. to - about
3. Wearing long hair and colourful clothes was very popular _____ young people of the 1970s.
A. for B. to C. by D. with
4. Michael is absorbed _____ his work and didn't notice me coming.
A. with B. in C. at D. by
5. During Christmas season, many streets are crowded _____ season-goers.
A. with B. by C. about D. of
6. I felt sorry _____ those people whose flights were delayed for so long.
A. at B. with C. for D. to
7. The investors in the company were angry _____ losing their money.
A. for B. about C. with D. of
8. The children who came from the nearby school were very friendly _____ the villagers.
A. with B. to C. about D. toward
9. The island we visited this morning is famous _____ its standing stones.
A. about B. with C. of D. for
10. The children are fed up _____ doing the same things day after day.
A. for B. of C. with D. about

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. _____ Mr. Smith lives _____ 667A 10th Street New York.
A. in - in B. at - in
C. on - in D. in - on
2. We reached _____ her house safe and sound.

- A. at B. to C. with D. Ø
3. Our car traveled _____ an average speed of 60 mph.
- A. with B. on C. in D. at
4. She likes to listen _____ Radio Australia.
- A. from B. Ø C. at D. to
5. He stopped _____ Park Avenue.
- A. by B. at C. into D. on
6. He hasn't been cheerful _____ the death of his close friend.
- A. for B. during C. since D. from
7. He has just left _____ the airport to meet his friend.
- A. for B. at C. to D. from
8. That part of the country is famous _____ its pineapples.
- A. from B. against C. for D. at
9. John's business developed _____ an idea he had years ago.
- A. by B. into C. from D. off
10. I forgot _____ that appointment.
- A. Ø B. on C. over D. about

Exercise 11: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We went there _____ car and stayed there for the whole day.
- A. in B. on C. with D. by
2. We started our journey _____ foot.
- A. with B. by C. on D. in
3. He always prevents _____ me doing my duty.
- A. of B. from C. with D. against
4. I write letters _____ my left hand.
- A. in B. by C. with D. at
5. The war victims suffered terribly _____ cold and hunger.
- A. with B. from C. through D. of
6. She is absent _____ class.
- A. at B. from C. to D. away
7. It is very nice _____ you to take so much trouble.
- A. of B. to C. for D. from
8. You may write _____ pencil.
- A. with B. by C. in D. of
9. He congratulated me _____ winning the competition.
- A. of B. on C. at D. about
10. Remember me _____ your parents.

- A. to B. for C. with D. about

Exercise 12: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. “Where did you get the name Harrison?” “I was named _____ my grandfather.”
A. after B. of C. with D. from
2. “Where does Anthony work?” “I think he’s associated _____ the Forman Company.”
A. with B. by C. of D. to
3. “What’s in the jar?” “It’s filled _____ candy.”
A. by B. of C. in D. with
4. “Did you go to college?” “Yes, I graduated _____ the University of London.”
A. for B. by C. from D. in
5. “Ruth is a surgeon, isn’t she?” “Yes, but her family doesn’t approve _____ her career.”
A. from B. of C. about D. with
6. “Where have you been?” “I apologize _____ being late but I missed the bus.”
A. to B. by C. for D. of
7. “What’s the meat loaf?” “It’s a dish composed _____ hamburger, eggs, tomato sauce, and bread crumbs.”
A. of B. by C. to D. for
8. “Can I help you?” “Yes, I’m interested _____ buying a pair of boots.”
A. in B. on C. for D. by
9. “Why is the landlord upset?” “Because so many people are complaining _____ the rent increase.”
A. by B. for C. to D. about
10. “What a nice town!” “It’s famous _____ its historical places.”
A. for B. about C. with D. by

Exercise 13: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. “Can I borrow some money from you?” “You’re already in debt _____ me for sixty dollars.”
A. for B. to C. from D. by
2. “I thought we were buying hamburgers for the barbecue.” “Some insisted _____ getting chickens too.”
A. on B. to C. with D. about
3. “What do you think of the idea Albert had?” “I’m opposed _____ it.”
A. to B. with C. of D. about
4. “I’ll buy the cake for John’s birthday party.” “And I’ll be responsible _____ the ice-cream.”
A. of B. for C. to D. with
5. “What was your impression _____ the art exhibit?” “I thought some of the works

were uninteresting."

A. of

B. with

C. to

D. at

6. "It's been raining for a day and a half." "If this situation continues, people will be faced _____ serious flooding."

A. to

B. about

C. with

D. by

7. "Can you tell me where a hardware store is?" "I'm sorry. I'm not familiar _____ this city."

A. with

B. to

C. about

D. for

8. "How's your homework coming?" "I haven't gotten very far ____ it."

A. about

B. on

C. for

D. of

9. "Tony and Toby look so much alike." "Yes. It's difficult to distinguish one twin _____ another."

A. to

B. by

C. for

D. from

10. "How did you change the class schedule?" "We combined the reading class _____ the writing class."

A. to

B. with

C. from

D. into

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When _____ Rome do as the Romans do.

A. with

B. for

C. in

D. like

2. This must be done _____ any price.

A. for

B. at

C. in

D. with

3. Your request _____ a scholarship has been taken into account.

A. for

B. in

C. under

D. into

4. He succeeded _____ getting a scholarship.

A. in

B. about

C. for

D. on

5. Mark twain based the story _____ his experiences in the west.

A. of

B. from

C. in

D. on

6. We just rested _____ a short time.

A. at

B. since

C. for

D. in

7. Don't put _____ until tomorrow what you can do today.

A. away

B. off

C. aside

D. up

8. Robert Nixon was ashamed _____ his father.

A. at

B. with

C. of

Do about

9. I prefer tea _____ coffee.

A. than

B. to

C. from

D. for

10. If you don't know the meaning of the word, look it _____ in the die

A. up

B. of

C. after

D. for

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following

1. He insisted _____ taking us to dinner.
A. on B. in C. over D. of
2. Do you believe _____ ghosts?
A. Ø B. in C. on D. at
3. Edward depends _____ his family for financial support.
A. on B. in C. of D. at
4. Ann looked _____ the mirror and admired her new blouse.
A. in B. at C. on D. into
5. The new manager's name is familiar _____ most of us.
A. as B. from C. to D. with
6. Those books deal mainly _____ tropical plants.
A. with B. in C. for D. up
7. _____ the game last evening, my cousin hurt his ankle.
A. For B. During C. Since D. From
8. Water consists _____ oxygen and hydrogen.
A. about B. with C. for D. of
9. There is an increasing demand taller building in _____ big cities.
A. with B. on C. for D. of
10. Is the United States the wealthiest country _____ the world?
A. of B. in C. over D. on

Exercise 16: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The vicar passed _____ yesterday. No flowers by request.
A. over B. off C. through D. away
2. Good citizens always abide _____ the law.
A. to B. by C. with D. for
3. Did you go anywhere
your summer holidays?
A. at B. during C. in D. on
4. I'll call you _____ about five o'clock. I need your help.
A. out B. off C. up D. on
5. We like to read that novel _____ Jack London.
A. of B. from C. in D. by
6. He put the ladder _____ the wall.
A. on B. upon C. against D. over
7. Our country is rich _____ natural resources.
A. in B. of C. with D. about

8. This American-Asian child is greatly indebted _____ this association _____ their help.

- A. to - about B. in - with C. to - for D. of - for

9. They prefer driving _____ walking.

- A. than B. with C. to D. from

10. A great number of people still believe _____ ghosts nowadays.

- A. in B. at C. on D. o

Exercise 17: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We run out _____ petrol now.

- A. off B. up C. of D. in

2. Women who are pregnant should not jump _____ the ditch.

- A. over B. past C. in D. into

3. The attendance _____ this meeting is very large.

- A. for B. in C. at D. to

4. I am thankful him _____ his _____ advice.

- A. of - for B. to - about C. to - on D. to - for

5. The little boy is always negligent _____ his duty.

- A. at B. in C. on D. of

6. She gets accustomed _____ working late at night.

- A. to B. with C. in D. for

7. The customer insisted _____ being paid at once.

- A. at B. for C. on D. in

8. The manager traveled sometimes _____ pleasure and sometimes _____ business.

- A. for - for B. with - on C. for - on D. in - in

9. Their parents are concerned _____ their bad behaviours.

- A. to B. for C. about D. of

10. The newcomers are familiar _____ these sub-standard living conditions.

- A. in B. about C. on D. with

Exercise 18: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'd like to stay _____ Sunday, if that's OK.

- A. to B. by C. until D. at

2. He died _____ heart failure _____ Thursday night. His wife is still suffering _____ shock.

- A. for - at - for B. of - on - from

- C. from - on - from D. at - on - from

3. I arrived _____ May last year, and _____ the end of the year I spoke quite good English.

- A. in – by B. on - until C. in - since D. on - for
4. We are going to stay in a little cottage, and that will be very nice because I haven't been to the seaside _____ two years at least.
- A. in B. for C. at D. within
5. It's ages we _____ we said goodbye.
- A. for B. since C. during D. until
6. He insisted _____ seeing the document.
- A. in B. on C. at D. for
7. It never occurred _____ me to ask him _____ proof _____ his identity.
- A. for - for - of B. to - for - of
- C. to - for - for D. for - for - for
8. The house is _____ fire. Send _____ the Fire Brigade!
- A. at - on B. on - off C. on - for D. at - off
9. They succeeded _____ escaping _____ the burning house.
- A. on - off B. in " from C. in - during D. on - from
10. I'm not interested _____ anything that happened _____ the very remote past.
- A. on - in B. in - on C. on - on D. in - in

Exercise 19: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We are appreciated _____ their efforts.
- A. for B. of C. in D. over
2. _____ waiting for half an hour, he went home in disgust. _____ he was sorry hadn't waited longer.
- A. After - After B. Then - After
- C. Then - Afterwards D. After - Afterwards
3. He was acquitted _____ the crime.
- A. into B. of C. upon D. over
4. Go back _____ the hotel and wait there _____ I call for you.
- A. until - until B. to - since
- C. to - until D. to - afterwards
5. The simplification guide was adapted _____ our use.
- A. to B. from C. over D. for
6. I don't object _____ lending you my pen, but wouldn't it be better if you had a pen _____ your own?
- A. for - of B. to - on C. to - with D. of - of
7. All members must conform _____ the regulations.
- A. about B. from C. with D. to
8. I was _____ the impression that I had paid you _____ the word you did

- _____ me
- A. on - for - for B. under - for - for
C. under - on - for D. under - for - with
9. One member did not concur _____ others.
A. about B. with C. on D. over
10. The professor interceded _____ the authorities on my behalf.
A. at B. on C. with D. for
- Exercise 20: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. It's typical _____ him to forget my birthday.
A. for B. of C. with D. to
2. A decrease _____ the supply _____ goods usually results in an increase _____ the price _____ the goods.
A. on - of - in - of B. in - of - in - of
C. in - of - on - of D. on - of - in - for
3. People's reliance _____ automobiles as their chief form _____ transformation has increased over the years.
A. on - of B. for - of
C. upon - of D. A and C are correct
4. The professor gave us several examples _____ that phenomenon.
A. for B. of C. about D. to
5. The demand _____ personal computers continues to grow.
A. for B. of C. in D. with
6. Once scientists fully understand the cause _____ the disease, it becomes easier for them to find a cure _____ it.
A. for-for B. of-of C. of-to D. of-for
7. Have you had much experience _____ computers?
A. with B. in C. for D. about
8. This is an exception _____ the general rule.
A. with B. on C. over D. to
9. How do you account _____ this discrepancy?
A. on B. for C. of D. in
10. We could sell the balloon high _____ the town.
A. onto B. on C. up D. above

Exercise 21: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He threw stones _____ his attackers, trying to drive them _____.
A. to - away B. at - away
C. at - off D. B and C are correct

X. ĐỘNG TÙ NGUYÊN MẪU VÀ DANH ĐÔNG TÙ

1. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau là “to-infinitive”:

afford (<i>có đủ khả năng</i>)	I can't afford to buy the car.
agree (<i>dòng ý</i>)	He agreed to pay the cost.
aim (<i>nhắm mục đích</i>)	They aim to increase income tax by 20%.
appear (<i>dường như</i>)	The police appeared not to know the accident.
arrange (<i>sắp xếp</i>)	We arranged to meet him tomorrow morning.
ask (<i>yêu cầu</i>)	The customer asked to see the manager.
attempt (<i>cố gắng</i>)	We will attempt to send it to you at once.
beg (<i>van xin</i>)	He begged to be told the truth.
choose (<i>lựa chọn</i>)	We choose to stay at a cheap hotel.
claim (<i>tuyên bố</i>)	I don't claim to be an expert in Internet.

<i>decide</i> (quyết định)	He decided to see her this afternoon.
<i>demand</i> (đòi hỏi)	I demanded to read the document first.
<i>fail</i> (thất bại)	Mary failed to pass her final examination.
<i>hesitate</i> (do dự)	Don't hesitate to ask me if you have trouble.
<i>hope</i> (hi vọng)	We hope to finish the project this month.
<i>intend</i> (dự định)	They intend to take immediate action.
<i>manage</i> (xoay xở)	We managed to cross the river before dark.
<i>offer</i> (dề nghị)	John offered to do the washing-up.
<i>plan</i> (có kế hoạch)	They planned to build a new airport.
<i>prepare</i> (chuẩn bị)	We are preparing to make a plan for the trip.
<i>pretend</i> (giả vờ)	The soldiers pretended to withdraw.
<i>promise</i> (hứa)	My parents promised to send me some money.
<i>refuse</i> (từ chối)	The director refused to offer him the job.
<i>seek</i> (cố tìm cách)	They sought to bring the conflict to an end.
<i>seem</i> (dường như)	The ship seemed to be sinking.
<i>struggle</i> (tranh đấu)	She struggled to achieve success as an actress.
<i>tend</i> (có xu hướng)	Many people tend to spend less nowadays.
<i>threaten</i> (đe dọa)	The terrorists threatened to kill the hostage.
<i>volunteer</i> (tình nguyện)	The young man volunteered to help us.
<i>want</i> (muốn)	Does anyone want to say something?
<i>wait</i> (chờ đợi)	We are waiting to go.
<i>wish</i> (mong ước)	We all wish to live a longer life.

2. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau là “gerund”:

<i>admit</i> (thừa nhận)	The man admitted having stolen the car.
<i>advise</i> (khuyên)	I'd advise buying your tickets well in advance.
<i>allow</i> (cho phép)	We never allow smoking in this office.
<i>appreciate</i> (trân trọng)	I don't appreciate being treated like that.
<i>avoid</i> (tránh)	She avoided meeting him again.
<i>can't help</i> (không tránh khỏi)	When I see him, I can't help laughing
can't stand (không chịu đựng được)	I can't stand working with him.
<i>consider</i> (xem xét)	John has considered going to America.
<i>delay</i> (hoãn)	We delay paying the rent until next week.
<i>deny</i> (từ chối)	The boy denied having stolen the bag.
<i>discuss</i> (thảo luận)	We'll discuss building a new school.
<i>enjoy</i> (thích)	We enjoy walking together on the beach.
<i>fancy</i> (mong ước)	Do you fancy going out somewhere?
<i>finish</i> (hoàn thành)	Linda finished writing the annual report.

<i>give up</i> (từ bỏ)	Pete gained weight when he gave up smoking.
<i>imagine</i> (tưởng tượng)	She imagined living in a beautiful villa.
<i>involve</i> (bao gồm)	The test involves answering questions.
<i>keep (on)</i> (tiếp tục)	We kept (on) walking for hours on the beach.
<i>mind</i> (đề ý)	I don't mind walking if it's fine.
<i>miss</i> (bỏ lỡ)	The goalkeeper missed stopping the ball.
<i>postpone</i> (hoãn)	The company postponed signing the contract.
<i>practise</i> (luyện tập)	She practiced playing the piano two hours a day.
<i>prohibit</i> (cấm)	The policy prohibits smoking in public places.
<i>quit</i> (chấm dứt)	The doctor advised him to quit smoking.
<i>recall</i> (nhớ lại)	I can't recall meeting her before.
<i>recommend</i> (đề nghị)	We recommend checking the report carefully.
<i>report</i> (báo cáo)	The neighbor reported seeing him doing that.
<i>resist</i> (chống lại)	The Parliament resisted increasing income tax.
<i>resent</i> (bực tức)	He resents being treated like a child.
<i>resume</i> (tiếp tục)	He resumed reading after a while.
<i>suggest</i> (đề nghị)	They suggested going by train.
<i>tolerate</i> (chịu đựng)	She refused to tolerate being called a liar.

3. Động từ được theo sau bởi *infinitive* hoặc *gerund*.

- Infinitive/Gerund không làm thay đổi nghĩa.

Các động từ như: *begin* (bắt đầu), *start* (bắt đầu), *bother* (bận tâm), *continue* (tiếp tục), *propose* (đề nghị) + infinitive/gerund mà ý nghĩa không thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *I started to work/ working there five years ago.*

➤ **Chú ý:** Khi các động từ này ở thì tiếp diễn thì bắt buộc dùng *infinitive*.

Ví dụ: *It was starting to rain.*

- Infinitive/Gerund làm thay đổi nghĩa.

REMEMBER/FORGET

remember/forget to do something: diễn tả một việc cần phải làm

remember/forget doing something: diễn tả một sự việc trong quá khứ

Ví dụ: *Remember to turn off the lights before going out.*

I always remember meeting you for the first time.

REGRET

regret to do something: dùng để thông báo một tin xấu

regret doing something: hối tiếc về một sự việc trong quá khứ

Ví dụ: *We regret to tell you that you have failed the test.*

I regret going to that party. It was so boring.

TRY/ATTEMPT

try/attempt to do something: cố gắng làm điều gì đó

try/attempt doing something: thử làm điều gì đó

Ví dụ: I tried to open the door but I couldn't.

Why don't you try using another key?

STOP

stop to do something: dừng để làm việc khác

stop doing something: dừng một việc đang làm

Ví dụ: I stopped to do my homework.

The doctor said I should stop smoking.

GO ON

go on to do something: tiếp tục làm một việc khác

go on doing something: tiếp tục việc đang làm

Ví dụ: After receiving the test paper, they went on to do it.

They went on knocking at the door after a short pause.

MEAN

mean to do something: có ý định

mean doing something: có nghĩa là, liên quan đến

Ví dụ: She means to work for that company.

I need the report tomorrow. It means staying up Idle tonight to finish it.

NEED/WANT

need/want to do something: diễn tả ý chủ động

need/want doing something: diễn tả ý bị động

Ví dụ: I need to cut my hair.

My hair needs cutting.

LIKE/LOVE/I HATE

like/love/hate to do something: diễn tả một điều thích làm/ghét làm trong trường hợp cụ thể

like/love/hate doing something: diễn tả một sở thích chung

Ví dụ: I like to go fishing in this weather.

I like going/to go fishing.

- **Động từ chỉ giác quan (verbs of perception).**

Các động từ chỉ giác quan: see, watch, hear, smell, taste, feel, notice...

Động từ chỉ giác quan + Verb-ing: khi nhận biết thì hành động đang diễn tiến chưa hoàn tất.

Động từ chỉ giác quan + bare infinitive: khi nhận biết thì hành động đã hoàn tất.

Ví dụ: They saw the man running away. (They still saw him.)

They saw the man run away. (They couldn't see him, but he had escaped.)

4. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau bởi tân ngữ và “to-infinitive”:

advise (khuyên) They advised me to go to the doctor,

allow (cho phép) John allowed me to use his motorbike,

ask (yêu cầu) I asked him to post the letter this morning.

<i>beg</i> (cầu xin)	He begged her to come and stay with him.
<i>cause</i> (gây ra)	Inflation caused prices to rise sharply.
<i>challenge</i> (thách thức)	He challenged me to swim across the river.
<i>convince</i> (thuyết phục)	They convinced him to give up the project.
<i>dare</i> (thách đố)	He dared me to do better than he had done.
<i>encourage</i> (khuyến khích)	My father encouraged me to study better.
<i>expect</i> (mong đợi)	We expect you to come on time.
<i>forbid</i> (cấm đoán)	They forbid him to leave.
<i>force</i> (ép buộc)	The investigator forced him to speak the truth.
<i>hire</i> (thuê mướn)	The owner hired her to clean the toilets.
<i>instruct</i> (chỉ dẫn)	We instructed him to keep the door locked.
<i>invite</i> (mời)	We'd like to invite you to attend the meeting.
<i>need</i> (cần)	We need you to help us.
<i>order</i> (ra lệnh)	The judge ordered the man to pay a fine.
<i>permit</i> (cho phép)	They permitted the workers to leave early.
<i>persuade</i> (thuyết phục)	I persuade her to come and see me.
<i>remind</i> (nhắc)	Mother reminded me to turn off the lights.
<i>require</i> (đòi hỏi)	The director required her to submit her report.
<i>teach</i> (dạy bao)	He taught me to dance.
<i>tell</i> (báo)	We told him to sit down and wait.
<i>urge</i> (thúc giục)	I urged him to apply for a job.
<i>want</i> (muốn)	We all want you to be happy.
<i>warn</i> (cảnh báo)	I warned him not to drink so much,

5. Một số động từ theo sau bi tân ngữ và “bare infinitive”:

<i>make</i> (báo, buộc)	The secretary made me fill in the form.
<i>let</i> (để cho)	The mother let her children play in the yard.
<i>have</i> (nhờ, sai báo)	I had the maid clean up my room.

➤ BÀI TẬP ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU & DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

- The television programmes we allow _____ influence their learning.

A. a children to watch	B. our children to watch
C. our children watch	D. our children watching
- They didn't stop _____ until 11.30 pm when there was a power cut.

A. singing and dancing	B. to sing and dance
C. to sing and dancing	D. Do singing and dance
- When his wife arrived home after a hard day at work, he has sitting on the sofa _____.

A. watched TV	B. watch TV
---------------	-------------

- C. was watching TV **D.** watching TV
4. "You are lucky. You haven't got a child _____," said the woman.
 A. for looking after **B.** looking after
 C. to look after **D.** look after
5. A cat suddenly ran across the street. Fortunately, he managed _____ just in time.
 A. to stop **B.** stopping
 C. to have stopped **D.** stopped
6. Phosphates_____ to most land in our country.
 A. need added **B.** need to add
 C. need to be added **D.** need to adding
7. Whenever those two ladies meet, they stop _____.
 A. talking **B.** talk **C.** to talking **D.** Do to talk
8. It's still raining. I'd rather _____ home and watch football on TV.
 A. to stay **B.** staying at **C.** stay **D.** stayed at
9. I think I hear someone _____ the back windows. Do you hear it, too?
 A. trying open **B.** trying to open
 C. tried opening **D.** try opened
10. John hoped to finish _____ two of his essays before the deadline.
 A. written **B.** write **C.** to write **D.** writing

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. One of the least effective ways of storing information is learning _____. it.
 A. how repeat **B.** repeating **C.** to repeat **D.** repeat
2. Most of the participants can't help _____ why the president spoke so angrily.
 A. wonder **B.** wondering **C.** to wonder **D.** wondered
3. The woman meant _____. a newspaper but she didn't see anyone _____. it.
 A. to buy - to sell **B.** to buy - selling
 C. buying - selling **D.** buying - to sell
4. The spokesman began by_____. them where the mountain was, and went on _____ about its history.
 A. telling-talking **B.** tell -talk
 C. told - talked **D.** to tell - to talk
5. I was very angry. My friend John refused _____. me a lift as he had promised.
 A. give **B.** to give **C.** giving **D.** gave
6. The film wasn't very good. The audience started _____. before it was over.
 A. leaving **B.** to leave
 C. leave **D.** Both A and B are correct.
7. After walking for two hours the guide stopped to let the others _____. with them.
 A. caught up **B.** to catch up

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. My friend forgot _____ a book back to the library, so she had to pay a fine.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. to be taken

2. Would you please remind her _____ me tomorrow morning?
A. calling B. to call C. call D. to calling

3. John volunteered _____ the food supply to the victims in the flood area.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. to be taken

4. My friend Mary is a blabbermouth! She can't resist _____ everyone what she heard from me.
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. to telling

5. The man finally admitted _____ responsible for the accident last week.
A. to be B. for to be C. for being D. being

6. The union members discussed _____ the next meeting until next week.
A. postponing B. to postpone C. postpone D. to postponing

7. I have been having a lot of trouble with my old car the last couple of months. I am thinking about _____ a new one.
A. to buy B. buy C. buying D. being bought

8. Mary appeared _____, but she wasn't. She was only pretending.
A. to asleep B. to be asleep C. being asleep D. be asleep

9. Johnny is only nine, but he intends _____ a singer when he grows up.
A. be B. to be C. being D. Both B and c are correct.

10. It was cold and snowy last Sunday, so we postponed _____ the botanical gar-

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I hope _____ all of my courses this term. So far my grades have been pretty good.

A. passing B. to pass C. pass D. being passed

2. My father continued _____ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.
- A. read B. and reading C. and read D. reading
3. Linda can't stand _____ in a room with all of the windows closed.
- A. sleep B. sleeping C. slept D. being slept
4. It is raining hard this week but Tom expects _____ with his friends this weekend.
- A. to go and fish B. to go fishing C. going fishing D. to go to fish
5. When my teacher is listening to someone who is speaking English very fast, he nods his head and pretends _____ .
- A. understanding B. to understand C. understanding it D. to be understood
6. After the operation, the doctors wouldn't let him _____ out of bed for three days.
- A. get B. to get C. getting D. gets
7. She always puts off _____ the dinner dishes until the next morning.
- A. to wash B. washing C. wash D. and washes
8. After Ann got a speeding ticket and had to pay a big fine, she decided _____ over the speed limit on interstate highways.
- A. to stop driving B. to stop to drive C. stopping to drive D. stopping driving
9. Graduate students often spend their weekends _____ data for their research.
- A. gather B. to gather C. gathering D. to gathering
10. I can feel something _____ up my leg. It must be an insect.
- A. crawling B. crawl C. to crawl D. crawled

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I meant _____ the car with petrol before we left.
- A. filling B. fill C. to be filled D. to fill
2. It's not worth _____ out now. It's much too late.
- A. to go B. go C. going D. gone
3. Language permits us _____ our heritage through literature narratives.
- A. preserve B. preserving C. to preserve D. to preserving
4. She dislikes _____ B, Crowds of people.
- A. to surround B. surrounded C. being surrounded D. be surrounded
5. Susan is in the kitchen looking for something _____ .
- A. for eating B. to eating C. to eat D. eating
6. The other motorist drove right in front of me. I couldn't avoid _____ his car.
- A. to hit B. hitting C. hit D. from hitting

7. There are people who can't help _____ when they see someone _____ on a banana skin.

A. laugh-slip B. to laugh - slip
C. laughing - slipping D. laughing - slip

8. There is only one student in the classroom _____ his lesson.

A. prepare B. to prepare C. was preparing D. preparing

9. This examination will test your ability _____ written English.

A. to understand B. of understanding
C. understand D. understanding

10. Ann was very surprised to find the door unlocked. She remembered _____ it before she left.

A. to lock B. locking C. lock D. she locks

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I regret _____ that the sight-seeing tour has been cancelled because of the bad weather.

A. to tell you B. telling you C. to say you D. saying you

2. I would advise you _____ that young man in spite of his charming manner.

A. to not trust B. to never trust C. never to trust D. never trust

3. He refused _____ us the reason why he didn't come to the class meeting last week.

A. telling B. to tell C. told D. having told

4. He won a lottery, and his girlfriend suggested _____ the world.

A. to travel around B. travelling in
C. travelling around D. that they travelling around

5. His parents insisted a medical training course _____.

A. on him taking B. on taking him
C. him to take D. on him to take

6. Luckily, she remembered _____ up with petrol, so she didn't run out on the way there.

A. to fill B. filling C. filled D. having filled

7. The doctor advised him _____ and to take up some sport.

A. to stop smoke B. stop smoking
C. to stop smoking D. to stop to smoke

8. The children's mother warned them _____ near the river.

A. not to go B. to not go C. not going D. don't go

9. The teachers have had some problems _____ return the papers to the students.

A. to decide when to B. deciding when to
C. deciding D. deciding when

10. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Lee? I don't recall _____ her around the office.

- A. to have seen B. seeing C. to see D. being seen

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She can't stand _____ under such terrible conditions.
A. working B. to work C. to be working D. work
2. It is no use _____ over spilt milk.
A. crying B. to cry C. to be crying D. cried
3. ESL students from Asia often have great difficulty _____ some English sounds.
A. to pronounce B. in pronouncing
C. pronouncing D. B and c are correct
4. She preferred _____ rather than give up.
A. die B. dying C. to die D. to be die
5. He prefers _____ a walk to _____ TV at home.
A. taking - watching B. take - watch
C. taking - to watch D. take - watching
6. The doctor persuaded the patient _____ in hospital for 3 more days.
A. staying B. to stay C. being stayed D. stay
7. Tell her _____ for school again.
A. not late B. not being late
C. not to be late D. not be late
8. It is a busy season. The farmers have the tractors _____ all day long.
A. to run B. running C. run D. ran
9. We watched the little girl _____ across the street.
A. to walk B. walk C. is walking D. walked
10. The book is worth _____.
A. reading B. being read
C. to be read D. A and B are correct

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Having finished _____ the reading report, I began to listen to music.
A. to write B. to have written C. writing D. written
2. Don't risk _____ alone in the river.
A. to swim B. to swimming C. swimming D. swim
3. I'm considering _____ your invitation.
A. accepting B. to accept C. accepted D. accept
4. The boy pretended _____ an essay, but in fact he wrote nothing.
A. to be writing B. writing C. to be written D. to writing
5. I have never expected _____ such a strange thing in my life.
A. seeing B. having seen C. to see D. to be seen
6. Please let it _____. I am not used _____. something twice.

- A. understand - to saying B. to understand - to say
 C. be understood - to saying D. be understood - to say
7. Suddenly she burst out _____ with the words, "I'm sick and tired _____ soups and porridges for him. I can't go on _____ my best years."
 A. crying - of making - wasting B. to cry - to make - to waste
 C. to cry - of making - wasting D. crying - to make - wasting
8. Do not delay _____ him.
 A. to answer B. to answering C. answering D. to be answering
9. I remember _____ the post office, but I forgot _____ the letter, which is still in my briefcase.
 A. to enter - to post B. entering - posting
 C. entering - to post D. to enter - posting
10. I've seen him _____ the office early this afternoon. He seemed unhappy about something.
 A. leave - to have been B. leaving - to have been
 C. left - to have been D. A and B are correct

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. A plane with an engine on fire approached the runway. _____ was frightening. There could have been a terrible accident.
 A. Watch it to land B. Watching it land
 C. To watch it to land D. Watching to land it
2. The customs officer opened the suitcase _____ if anything illegal was being brought into the country.
 A. seeing B. for seeing C. see D. to see
3. Sometimes very young children have trouble _____ facts from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.
 A. to separate B. separating C. to be separated D. for separating
4. Do you have an excuse _____ late to class two days in a row?
 A. for to be B. for being C. to be D. being
5. John made me _____ him next week.
 A. to promise to call B. to promise calling
 C. promise to call D. promise calling
6. I got Mary _____ her car for the weekend.
 A. to let me to borrow B. let me borrow
 C. to let me borrow D. let me to borrow
7. I'll never forget _____ that race. What a thrill!
 A. to win B. win C. being won D. winning
8. No one has better qualifications. Linda is certain _____ for the job.
 A. to choose B. having chosen

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I don't blame you for not _____ outside in this awful weather.

2. This moment will live in our memory for many years _____.

3. When Paul was questioned by the police, he admitted knowing about the embezzlement of funds from his company, but denied _____ in any way.

- A. to be involved
 - B. involving
 - C. having involved
 - D. being involved

4. Mr. Davis was upset by _____ him the truth.

- A. our not having told B. us to tell
C. we didn't tell D. not to tell

5. We considered _____ after work.

6. Jack offered _____ care of my garden while I was out of town.

- A. take
 - B. taking
 - C. to have taken
 - D. to take

7. Could you please come over? I need you _____ the refrigerator.

- A. help me moving
 - B. helping me to move
 - C. to help me move
 - D. help me to move

8. I just heard that there's been a major accident that has all of the traffic tied up.

If we want to get to the play on time, we'd better avoid _____ the highway.

- A. having taken B. take C. to take D. taking

9. The painting was beautiful. I stood there _____ it for a long time.

- 10.** Jim should have asked for help instead _____ to do it himself.

- A. of trying B. to try C. try D. from trying

XI. QUÁ KHỨ GIÁ ĐỊNH & THÚC GIÁ ĐỊNH

Thì quá khứ giả định (past subjunctive):

- Động từ thường (ordinary verbs): dùng dạng quá khứ (*go* → *went*)
- Động từ tình thái (modal verbs): dùng dạng quá khứ (*can* → *could*)
- Động từ be: dùng *were* cho tất cả các ngôi

Thì quá khứ giả định được dùng trong câu “I wish” cho điều mong muôn ở hiện tại. Ta hãy xem cách dùng thì trong câu “I wish”.

Mệnh đề danh ngữ đi sau động từ wish thường diễn tả một điều ước không có thực trong thực tế.

Cách dùng	Động từ	Ví dụ
Điều ước ở hiện tại	wish + subject + Past Subjunctive hoặc Simple Past hoặc Past Continuous	<i>I wish I had a car. (I don't have a car now.)</i> <i>We wish it weren't/wasn't raining now (It is raining now.)</i> <i>I wish I were/was a teacher. (I'm not a teacher now.)</i>
Điều ước ở tương lai	wish + subject + would/could + bare infinitive	<i>I wish I could go to the party tomorrow, (but I can't go) n</i> <i>She wishes you would be there with her next week, (but you won't be there with her next week)</i>
Điều ước ở quá khứ	wish + subject + Past Perfect hoặc Perfect Conditional	<i>I wish I hadn't gone to that party, (but I went there)</i> <i>I wish you would have told me the truth, (but you didn't)</i> <i>They wish he could have joined that trip with them, (but he didn't)</i>

Chú ý: “If only” (= Giả mà, giả như) được dùng như “I wish” nhưng mang sắc thái biểu cảm hơn.

Ví dụ: If only you were here with me.

(I really want you here with me but you aren't.)

If only I hadn't met you before. (I so regret that I met you before.)

Thì giả định hiện tại (present subjunctive) dùng động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc **should** + động từ nguyên mẫu (cho tất cả các ngôi).

Ví dụ thì giả định hiện tại của **to be** là **be** cho tất cả các ngôi.

Thì giả định hiện tại được dùng trong một số câu cảm thán để diễn tả mong ước hoặc hi vọng.

Một số động từ thông dụng sau là thì giả định hiện tại là:

demand (that) = đòi hỏi (rằng)

- insist** (that) = nhất quyết (rằng)
- request/ ask** (that) = yêu cầu (rằng)
- suggest/ propose** (that) = đề nghị (rằng)
- recommend** (that) = giới thiệu/tiến cử (rằng)
- advise** (that) = khuyên (rằng)

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng sau là thì giả định hiện tại là:

- it is important** (that) = điều quan trọng là
- it is necessary** (that) = điều cần thiết là
- it is essential** (that) = điều thiết yếu là
- it is vital** (that) = điều quan trọng là
- it is imperative** (that) = điều cấp bách là

Ví dụ:

- *The teacher demands that we be on time.*
(Thầy giáo yêu cầu chúng em phải đúng giờ.)
- *I insisted that he pay me the money.*
(Tôi nhất quyết yêu cầu anh ta trả tôi số tiền đó.)
- *It is important that they be told the truth.*
(Điều quan trọng là họ phải được cho biết sự thật.)

➤ BÀI TẬP QUÁ KHỨ GIÀ ĐỊNH VÀ THÚC GIÀ ĐỊNH

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Yesterday I met a very beautiful girl I really want to see her again but I don't know how to go about it. I wish _____.
 A. I didn't meet her yesterday B. I had known her address
 C. I knew her address D. I will meet her tomorrow
2. I wish you _____ to me before you went and bought that car.
 A. spoke B. have spoken
 C. had spoken D. would have spoken
3. I wish I _____ that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him.
 A. had known B. know C. knew D. have known
4. If only he _____ harder, he wouldn't have lost his job.
 A. worked B. would work C. had worked D. has worked
5. He always talks as though he _____ a public meeting.
 A. addressing B. addressed
 C. were addressing D. is addressing
6. He talks as if he _____ all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.
 A. was doing B. had done C. did D. has done
7. If only we _____ a car. I'm tired of the bad service of public transport.
 A. buy B. bought C. buying D. buys

- A. were B. had C. have D. are
8. If only we _____ more time, we could have seen more of the country.
A. would have had B. have had
C. had had D. had
9. She treats us as if we _____ all idiots.
A. are B. had been C. have been D. were
10. The cheese looks as if rats _____ it.
A. nibbled B. were being nibbled
C. had nibbled D. nibbling

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wish I _____ so much money when I was in town yesterday.
A. wouldn't have spent B. hadn't spent
C. wouldn't spend D. didn't spend
2. You talk as though it _____ a small thing to leave your country forever.
A. is B. were C. will be D. would be
3. Everybody feels sorry for him and says that "If only he _____ more time revising."
A. should have spent B. would have spent
C. had spent D. spent
4. He looks as though he _____ a square meal in his life, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.
A. has never got B. never gets
C. never got D. had never got
5. If only he _____ accept some help with the work instead of trying research.
A. can B. may C. would D. were
6. If only he _____ told us the truth in the first place, things wouldn't have gone so wrong.
A. had B. has C. would have D. should have
7. I wish I _____ to rewrite my essay. only made it worse.
A. wouldn't have tried B. wouldn't try
C. hadn't tried D. didn't try
8. I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.
A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend
9. Last year the potato harvest was very disappointing but this year it looks _____ we shall have a better crop.
A. as though B. like that C. like D. to be that
10. That man has brought us nothing but trouble. I wish I _____ eyes in him.
A. would never have set B. had never set
C. would have never set D. would have set

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When he is asked to say about it, it is clear that he knows nothing about their secret but they treat him as if he _____ all about it.
- A. knew B. had known C. would know D. must know
2. I feel terrible. The heavy truck raced by me at full speed. I feel as if I _____ over.
- A. was run B. have been run
C. had been run D. was being run
3. She speaks English as though it _____ her native language.
- A. is B. being C. were D. be
4. My sister says she can't come to the party with us. We wish she _____ her mind and _____ to come with us.
- A. changed - decided B. would change - decide
C. will change - decide D. had changed - decided
5. The cat turned her head toward John and looked at him quizzically, almost as if she _____ what he said.
- A. understands B. understood
C. had understood D. would have understood
6. This evening the surface of the lake is completely still. It looks as if it _____ of glass.
- A. is made B. was made
C. were made D. has been made
7. Why didn't you tell me about this before? I certainly wish I _____ earlier.
- A. would be informed B. was informed
C. were informed D. had been informed
8. I know a farmer who talks to his animals as if they _____ people.
- A. are B. would be C. were D. had been
9. Ann is grown up now. You shouldn't speak to her as if she _____ a child.
- A. is B. were C. had been D. would be
10. We became good friends almost immediately. After talking to each other for only a short time, we felt as if we _____ each other all of our lives.
- A. knew B. had known C. know D. have known
- Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. It is important that he _____ well in his exam.
- A. does B. did C. do D. will do
2. I requested that he _____ because he was making so much noise.
- A. should have left B. must have left
C. should leave D. would leave
3. The local council recommended that John _____ to the head of the department.
- A. is appointed B. was appointed
C. be appointed D. could be appointed

4. It's necessary that the train _____ on time.
A. is B. will be C. would be D. be
5. Rose suggested _____ a suit and tie when he went for the interview.
A. him to wear B. he wear
C. he must wear D. that he wears
6. She urged that her husband _____ the letter.
A. write B. wrote C. had written D. has written
7. The doctor recommended that John _____ for a couple of days.
A. could rest B. might rest C. must rest D. rest
8. The officer demanded that the soldiers _____ the hill.
A. captured B. would capture C. had captured D. capture
9. We suggested that she _____ the 10.30 train immediately.
A. take B. may take C. might take D. has to take
10. Our teacher insists that we _____ more careful in our writings.
A. are B. were C. would be D. be

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The movie director insisted that everything about his productions _____ authentic.
A. would be B. is C. can be D. be
2. It is essential that pollution _____ and eventually _____.
A. must be controlled - must be eliminated
B. be controlled - be eliminated
C. is controlled - is eliminated
D. Both B and c are correct
3. The students requested that the test _____ , but the professor decided against a postponement.
A. be postponed B. must be postponed
C. postponed D. could be postponed
4. The director recommended that all the staff _____ anyone outside the company during the training session.
A. do not contact B. cannot contact
C. must not contact D. not contact
5. The recommendation that all people affected by the storm _____ immediately was approved.
A. must be evacuated B. be evacuated
C. ought to be evacuated D. had to be evacuated
6. Linda insisted that the newly-born baby _____ after her husband's father.
A. could be named B. be named
C. must be named D. ought to be named

7. It was such a beautiful evening that one _____ of us suggested we the meeting outside.
 A. could have B. had C. might have D. have
8. I requested that first-year students _____ to change their courses in the first two weeks.
 A. would be permitted B. be permitted
 C. were permitted D. are permitted
9. His advisor recommended that he _____ at least three courses each semester.
 A. takes B. can take C. should take D. would take
10. It is important that he _____ to the director of the programme.
 A. must speak B. speak C. would speak D. speaks

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The law requires that everyone _____ his car checked at least once a year.
 A. has B. have C. must have D. be having
2. It is not necessary that he _____ an entrance examination to be admitted to an American university.
 A. take B. takes C. must take D. be taking
3. It is imperative that everyone _____ home immediately.
 A. must return B. return C. returns D. to return
4. It is essential that vitamins _____ either by foods or by supplementary tablets.
 A. are supplied B. be supplied C. can be supplied D. supplied
5. The City Planning Department proposed that the new highway _____ in the fiscal year 2015.
 A. be built B. will be built C. would be built D. is to be built
6. It is important that you _____ late.
 A. not be B. will not be C. are not D. be not
7. It is essential that no one _____ to the meeting hall without proper identification.
 A. is admitted B. can be admitted C. be admitted D. admitted
8. The manager asked that we _____ sure to lock all the doors before we left.
 A. were B. would be C. be D. must be
9. It is vital that no one else _____ about the secret military operation near the border.
 A. know B. knows C. can know D. could know
10. It is the recommendation of the consultants that the patient _____ under medical supervision.
 A. treating B. treated C. be treated D. is treated

XII. SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

(Subject-Verb agreement)

- A. Nguyên tắc thông thường về sự hòa hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ:

- Chủ từ số ít + động từ số ít (Singular subject + singular verb)
- Chủ từ số nhiều + động từ số nhiều (Plural subject + plural verb)

Ví dụ: *My father has retired from work.*

They are working in the garden.

B. Chú ý sự hòa hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ trong một số trường hợp sau:

1. Danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns), kết hợp với động từ số ít:

The grass is growing all over the field.

2. Các danh từ nối với nhau bằng liên từ and kết hợp với động từ số nhiều.

Rice and rubber from Vietnam are exported to many countries.

Bread and butter were bought in large quantities.

Nhưng khi các danh từ tạo thành một ý tưởng duy nhất, chúng kết hợp với động từ số ít:

Bread and butter was all we had. (= bread with butter on it)

3. Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng or, either...or, not... but, not only... but also, động từ kết hợp với danh từ gần nhất:

Either Mary or I come to the party.

Not only alcohol but also cigarettes are banned in the campus.

Neither my friends nor I am in the school team.

4. Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng with, like, as well as, together with, along with, in addition to, other than, động từ kết hợp với danh từ đầu tiên (chính là chủ từ của động từ):

The manager, together with his assistants, has arrived.

The kitchen, as well as the toilets, is painted in blue.

5. Sự kết hợp giữa chủ từ và các từ như every, each, one:

Each/ every + danh từ số ít + động từ số ít

Each of/ One of + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số ít

Each Student/Each of the students has to do homework.

6. Some, part, all, most, almost, the rest, the remainder of... và các phân số kết hợp với động từ số nhiều hoặc số ít tùy thuộc vào danh từ theo sau of:

-Động từ ở hình thức số ít nếu danh từ ở hình thức số ít.

-Động từ ở hình thức số nhiều nếu danh từ ở hình thức số nhiều.

Most of the house was destroyed.

Most of the tomatoes are too ripe.

Some of the fruits were not fresh.

Three quarters of the earth's surface is water.

Only a third of the students are qualified for the new course.

7. Đại từ bất định (indefinite pronouns) kết hợp với động từ số ít.

Đại từ bất định thường có dạng:

every- (everything, everyone, everybody)

some- (something, someone, somebody)

any- (anything, anyone, anybody)

no- (nothing, no one, nobody)

Someone has eaten all the food.

Nobody wants to attend the meeting.

8. Các danh từ chỉ sự đo lường, thời gian, khoảng cách, các tựa đề sách thường kết hợp với động từ số ít:

Twenty kilometers is too far to walk.

Five minutes is not enough for me to do it.

A hundred thousand dollars is a big sum of money.

9. Trong mẫu câu '**There + be + danh từ**' (Có...), động từ kết hợp với danh từ, nếu có nhiều danh từ thì nó thường kết hợp với danh từ đầu tiên:

There are many books on the table.

There is a table and four chairs in the room. There are four chairs and a table in the room.

10. Khi từ để hỏi (who, what, which), **cụm từ** hoặc **mệnh đề làm chủ từ** thì ta dùng động từ với hình thức số ít:

Who wants tea? - We all do, please.

What has happened? - Several things have happened.

What the boy wants now is a glass of water.

Reading books is one of my favorite hobbies.

11. **Danh từ tập hợp** (collective nouns) thường đi với động từ số ít nếu ta xét nó một cách toàn thể hoặc với động từ số nhiều nếu ta xét từng bộ phận/ thành viên của nó:

The whole team is playing very well.

My family is a happy one.

My family are early risers.

Danh từ tập hợp thường gấp:

army (quân đội)	association (hiệp hội)	audience (khán giả)
-----------------	------------------------	---------------------

board (ban, ủy ban)	choir (đội đồng ca)	class (lớp học)
---------------------	---------------------	-----------------

club (câu lạc bộ)	college (cao đẳng)	committee (ủy ban)
-------------------	--------------------	--------------------

community	company	congress (quốc hội)
-----------	---------	---------------------

(cộng đồng)	(nhóm người cùng với nhau)
-------------	----------------------------

council (hội đồng)	crew (nhóm, đội...)	crowd (đám đông)
--------------------	---------------------	------------------

family (gia đình)	gang (băng nhóm)	government (chính phủ)
-------------------	------------------	------------------------

group (nhóm)	jury (hội đồng xét xử)	military (quân đội)
--------------	------------------------	---------------------

navy (hải quân)	orchestra (ban nhạc)	staff (toàn bộ nhân viên)
-----------------	----------------------	---------------------------

team (đội, nhóm)	university (đại học)
------------------	----------------------

12. **Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều hoặc danh từ chỉ vật gồm hai thành phần như nhau** kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

<i>goods</i> (hàng hóa)	<i>belongings</i> (vật mang theo)
<i>clothes</i> (quần áo)	<i>earnings</i> (tiền kiếm được)
<i>outskirts</i> (vùng ven)	<i>surroundings</i> (vùng xung quanh)
<i>scissors</i> (cái kéo), <i>pincers/ pliers</i> (cái kìm), <i>shorts</i> (quần soóc), <i>trousers/ pants</i> (quần tây), <i>jeans</i> (quần jeans), <i>glasses/ spectacles</i> (kính đeo mắt), <i>binoculars</i> (ống nhòm), <i>shoes</i> (giày), <i>sneakers</i> (giày để chơi quần vợt), <i>boots</i> (giày ống)	

➤ **Chú ý:** A pair of + danh từ gồm hai thành phần (dạng số nhiều) + động từ số ít

Ví dụ: A pair of binoculars is necessary for your trip.

Your new pair of jeans is really fashionable.

13. Tên các môn học, căn bệnh, môn thể thao và một vài từ khác có tận cùng -s kết hợp với động từ số ít:

Môn học: *mathematics* (toán), *physics* (vật lí), *politics* (chính trị học), *economics* (kinh tế học), *statistics* (môn thống kê)

Căn bệnh: *measles* (bệnh sởi), *mumps* (bệnh quai bị), *rickets* (bệnh còi xương), *AIDS* (bệnh AIDS)

Môn thể thao: *athletics* (điền kinh), *gymnastics* (thể dục dụng cụ), *billiards* (môn bi-da), *darts* (trò chơi ném phi tiêu), *dominoes* (cờ domino)

Từ khác: *news* (tin tức, thời sự)

Mathematics is my favorite subject.

Measles is a dangerous disease.

Dominoes is a good game for relaxing.

14. Một số danh từ số nhiều không có tận cùng -s/es kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

people (dân chúng), *children* (trẻ em), *women* (phụ nữ), *police* (cảnh sát), *cattle* (gia súc lớn như trâu, bò), *fish* (cá), *sheep* (cừu), *deer* (nai, hươu), *reindeer* (tuần lộc)

Many young people are out of work now.

Sheep were grazing in the fields.

15. Danh từ chỉ ngôn ngữ kết hợp với động từ số ít, danh từ chỉ dân tộc (the + nationality) kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

English is spoken in many parts of the world.

The English really like to drink tea.

16. The number of + danh từ (dạng số nhiều) + động từ (dạng số ít)

A number of + danh từ (dạng số nhiều) + động từ (dạng số nhiều)

The number of days in a week is 7.

A number of students were absent yesterday.

➤ **BÀI TẬP SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ**

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Many a candidate _____ unsuccessful in the oral test.

- A. was B. aren't C. weren't D. were

2. The number of learners _____ not large; therefore, a number of headphones _____ available to them in the lab.
- A. are - is B. is - are C. are - are D. is - is
3. His choice of words _____ very good.
- A. are B. be C. is D. being
4. Anybody who _____ my keys will be given a reward.
- A. find B. finds C. are finding D. found
5. The Browns here since 1950.
- A. are living B. has lived
C. have been living D. has been living
6. John, as well as I, a student.
- A. are B. were C. is D. has been
7. Not only John but his brothers also in debt.
- A. is B. have C. was D. were
8. The majority of the TOEFL tests difficult.
- A. are B. is C. be D. being
9. Local news on TV every afternoon at 5:50 pm.
- A. were B. was C. is D. are
10. A number of sheep died from a strange disease.
- A. have B. has C. is D. are

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The number of students _____ increasing now.
- A. are B. was C. were D. is
2. A number of students _____ playing table-tennis now.
- A. are B. was C. were D. is
3. Physics _____ my favorite subject.
- A. are B. is C. was D. have been
4. The boy, with his two companions, _____ the cherry tree now.
- A. has split B. have split
C. is splitting D. are splitting
5. The writer and poet _____ going to preside over this meeting.
- A. are B. is C. have been going D. is to
6. Neither the mother nor the children _____ aware of the danger.
- A. were B. was C. is D. has been
7. She told me that she _____ happy for what she _____.
- A. is feeling - did B. was feeling - had done
C. feels - did D. had felt - has been doing
8. The teacher said that Vietnam _____ to South-East Asia.

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The science classes at this _____ difficult.
A. schools are B. school is C. school are D. school's is
 2. One of the _____ from Italy.
A. student is B. students are C. student are D. students is
 3. _____ to support the case against James?
A. Is there any proof B. Are there any proof
C. Is there any proofs D. Are there any proofs
 4. You have to pay extra if you take too _____ with you.
A. much luggages B. many luggages
C. much luggage D. many luggage
 5. _____ in your class have tickets for the lecture series?
A. Do any of the student B. Does any of the student
C. Do any of the students D. Does any of the students
 6. Bob got tired. It's going to be difficult for him to find _____ job.
A. other B. another C. the other D. the another
 7. There _____ available in this area of specialization.
A. isn't a lot of job B. aren't a lot of jobs
C. isn't a lot of jobs D. aren't a lot of job
 8. He made the soup by mixing _____ meat with some rice.
A. little B. few C. a little D. a few
 9. Many of the _____ not expect to win.
A. participants in the race do B. participants in the races does
C. participants in the race does D. participant in the race does
 10. The English _____ strong traditions.
A. has many B. have much C. have many D. has much

XIII. NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ (Phrasal verbs)

Ngữ động từ là động từ kép gồm có một động từ và một giới từ, trạng từ hoặc với cả hai. Các ngữ động từ không có nghĩa do các từ gộp lại nên ta phải học thuộc nghĩa của chúng.

Ví dụ: *turn down* (bác bỏ), *break down* (hỏng máy), *give up* (từ bỏ)

Ngữ động từ có thể phân biệt làm bốn loại:

- Ngữ động từ tách ra được (separable phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ cho phép

tân ngữ chen vào giữa.

We put out the fire.

We put the fire out.

We put it out. (không được nói “We put out it.”)

- Ngữ động từ không tách ra được (inseparable phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ không cho phép tân ngữ chen vào giữa, dù tân ngữ là danh từ hoặc đại từ.

We should go over the whole project.

We should go over it.

- Ngoài ra, ta còn gặp ngữ động từ không có tân ngữ (intransitive phrasal verbs).

When we got to the airport, the plane had taken off.

His grandfather passed away last year.

- Ngữ động từ gồm có 3 từ (three-word phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ không tách ra được.

We 've put up with our noisy neighbours for years.

The machine stopped working because it ran out of fuel.

Các giới từ và trạng từ thông dụng trong ngữ động từ.

Các ngữ động từ thường có nghĩa khác với nghĩa của các thành phần tạo nên chúng. Tuy nhiên, trong một số trường hợp chúng ta có thể dễ dàng đoán được nghĩa của ngữ động từ qua việc nắm vững nghĩa của các giới từ và trạng từ thông dụng.

down (xuống đất):

cut down a tree, pull down a building, knock him down

down (lên giấy):

write down the number, copy down the address, note down a lecture

down (giảm bớt)

turn down the volume, slow down, (a fire) that died down

down (ngừng hoạt động hoàn toàn)

break down, close down

off (rời khỏi, lia khói)

set off a journey, a plane that took off, a book cover that came off, see a friend

off at the airport, sell goods off cheaply

off (làm gián đoạn)

turn off/ switch off the television, cut off the electricity, ring off

on (mặc, mang vào)

have a shirt on, put the shoes on, try a coal on

on (tiếp tục)

keep on doing something, work on late, hang on/ hold on

on (kết nối)

turn on/ switch on the light, leave the radio on

on (biến mất)

put out a fire, blow out a candle, wipe out the dirt, cross out a word
out (hoàn toàn, đến hết)

clean out the table, fill Old a form, work out the answer
out (phân phát)

give out/hand out copies, share out the food between them
out (lớn giọng)

read out all the names, shout out, cry out, speak out
out (rõ ràng)

make out the meanings, point out a mistake, pick out the best
over (từ đầu đến cuối)

read over/check over something, think over/talk over a problem, go over a report

up (làm gia tăng)

turn up the volume, blow up/pump up a tyre, step up production
up (hoàn toàn, hết sạch)

eat/drink it up, use up something, clear up/ tidy up the mess, pack up a suitcase, cut up into pieces, lock up before leaving, sum up a situation

MỘT SỐ NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG GẶP

❖ Ngữ động từ tách ra được

back up (ứng hộ)

If you don't believe me, ask Bill. He'll back me up.

blow up (làm nổ tung)

They blew up the bridge,

bring about (làm xảy ra, dẫn đến, gây ra)

What brought about the change in his attitude?

bring down (hạ xuồng, làm tụt xuồng)

We must bring the price of the product down if we are going to be competitive,

bring up (đưa ra một vấn đề)

My friend brought up that matter again,

bring up (nuôi dạy)

He was born and brought up in a good environment,

call off (hoãn lại, ngừng lại, bỏ đi)

They called off the meeting,

carry on (tiếp tục)

He carried on the task while others had left,

cheer up (làm cho ai phấn khởi, vui vẻ lên)

Mary's unhappy - we should do something to cheer her up.

clear up (dọn dẹp, giải quyết)

She cleared up the spare room,

cut down (giảm bớt, cắt bớt)

He cut down the number of employees in his company,

do over (làm lại từ đầu)

I'm sorry but your writing is not good enough. You'll have to do it over,

draw up (lập kế hoạch)

The residents of the building drew up a plan to catch the thief.

fill in/ out (điền vào đơn, tờ khai)

He filled out the job application form,

fill up (đổ đầy, lấp đầy)

She filled up the jug with water,

find out (phát hiện ra)

She found out the truth,

figure out (suy nghĩ để tìm ra)

Can you figure out how to do it?

give away (cho, phân phát)

He gave away his clothes to the poor,

give back (hoàn lại, trả lại)

He hasn't given back my book yet.

give up (từ bỏ, bỏ cuộc)

You should always keep trying. Don't give up!

hand in (nộp bài vở...)

The students handed in their essays,

hand out (phân phát)

Peter, please hand these copies out to the class,

hang up (treo lên, cúp máy)

We were talking when she suddenly hung up the phone,

hold up (làm đình trệ, trì hoãn)

I was held up in the traffic for nearly two hours,

lay off (cho ai nghỉ việc)

His company has laid off another 50 people this week,

leave out (bỏ đi)

He left out all the prepositions,

let down (làm thất vọng)

He really let me down by not finishing the assignment,

look over (xem xét, kiểm tra)

I am going to look the house over next week,

look up (tìm kiếm trong tài liệu tra cứu)

She had to look up too many words in the dictionary,

make up (bịa, dựng chuyện)

He made up a story about how he got robbed on the way to work,

make out (hiểu)

He was so far away, we really couldn't make out what he was saying,

pass on (truyền, chuyển tiếp)

He passed the news on to the president,

pick out (chọn ra)

She picked out some very nice clothes,

pick up (đón ai bằng xe)

He had to leave early to pick up his daughter.

point out (chỉ ra)

She pointed out the mistakes,

put away (cất đi chỗ khác)

They put away the books,

put off (hoãn lại)

He asked me to put off the meeting until tomorrow,

put on (mặc quần áo)

He put on his hat and left,

put out (dập tắt)

They arrived in time to put out the fire,

set up (bắt đầu, thành lập, mở văn phòng, trường học...)

They set up a new office in Vietnam,

take down (ghi chép)

Take down the instructions,

take off (cởi bỏ quần áo)

He took off his hat when he saw her.

take over (tiếp quản, tiếp tục)

CBS Records was taken over by Sony,

throw away (ném đi, vứt đi)

Don't throw the book away,

try on (mặc thử quần áo)

She tried on five blouses in the shop,

try out (kiểm tra cái gì qua việc sử dụng nó)

I tried out the car before I bought it.

turn down (giảm âm lượng)

Could you turn down the radio, please?

turn down (khuỷc từ)

His application was turned down,

turn into (biến thành, trở thành)

The prince was turned into a frog by the witch,

turn off (khóa, tắt...)

We turned off the television,

turn on (khởi động, bật lên)

Would you mind turning on the cassette player?

use up (dùng hết)

They have used up all the money.

❖ **Ngữ động từ không tách ra được**

break in/into (đột nhập)

Someone broke into my apartment last night and stole all my money,

call on (thăm viếng)

He called on his friend.

call for (đòi hỏi)

This plan called for a lot of effort,

care for sb (chăm sóc)

He cared for his sick father for three years,

come across (gặp một cách tình cờ)

I came across a photo of my grandmother yesterday when I was cleaning the house,

count on (tin cậy vào, dựa vào)

I counted on him to show me what to do.

get over (vượt qua)

It took me two weeks to get over the flu.

go over (xem lại, đọc lại)

The students went over the material before the exam,

hear from (nhận được tin của ai)

Have you heard from him lately?

look after (chăm sóc, trông nom)

Who is looking after your dog?

look for (tìm kiếm)

He's looking for his keys,

look into (điều tra)

The police are looking into the murder,

run across (tình cờ gặp ai hoặc tìm thấy cái gì)

I ran across my old roommate at the college reunion,

run into (tình cờ gặp ai)

I ran into my old friend on the way to school,

stand for (thay cho, đại diện cho)

VIP stands for “very important person

take after (giống ai)

He takes after his mother.

➤ **Ngữ động từ không có tân ngữ**

break down (hỏng máy)

The car has broken down,

break out (nổ ra, bùng nổ)

The war broke out when the talks failed,

catch on (hiểu)

He catches on very quickly. You never have to explain twice,

come back (quay lại, trở lại)

I will never come back to this place,

come in (đi vào)

They came in through the back door.

come to (tỉnh lại)

He was hit on the head very hard, but after several minutes, he started to come to again,

come over (ghé thăm nhà ai)

The children promised to come over, but they never do.

come up (nêu lên một vấn đề)

That issue never came up during the meeting,

die down (lắng xuống)

The dispute had died down and he was able to lead a normal life again,

dress up (mặc diện)

We should dress up to go to the theater,

drop by (tạt vào thăm, nhân tiện đi qua ghé vào thăm)

If you come to our town, please drop by to see us.

eat out (ăn tối ở nhà hàng)

Do you feel like eating out tonight?

get on (tiến bộ)

How are you getting on in your new job?

get up (ngủ dậy)

He got up early to go to the airport,

go back (trở về, vè, trở lại)

I'll never go back to that place,

go off (nổ, reo lên)

The gun went off while he was cleaning it.

go off (đèn, điện... tắt)

Suddenly the lights went off.

go on (tiếp tục)

I thought he would stop, but he just went on.

go on (xảy ra, diễn ra)

What's going on here?

go up (tăng, tăng lên)

The price of gas went up by 5%.

grow up (trưởng thành)

This is the town where I grew up.

hold on (giữ máy điện thoại không cắt)

Could you hold on a minute, please ?

keep on (tiếp tục)

They kept on looking for the dog.

pass out (mê đi, bất tỉnh)

She passed out when she heard the news,

pull up (dừng lại, làm dừng lại)

A black car has just pulled up outside your front door.

set off (bắt đầu lên đường)

We set off very early,

show off (khoe khoảng)

He is always showing off about how much money he has got.

show up (xuất hiện)

He didn't show up last night,

speak up (nói to hơn)

Can you speak up a little? / can't hear you?

take off (máy bay cất cánh)

The plane is taking off.

turn up (đến noi, xuất hiện)

She invited a lot of people to her party, but only a few turned up.

❖ **Ngữ động từ gồm có 3 từ**

break in on (cắt ngang, làm gián đoạn)

He broke in on our conversation,

catch up with (đuỗi kịp)

She left cm hour ago. I'll never catch up with her now.

come in for (hứng chịu sự phê bình, công kích)

He has come in for a lot of criticism lately,

come up with (tìm ra lời giải, ý tưởng...)

He came up with a very good idea,

cut down on (giảm bớt)

He's trying to cut down on cigarettes,

do away with (loại bỏ)

Most students want to do away with the present curriculum,

drop out of (bỏ học nửa chừng)

A lot of students dropped out of school last year,

face up to (chấp nhận và đối mặt với một điều không dễ chịu)

You must face up to the fact that you can't do the job.

get away with (thoát khỏi sự trừng phạt)

This is the third time you have been late this week. You're not going to get away with it again.

get down to (bắt đầu công việc một cách nghiêm túc)

It's time to get down to business,

get on/along with (hòa đồng với, có quan hệ thân hữu)

Do you get on with your neighbours?

get through with (hoàn thành, hoàn tất)

When will you ever get through with that project?

keep up with (theo kịp)

Salaries are not keeping up with inflation,

look forward to (mong chờ)

I look forward to the holiday.

look down on (xem thường)

He looks down on his neighbours,

look out for (can thận, coi chừng)

Slow down. Look out for children crossing,

look up to (ngưỡng mộ, kính trọng)

He really looks up to his older brother,

make up for (bù đắp)

I got up late; I've spent all day making up for lost time,

put up with (chịu đựng)

I can't put up with him any more. He's so rude,

run out of (cạn, hết)

The car has run out of petrol.

➤ BÀI TẬP NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ (Phrasal verbs)

Exercise 1: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- When the police investigate a crime, they _____ evidence such as fingerprints, hair, or clothing.

- A. look after B. look up to C. look for D. look into
2. "Do you _____ your new roommate, or do you two argue?"
A. keep in touch with B. get along with
C. on good terms with D. get used to
3. After months of testing, the Russian space scientists _____ a space suit that works better than any other in history.
A. came to B. came up with
C. came up to D. came out with
4. Let's check our hotel room _____ before we pay for it.
A. out B. away C. up D. off
5. He lost the tennis match, so we will try to cheer him _____.
A. off B. away C. on D. up
6. The mechanic broke the engine _____ its many components.
A. up into B. into C. down into D. off into
7. The couple broke _____ their engagement after they had a huge argument.
A. in B. over C. off D. away
8. The new mayor will bring _____ a change in local government policies.
A. with B. out C. up D. about
9. Sara said she took golf _____ so that she could meet more interesting people.
A. on B. over C. back D. up
10. Try _____ this bicycle to determine if you feel comfortable on it.
A. out B. on C. off D. at

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She turned the first offer _____ because she wanted more money for her house.
A. off B. away C. out D. down
2. They decided to name the new baby boy _____ Grandpa.
A. of B. after C. with D. as
3. Mom told her little boy to put all his toys _____ before coming to dinner.
A. out B. off C. away D. in
4. The couple put their wedding _____ until next year.
A. off B. up C. on D. away
5. The gunman told the victim to hand _____ all his money.
A. out B. over C. in D. off
6. Don't throw your jacket on the bed. Hang it _____.
A. up B. over C. on D. in
7. The supervisor told her to keep _____ the good work.
A. out B. away C. off D. up
8. Man is killing _____ all the fish in the sea.

A. out B. away C. off D. up

9. If you leave _____ any information, the form will be returned to you.

A. down B. out C. up D. away

10. Security is very important in this building. Don't let anyone_____ unless they show you proper identification.

A. in B. out C. off D. on

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Look this document _____ carefully before you sign it.

A. up B. on C. at D. over

2. If you don't know what a word means, look it _____ in the dictionary.

A. over B. up C. on D. at

3. I couldn't make _____ all the words on the sign because my glasses were dirty.

A. up B. out C. clear D. up with

4. Tony and Nancy always kiss and make _____ after their arguments.

A. up B. off C. with D. up with

5. Cross _____ my name because I won't be able to attend.

A. out B. down C. up D. away

6. She will cut _____ the number of cigarettes she smokes.

A. off B. in C. up D. down

7. Have you figured _____ how to solve the problem yet?

A. out B. on C. in D. of

8. After you fill the application form_____, sign it and date it.

A. on B. off C. out D. with

9. You should always fill _____ your tank when it gets down to a quarter full.

A. off B. up C. in D. out

10. All students must hand _____ their homework the day after it is assigned.

A. out B. on C. to D., in

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The daughter looked _____ her mother after her mom was sent home from the hospital with a broken hip.

A. upon B. after C. on D. at

2. Why don't you look _____ this situation and see if you can figure out a way to fix it without spending too much money?

A. into B. on C. up D. out

3. My grandfather passed _____ when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.

A. out B. over C. away D. off

4. Every day many of us have to put _____ people that we don't like.

- A. on with B. off with C. up D. up with
5. Nancy ran _____ Bob while both were shopping at the supermarket.
A. over B. across C. upon D. onto
6. If you go hiking, you should watch _____ for poison oak and snakes. Both can cause you problems.
A. over B. up C. out D. on
7. Let's get _____ the bus at the next stop. We can visit the museum and catch another bus in a couple of hours.
A. onto B. out C. in D. off
8. When the student got _____ the test, he gave it to the teacher.
A. over with B. through with C. through at D. over
9. If you're going to give _____ smoking, you must have a lot of will power.
A. away B. up C. in to D. off
10. After you write your report, give it to your boss. He will go _____ it and make any necessary changes.
A. upon B. through with C. over D. with

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She kept _____ taking the real estate exam until she finally passed it and got her license.
A. on B. onto C. in D. at
2. Kids have to walk fast if they want to _____ their parents on a stroll through the park.
A. keep with B. keep up with
C. keep on to D. keep over with
3. You'd better cut _____ animal fat if you want to lower your cholesterol level.
A. down with B. off with
C. out in D. down on
4. I wish my friends would call me first before they drop _____.
A. in B. out C. at D. off
5. Sales of the toy dropped _____ sharply when the TV news reported that a child had swallowed part of the toy and almost died.
A. out B. over C. away D. off
6. People who don't get _____ their coworkers sometimes don't last long at their jobs.
A. up with B. along with C. on to D. by with
7. At a crime scene, the police will tell you to get back. They don't want civilians to interfere _____ the investigation.
A. at B. on C. with D. into

8. The boy was always getting _____ trouble as a youth. Then, to everyone's surprise, he became a policeman.
- A. into B. onto C. on D. with
9. Mankind has managed to wipe _____ many kinds of animals.
- A. away B. off C. out D. over
10. My car broke _____ on the way to work. I had to call a tow truck.
- A. down B. up C. off D. away

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before you finish this project, check _____ your supervisor for further instructions.
- A. on B. on with C. back with D. up
2. As soon as we got to the motel, we checked _____.
- A. at B. in C. on D. off
3. While looking for my nail clipper, I came _____ a knife that I thought I had lost.
- A. at B. with C. up D. across
4. We've _____ out of milk. You'll have to drink your tea without it.
- A. come B. taken C. gone D. run
5. It's difficult to _____ luxuries when you're used to having them.
- A. cut down on B. cut down at
C. cut off on D. cut down into
6. I missed the seven o'clock news on the radio this morning. I _____ up too late.
- A. came B. turned C. grew D. woke
7. Governments should _____ international laws against terrorism.
- A. bring up B. bring about C. bring in D. bring back
8. You can't possibly say no to such a wonderful job offer. It's too good to _____.
A. turn it up B. turn it down
C. put it up D. put it down
9. Eva was born in the South, but she grew _____ in the North.
- A. up B. on C. about D. at
10. "What _____ your flight?" "There was a big snowstorm in Denver that delayed a lot of flights."
- A. delayed up B. postponed up
C. held up D. hung up

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Can you read that sign?" "Just a minute. Let me _____ my glasses."
- A. put off B. put on C. put with D. put away
2. This is Bob speaking. I need my pocket calculator. Can I have it back tomorrow? I can't _____ it.

- A. do with B. do without
C. deal with D. deal without

3. “That old paint that you have stored in your garage is a fine hazard.” “You’re right. I should _____ it.”

A. get away from B. get rid of
C. get through with D. get along with

4. “You must be anxious to go on your vacation.” “I certainly am. I’m really _____ this trip.”

A. looking for B. looking forward
C. looking forward to D. looking up to

5. “Who _____ out that tie for you?” “No one. I chose it myself.”

A. bought B. brought C. turned D. picked

6. We didn’t like John when we first met him, but he has turned _____ to be a good friend to us.

A. down B. up C. on D. out

7. “Have you _____ this contract yet?” “Not yet. I’ll try to read it this weekend.”

A. looked over B. looked into
C. looked up D. looked out

8. After ten minutes, the students _____ in their quizzes to the instructor.

A. gave B. had C. held D. handed

9. “Hello, is Bill there?” “Yes, _____ a minute, and I’ll get him.”

A. hang on B. hang up
C. hold on D. A and c are correct

10. I was talking to my aunt when suddenly my cousin George _____ in on our conversation.

A. interrupted B. broke C. went D. intervened

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The building work has been _____ by bad weather.

A. given up B. held up C. lain down D. turned off

2. Michael could hardly wait to _____ his new bicycle.

A. sit down B. turn back C. try out D. put on

3. You should look _____ the word in the dictionary.

A. after B. up C. into D. at

4. John takes other children’s toys and doesn’t want to give them _____.

A. to B. in C. away D. back

5. With that bad temper, he certainly _____ after his father. He is exactly the same.

- A. takes B. looks C. goes D. puts
6. I seem to spend all my time _____ forms.
 A. going away B. trying out C. filling in D. lying down
7. That's him _____ off that bus over there!
 A. dropping B. taking C. going D. getting
8. There you are at last! I was wondering when you'd _____ up.
 A. look B. turn C. hold D. give
9. This hike is pretty exhausting. I don't think I can go _____ any further. I need to rest.
 A. on B. out C. in D. to
10. This cold has lasted too long. I feel like I'll never get _____ it.
 A. away B. back C. over D. with

Exercise 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Some managers are supposed to meet each other at the end of the month to talk _____ their monthly performance reviews.
 A. under B. about C. into D. along
- I can't walk in these high-heeled boots. I keep _____.
 A. falling off B. falling back C. falling over D. falling out
- Old people are often looked _____ by their children when they get older.
 A. for B. up C. after D. into
- Don't worry about trying to catch last train home, as we can easily _____ you up for the night.
 A. keep B. put C. take D. set
- The meeting has been put _____ to Friday as many people have got flu.
 A. up B. in C. out D. back
- She kept her son _____ because he had a high temperature.
 A. on B. in C. off D. out
- Learning English isn't so difficult once you _____.
 A. get on it B. get off it C. get down to it D. get down with it
- Mr. Chan's main role in the company for the next two weeks is to look _____ the right person to take over Mr. Shaw's position when he leaves at the end of the month.
 A. in B. for C. over D. from
- People unanimously agreed that John would have performed a great deal better under more _____. circumstances.
 A. favourable B. favourably C. favourite D. favour
- Quite soon, the world is going to _____ energy resources.
 A. get into B. run out of C. keep up with D. come up against

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the

following questions.

1. Deborah is going to take extra lessons to _____ what she missed while she was away.
A. catch up on B. cut down on C. take up with D. put up with
2. The meeting has been brought _____ to Monday due to the seriousness of the situation.
A. on B. out C. down D. forward
3. People are always advised to _____ smoking because of its harm to their health.
A. cut down B. cut off C. cut in D. cut down on
4. It took Ted a long time to get _____ the breakup of his marriage.
A. over B. across C. along with D. through
5. Please _____ and see us some time. You're always welcome.
A. come around B. come about C. come to D. come away
6. She never says anything good about me. She is forever running me _____.
A. over B. down C. out D. off
7. The teacher asked a difficult question, but finally Ted _____ a good answer.
A. came up to B. came out at C. came up with D. came out for
8. We intend to _____ with the old system as soon as we have developed a better one.
A. do up B. do away C. do down D. do in
9. The concert was _____ because of the heavy rain.
A. put out B. called off C. run out D. set off
10. Nothing can _____ the loss of the child.
A. make up with B. make up for C. do with D. come up with

XIV. PHÁT HIỆN LỖI SAI (Error identification)

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm phát hiện lỗi sai có trong cả đề thi Trung học Phổ thông Quốc gia. Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể thực hiện theo các bước gợi ý sau:

1. Đọc kỹ 4 phần gạch dưới trong mỗi câu.
2. Xem xét các từ/ cụm từ đứng ngay trước hoặc sau mỗi phần được gạch dưới để biết được thì, cấu trúc của câu đó.
3. Qua việc liên hệ với các từ/ cụm từ đứng ngay trước hoặc sau mỗi phần được gạch dưới có thể tìm được ngay phần chứa lỗi sai.
4. Nếu chưa tìm được phần chứa lỗi sai ngay, hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phần gạch dưới đúng để chốt lại phần chứa lỗi sai cần tìm.

➤ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM PHÁT MỀM LỖI SAI

Exercise 1 (Verb tenses): Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. A star that has used up its energy and has lost its heat became a black dwarf.
A B C D

2. Mr. Suzuki wants to know where the supplies are kept, in case he need more
A B C
of them while we're away.

3. In some areas, it has against the law to ride a motorcycle without a helmet.

A B C D

4. The novel and the short story are the literary forms most commonly called “fiction”.

but contemporary narrative poetry and drama were also forms of fiction.

- C** **D**

5. When the minerals needed for com to grow are lack, the husks may be stunted.

A **B** **C** **D**

6. Since ancient times, some people wore amulets, objects that are supposed
A B C

to give the wearer magical powers.

- D
7. I will come to your office as soon as I prepare this report.
A. B. C. D.

8. Our lifestyle changed since running water came to our village.

A B C D

9. As soon as he will graduate, he is going to return to his hometown
A B C D

10. We have been to the same place several times.
A B C D

10. We haven't seen each other from we left school

One said that she had been healthy.

12. You should not have offended my aunt the was you have done.

13. Not until the office phoned me had I found out about the meeting.

14. I tried to convince him several times but I failed because he was unwilling
A

to consider what I have said.

- B** **C** **D**

15. During our conversation he couldn't help asking me if my sister has already given

A **B** **C**

birth to the baby.

D

16. Mr. Jackson is worried that he won't be able to find a parking space when

A B

he will come to the office this afternoon.

C D

17. Mr. Watson will return from his vacation before his assistant had to leave

A B C

for his business trip.

D

18. As soon as the next lecture will end, let's leave.

A B C D

19. As soon as he will come back from his office, tell him to see me.

A B C D

20. The contract looks fine to me, but my lawyer would like to review it before it

A B C

will be signed.

D

Exercise 2 (Infinitives, gerunds): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. You aren't allowed smoking because you are too young to do it.

A B C D

2. Fred asked me help him while he was doing his homework.

A B C D

3. Peter was too selfish for helping anyone though he was very rich.

A B C D

4. After much discussion, the negotiators decided not making an offer until they

A B C

had looked over the contract.

D

5. The children forgot picking up the note from the office and now they are worried.

A B C D

6. The manager first talked about staffing policy, and then went on talking about

A B C D

the budget.

7. It is worth to spend money on things like second-hand clothes.

A B C D

8. I am sure I locked the door when we were leaving. I remember how I checked

A B C D

it.

9. I'm sure we locked the door when we were leaving; I still remember to lock it.

A B C D

10. Having watered the flowers in the rooms, she went on watering those in
A B C D

the kitchen.

11. Have you considered to move to another city to find a new job that uses
A B

the same skills but offers a better salary?

C D

12. The staff has asked the smokers to avoid to take their breaks in the office so
A B C

the smoke won't bother the non-smokers.

D

13. You should not avoid teaching students who don't seem to be capable
A B

to understand as much as you do.

C D

14. I wish you didn't risk to damage your health by smoking so much.
A B C D

15. We have postponed to tell anyone the news until after Christmas.

A B C D

16. I'll be here in a moment if you don't mind to wait for a couple of minutes.
A B C D

17. I was discouraged to swim when I put my feet in the ice-cold water.

A B C D

18. I prefer telling jokes to be told ones which I don't understand.
A B C D

19. I was thinking of taking gymnastics, but I wonder if there is any point to spend
A B C

so much money on club fees.

D

20. You will hear from us when we have finished to deal with your complaint.
A B C D

Exercise 3 (Passive voice, causative form): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Generally, a credit check required before you can open an account like this
A B C D
one at Northern Savings.

2. The old man said to have left all his money to an old people's house when
A B C D
he died.

3. Today with highly advanced technology, surgeons are operated with
A B C
a precision undreamed of twenty years ago.
D

4. I can tell you if your request has approved just when the report arrives.
A B C D

5. Bats are often used their own sound to locate food and to avoid obstacles
A B C
when they fly at night.
D

6. Our chemistry professor is believed to meet President Kennedy when he was
A B C D
a student.

7. He was seen enter the house at midnight, so he shouldn't say he didn't do it.
A B C D

8. It announced today that an enquiry would be held into the collapse of a high-rise
A B C D
apartment block in the capital.

9. Raw materials that used to make cars include iron ore, rubber, and petroleum.
A B C D

10. Peter couldn't understand what had decided because too many people
A B
were talking at a time.
C D

11. As I drove south, I could see that the old road was rebuilding.
A B C D

12. There are still a few details which need being seen to before the wedding.
A B C D

13. It is always a good idea to have your expensive suit wash by laundry staff.
A B C D

14. I would enjoy myself more if we could have all problems to solve before
A B C
we start our holiday.
D

15. I got her take an umbrella in case it rained.

A B

C D

16. The house is being redecorated and I am having the walls painted and

A B

C

the floors to be replaced.

D

17. I am short of money because I am building a house; the experts who are doing

A

B

it are pretty expensive.

C D

18. The grass needs cutting, so let us have one of the men to take a lawn-mower

A

B

C

and do it.

D

19. If someone feels faint you should have him lav flat, keep his head low.

A

B

C

and make him breathe deeply.

D

20. Unless you get your son doing the work, you will have to do it all by yourself.

A

B

C

D

Exercise 4 (Conditionals): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D needs correcting.

1. If I had finish a course on computer programming, I would have

A

B

C

D

a better salary now.

2. If we had more time last week, we would certainly have finished the project on time.

A

B

C

D

3. Were you to win a huge sum of money, what would you have bought?

A

B

C

D

4. Had the teacher realized that the students couldn't understand him, he

A

B

would speak louder.

C

D

5. If they took their language lessons seriously, they would be able to

A

B

communicate with the locals now.

C

D

6. The guests could have had their lunch outside if it weren't so cold.

A

B

C

D

7. What would you have done five years ago if you won a million dollars?
 A B C D
8. If not his father's help. Bill couldn't have repaired the roof.
 A B C D
9. If I had eaten lunch, I wouldn't have been hungry now.
 A B C D
10. Had I been interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
 A B C D

Exercise 5 (Past Subjunctive; Present Subjunctive): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. I wish I didn't speak to him so severely yesterday.
 A B C D
2. I have a lot of work to do. I wish I have more time.
 A B C D
3. If only I have done the test better than other students did.
 A B C D
4. Sean wishes he didn't take part in the play yesterday because he forgot the lines.
 A B C D
5. It's high time the government does something about air pollution.
 A B C D
6. You had better tell Tom that it's high time he should start learning.
 A B C D
7. The government suggested that small businesses gave their own ideas on
 A B C D

the law.

8. The teacher suggeststhat the students have to work hard in order to pass the
 A B C
final exam.
 D
9. My wife always suggests I can check the labels before buying food.
 A B C D

10. During that terrible snowstorm, the police demanded that people staved
 A B
away from Highway 101 except cases of emergency.
 C D

Exercise 6 (Comparison): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D needs correcting.

1. Walking up the stairs is not quick as taking the elevator, but it provides more
 A B C D

exercise.

2. Ms Chang always gets a lot done, but yesterday she did more work
A B
that I've ever seen before.
C D

3. This concert is more worse than I expected it to be.
A B C D

4. We tested several printers at the trade show, and the new Canon 3500
A
seemed to be the good one for our purposes.
B C D

5. Our trainees found the product demonstration at this meeting difficult to
A B C
understand than in previous years.
D

6. I don't believe there is anyone best suited for the job than Mrs. Smith.
A B C D

7. There is fewer rainfall in the central area than in the north of the country.
A B C D

8. Fruits and vegetables provide few protein in relation to their weight and size.
A B C D

9. There is still more pollution in the air because its level is increasing all the time.
A B C D

10. Your brother spoke in a more interesting way even though he mentioned
A B C
less details.
D

11. Of the two lecturers, the first was by far the best, partly because the person
A B C
who delivered it had such a dynamic style.
D

12. She is an efficient employee; she does twice as more work as other people do.
A B C D

13. The United States has a younger population as most other major industrial
A B C
countries.
D

14. Of all outdoor activities, Paul likes fishing best of all, but he doesn't enjoy

A

B

C

cleaning the fishing rods afterwards.

D

15. The rate of stomach cancer is lowest in countries where people don't eat

A

B

C

processed meat products than in nations where such foods are consumed.

D

16. After the critics see the two plays, they will, as a result of their experience and

A

B

background, judge which is the most effective and moving.

C

D

17. Usually the climate in mountainous areas becomes much windy at higher altitudes.

A

B

C

D

18. The diameter of the Sun is more than one hundred times greater than the Earth.

A

B

C

D

19. The most great trumpet player, Louis Armstrong, went from New Orleans in

A

1922 to join a band that helped spread jazz through phonograph recordings.

B

C

D

20. The life in the city is more comfortable than in the country.

A

B

C

D

Exercise 7: (Inversion of subjects and verbs): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Never before I have seen a man who enjoyed being lied to.

A

B

C

D

2. Not until yesterday I met them for the first time in my life.

A

B

C

D

3. Hardly had we arrived at the hotel that there was a power cut.

A

B

C

D

4. No sooner had I turned out the light when I heard a noise outside.

A

B

C

D

5. Not only Jack broke his leg, but he also injured his shoulders.

A

B

C

D

6. Hardly had we settled down in our seats than the lights went out.

A

B

C

D

7. Only after checking three times I was certain of the answer.

A

B

C

D

8. No sooner it had stopped raining than the sun came out.

A

B

C

D

9. Only when Pete has arrived that we can begin the programme.
A B C D
10. On no condition that they are to open fire without a warning.
A B C D
11. Not until I was on my way to the airport that I realized I had left my passport
at home.
A B C D
12. Hardly had the train left the station than there was an explosion.
A B C D
13. At no time she could understand what he really wanted to say.
A B C D
14. When is a flag hung upside down, it is an internationally recognized symbol
of distress.
A B C D
15. Seldom Antarctic icebergs will move far enough north to disturb South Pacific
shipping lanes.
A B C D
16. Not until it was too late that I remembered to call Susan.
A B C D
17. No sooner had they returned home from the holiday when Tony had to leave
for a business trip.
A B C D
18. Not until did I get home did I notice that I had the wrong umbrella.
A B C D
19. No sooner I had reached the door than I realized it was locked.
A B C D
20. So extensive the lakes are that they are viewed as the largest bodies of fresh water
in the world.
A B C D
- Exercise 8 (Parallel structures): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.**
1. Sleeping, resting, and to drink fruit juice are the best was to care for a cold.
A B C D
2. The scientific method consists of forming hypotheses, collect data, and testing
results.
A B C

D

3. I like travelling by air because it is fast, safe, and it is convenient.
A B C D
4. You should stop wasting your time and doing something useful instead.
A B C D
5. After teaching English in Vietnam for ten years, Nicolas decided to buy
A B
a house and spending the rest of his life there.
C D
6. After he had researched his paper and wrote it, he found some additional data
A B C
that he should have included.
D
7. The examination will test your ability to understand spoken English, to read
A B
non-technical language, and writing correctly.
C D
8. The mountain sheep is known for its incredible agility, timid and ability
A B C
to withstand severe cold.
D
9. The Concorde can fly across the Atlantic without re-fueling and carrying
A B C
11 tons of freight.
D
10. Perhaps the most popular film in the movie history, Star Wars, was written
A B C
and direction by George Lucas.
D
11. Some animal activities, such as mating, migration, and hibernate have a yearly
A B C D
cycle.
12. All nations may have to make fundamental changes in their economic,
A B
political , and the technological institutions if they are to preserve environment.
C D
13. Below are some pieces of advice that can help you reduce the feeling of
A B

pressure and creating a good impression on your interviewer.

C D

14. The duties of the secretary are to take the minutes, mailing the

A B C

correspondence, and calling the members before the meetings.

D

15. In recent years, automobile emissions have disfigured stone carvings.

A B C

corroded bronze monuments, and spoil ancient buildings.

D

16. Clouds, foggy, and dust in the atmosphere absorb ultra-violet rays.

A B C D

17. For thousands of years, man has created sweet-smelling substances from

A B

wood, herbs, and flowers and using them for perfume or medicine.

C D

18. During the basic training, I was not only told what to do but also what to think.

A B C D

19. We admire Lucy for her intelligence, cheerful disposition and she is honest.

A B C D

20. Many young people lack skills, good education, and financial to settle in the

A B

urban areas where many jobs are found.

C D

Exercise 9 (Clauses): Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. What rayon is made from cellulose is a little-known fact.

A B C D

2. A vast quantity of radioactive material is made when

A B C

does a hydrogen bomb explode.

D

3. She wanted to know how long would it take her to get there.

A B C D

4. She wanted to know when was the last staff meeting so that she could plan

A B C

the next one.

D

5. I wanted to know where did your friend live; you ought to have told me.
A B C D
6. Could you tell me how your new friend looks like?
A B C D
7. Whether he approves of our plan or not it will depend on what impression we
make on him.
A B C D
8. The text is completely incomprehensible for me; I just can't make out what
is the point.
A B C D
9. She asked why did Mathew look so embarrassed when he saw Carole.
A B C D
10. What I love most about the book that was the close-knit friendship of
the three friends.
A B C D
11. We have bought a few pieces of furniture in order your stay here may be more
comfortable.
A B C D
12. My sister was tiptoeing so as making no noise along the corridor.
A B C D
13. Shops often reduce prices so that to encourage customers to buy their goods.
A B C D
14. My friend worked many hours a day last week so he could finished
the assignment on time.
A B C D
15. I think that the exercise is not too difficult to do it.
A B C D
16. This stone is too heavy for me to carry it because I am not strong enough.
A B C D
17. He is a so smart boy that you stand no chances of winning with him.
A B C D
18. The novel was such interesting that I read it from the beginning to the end in
4 hours.
A B C D
19. Such devastating were the floods that some areas may never recover.

A B C D

20. The stars are such far away that they can't be seen without a telescope.

A B C D

Exercise 10 (Clauses): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Despite Jack studied hard, he did not pass the test.

A B C D

2. Even she had never seen him before, she immediately identified him when he

A B C

stepped off the plane.

D

3. Although I arrived in class late, but I still did well on the test.

A B C D

4. Although many people claim that they like classical music, but not all of them

A B C

understand it.

D

5. Although Tim always have a very tight schedule, but he can manage time well

A B C

to complete everything as planned.

D

6. My brother went to see a movie in spite of he had a lot of things to do.

A B C D

7. Although the increases in airfares, most people still prefer to travel by plane.

A B C D

8. However small, the sitting room is well designed and nicely decorated.

A B C D

9. In a basketball game a player what is fouled receives one or two free throws.

A B C D

10. We live in Ho Chi Minh City, is a big cultural and industrial city.

A B C D

11. All her children have graduated from university, that is the reason for her to be

A B C D

proud.

12. This is the car which its engine uses only 4 liters of petrol per 100 kilometers.

A B C D

13. A warning sign "Overheat" may come on, in that case turn off the appliance

A B C

at once.

D

14. This is the store in where you can buy anything you need for your project.

A B C D

15. Dad discovered I went out with Nick last night, for which I wasn't supposed to do.

A B C D

16. In recent years, educated women have been marrying later, that means that

A B

they have fewer years in which to produce offspring.

C D

17. When you look in the mirror, you see your own face in the glass, that is

A B C

a reflection of the true image.

D

18. The earth was flat, was believed by most people in the fifteenth century.

A B C D

19. Physicists are scientists whose study matter and energy, as well as their

A B C

patterns of interaction.

D

20. The water temperature in a spring depends on that of the soil through where

A B C

the water flows.

D

Exercise 11 (Phrases): Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Hailey's comet, viewing through a telescope, was quite impressive.

A B C D

2. Inside the Lincoln Memorial is a large statue of Lincoln make from

A B C

white marble.

D

3. In an essay writing in 1779, Judith Sergeant Murray promoted the cause of

A B C D

women's education.

4. He was so careless that he left the work half doing and went to the cinema.

A B C D

5. Workers training for a specific job have a strong possibility of being replace

A B C D

by a machine.

6. The hospital destroying by the storm is being rebuilt now.
A B C D
7. After had read the book, I was a bit disappointed.
A B C D
8. Having our car repaired by the mechanic whose phone number you had given
A B C D
us, we continued our journey.
9. Finished her household chores, Mary decided to do some shopping.
A B C D
10. To save money, John decided to live with his grandparents while attended
college.
A B C D
11. Follow vaporization, a reduction in temperature will result in condensation.
A B C D
12. Having hoped to be first in line when they opened the doors, we arrived
A B C
an hour early for the concert.
D
13. We slept in tents, covering with blankets which were too thin; we got pretty cold.
A B C D
14. Drying food by means of solar energy is an ancient process applying wherever
A B C
climatic conditions make it possible.
D
15. Justice is often personified as a blindfolded woman to hold a pair of scales.
A B C D
16. To turn on the light, I was surprised at what I saw.
A B C D
17. Had washed her face in cold water, she came up to the window and shut it.
A B C D
18. I have never seen him before, so I don't know what he looks.
A B C D
19. Scientists are still uncertain of what the universe originated millions of years
A B C D
ago.
20. However jobs he has applied for, he never gets a good salary because he has
A B C D
no diploma or certificate.

Exercise 12: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. Next week when there will be a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.
A B C D
2. Do you know how many teachers does our school have?
A B C D
3. That's my aunt over there. She stands near the window.
A B C D
4. Your sister and you went to the cinema last night, weren't YOU?
A B C D
5. The marathon runner has been running for almost two hours when he
A B
collapsed to the pavement.
C D
6. We were at home having our anniversary dinner when my uncle was calling
A B C D
to congratulate us last night.
7. Paul took many trips to Asia since he started his own import-export business.
A B C D
8. The children had been playing for the last two hours, but they don't seem to be
A B C D
tired yet.
9. Up to now Peter wrote five novels and over six short stories.
A B C D
10. I am polishing this table all the morning but she isn't satisfied with
it yet.
A B C D
- Exercise 13: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.**
1. As soon as he will graduate, he is going to return to his hometown.
A B C D
2. By the time I return to my hometown, I am away from home for more
A B C D
than five years.
3. By the end of the 21st century, scientists have discovered the treatment for cancer.
A B C D
4. I saw that movie three times, and now I want to see it again.
A B C D
5. My brother wants me to change the job and I am thinking he is right.
A B C D
6. So far this week the teachers are giving us a lot of homework every day.
A B C D

7. By the time he left the office, he have attended three meetings.
 A B C D
8. We are waiting for Tom for the last two hours, but he still hasn't arrived.
 A B C D
9. We have lived here since ten years, but we are going to move again soon.
 A B C D
10. I think you have asked me five or six questions since we have begun this
 exercise.
 A B C D

Exercise 14: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. If your parents object your leaving dinner to take a call, tell your friends
 to avoid calling at that hour.
 A B C D
2. My mother asked me what it was the purpose of our visit to the museum.
 A B C D
3. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized that I am still alive.
 A B C D
4. He asked me what I intended to do after I graduate.
 A B C D
5. When he left, Bob forgot that he put his passport and wallet in his other pocket.
 A B C D
6. International students should take full use of tutorial appointments.
 A B C D
7. If I had eaten lunch, I wouldn't have been hungry now.
 A B C D
8. Unless I don't go home early, please go shopping and buy some food for lunch.
 A B C D
9. Each university consider the application before making the decision on
 the offer of the place.
 A B C D
10. When exam results are known, universities make a final decision on
 each application.
 A B C D

Exercise 15: Choose the underlined part among A, ByCorD that needs correcting.

1. Who does the household works in your family?
 A B C D
2. I am now under my attempt to win a place at university.
 A B C D

3. Our students are obedience and hard-working, but they are mischievous
A B C
sometimes.

D

4. My mother is the person I often divide my secrets with.
A B C D

5. I borrowed four books on gardening the last time I had gone to the library.
A B C D

6. She wanted to know what company I worked for the previous year.
A B C D

7. A colleague of mine asked that there would be a meeting the next day.
A B C D

8. They wondered if Jane would come to the party the next day or not.
A B C D

9. Pointing in someone is usually considered impolite in most cases.
A B C D

10. She asked me that how much I had bought my laptop.
A B C D

Exercise 16: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. Vietnamese students may encounter some problems when studying in abroad.
A B C D

2. Had I been interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
A B C D

3. By itself, technology can be either good nor bad, depends on how people use it.
A B C D

4. All applications ask for your address, telephone number and the title of
A B C D
the job for whom you are applying.

5. Scientific advances and other developments constant eliminate some
A B C
jobs and create new ones.

6. Businesses, industries and other organizations need workers help them
A B C
run smoothly and effectively.

D

7. I changed my major from history to English because the former isn't so
A B
interested to me as the latter.
C D
8. If we didn't run out of money, we wouldn't have come home from our
A B C D
holiday early.
9. If you'd told me you were coming, I would make something to eat.
A B C D

10. If you didn't stop smoking, your health will become worse and worse.
A B C D

Exercise 17: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Although his bad cough, he kept on smoking.
A B C D
2. Production is the process growing or making food, goods, or materials.
A B C D
3. Although I try hard to play the guitar, but I don't seem to improve.
A B C D
4. As you can see, costs of living have been reduced for 20% over the past year.
A B C D
5. There will be major changes in climate during next century.
A B C D
6. I'm fed up for you telling me what to do.
A B C D
7. Children usually get bored of doing the same activity during a lesson.
A B C D
8. Are you fond at walking in the rain without wearing a raincoat?
A B C D
9. David's new computer is similar than mine.
A B C D
10. Tom's parents think that chocolates are bad at him.
A B C D

Exercise 18: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. Last year my little brother got lost when we had gone shopping.
A B C D
2. Is he aware of how long we are waiting for the tour to start?
A B C D
3. We don't know why Mary is upset, and she didn't speak to us for ages.

- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
4. They asked me what did it happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
5. I haven't come back to Hanoi from my brother last visited me.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
6. Have you finished reading the English magazine which I lend you yesterday?
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
7. He asked me whether I had never been to America before.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
8. Paul decided to join the army after the first year at college and he was in
it ever since.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
9. The director, as well as his wife and two children, were injured in the accident.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
10. John used to working in Leeds, but his company had him transfer to a better
position in London.
- | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| | A | B | C | D |
|--|---|---|---|---|
- Exercise 19: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.**
1. She is tired from being asked to do the same things every day.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 2. My father's office is under the second floor.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 3. The students who they cheated in the examination had to leave the room.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 4. That is the man who's daughter won the spelling bee.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 5. The person from him you got the information is my brother.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 6. I invited 20 people to my party, some of them are my former classmates.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 7. If I had studied carefully, I wouldn't make so many mistakes.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 8. This job suits students whom want to work during holidays.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 9. The man for who the police are looking robbed the bank yesterday.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

 10. Hai Phong is the place which I was born and grew up.

	A	B	C	D
--	---	---	---	---

Exercise 20: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. People are not allowed to enter the park after midnight because lack of security.
A B C D
2. During the basic training, I was not only told what to do but also what to think.
A B C D
3. It rained very hardly, so we didn't go out that night.
A B C D
4. Although his family was very poor, but he had good education.
A B C D
5. Most Vietnamese people love the peace atmosphere in the countryside.
A B C D
6. Deforestation is occurring most rapid in tropical regions of the world.
A B C D
7. The ancient ruins may be discovered as early as 1820.
A B C D
8. He usually gets involved with some ridiculous arguments.
A B C D
9. Many teachers have devoted their lives to teaching therefore teaching is
not a well-paid job.
A B C
D
10. Safari is an organized trip to hunting or photograph wild animals, usually in
Africa.
A B C D

Exercise 21: Choose the underlined part among A, B, c or D that needs correcting.

1. Canoeing was the primary mode of long-distant transportation at one
time throughout much of North America.
A B C
D
2. Throughout history, water had been people's slave and also their master.
A B C D
3. Don't you get tired with watching TV every night?
A B C D
4. Her last book is published in over 20 languages years ago.
A B C D
5. On February 21, 1995, the oldest person in the world, a French woman
was named Jeanne Calment, celebrated her 120th birthday,
A B

- C D

6. Books with good stories are often described like 'hard to put down'.
A B C D

7. My father reads books whenever he has little free time.
A B C D

8. Developed in the early 1900s in Canada, synchronized swimming is a sport
A
is performed almost exclusively by women, although there is some participation by men.
B C D

9. Shore-based dives are dives where the site is closed enough to the water's
A B
edge that a diver can swim out into the water and descend to the dive site.
C D

10. If a defender commits a foul within the five meter area that prevents a
A B
likely goal, the attacking team will award a penalty shot.
C D

Chuyên đề

CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP

Bài tập về chức năng giao tiếp bao gồm những mẫu đối thoại ngắn, thường là dạng hỏi và trả lời giữa hai đối tượng A và B. Mục đích của dạng bài tập này là chọn đúng phần khuyết để hoàn thành đoạn hội thoại ngắn này.

I. Thu thập và xác nhận thông tin

1. Câu hỏi Có-Không (Yes-No questions)

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các trợ động từ: *am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, will, would, have, may, might, can, could...*

Câu trả lời: bắt đầu bằng “Yes” hoặc “No” và đưa thêm thông tin.

Ta cũng có thể trả lời bằng:

- *I think/believe/hope/expect/guese so.* (Tôi nghĩ/ tin/ hi vọng/ mong/ đoán thế.)
 - *Sure/ Actually/ Of course/ Right... (Đĩ nhiên/ Chắc chắn rồi.)*
 - *I don't think/ believe/ expect/ suppose so.* (Tôi không nghĩ/ tin/ mong/ cho rằng thế.)
 - *I hope/believe/guese/suppose not.* (Tôi hi vọng/ tin/ đoán/ cho là không.)
 - *I'm afraid not.* (Tôi e rằng không.)

2. Câu hỏi chọn lựa (Or questions)

Câu hỏi: thường chứa liên từ “or” và yêu cầu phải chọn một phương án.

Câu trả lời: là câu chọn một trong hai sự lựa chọn được đưa ra trong câu hỏi. Ta không dùng từ “Yes” hoặc “No” để trả lời câu hỏi này.

Ví dụ: Are they Chinese or Japanese? - They're Japanese.

Pork or beef? - Beef, please./I'd prefer beef.

3. Câu hỏi có từ để hỏi (Wh-questions)

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi như *what*, *which*, *who*, *whose*, *where* *when*, *why*, *how*... để thu thập thông tin.

Câu trả lời: cung cấp thông tin nêu trong câu hỏi.

Ví dụ: What did he talk about? - His family.

What was the party like ? - Oh, we had a good time.

Which of these pens is yours? - The red one.

How often do you go to the cinema? - Every Sunday.

Why did he fail the exam ? - Because he didn't prepare well for it.

4. Câu hỏi đuôi (Tag questions)

Câu hỏi đuôi: thường dùng để xác nhận thông tin với ngữ điệu xuồng ở cuối câu hỏi.

Câu trả lời: cũng giống như câu hỏi Có-Không.

Ví dụ: Jane left early for the first train, didn't she? - Yes, she did.

Peter made a lot of mistakes again, didn't he? - Right, he did.

5. Hỏi đường hoặc lời chỉ dẫn (asking for directions or instructions).

Lời hỏi đường:

- Could you show me the way to...?

(Anh làm ơn chỉ đường đến...)

- Could you be so kind to show me how to get to...?

(Anh có thể vui lòng chỉ đường đến...)

- Is there a bank near here?/ Where's the nearest bank?

(Ở đây có ngân hàng không? Ngân hàng gần nhất ở đâu vậy?)

Lời đáp:

- Turn left/right. (Rẽ trái/ phải.)

- Go straight ahead for two blocks and then turn left. (Đi thẳng qua hai dãy nhà rồi rẽ trái.)

- Keep walking until you reach/ see.... (Cứ đi thẳng đến khi anh đến/ thấy _____)

- It's just around the corner. (Nó ở ngay góc đường.)

- It's a long way. You should take a taxi. (Một quãng đường dài này. Anh nên đón ta-xi.)

- Sorry, I'm new here./I'm a stranger here myself. (Xin lỗi, tôi mới đến vùng này.)

- Sorry, I don't know this area very well. (Xin lỗi, tôi không rõ ràng khu vực này lắm.)

Lời xin được chỉ dẫn:

- Could you show me how to operate this machine? (Anh làm ơn chỉ cho tôi cách vận hành chiếc máy này.)

- Could you tell me how to... ? (Anh hãy chỉ cho tôi làm thế nào để...)

- *How does this machine work? Do you know?* (Cái máy này hoạt động thế nào? Anh có biết không?)

Lời đáp:

- *First,... Second, ... Then, Finally, ...* (Trước hết... Ké đến... Tiếp theo... Cuối cùng....)
- *The first step is..., then...* (Bước đầu tiên là..., rồi....)
- *Remember to....* (Hãy nhớ là....)
- *Well, it's very simple.* (À, đơn giản lắm.)

II. Quan hệ xã giao

1. Chào hỏi và giới thiệu (greeting and introducing)

Chào hỏi:

- *Good morning/ afternoon/ evening.* (Chào.)
- *Hi/Hello. Have a good day.* (Chào. Chúc anh một ngày tốt lành.)
- *How are you?/ How have you been?/ How are the things?...* (Anh dạo này thế nào?)

Lời đáp câu chào hỏi:

- *Good morning/ afternoon/ evening.* (Chào.)
- *Hi/Hello.* (Chào.)
- *Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you.* (Hân hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)
- *Hi. I am Peter. And you?* (Chào. Tôi tên Peter. Còn anh?)
- *Have we met before?* (Trước đây chúng ta đã gặp nhau chưa?)
- *It's a lovely day, isn't it?* (Hôm nay là một ngày đẹp trời, phải không anh?)

Giới thiệu:

- *I would like to introduce you to.../ ... to you.* (Tôi muốn giới thiệu anh với.../ ... với anh.)
- *I would like you to meet....* (Tôi muốn anh được gặp gỡ với...)
- *This is....* (Đây là...)
- *Have you two met before?* (Trước đây hai anh đã gặp nhau chưa?)

Lời đáp câu giới thiệu:

- *How do you do?* (Hân hạnh được gặp anh.)
- *Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you.* (Hân hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)

2. Lời mời (invitation)

Lời mời:

- *Would you like to....?* (Anh có muốn...?)
- *I would like to invite you to... (Tôi muốn mời anh...)*
- *Do you feel like/fancy having... ?* (Anh Có muốn...?)
- *Let me... (Em tôi...)*

Đồng ý lời mời:

- *It is a great idea.* (Ý kiến quá tuyệt!)

- *That sounds great/fantastic/wonderful/ cool/ fun.* (Nghe có vẻ hay đây.)
- *Yes, I'd love to.* (Vâng, tôi rất thích.)
- *Why not?* (Tại sao không nhỉ?)
- *OK, let's do it!* (Được, cứ như thế đi.)

Từ chối lời mời:

- *No, thanks.* (Không, cảm ơn.)
- *I'm afraid I can't.* (Tôi e rằng tôi không thể.)
- *Sorry, but I have another plan.* (Xin lỗi, nhưng tôi có kế hoạch khác rồi.)
- *I'd love to but...* (Tôi muốn làm nhưng...)
- *Some other time, perhaps.* (Lần khác vậy nhé.)

3. Ra về và chào tạm biệt (leaving and saying goodbye)

Báo hiệu sự ra hiệu và chào tạm biệt:

- *I'm afraid I have to be going now/I have to leave now.*
(E rằng bây giờ tôi phải đi.)
- *It's getting late so quickly.* (Trời mau tối quá.)
- *I had a great time/ evening.* (Tôi rất vui/ có một buổi tối tuyệt vời.)
- *I really enjoyed the party and the talk with you.* (Tôi thật sự thích buổi tiệc và trò chuyện với anh.)
- *Thank you very much for a lovely evening.* (Cám ơn về buổi tối tuyệt vời.)
- *Good bye/ Bye.* (Tạm biệt.)
- *Good night.* (Tạm biệt.)

Lời đáp:

- *I'm glad you had a good time.* (Tôi rất vui là anh thích nó.)
- *I'm glad you like it.* (Tôi rất vui là anh thích nó.)
- *Thanks for coming.* (Cám ơn anh đã đến.)
- *Let's meet again soon.* (Hẹn sớm gặp lại nhé.)
- *See you later.* (Hẹn gặp lại.)
- *Good bye/ Bye.* (Tạm biệt.)
- *Good night.* (Tạm biệt.)
- *Take care.* (Hãy bảo trọng.)

4. Khen ngợi và chúc mừng (complimenting and congratulating)

Lời khen ngợi:

- *You did a good job!! Good job!* (Anh làm tốt lắm.)
- *What you did was wonderful/ desirable/ amazing.* (Những gì anh làm được thật tuyệt vời/ đáng ngưỡng mộ/ kinh ngạc.)
- *You played the game so well.* (Anh chơi trận đấu rất hay.)
- *Congratulations!* (Xin chúc mừng!)
- *You look great/fantastic in your new suit.* (Anh trông thật tuyệt trong bộ đồ mới.)
- *Your dress is very lovely.* (Chiếc áo đầm của chị thật đáng yêu.)

- *You have a great hairstyle!* (Kiểu tóc của bạn thật tuyệt!)
- *I wish / had such a nice house.* (Ước gì tôi có ngôi nhà xinh xắn như thế này.)

Lời답:

- *Thank you. I'm glad you like it.* (Cám ơn. Rất vui là anh thích nó.)
- *You did so well, too.* (Anh cũng làm rất tốt.)
- *Your garden is fantastic, too.* (Ngôi vườn của anh cũng tuyệt vời.)
- *Thank you. I like yours too.* (Cám ơn. Tôi cũng thích...)

5. Cám ơn (thanking)

Lời cảm ơn:

- *Thank you very much for...* (Cám ơn rất nhiều về...)
- *Thank you/ Thanks/ Many thanks.* (Cám ơn rất nhiều.)
- *It was so kind/ nice/ good of you to invite us...* (Anh thật là tử tế/ tốt đã mời chúng tôi...)
- *I am thankful/grateful to you for...* (Tôi rất biết ơn anh vì...)

Lời đáp:

- *You're welcome.* (Không có chi.)
- *Never mind/Not at all.* (Không có chi.)
- *Don't mention it. / Forget it.* (Có gì đâu. Đừng nhắc nữa.)
- *It's my pleasure (to help you).* (Tôi rất vui được giúp anh.)
- *I'm glad I could help.* (Tôi rất vui là có thể giúp được anh.)
- *It was the least we could do for you.* (Chúng tôi đã có thể làm được hơn thế nữa.)

6. Xin lỗi (apologizing)

Lời xin lỗi:

- *I'm terribly/awfully sorry about that.* (Tôi hết sức xin lỗi về điều đó.)
- *I apologize to you for.....* (Tôi xin lỗi anh về...)
- *It's totally my fault.* (Đó hoàn toàn là lỗi của tôi.)
- *I didn't mean that. Please accept my apology.* (Tôi không có ý làm thế. Xin hãy chấp nhận lời xin lỗi của tôi.)
- *It will not happen again. I promise.* (Tôi hứa là điều đó sẽ không xảy ra nữa.)
- *I shouldn't have done that.* (Lẽ ra tôi đã không làm thế.)
- *Please let me know if there is anything I can do to compensate for it.* (Hãy nói cho tôi biết là tôi có thể làm gì để bù đắp lại điều đó.)

Lời đáp:

- *It doesn't matter.* (Không sao đâu.)
- *Don't worry about that.* (Đừng lo.)
- *Forget it. /No problem./Never mind./ That's all right./OK.* (Không sao.)
- *You really don't have to apologize.* (Thật ra anh không cần phải xin lỗi đâu.)
- *OK. It's not your fault.* (Được rồi. Đó không phải là lỗi anh.)

7. Sự thông cảm (sympathy)

Lời diễn đạt sự thông cảm:

- *I'm sorry to hear that... .*(Tôi lấy làm tiếc khi biết rằng...)
- *I feel sorry for you.* (Tôi lấy làm tiếc cho anh.)
- *I think I understand how you feel.*
(Tôi nghĩ tôi có thể hiểu được cảm giác của anh thế nào.)
- *You have to learn to accept it.* (Anh phải học cách chấp nhận điều đó thôi.)

Lời đáp:

- *Thank you very much.* (Cám ơn rất nhiều.)
- *It was very kind/nice/thoughtful/caring/considerate of you.*
(Anh thật là tốt/ tử tế/ sâu sắc/ chu đáo.)

III. Yêu cầu và xin phép.

1. Yêu cầu (making requests)

Lời yêu cầu:

- *Can/ Could/ Will/ Would you please ?* (Anh làm ơn...)
- *Would you mind + V-ing.... ?* (Anh có phiền không nếu...)
- *Would it be possible... ?* (Liệu có thể...)
- *I would be grateful if you could....* (Tôi rất biết ơn nếu anh có thể...)
- *I wonder if.....* (Tôi tự hỏi không biết... có được không.)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

- *Sure/ Certainly/ Of course.* (Dĩ nhiên là được.)
- *No problem.* (Không vấn đề gì.)
- *I'm happy to.* (Tôi sẵn lòng.)

Từ chối:

- *I'm afraid I can't. I'm busy now/ I'm using it.* (Tôi e rằng không thể. Bây giờ tôi đang bận/ tôi đang dùng nó.)
- *I don't think it's possible.* (Tôi cho là không thể được.)
- *Is it OK if I do it later?* (Lát nữa có được không?)

2. Xin phép (asking for permission)

Lời xin phép:

- *May/ Might/ Can/ Could I ?* (Xin phép cho tôi...)
- *Do you mind if I... ?/ Would you mind if I... ?* (Anh có phiền không nếu tôi...)
- *Is it OK if.....?* (Liệu có ổn không nếu...)
- *Anyone mind if... ?* (Có ai phiền không nếu...)
- *Do you think I can/could.... ?* (Anh có nghĩ là tôi có thể...)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

- *Sure/ Certainly/ Of course/ OK.* (Tất nhiên rồi.)

- *Go ahead./ You can.* (Cứ tự nhiên.)
- *Do it! Don't ask.* (Cứ làm đi! Đừng hỏi nữa.)

Từ chối:

- *I'm afraid you can't.* (Tôi e rằng không được.)
- *I don't think you can.* (Tôi cho rằng không được.)
- *No, you can't./No, not now.* (Không. Böyle giờ thì không.)

IV. Than phiền hoặc chỉ trích.

Lời than phiền hoặc chỉ trích:

- *You should have asked for permission first.* (Lẽ ra anh phải xin phép trước.)
- *You shouldn't have do that.* (Lẽ ra anh không nên làm điều đó.)
- *Why on earth didn't you listen to me?* (Sao anh lại không chịu nghe tôi nói?)
- *You're late again./ You are being late recently.*
(Anh lại đi trễ. Dạo này anh cứ đi trễ.)
- *You damaged my mobile phone!*
(Anh làm hỏng chiếc điện thoại di động của tôi rồi!)
- *No one but you did it!* (Anh chứ không ai khác làm điều đó!)

Lời đáp:

- *I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean that.* (Tôi thành thật xin lỗi. Tôi không cố ý làm vậy.)
- *I'm sorry but I had no choice.* (Xin lỗi nhưng tôi không còn sự lựa chọn nào khác.)
- *I'm sorry but the thing is....* (Tôi xin lỗi nhưng chuyện là thế này...)
- *Not me!* (Không phải tôi!)

V. Bày tỏ quan điểm của người nói.

1. Đồng ý hoặc không đồng ý (agreeing or disagreeing).

Đồng ý:

- *I (totally/ completely/ absolutely) agree with you.* (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)
- *Absolutely/definitely.* (Dĩ nhiên rồi.)
- *Exactly!* (Chính xác.)
- *That's true./ That's it.* (Đúng vậy.)
- *You are right. There is no doubt about it.* (Anh nói đúng. Chẳng còn nghi ngờ gì về điều đó nữa.)
- *I can't agree with you more.* (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)
- *That's just what I think.* (Tôi cũng nghĩ thế.)
- *That's what I was going to say.* (Tôi cũng định nói vậy.)

Không đồng ý hoặc đồng ý một phần:

- *You could be right but I think...* (Có thể anh đúng nhưng tôi nghĩ...)
- *I may be wrong but...* (Có thể tôi sai nhưng...)

- *I see what you mean but I think... (Tôi hiểu ý anh nhưng tôi nghĩ...)*
- *I just don't think it's right that... (Tôi không cho là điều đó đúng...)*
- *I don't quite agree because... (Tôi không hẳn đồng ý bởi vì...)*
- *You're wrong there. (Anh sai rồi.)*
- *Personally, I think that... (Cá nhân tôi thì cho rằng...)*

2. Hỏi và đưa ra ý kiến (asking for and expressing opinions).

Lời hỏi ý kiến:

- *What do you think about... ? (Anh nghĩ gì về...?)*
- *Tell me what you think about... (Hãy cho tôi biết anh nghĩ gì về...?)*
- *What is your opinion about I on... ? (Ý kiến của anh về... là như thế nào?)*
- *How do you feel about... ? (Anh thấy thế nào về...?)*

Lời đưa ra ý kiến:

- *In my opinion,/Personally... .(Theo tôi thì...)*
- *In my view, ... (Theo quan điểm của tôi,...)*
- *It seems to me that... (Đối với tôi có vẻ là...)*
- *As far as I can say... (Theo tôi được biết thì...)*
- *I strongly/ firmly think/ believe/ feel that... (Tôi hoàn toàn nghĩ/ tin/ cảm thấy là...)*
- *I must say that... (Tôi phải nói rằng...)*

3. Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị (advising or making suggestions).

Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị:

- *If I were you, I would... (Nếu tôi là anh thì tôi sẽ...)*
- *If I were in your situation/ shoes, I would... (Nếu tôi ở vào hoàn cảnh của anh thì tôi sẽ...)*
- *It's a good idea to... (... là một ý hay đấy.)*
- *You should/had better... (Anh nên...)*
- *It is advisable/recommendable to... (Anh nên...)*
- *I would recommend that... (Tôi khuyên là....)*
- *Why don't you...? (Sao anh không...?)*
- *What about/How about... ? (Còn về... thì sao?)*
- *Shall we... ?/Let's... (Chúng ta hãy...)*

4. Lời cảnh báo (warning).

Lời cảnh báo:

- *You should/ had better.... or/ if... not... (Anh nên... nếu không thì...)*
- *You should/had better.... Otherwise,... (Anh nên... Nếu không thì...)*

Ví dụ: You should wear a safety helmet while riding, or you'll get a fine.

You shouldn't smoke in here. Otherwise, you'll ruin the carpet.

Lời đáp:

- *Thank you/ Thanks. (Cám ơn.)*

- *I will do it.* (Tôi sẽ làm thế.)

5. Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ (offering).

Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

- *Can/ May I help you?* (Để tôi giúp anh.)
- *Let me help you.* (Để tôi giúp anh.)
- *How can I help you?* (Tôi có thể giúp gì cho anh?)
- *Would you like some help?/ Do you need some help?* (Anh có cần giúp không?)

Chấp nhận lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

- *Yes, please.* (Vâng.)
- *That is great.* (Thật tuyệt.)
- *That would be great/ fantastic.* (Thật tuyệt.)
- *It would be nice/ helpful/ fantastic/ wonderful if you could.* (Rất tuyệt nếu anh có thể làm vậy.)
- *Thanks. That would be a great help.* (Cám ơn. Được anh giúp thì tốt quá.)
- *As long as you don't mind.* (Được chứ nếu anh không phiền.)

Từ chối lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

- *No, please.* (Không, cảm ơn.)
- *No. That's OK.* (Không sao đâu.)
- *Thanks, but I can manage.* (Cám ơn, nhưng tôi làm được mà.)

Ví dụ minh họa 1:

Chọn phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- Mike: “Our living standards have been improved greatly.”
- Susan: “ _____ ”

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. Thank you for saying so. | B. Sure. I couldn't agree more. |
| C. No, it's nice to say so. | D. Yes, it's nice of you to say so. |

Hướng dẫn:

B Đáp án đúng. Mike đưa ra ý kiến của mình (**expressing opinion**) về mức sống hiện tại (living standards) và Susan đưa ra lời tán thành với Mike (**expressing degrees of agreement**).

Sure. I couldn't agree more. (=I agree with you completely!) (Chắc chắn thế. Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)

A “Thank you for saying so” được dùng để cảm ơn một lời khen.

C “No” có nghĩa phủ định không dùng với “it's nice to say so” (Bạn thật tốt khi nói như thế.)

D “Yes, it's nice of you to say so” được dùng để đáp lại một lời khen.

Ví dụ minh họa 2:

Chọn phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- “Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?”
- “_____”

- A.
bored.

I don't agree. I'm *afraid*. **B.** I feel very

- C. You're welcomed. D. That would be great

Hướng dẫn: “Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?” (Anh có muốn đi đến sân vận động vào chiều nay không?) (Đây là câu đề nghị.)

D Đáp án đúng. “*That would be great.*” (Điều đó thật tuyệt). Đây là lời đáp trước câu đề nghị.

A Phuong án sai. 'I don't agree. I'm afraid. " (Tôi e rằng tôi không đồng ý). Câu này nêu sự không đồng ý, nhưng nếu người thứ hai không đồng ý với lời đề nghị thì người đó từ chối và nêu lí do.

B Phương án sai. *I feel very bored.* " (Tôi cảm thấy chán nản). Câu này không liên hệ chặt chẽ với câu đề nghị.

C Phương án sai. “*You 're welcomed.* ” (Rất vui được tiếp anh.)

Ví dụ minh họa 3:

Chon phuong án I_hich hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:

- Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!"
 - Mary: " "

- A.** Yes, all right. **B.** Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday.
C. Never mention it. **D.** Thanks, but I'm afraid.

Hướng dẫn: Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!"

Cindy: "Mary, kiểu tóc của chị tuyệt quá!"

Đây là lời khen ngợi và Mary đáp lại lời khen ngợi bằng cách cảm ơn

B. Đáp án đúng: "Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday."

(Cám ơn Cindy. Hôm qua tôi nhò' người làm đầu lái.)

A “Yes, all right.” (Vâng, được rồi. Đây là lời cho phép ai làm cái gì?)

C “Never mention it.” (Không có chi. Câu này dùng để đáp lại lời cảm ơn.)

D “Thanks, but I’m afraid.” (Cám ơn nhưng tôi e rằng không thể được)

Đây là lời từ chối một yêu cầu

Exercise I: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. “Thank you for taking the time to come here in person.” “ ”

- A.** It's my pleasure.
C. I'd love to come. What time?

B. I don't know what time that person comes,
D. Do you have time for some gossip?

- 2 "I have a terrible headache" " "

- A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's.
 - B. Not very well. Thanks.
 - C. May be you should take a rest.

- D. Not bad. I'm not going to the doctor's.

- A. Of course, not for me. B. No, I can't help you now.
C. No, those aren't mine. D. No, I can manage them myself.
4. "What does it cost to get to Manchester?" " _____"
A. It's interesting to travel to Manchester.
B. It depends on how you go.
C. I always go by train.
D. I don't like to go by train.
5. _____ "Yes. Do you have any shirts?"
A. Could you do me a favour ? B. Oh, dear. What a nice shirt!
C. May I help you? D. White, please.
6. "What's the best place to eat lunch?" " _____"
A. I'll have soup, please.
B. There's a great restaurant at the corner of the street.
C. I usually eat lunch at twelve.
D. Twelve would be convenient.
7. "Maybe you can take a vacation next month."
A. Nothing special. B. You're welcome.
C. It's very expensive. D. I don't think so. I'm teaching all summer.
8. "What do you think of your new DVD player?" " _____"
A. I love it. B. My brother gave it to me.
C. It was a gift from my brother. D. I always put it there.
9. "How have you been recently? " _____"
A. It's too late now. B. Pretty busy, I think,
C. By bus, I think. D. No, I'll not be busy.
10. "Do you need a knife and a fork?" " _____"
A. No, I'll just use a frying pan. B. No, I'll just use chopsticks,
C. No, I'll just use a can opener. D. No, I'll use a cooker.

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You're so patient with US." " _____"
A. Thanks, that's nice of you to say so.
B. Thanks. Have a nice trip,
C. I'm fine, thanks.
D. I know. I have trouble controlling my temper.
2. "Can I try your new camera?" " _____"
A. I'm sorry I can't. Let's go now.
B. Sure. I'd love to.
C. Sure. But please be careful with it.
D. I'm sorry. I'm home late.

3. “_____” “Yes, about ten cigarettes a day.”
A. Do you smoke? B. What’s the matter?
C. Anything else? D. Well, you should stop smoking.
4. “How well do you play?” “_____”
A. Yes, I used to play tennis. B. I don’t play very often,
C. No, I don’t play very well. D. Pretty well, I think.
5. “_____” “No, nothing special.”
A. Did you watch the live show last weekend?
B. Did you do anything special last weekend?
C. Did you have a great time last weekend?
D. Did you go anywhere last weekend?
6. “Didn’t you go to the conference?” “_____”
A. No, I went there with my friends.
B. That sounds nice, but I can’t.
C. Don’t worry. I’ll go there.
D. I did, but I didn’t stay long.
7. “_____” “No, thank you. That’ll be all.”
A. What would you like?
B. It’s very kind of you to help me.
C. Would you like anything else?
D. What kind of food do you like?
8. “What was the last present that you received?” “_____”
A. A fashion hat. B. It depends on the situation,
C. Several times. D. I think it’s OK.
9. “Let me drive you home.” “_____”
A. No problem. B. Don’t worry. I’m all right,
C. I usually drive home at five. D. It’s me.
10. “May I leave a message for Ms Davis?” “_____”
A. I’m afraid she’s not here at the moment.
B. No, she’s not here now.
C. She’s leaving a message to you now.
D. Yes, I’ll make sure she gets it.

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. “Your boss looks like the aggressive type.” “_____”
A. Yes, he really wants to get ahead. B. Yes, he’s quite gentle,
C. Really? I’ve never seen him lie. D. Right. He’s so quiet.
2. “How can this dress be so expensive?” “”
A. Yes, it’s the most expensive. B. What an expensive dress!

- C. You're paying for the brand. D. That's a good idea.
3. "I get impatient when the teacher doesn't tell us the answers." " _____"
A. Yes, it's hard to think of the answers.
B. Yes, I wish she'd hurry up.
C. Yes, she should know the answers.
D. Yes, she speaks too quickly.
4. "Did you play tennis last weekend?" " _____"
A. It's my favourite sport. B. I worked.
C. Do you like it? D. Would you like to come with me?
5. "May I speak to the manager?" " _____"
A. He always comes late. He is not very well.
B. Thank you. Good bye.
C. I'm afraid he's not in. Can I take a message?
D. I'm afraid not. He works very hard.
6. "where's the view? The advertisement said that this place has a great view of the sea." "
" _____"
A. It has good facilities. B. It's convenient to see it.
C. You can find it very convenient. D. You can see it from the back.
7. "Why did you turn the air conditioner on?" " _____"
A. I think it's bad condition. B. I can't see anything,
C. It's a little hot in here. D. It's a good idea.
8. "There's a baseball game tonight." " _____"
A. Great. Let's go. B. I'm not a real fan of hers,
C. Don't mention it. D. Thanks. I'd love to.
9. " _____" "Yes, I do. I like them a lot."
A. What do you think of tennis?
B. Do you like sports?
C. Do you prefer tennis or badminton?
D. How often you play tennis?
10. _____ No, I'm not. I feel awful."
A. How are you? B. Are you feeling OK?
C. Is there anything wrong? D. What's the matter?
- Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**
1. "Where will you go on vacation?" " _____"
A. Probably to the beach. B. The beach is nice, isn't it?
C. Probably I won't think of. D. I have a four-day vacation.
2. " _____" "I think the vase is broken."
A. Can I help you? B. Why is it so expensive?

- C. What is it? D. What's wrong with it?
3. "What do you do for a living?" "_____"
A. I get a high salary, you know. B. I want to be a doctor, I guess,
C. I work in a bank. D. It's hard work, you know.
4. "I wonder if you could do something for me." "_____"
A. It depends on what it is. B. What's it like?
C. No, thanks. D. I'm afraid I won't come.
5. "Haven't you put an advertisement in the paper yet?" "_____"
A. I'm not sure. Really? B. I will, the first thing in the afternoon,
C. I'm with you there. D. I can get a paper for you right now.
6. "Have you noticed that the manager wears something green every day?" "_____"
A. I know. He's a good manager. B. Sure. He will do that.
C. I know. He must like green. D. He'd rather do that.
7. "_____" "No, I don't play the piano."
A. What kind of music do you like?
B. Do you play the piano?
C. Do you earn a lot by playing the piano?
D. What kind of music do you like?
8. "Excuse me. I'm your new neighbor. I just moved in." "_____"
A. Sorry, I don't know. B. Oh, I don't think so.
C. I'm afraid not. D. Where to, sir?
9. "How about an evening riverboat tour?" "_____"
A. No, it's good to do so.
B. Actually I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour,
C. No, I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.
D. Actually I've gone twice this week.
10. "Can you come over after the show?" "_____"
A. That would be nice. B. No, I didn't.
C. Please, go ahead. D. Why don't we go to the show?
- Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**
1. "I think the pants are a little big." "_____"
A. Are they big enough? B. You should get a bigger pair,
C. Yes, maybe a little. D. Yes, they are not big at all.
2. "_____" "Yes, it's OK. But could you clean your room first?"
A. Would you like to go to Helen's party this weekend?
B. Can I go to Helen's party this weekend?
C. What time does Helen's party begin this weekend?
D. I don't like the noise at parties.

3. "How late will the bank be open?" " _____ "
A. Its services are very good indeed. B. It is two blocks away,
C. It is not very far. D. It will be open until 6 pm.
4. "Will the maths teacher give us a test this week?" " _____ "
A. I doubt whether it's easy. B. Yes, the test was difficult,
C. I don't think he will come. D. No, he probably won't.
5. "What does this thing do?" " _____ "
A. I think it's a waste of money, B. It sure does.
C. It peels potatoes. D. I can use it well.
6. " _____ " "Yes, I have a date."
A. Do you have any plans for tonight?
B. Can I have an appointment with Dr. Adams?
C. What's the time, please?
D. Do you have any plans tonight?
7. "May I take my break now?" " _____ "
A. No, you didn't break it. B. I think I need five minutes,
C. I'll be back in five minutes. D. Yes, of course.
8. "Do you support the proposal to build a new airport?" " _____ "
A. No, not really. B. No, I like it.
C. No, I don't think you're right. D. Yes, I'm against it.
9. "Your job is pretty routine, then?" " _____ "
A. Yes, sometimes it's a little boring. B. Yes, it's really exciting,
C. Yes, I love exciting work. D. Yes, it's different every day.
10. " _____ " "Oh, but it's boring."
A. Don't you like the news?
B. Would you prefer news to films?
C. I think you should watch the news.
D. You often watch the news, don't you?

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "I think the new resort will ruin the environment." " _____ "
A. I'm afraid so. B. Don't you think so?
C. I agree. It sounds nice. D. Let's go there.
2. " _____ " "OK. Where shall we go?"
A. Shall we go the jazz concert?
B. Have you done the shopping?
C. Oh, reading books and going shopping.
D. I want to go shopping.
3. "Would you mind sending those flowers to Mr. Brown?" " _____ "

- A. Sure, I'll do it now.
C. He wouldn't mind.
4. "I've got two tickets for the show." " _____ "
A. Oh, anything else?
C. That's great. When is it?
5. "Go two blocks and then you're there." " _____ "
A. Excuse me. How can I get there?
C. No, thanks.
6. "Would you like to order now?" " _____ "
A. Yes, I like beef steak.
C. It's excellent.
7. " _____ " "Oh, really? Why?"
A. What do I do next?
B. When do you have class again?
C. You have a doctor's appointment at ten.
D. Our tomorrow's class has been canceled.
8. "Hi, I'd like some information about driving lessons." " _____ "
A. I'm afraid I can't drive.
C. From 9 am to 5 pm.
9. "I think golf is really great." " _____ "
A. Do you? I think it's boring.
C. Neither do I.
10. "That was a boring book." " _____ "
A. No, it's very boring.
C. It certainly was.

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- 1.** "Guess what! I was just invited to the manager's house for dinner." " _____ "
A. What's that?
C. Well done.
2. "So how are things at school, Tom?" " _____ "
A. Well, I can't agree with you.
C. Oh, pretty good, actually.
3. "Do you fancy going to a movie this evening?" _____ "
A. I'm sorry. I don't know that.
C. Not so bad. And you?
4. "We've been here before." " _____ "
A. Oh, have we?
C. How lovely!
B. I would if I were you.
D. No, I can handle it myself.
B. Thanks. I can afford the tickets,
D. Oh, let's go and get the tickets.
B. OK, thanks.
D. I'm sorry I don't know.
B. Yes, I'd like beef steak,
D. Yes, a table for five.
B. Sure, could I have your name and address?
D. Sure, please do.
B. Don't you believe so?
D. Almost every day.
B. Yes, it was exciting,
D. I think it will be good.
B. Oh, how nice.
D. Really? I don't think so.
B. I was not good at it.
D. It's my pleasure.
B. Not at all. go ahead,
D. That would be nice.
B. How nice!
D. No, we didn't.

5. "Could I speak to Ann?" "_____"
A. This is Daisy speaking. B. Can I take a message?
C. Just a moment. I'm coming. D. I'm sorry. Ann's not in.
6. "Well, it's been nice talking to you." "_____"
A. Yes, nice to have met you too. B. Oh, yes. I'm afraid so.
C. Nice to meet you, too. D. Have you been here long?
7. "Did you hear about the robbery the other day?" "_____"
A. Yes, it was great. B. No, what happened?
C. Oh, no. D. Oh, sure. Thanks.
8. "I don't think we should exercise late at night." "_____"
A. Neither do I. B. So do I.
C. I think so, too. D. I don't, neither.
9. "Sorry, the manager is not here." "_____"
A. Can I take a message then? B. Can I speak to the manager, please?
C. Can I leave a message then? D. Would you like to leave a message?
10. "It was very kind of you to help me out, Paul" "_____"
A. I'm glad you like it. B. Thanks a million,
C. That was the least I could do. D. You can say that again.

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of +

1. "I hear The Golden Bride is a very good film." "_____"
A. Yes, it's very exciting. B. No, I don't hear that,
C. Yes, it's boring. D. No, I hear it, too.
2. "What would you like to do at the weekend?" "_____"
A. I like to do a lot. B. I can't stand it.
C. I'd like to see a football match. D. I don't like the weekend.
3. "What's the matter with your son?" "_____"
A. He went to London two weeks ago.
B. He's just graduated from university,
C. He's got a headache.
D. He did an experiment on a cure for the headache.
4. "What's the weather like in Vietnam now?" "_____"
A. It's sunny and hot.
B. It's summer now.
C. We have dry season and rainy season.
D. It often rains in spring.
5. Customer: "_____"
Salesman: "It's over there, next to desserts."
A. I'm sorry. I didn't buy the tea and coffee.

- B. Can you help me? I can't carry the tea and coffee,
C. How much is a kilo of tea and coffee?
D. Excuse me, where's the tea and coffee?

6. "Can you come down and help me with my shopping?" "_____"
A. What are you doing? B. I am coming.
C. Can't you buy me some stamps? D. I am looking forward.

7. Mr. Simon: "What shall I do when I want to call you?"
Nurse: "_____"
A. Stay here and enjoy yourself.
B. You shall find the red button on the left,
C. Press the red button on the left.
D. I'd come every ten minutes.

8. "Would you like to meet Mrs. Gale?" "_____"
A. I don't know where she is living. B. I'd love to.
C. I find it very interesting. D. I can make an appointment with her.

9. "Do you need any help?" "_____"
A. No, thanks. I'm too weak to lift this box.
B. No, thanks. I'm strong enough to lift this box.
C. Yes, thanks. I'm too strong to lift this box.
D. Yes, thanks. I'm weak enough to lift this box.

10. "_____ "That's all right. I can mend it."
A. I'm sorry about the dirt.
B. I'm sorry I broke the cup.
C. I do apologize for her rudeness.
D. It was all fault. I shouldn't have said that.

Exercise 9: *Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. "Would you like another cup of coffee?" "_____"
A. Me, too. B. It's a pleasure,
C. Very kind of your part. D. I'd love one.

2. "Would you like me to get you a taxi?" "_____"
A. Well. Let's see. B. Yes, please, if it's not bother,
C. Yes, I see. D. That would be delightful.
Thanks.

3. "How does this machine work exactly?" "_____"
A. What have you done to it? B. It's my pleasure,
C. Certainly. D. It's very simple. I'll show
you.

4. "Sorry, I'm late, Peter." "_____"

- A. No, I wouldn't mind at all.
C. That's all right.
- B. Not on my account,
D. Well, it's worth a try.
5. "Why don't you come over and see the new film with me?" "_____"
A. I'm afraid not.
C. Sure. Please do.
- B. Great, I'd love to.
D. Wow! I didn't realize that.
6. "Do you like that advanced course you're taking, John?" "_____"
A. No, thanks.
C. Not me. I'm still waiting.
- B. By and large, yes.
D. No, not everyone.
7. "Do you know where Paul is?" "_____"
A. Pardon, I don't know.
C. Why not?
- B. I'm afraid I don't,
D. It's no use.
8. "Do you mind if I use your phone?" "_____"
A. Not at all. Help yourself.
C. Sorry, I have no idea.
- B. You can say that again,
D. Certainly, it's true.
9. "Do you want me to turn up the heater?" "_____"
A. It's my pleasure.
C. No, it's quite warm here.
- B. No, go right ahead,
D. Thanks. I'll be right back."
10. Excuse me, can you tell me where I can catch a bus to London, please?" "_____"
A. Yes, please.
C. Sure, go ahead.
- B. Sorry, I'm new here myself,
D. OK. Here's your ticket.

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You look nice in these blue jeans, Ann." "_____"
A. Don't mention it.
C. You can say that again.
- B. Don't bother,
D. Thanks.
2. "I wonder if you could help me." "_____"
A. Don't mention it.
C. I'll do my best. What's up?
- B. Really? How nice,
D. No, what is it?
3. "You won the first prize, Jane." "_____"
A. You are very welcome.
C. You are kidding.
- B. Congratulations!
D. Well done.
4. "Didn't you go to the cinema last night?" "_____"
A. Yes. I lost the ticket.
C. No. It was too cold to go out.
- B. Yes, I stayed at home,
D. OK. That's a good idea.
5. "Well, I hope you enjoyed your meal." "_____"
A. Oh, absolutely delicious.
C. No problem.
- B. Yes, that's right.
D. Yes, it's very interesting.
6. "Do you have the time, please?" "_____"
A. I'd rather not.
- B. Sure. I have plenty of time,

- C. No, I haven't. I'm busy. D. Sorry. I don't have a watch now.
7. "Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight?" "_____"
 A. No, thanks. I'd better do it myself.
 B. Thanks for asking. I just need an early night.
 C. Why not? Staying at home is always what I want.
 D. Are there any good programmes on TV tonight?
8. "How long will it take to finish that report?" "_____"
 A. It's about 10 pages long. B. I agree. It's very long.
 C. I'll report it to the manager. D. I'll have it finished by next week.
9. "What is Mary's new boyfriend like?" "_____"
 A. He's from the next town. B. He's intelligent and humorous,
 C. She likes him a lot. D. He likes tennis and baseball.
10. "It is very kind of you to invite us to your party." "_____"
 A. No, thanks. B. Good idea, thanks,
 C. OK. That's great. D. It's my pleasure.

Exercise 11: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "_____" "Yes, there's plenty of room."
 A. How big is the new wardrobe? B. How much is the new wardrobe?
 C. It's a big wardrobe, isn't it? D. What is the new wardrobe like?
2. "What did you send to Mr. Smith?" "_____"
 A. I lent him a report, C. I sent him to the scene.
 B. I wrote a report for him. D. I sent him a copy of the report.
3. "How would you like your tea?" "_____"
 A. With milk, please, B. Thank you very much.
 C. Yes, please. Thanks. D. It's fantastic. Thank you.
4. "I'm sorry for being late." "_____"
 A. Of course, not. B. That's for sure.
 C. Yes, that's right. You can do it. D. You'd better not do it again.
5. "You stepped on my toes." "_____"
 A. Really? I am glad. B. I am sorry but I meant it.
 C. Are you sure? Did you take any steps? D. I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean it.
6. "_____" "Really? What did he say?"
 A. Is Tom the one who won the lottery?
 B. Can you call Tom tomorrow?
 C. Tom just went to California for a holiday.
 D. I ran into Tom on the way to work.

7. "You look great in the new dress." " _____ "
A. That's fine. Thank you. B. Yours is lovely, too.
C. You are welcome. D. Of course not. You bet!
8. "Sorry to interrupt you but could I have a word here?" " _____ "
A. Could you just wait until I finish? B. Well, it's beyond my control.
C. Thank you for your listening. D. It's none of my business.
9. "What do you think of football?" " _____ "
A. I am crazy about it. B. The football players are excellent.
C. It's none of my business. D. It's beyond my expectation.
10. " _____ " "Every two months."
A. When do you see your dentist?
B. How frequently do you see your dentist?
C. How much time do you see your dentist?
D. How long ago did you see your dentist?

Exercise 12: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. " _____ " "Unfortunately, I didn't."
A. Can you pick me up from the airport?
B. Can you do me favour? The suitcase is too heavy,
C. Did you install any anti-viruses software?
D. Have you bought any anti-viruses software?
2. "I had a great evening. Thank you."
A. Shall we go now? B. It was not really,
C. I'm glad you came. D. Did you enjoy enough?
3. "Have you checked your email today?" " _____ "
A. No, I'll check it later. B. No, it costs a lot.
C. All right. I'll do it for you. D. Yes, it's getting extremely slow.
4. "When did you last meet Jane?" " _____ "
A. We will meet again next week. B. The first time was two years ago.
C. She was in Rome. D. I don't remember.
5. "How far is the post office?" " _____ "
A. It's quite old. B. You'd better call a taxi,
C. It's being constructed. D. It's quite slow. I think.
6. "You should have flown with the earlier flight." " _____ "
A. Yes, I did. B. Thank you very much,
C. Oh, dear. I'm sorry to hear that. D. It was fully booked.
7. _____ " "I would love to. Thank you."
A. Would you like a cake?
B. Would you like to go to the new coffee shop with me?

- C. Why do you spend so much time playing games?
D. What would you do if you could afford a car?
8. "I'm having some friends over for dinner this evening. Would you like to join us?"
"_____"
- A. Thanks, but I mustn't. B. Come on. It's your turn,
C. Can I take a rain check? D. As a matter of fact, I do.
9. "I wondered if you could give me a lift home." "_____"
A. Really? Are you sure? B. Of course, I can.
C. That's fine. Thank you. D. Well, it's raining outside.
10. "_____" "I am glad you liked it."
A. Thank you for a great evening. The food was so good.
B. I like your handbag. It's *fantastic*.
C. Could you drop by tomorrow, please?
D. It's going to rain. I have to leave now.

Exercise 13: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Oh, no. I can't find my credit card." "_____"
A. Don't worry. They will be back soon.
B. Try to remember when you last used it.
C. It is a nice surprise. You should be glad about it.
D. Thank you for letting me know.
2. "What is the purpose of your visit?" "_____"
A. My next stop is London. B. I've been here for two days,
C. I'm attending a meeting. D. I'm not sure.
3. "My apartment has a view of the river." "_____"
A. Yes, it is. B. I've been there,
C. Guess what. D. You are lucky.
4. "How does this machine work?" "_____"
A. I think it's quite heavy. B. Will you call the mechanic?
C. Plug it in and press the button. D. It's very expensive.
5. "_____" "It's Bill's."
A. Who borrowed your hat? B. Who said this is Bill's hat?
C. Who did you buy the hat for? D. Whose is the hat you are wearing?
6. "Do you know that this house is haunted?" "_____"
A. Yes, I would. Go ahead. B. Where on earth have you been?
C. Haunted? You are pulling my leg. D. Who was haunted?
7. "Let me give you a lift home." "_____"
A. Don't mention it. B. I like lifts.
C. If you don't mind. D. You're very welcome.
8. "Would you mind getting me a cup of coffee?" "_____"

- A. I never drink coffee. B. No, thanks.
C. Cream and sugar, please. D. It's my pleasure.
9. "Why didn't you pay the telephone bill?" "_____"
A. Yes, of course. B. Thank you for all that,
C. I did. D. Well, it's too late.
10. "Could you wait until I come back?" "_____"
A. That would be great. B. I'd rather not. Sorry,
C. Yes. Please do it. D. Thank you very much.

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Do you like rock music?" "_____"
A. It's not quite well. B. I'm very interested in them,
C. I do love it so much. D. That's understandable.
2. "Can we start the meeting now?" "_____"
A. Yesterday we met all day. C. It takes five hours.
B. Yes, I was very glad to be here. D. No, not everyone has arrived yet.
3. "It wasn't an important meeting." "_____"
A. Do you think it's important?
B. Yes, it was a very well-organized meeting,
C. Right. The meeting was unimportant.
D. Right. The meeting was very important.
4. " _____ " "Thank you. We are proud of him."
A. Your child is just a genius.
B. Your kid is naughty.
C. I can give him a lift to school.
D. Can we ask your child to take a photo?
5. "Is it very hot in summer here?" "_____"
A. Well, it's too late for the weather forecast.
B. Well, it depends on the rainfall.
C. I'm sorry. I missed the weather forecast.
D. Yes, we have high rainfall.
6. " _____ " "Try some sleeping pills."
A. I just can't sleep well lately. B. Did you have a good sleep?
C. Do you have sleeping pills? D. Can you sleep well?
7. "I love strawberries. How about you? Do you like them?" "_____"
A. I'm pretty fine, thanks. B. No, I can't stand them,
C. No, they always stand there. D. No, I'm standing here.
8. "We've got time for a coffee, haven't we?" "_____"
A. Why not? B. I'll have tea, please,

- C. A quick one maybe. D. I'd prefer tea.

9. "I'm sorry. I broke your vase." "_____"
A. I'd rather not. B. Don't worry. Things break,
C. OK. Go ahead. D. Yes, certainly.

10. "Are you going to Tom's farewell party tonight?" "_____"
A. That's surprising. B. I'm not sure yet. And you?
C. It's too hot in here. D. They are not my favourite.

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Can you type this letter before you go home?" "_____"
A. No, thanks. I can manage. B. Yes, you may.
C. Yes, I'll do it now. D. No, not very quickly.

2. "You must be very pleased." "_____"
A. Thanks very much. B. I don't have time
C. Actually, it's a good idea. D. Yes, I am.

3. "Would you mind closing the window?" "_____"
A. Yes, I think so. B. I will do it now.
C. Yes, very soon. D. Yes, you would.

4. "Shall we eat out tonight?" "_____"
A. That's a good idea.
B. That's in question.
C. It's very kind of you to invite me.
D. You're welcome.

5. "_____ " "I can manage it. Thank you."
A. Can you manage the job?
B. Let me carry the big bag for you.
C. Do you need their support?
D. Can you give me a hand with this?

6. "_____ " "It's not likely."
A. Is it important to attend university in a foreign country?
B. Would you be interested in attending university in a foreign country?
C. Is it possible to get a good job without attending university?
D. How important is it to attend university?

7. "How did you hear about his death?" "_____ "
A. It's too bad. B. Your mother told me.
C. I don't know him very well. D. I'm not sure why he died.

8. "What do you think of those sunglasses? They are only \$ 19.50." "_____ "
A. They are nice. Try them on.
B. They are made of supper plastic,

C. They are imported from Taiwan.

D. I don't know if they are good on you.

9. "Could you have some more orange juice?" "_____"

A. Yes, all right.

B. Yes, please.

C. That's right.

D. Don't mention it.

10. "Would you mind if I shut the window?" "_____"

A. Yes, please shut.

B. Yes, I wouldn't mind,

C. No, please do.

D. No, don't shut it.

Chuyên đề 5

KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC

Trong các đề thi Trung học Phổ thông Quốc gia có hai dạng bài tập đọc hiểu chính:

- Dạng điền từ vào chỗ trống (guided cloze reading), nghĩa là chọn một đáp án thích hợp cho mỗi chỗ trống. Dạng bài tập này dùng để kiểm tra khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ, khả năng phân tích.

- Dạng đọc hiểu (reading comprehension), nghĩa là chọn một đáp án thích hợp để trả lời mỗi câu hỏi. Dạng bài tập này dùng để kiểm tra khả năng suy diễn, phân tích, tổng hợp và các yếu tố văn hóa.

Đề thi Trung học Phổ thông Quốc gia thường có ba bài đọc: một bài điền từ vào chỗ trống với 10 câu hỏi có độ dài khoảng 200 từ, và 2 bài đọc hiểu có 10 câu hỏi cho mỗi bài và độ dài của mỗi bài lần lượt là 250 từ và 400 từ.

I. Kĩ năng làm bài tập trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống.

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống kiểm tra cả từ vựng lẫn ngữ pháp, đặc biệt là sự vận dụng kiến thức ngữ pháp và từ vựng trong ngữ cảnh của một đoạn văn để chọn đáp án Chính xác.

Để làm tốt bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể theo các bước sau:

1. Đọc lướt một lượt để hiểu nội dung của đoạn văn.
2. Đọc kĩ đoạn văn, đặc biệt chú ý đến những chỗ trống cần chọn từ điền vào và những từ/ cụm từ trước và sau chỗ trống đó.
3. Đọc kĩ 4 phương án cần lựa chọn, xem xét chỗ cần điền liên quan đến từ vựng hay ngữ pháp.
4. Nếu chỗ cần điền liên quan đến từ vựng, hãy đọc kĩ cụm từ, câu hoặc đoạn văn đó, dựa vào ngữ cảnh để đưa ra sự lựa chọn hợp lí nhất.
5. Nếu chỗ cần điền liên quan đến ngữ pháp hoặc cấu trúc câu, xem xét lại các từ/ cụm từ trước hoặc sau chỗ trống đó (động từ, tính từ, giới từ...); đọc lại 4 phương án để tìm đáp án đúng nhất.

Chú ý: Làm lần lượt từ câu thứ nhất đến hết, nhưng có thể bỏ qua những câu khó rồi quay lại sau.

II. Kĩ năng làm bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu.

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm trả lời câu hỏi kiểm tra kĩ năng đọc hiểu như đoán nghĩa từ mới, nghĩa ngữ cảnh, kĩ năng đọc phân tích, đọc phê phán, tổng hợp hoặc suy diễn, yếu tố văn hóa được khuyến khích nhằm kiểm tra khả năng hiểu rõ nội dung bài đọc của thí sinh.

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể tiến hành theo các bước sau:

- Đọc lướt đoạn văn để hiểu nội dung;
- Đọc từng câu hỏi và tìm nội dung những câu hỏi đó trong phần nào của đoạn văn bằng cách xác định vị trí chứa thông tin trả lời câu hỏi đó trong bài đọc. Đọc kĩ lại câu hỏi để hiểu rõ câu đó muốn hỏi về vấn đề gì;

- Đọc kĩ lại phần chứa thông tin trả lời cho câu hỏi đó;
- Đọc kĩ 4 phương án lựa chọn để tìm đáp án gần nhất với nội dung có phần thông tin trả lời cho câu hỏi (chú ý từ đồng nghĩa và trái nghĩa).

Lưu ý:

- Nếu chưa quyết định dứt khoát đáp án đúng thì hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phương án sai.
- Các câu hỏi có thể không theo thứ tự của bài đọc, do đó có thể làm những câu hỏi dễ trước rồi quay lại câu hỏi khó sau.

Các dạng câu hỏi chính cho bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu có thể được liệt kê như sau:

1. Ý chính (main idea)

- What is the topic of this passage? (*Chủ đề của bài đọc là gì?*)
- What is the main idea expressed in this passage? (*Ý chính diễn tả trong bài đọc là gì?*)
- Which title best reflects the main idea of the passage? (*Tựa đề nào phản ánh đúng nhất ý chính của bài đọc?*)

2. Câu hỏi lấy thông tin (factual questions)

- According to the passage, why did...? (*Theo bài đọc, tại sao... ?*)
- According to the information in paragraph 1, what did...? (*Theo thông tin từ đoạn 1, cái gì... ?*)
- Which of the following is true, according to the author? (*Theo tác giả, câu nào sau đây là đúng?*)

3. Câu hỏi lấy thông tin đối lập (negative factual questions)

- The author mentions all of the following in the passage EXCEPT... (*Tác giả đề cập đến tất cả những điều sau đây trong bài đọc ngoại trừ....*)
- In the passage, the author does NOT mention... (*Trong bài đọc, tác giả không đề cập đến....*)
- Which of the following is LEAST likely? (*Điều nào sau đây là ít có khả năng xảy ra nhất?*)
- According to the information in paragraph 2, which of the following is NOT true? (*Theo thông tin từ đoạn 2, điều nào sau đây là không đúng?*)

4. Câu hỏi về từ vựng (vocabulary questions)

- Which of the following could best be substituted for the word _____ in line _____? (*Phương án nào sau đây có thể thay thế đúng nhất cho từ _____ ở dòng _____?*)
- The expression “_____” in line _____ could best be replaced by _____. (*Cụm từ “_____” ở dòng _____ có thể thay thế đúng nhất bằng _____.*)
- The word “_____” in line _____ is closest in meaning to which of the following? (*Từ “_____” ở dòng _____ có nghĩa gần nhất với phương án nào sau đây?*)

5. Câu hỏi liên hệ đến từ vựng (reference questions)

- The word “ _____ in line _____ refers to _____. (Từ “ ___ ” ở dòng ___ đè
cập đến _____.)
- The pronoun “it” in line refers to. (Đại từ “it” ở dòng _____ đè _____ CÂP
DÉN_____.)
- The phrase “ _____ ” in paragraph _____ refers to _____. (Cụm từ “___”
ở đoạn ĐỀ CÂP DÉN_____.)
- The word _____ is a reference to _____. (Từ _____ là sự ám chỉ đến
_____.)

6. Câu hỏi suy diễn (inference questions)

- It is probable that... (Có lẽ rằng...)
- It can be inferred from the passage that... (Có thể suy ra từ bài đọc rằng...)
- It can be concluded from the information in paragraph 1 that...(từ thông tin ở đoạn 1 có thể kết luận rằng...)
- In paragraph 2, the author implies that... (Trong đoạn 2, tác giả ngụ ý rằng...)
- Which of the following can be inferred from the passage? (Điều gì sau đây có thể suy ra từ bài đọc?)
- From the information in paragraph 3, it can be inferred that... (Từ thông tin ở đoạn 3 có thể suy ra rằng...)
- In the last paragraph, the author suggests that ... (Trong đoạn văn cuối, tác giả ám chỉ rằng...)

7. Câu hỏi về mục đích của tác giả (questions on author's purpose)

- _____ Why does the author mention _____ in
paragraph 1? (Tại sao tác giả đề cập đến
_____ trong đoạn 1?)
- Why does the author give details about _____ ? (Tại sao tác giả đưa ra chi tiết về
?)
- The author refers _____ to to indicate that_____. (Tác giả nhắc đến _____ đè
chỉ ra rằng _____)
- The author's main purpose in paragraph 2 is to_____. (Mục đích chính của tác
GIÁ TRONG ĐOẠN 2 LÀ _____.)

8. Câu hỏi về thái độ của tác giả (questions on author's attitude)

- What is the author's opinion of _____ ? (Ý kiến của tác giả về _____ là gì?)
- Which of the following most accurately reflects the author's opinion of _____ ?
(Phương án nào sau đây phản ánh chính xác nhất quan điểm của tác giả về
?)

9. Diễn tả lại ý của câu (sentence restatement/ sentence paraphrasing)

- Which of the following best expresses the essential information in the second
sentence of paragraph 3? (Phương án nào sau đây diễn đạt đúng nhất thông tin
thiết yếu trong câu thứ hai của đoạn 3.)

10. Câu hỏi tìm liên kết về ý (questions for coherence understanding)

- The paragraph that precedes this passage/ paragraph is mostly probably about _____. (*Đoạn văn nối trước bài đọc/ đoạn văn này có thể có nội dung chính là _____.*)
- The paragraph that follows this passage/ paragraph is mostly probably about _____. (*Đoạn văn tiếp sau bài đọc/ đoạn văn này có thể có nội dung chính là _____.*)

Ví dụ minh họa 1: (Bài tập điền từ vào chỗ trống)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the blanks.

When the weather is cold, it is not very much fun to (1) _____ a bus. People have to stand at a bus-stop for minutes or even hours. They talk about the bus and (2) _____ about the weather. Most of them feel cold. Some have to drink coffee to stay warm.

Traveling by bus (3) _____ pollution, but people often would rather drive their cars. Many people are not used to the bus schedules, and they do not like to wait.

On the other hand, many people have been (4) _____ the bus every day for many years. They are used to it. They say the bus has been coming on time every day, and they have never been late for work. In (5) _____ , they do not need a parking place in all that time. Buses are very convenient when you are used to them.

Question 1: A. search B. look for C. stand for D. wait for

Question 2: A. tell B. complain C. comment D. judge

Question 3: A. cuts B. reduces C. stops D. eliminates

Question 4: A. looking B. waiting C. getting D. taking

Question 5: A. end B. last C. addition D. conclusion

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1:

D Đáp án đúng: *wait for a bus* = chờ đợi xe buýt.

A *search* (tìm kiếm ai/ cái gì) mà ở đây là chờ đợi xe buýt tại trạm xe buýt (a bus-stop).

B *look for* = tìm kiếm ai/ cái gì (giống như phương án A).

C *stand for* - dùng để cho tên đầy đủ của một từ viết tắt.

Question 2: Đáp án là B: **complain about something** (than phiền cái gì)

Question 3:

B Đáp án đúng. *To reduce something*, làm cái gì giảm về lượng, kích thước, mức độ, tầm quan trọng.... → *reduce pollution*: làm giảm sự ô nhiễm (về mức độ)

A *cut something* = làm cho cái gì ngắn hơn, thấp hơn, nhỏ hơn....

C *stop something* = ngưng một hoạt động.

D *eliminate something* = lấy đi, mang đi cái gì.

Question 4: **take the bus/ the train...** (đi đến đâu bằng một phương tiện giao thông nhất

dịnh).

Đáp án đúng là D (**taking**).

Question 5: **In addition** (ngoài ra) được dùng để chỉ sự nói thêm cho ý trước — nêu những lợi ích của việc dùng xe buýt (*they have never been late for work...they do not need a parking place...*). **Đáp án đúng là C.**

In conclusion dùng để đưa ra kết luận.

Ví dụ minh họa 2: (Bài tập điền từ vào chỗ trống)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word(s) for each of the blanks.

Wind, water, air, ice and heat all work to cause erosion. As the wind blows over the land, it often (1) _____ small grains of sand. When these grains of sand strike against solid rocks, the rocks are slowly worn away. In this way, (2) _____ very hard rocks are worn away by the wind.

When particles of rocks or soil became loosened in any way, running water carries them down the (3) _____. Some rocks and soil particles are carried into streams and then into the sea.

Land that is covered with trees, grass and other plants wears away very slowly, and so loses very (4) _____ of its soil. The roots of plants help to (5) _____ the rocks and soil in place. Water that falls on grasslands runs away more slowly than water that falls on bare ground. Thus, forests and grasslands (6) _____ to slow down erosion.

Even where the land is (7) _____ covered with plants, some erosion goes on. In the spring, the (8) _____ snow turns into a large quantity of water that then runs downhill in streams. (9) _____ a stream carries away some of the soil, the stream bed gets deeper and deeper. (10) _____ thousands of years of such erosion, wide valleys are often formed.

Question 1: A. cleans out B. picks up C. carries out D. holds up

Question 2: A. though B. still C. such D. even

Question 3: A. borders B. topside C. backside D. hillsides

Question 4: A. much B. few C. little D. large

Question 5: A. stay B. store C. hold D. back

Question 6: A. aid B. facilitate C. assist D. help

Question 7: A. thickly B. scarcely C. thinly D. strongly

Question 8: A. building B. formed C. melted D. melting

Question 9: A. Until B. Although C. Till D. As

Question 10: A. After B. During C. Among D. In

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: Câu này hỏi về ngữ động từ (phrasal verb).

B Đáp án đúng, *pick something up* = lift something up (nâng lên, làm bay đi.)

"As the wind blows over the land, it often picks up small grains of sand. " (Khi con gió thổi qua một miền đất, nó thường làm bay đi những hạt cát nhỏ.)

- A Phương án sai: *clean something out* = lấy cắp, làm sạch hoàn toàn bên trong.

Ví dụ: I must clean the fish tank out. (Tôi phải làm sạch bên trong bể cá.)

- C Phương án sai: *carry something out* = thực hiện điều gì.

- D Phương án sai: *hold something up* = trì hoãn, lấy cắp.

Question 2:

- D Đáp án đúng. Trạng từ *even* dùng để chỉ sự ngạc nhiên hoặc sự nhấn mạnh.

In this way, even very hard rocks are worn away by the wind. (Bằng cách này, ngay cả những tảng đá rất cứng cũng bị gió làm mòn.)

- A Phương án sai: *though* dùng để bắt đầu mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ, ngoài ra phải có mệnh đề chính. Ở đây ta chỉ có 1 mệnh đề.

- B Phương án sai: trạng từ *still* không thể đứng đầu mệnh đề, nó đứng trước động từ thường, đứng sau động từ "be" hoặc trợ động từ.

- C Phương án sai: *such* được dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được, chứ nó không dùng với danh từ số nhiều.

Question 3: Câu này hỏi về từ vựng.

- D Đáp án đúng, *hillside* = sườn đồi. *"When particles of rocks or soil became loosened in any way, running water carries them down the hillsides. "* (Khi các hòn đất đá trôi ném ra, nước xoáy làm chúng trôi xuống sườn đồi.)

- A Phương án sai: *border* = biên giới (giữa hai vùng hoặc hai quốc gia).

- B Phương án sai: *topside* = phần nổi lên trên mặt nước của chiếc tàu, súc thịt bò cắt từ phần trên của chân.

- C Phương án sai: *backside* = (trượt tuyết) mặt gót.

Question 4:

- C Đáp án đúng. Tính từ *little* chỉ sự khan hiếm hoặc thiếu và gần như mang nghĩa phủ định được dùng trước danh từ không đếm được (trong câu này là *soil* = đất tròng). Ta có thể dùng trạng từ chỉ mức độ *so/ very* để bù nghĩa cho *little*.

Land thai is covered with trees, grass and other plants wears away very slowly, and so loses very little of its soil. (Đất được bao phủ bởi cây cối, cỏ và các loại thực vật khác bị trôi đi rất chậm, và như thế mất rất ít đất tròng.)

- A Phương án sai: ta không có sự kết hợp từ như thế, có thể dùng *not much* mà thôi.

- B Phương án sai: *few* dùng với danh từ đếm được.

- D Phương án sai: ta không có sự kết hợp từ như thế.

Question 5: Câu này hỏi về nghĩa một số động từ.

- C Đáp án đúng, *hold* - giữ ai/ cái gì ở vị trí nhất định. *"The roots of plants help to hold the rocks and soil in place. "* (Rễ cây giúp giữ đất đá ở nguyên vị trí.)

- A Phương án sai: *stay* là nội động từ không dùng với tân ngữ.

- B Phương án sai: *store* = cất giữ cái gì để dùng sau này.

D Phương án sai: *back* = ủng hộ ai (bằng tiền bạc, lời nói).

Question 6:

D Đáp án đúng: *help to do something* = giúp đỡ. “*Thus, forests and grasslands help to slow down erosion.* ” (Do đó, rừng và đồng cỏ giúp làm chậm lại sự xói mòn.)

A Phương án sai: *aid someone/something in something* = giúp đỡ. Động từ “aid” không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

B Phương án sai: *facilitate something* = làm cái gì xảy ra dễ dàng hơn. Tương tự, động từ “facilitate” không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

C Phương án sai: *assist someone in something* - giúp đỡ. Động từ “assist” cũng không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

Question 7:

A Đáp án đúng: *thickly covered* = bao phủ dày đặc “*Even where the land is thickly covered with plants, some erosion goes on.* ” (Ngay cả nơi đất được cây cối bao phủ dày đặc, sự xói mòn vẫn xảy ra.) Câu này dùng “even” để chỉ sự ngạc nhiên hoặc bất ngờ.

B Phương án sai: *scarcely* (= hầu như không) không phù hợp nghĩa.

C Phương án sai: *thinly* (= ít) không phù hợp nghĩa.

D Phương án sai: *strongly* (= một cách mạnh mẽ (nghĩa trừu tượng)).

Ví dụ: *Many locals are strongly opposed to the development.* (Nhiều người dân địa phương chống đối mạnh mẽ dự án phát triển.)

Question 8:

D Đáp án đúng: *melting* = tan chảy. Tính từ *melting* có dạng V-ing chỉ tính chất của tuyết. “*In the spring, the melting snow turns into a large quantity of water that then runs downhill in streams.* ” (Vào mùa xuân, tuyết tan chảy biến thành một lượng nước khổng lồ và chảy xuống các con suối.)

A Phương án sai: *building* (= xây dựng lên) không phù hợp nghĩa.

B Phương án sai: *formed* (= được hình thành - mang nghĩa bị động) không phù hợp nghĩa.

D Phương án sai: ta không có tính từ này.

Question 9:

D Đáp án đúng. Ta dùng “as” (= when) với mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian với nghĩa phù hợp. “*As a stream carries away some of the soil, the stream bed gets deeper and deeper.* ” (Khi một con suối cuốn trôi đất đi, lòng suối trở nên càng ngày càng sâu hơn.)

A,C Các phương án sai: *until/till* = cho đến khi.

B Phương án sai: ta dùng “although” (= mặc dù) với mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ.

Question 10:

A Đáp án đúng. “*After thousands of years of such erosion, wide valleys are*

often formed." (Sau hàng nghìn năm của sự xói mòn, những thung lũng rộng thường được hình thành.) Ta dùng giới từ chỉ thời gian "after" để chỉ kết quả xảy ra sau thời gian đó.

B Phương án sai: *during* = trong khi.

C Phương án sai: giới từ *among* (= trong số) dùng để chỉ một nhóm, tập hợp nào đó.

D Phương án sai: giới từ chỉ thời gian "in" dùng để chỉ thời điểm tương lai. *in thousands of years* = trong hàng nghìn năm nữa.

Ví dụ minh họa 3: (Bài tập đọc hiểu)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Fiction is the writing of a story or text that is not true. It can be written in the form of either poetry or prose. Poetry is a style of writing in which short lines form verses. Often, words at the end of these lines rhyme, like "bed" and "red". We call a group of verses about one subject a "poem". Prose writing does not have verses, nor does it rhyme. It uses sentences and paragraphs. Prose is used in magazine articles, newspaper stories, short stories, and books.

Prose fiction has existed since ancient times, but most early fiction was actually written as poetry. Scholars disagree about the date of the first prose fiction book, or novel. Some scholars classify fictional stories from ancient Greece and Rome as the early novels. Others claim there were novels in Asia as early as the 6th century. These early novels were mostly short adventure stories about fictional characters.

In Europe, prose fiction began to seriously challenge poetry in the 16th century. A Spanish author, Cervantes, wrote Europe's first prose novel in the early 1600s. However, longer novels, like Cervantes's *Don Quixote*, did not become very popular until the 1700s. By that time, there were more printing presses, and more people knew how to read. In addition, more people had money to buy these books. Today, the vast majority of fiction is written in prose rather than in poetry.

Question 1: What does the word "It" in paragraph 1 refer to?

- A. Non-fiction B. Fiction C. Poetry D. Prose

Question 2: What can we learn about newspaper stories from paragraph 1 ?

- A. They are usually written in verse.
B. They are usually written in rhyme.
C. They are usually written in paragraphs
D. They are usually written by scholars.

Question 3: The word "classify" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to _____ .

- A. teach B. write C. call D. learn

Question 4: What can be inferred from the second paragraph?

- A. Prose fiction has been very popular since long ago.
B. Poetic fiction has not been around since ancient times.

C. The date of the earliest known novel is the sixteenth century.

D. The date of the earliest known novel is not easy to determine.

Question 5: The topic discussed in paragraph 3 is about _____.

A. when prose became dominant in Europe

B. when poetry became dominant in Europe

C. when Cervantes became an important author

D. when prose began in Spain

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: Đại từ “It” dùng để thay thế chủ ngữ trong câu trước là “Prose writing” hoặc “Prose” nói chung.

Đáp án đúng là D: Prose (văn xuôi.)

Question 2:

C Đáp án đúng. *“It (prose) uses sentences and paragraphs. Prose is used in magazine articles, newspapers stories, short stories, and books.”*

A, B “written in verse/ rhyme” là tính chất của thơ ca (poetry).

D “written by scholars” (được viết bởi các học giả) không được đề cập trong đoạn 2.

Question 3: Ta hãy chú ý đến cấu trúc “**classify something as something else**”. Cụm từ “the earliest novels” dùng để chỉ “fictional stories from ancient Greece and Rome”.

Đáp án đúng là C: *classify (= call) something as... = gọi cái gì là...*

Question 4:

D Đáp án đúng: ‘The date of the earliest known novel is not easy to determine.’ (*Thời điểm ra đời của tiểu thuyết đầu tiên mà người ta biết đến khó xác định.*)

Ta có ý sau: “Scholars disagree about the date of the first prose fiction book, or novel.” (*Các học giả bất đồng quan điểm về thời điểm ra đời của tiểu thuyết.*)

A Ta có ý “*Prose fiction has existed since ancient times*” chứ không phải “*Prose fiction has been very popular since long ago.*”

B “have (not) been around” = (không) thu được kiến thức và kinh nghiệm của thế giới; ý này không được nêu trong đoạn 2.

C “The date of the earliest known novel is the sixteenth century” là thông tin sai. Trong đoạn 2 thì một số học giả cho rằng tiểu thuyết ở châu Á có từ thế kỷ thứ 6 (the sixth century).

Question 5:

A Đáp án đúng: “when prose became dominant in Europe” (lúc văn xuôi trở nên có ảnh hưởng lớn ở châu Âu).

Ý trong bài là: “*In Europe, prose fiction began to seriously challenge poetry in the 16th century.*” (Ở châu Âu, tiểu thuyết văn xuôi bắt đầu thách thức thơ ca vào thế kỷ thứ 16.)

B “when poetry became dominant in Europe” → ý sai.

C Nhà văn Cervantes và tác phẩm của ông “Don Quixote” chỉ là ví dụ minh họa cho chủ đề nêu trong đáp án A.

D “when prose began in Spain” (lúc văn xuôi xuất hiện ở Tây Ban Nha): không được đề cập đến trong đoạn 3.

Ví dụ minh họa 4: (Bài tập đọc hiểu)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

An air pollutant is defined as a compound added directly or indirectly by humans to the atmosphere in such quantities as to affect humans, animals, vegetation, or materials adversely. Air pollution requires a very flexible definition that permits continuous change. When the first air pollution laws were established in England in the fourteenth century, air pollutants were limited to compounds that could be seen or smelled - a far cry from the extensive list of harmful substances known today. As technology has developed and knowledge of the health aspects of various chemicals has increased, the list of air pollutants has lengthened. In the future, even water vapor might be considered an air pollutant under certain conditions.

Many of the more important air pollutants, such as sulfur oxides, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen oxides, are found in nature. As the Earth developed, the concentration of these pollutants was altered by various chemical reactions; they became components in biogeochemical cycles. These serve as an air purification scheme by allowing the compounds to move from the air to the water or soil. On a global basis, nature's output of these compounds dwarfs that resulting from human activities.

However, human production usually occurs in a localized area, such as a city. In such a region, human output may be dominant and may temporarily overload the natural purification scheme of the cycles. The result is an increased concentration of noxious chemicals in the air. The concentrations at which the adverse effects appear will be greater than the concentrations that the pollutants would have in the absence of human activities. The actual concentration need not be large for a substance to be a pollutant; in fact, the numerical value tells us little until we know how much of an increase this represents over the concentration that would occur naturally in the area. For example, sulfur dioxide has detectable health effects at 0.08 parts per million (ppm), which is about 400 times its natural level of 0.1 ppm and is not usually a pollutant until its level reaches about 15 ppm.

Question 1: What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. The economic impact of air pollution.
- B. What constitutes an air pollutant.
- C. How much harm air pollutants can cause.
- D. The effects of compounds added to the atmosphere.

Question 2: The word “adversely” in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to

- A. negatively B. quickly C. admittedly D. considerably

Question 3: It can be inferred from the first paragraph that _____.

- A. water vapor is an air pollutant in localized areas
- B. most air pollutants today can be seen or smelled
- C. the definition of air pollution will continue to change
- D. a substance becomes an air pollutant only in cities

Question 4: The word “These” in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to.

- A. the various chemical reactions
- B. the pollutants from the developing Earth
- C. the compounds moved to the water or soil
- D. the components in biogeochemical cycles

Question 5: For which of the following reasons can natural pollutants play an important role in controlling air pollution?

- A. They function as part of a purification process.
- B. They occur in greater quantities than other pollutants.
- C. They are less harmful to living beings than other pollutants.
- D. They have existed since the Earth developed.

Question 6: According to the passage, human-generated air pollution in localized regions .

- A. can be dwarfed by nature’s output of pollutants
- B. can overwhelm the natural system that removes pollutants
- C. will damage areas outside of the localized regions
- D. will react harmfully with natural pollutants

Question 7: The word “localized” in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. specified B. circled C. surrounded D. encircled

Question 8: According to the passage, the numerical value of the concentration level of a substance is only useful if _____.

- A. the other substances in the area are known
- B. it is in a localized area
- C. the natural level is also known
- D. it can be calculated quickly

Question 9: The word “**detectable**” in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to.

- A. beneficial B. special C. measurable D. separable

Question 10: Which of the following is best supported by the passage?

- A. To effectively control pollution, local government should regularly review their air pollution laws.
- B. One of the most important steps in preserving natural lands is to better enforce air pollution laws.
- C. Scientists should be consulted in order to establish uniform limits for all air pollutants.
- D. Human activities have been effective in reducing air pollution.

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: What does the passage mainly discuss? (Đoạn văn chủ yếu đề cập về cái gì?)

- B Đáp án đúng: "What constitutes an air pollutant " (Điều tạo thành chất gây ô nhiễm không khí). Đoạn văn đề cập đến các chất gây ô nhiễm ở Anh thế kỉ 14 cho đến hiện nay.

A Phương án sai: *The economic impact of air pollution* (Anh hưởng của ô nhiễm không khí đối với nền kinh tế) (không được nêu trong đoạn văn),

C Phương án sai: *How much harm air pollutants can cause* (Chất gây ô nhiễm không khí có thể gây tác hại đến mức độ nào) (không được nêu trong đoạn văn).

D Phương án sai: *The effects of compounds added to the atmosphere* (Hậu quả của các hợp chất thải vào khí quyển) (không phải ý chính).

Question 2:

A Đáp án đúng: *negatively* = không tốt, xấu. Ý trong bài: *An air pollutant....to affect humans, animals, vegetation, or materials adversely* (Chất gây ô nhiễm không khí... ảnh hưởng xấu đến con người, động vật, thực vật, hoặc vật liệu).

B Phương án sai: *quickly* = một cách nhanh chóng,

C Phương án sai: *admittedly* - đã được thừa nhận.

D Phương án sai: *considerably* = đáng kể, nhiều.

Question 3: It can be inferred from the first paragraph that _____. (Có thể suy ra từ đoạn 1 rằng _____.)

C Đáp án đúng: *the definition of air pollution will continue to change* = định nghĩa về sự ô nhiễm không khí sẽ tiếp tục thay đổi.

Ý trong bài: *Air pollution requires a very flexible definition that permits continuous change.* (Sự ô nhiễm không khí đòi hỏi một định nghĩa linh hoạt có thể tiếp tục thay đổi.)

A Phương án sai: *water vapor is an air pollutant in localized areas* (hơi nước là một chất gây ô nhiễm không khí ở một số khu vực). Trong bài nói hơi nước có thể xem là chất gây ô nhiễm trong những điều kiện nhất định.

B Phương án sai: *most air pollutants today can be seen or smelled* (ngày nay phần lớn các chất gây ô nhiễm không khí có thể nhìn thấy hoặc người thấy được)
Đoạn 1 nói về tính chất này của các chất gây ô nhiễm trước đây.

D Phương án sai: *a substance becomes an air pollutant only in cities* (vật chất trở thành một chất gây ô nhiễm không khí chỉ ở các thành phố). Ý này không được nêu ở đoạn 1.

Question 4: Đại từ “These” thay thế cho ngũ danh từ ở cuối câu trước là “*components in biogeochemical cycles*” (thành phần trong các chu kì sinh hóa). Đáp án là D.

Question 5: *For which of the following reasons can natural pollutants play an important role in controlling air pollution?* (Các chất gây ô nhiễm có trong tự nhiên đóng vai trò quan trọng trong việc kiểm soát sự ô nhiễm không khí vì lí do nào sau đây?)

A Đáp án đúng: *They function as part of a purification process* (Chúng đóng vai trò một phần trong quá trình làm sạch).

Ý trong bài: *Many of the more important air pollutants... are found in nature.... serve as an air purification scheme* (Nhiều chất gây ô nhiễm... tìm thấy trong tự nhiên... có vai trò góp phần vào quá trình làm sạch không khí).

B Phương án sai: *They occur in greater quantities than other pollutants* (Chúng chiếm một lượng nhiều hơn các chất gây ô nhiễm khác),

C Phương án sai: *They are less harmful to living beings than other pollutants* (Chúng ít hại đối với con người so với các chất gây ô nhiễm khác) (không được nêu trong bài)

D Phương án sai: *They have existed since the Earth developed* (Chúng tồn tại từ lúc trái đất phát triển) (không phù hợp với câu hỏi.)

Question 6: According to the passage, human-generated air pollution in localized regions _____. (Theo đoạn văn, sự ô nhiễm không khí do con người gây ra ở các địa phương _____.)

B Đáp án đúng: “*can overwhelm the natural system that removes pollutants*” (có thể lấn át quá trình tự nhiên loại bỏ chất gây ô nhiễm). Ý trong bài: “*human output may be dominant and may temporarily overload the natural purification scheme of the cycles*” (chất gây ô nhiễm do con người tạo ra có thể lấn át và áp đảo quá trình làm sạch tự nhiên).

A Phương án sai: “*can be dwarfed by nature's output of pollutants*” (có thể thu nhỏ bởi quá trình sinh các chất gây ô nhiễm của tự nhiên),

C Phương án sai: “*will damage areas outside of the localized regions*” (sẽ làm thiệt hại các khu vực ngoài các địa phương nhất định).

D Phương án sai: “*will react harmfully with natural pollutants*” (sẽ phản ứng với các chất gây ô nhiễm có trong tự nhiên để gây tác hại).

Question 7:

A Đáp án đúng: *localized = specified* (được nêu rõ). Ý trong bài: *a localized area, such as a city* (một khu vực nhất định, như là một thành phố - được nêu rõ).

C, D Các phương án sai: *circled/surrounded/encircled* — được bao quanh.

Question 8: According to the passage, the numerical value of the concentration level of a substance is only useful if _____. (Theo đoạn văn, giá trị bằng số của mức độ tập trung của một chất chỉ có giá trị nếu _____.)

C Đáp án đúng: “*the natural level is also known*” = mức độ tập trung(của các chất gây ô nhiễm của tự nhiên) cũng được biết.

Ý trong bài: “*the numerical value tells us little until we know how much of an increase this represents over the concentration that would occur naturally in (the area)*” (giá trị bằng số chẳng cho ta biết gì nhiều cho đến khi ta biết được mức độ tăng biểu thị cho sự tập trung các chất gây ô nhiễm tồn tại tự nhiên ở một khu vực).

A Phương án sai: “*the other substances in the area are known*” (các vật chất khác trong khu vực cũng được biết).

B Phương án sai: “*it is in a localized area*” (nó có trong một khu vực nhất định).

D Phương án sai: “*it can be calculated quickly*” (nó được tính toán một cách nhanh chóng).

Question 9: Đáp án là C: *detectable* = có thể phát hiện ra; *measurable* = có thể đo đạc được.

Ý trong bài: người ta nêu những số liệu về mức độ ô nhiễm, đơn vị *ppm*.

Question 10: Which of the following is best supported by the passage? (Ý nào sau đây được đoạn văn chứng minh?)

Câu này là câu hỏi tổng hợp ý chính trong bài.

D Đáp án đúng: “*Human activities have been effective in reducing air pollution*” (Các hoạt động của con người hữu hiệu trong việc làm giảm sự ô nhiễm không khí).

A Phương án sai: ‘*To effectively control pollution, local government should regularly review their air pollution laws.*’ (Để kiểm soát sự ô nhiễm một cách hiệu quả, chính quyền địa phương nên thường xuyên xem xét các luật về sự ô nhiễm không khí.)

B Phương án sai: “*One of the most important steps in preserving natural lands is to better enforce air pollution laws.*” (Một trong những bước quan trọng trong việc bảo vệ đất tự nhiên là tăng cường các luật về sự ô nhiễm không khí.)

C Phương án sai: “*Scientists should be consulted in order to establish uniform limits for all air pollutants.*” (Các nhà khoa học nên được tham khảo ý kiến để đề ra mức hạn chế đồng bộ cho tất cả các chất gây ô nhiễm.)

➤ BÀI TẬP ĐỌC TRẮC NGHIỆM ĐIỀN TÙ VÀO CHỖ TRỐNG

Exercise 1: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

All men should study, we have to study to (1) _____ our knowledge and develop our intelligence.

An uneducated man can only utilize his (2) _____ strength to work and live. An educated man, (3) _____ this strength, still has the faculty of his intelligent brain and good reflection. This intelligence and thought enable him to help his physical strength to act more quickly (4) _____ cleverly.

In a same profession or work, the educated man differs (5) _____ the uneducated considerably. Therefore, intellectual workers have to study, this is a matter of course but (6) _____ workers must also (7) _____ an education.

In civilized countries compulsory education has been applied. (8) _____ must spend seven or eight years to study. From ploughmen to labourers in these (9) _____, no one is (10) _____ to read a book or a paper fluently.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------|------------|----------|----------|
| 1. | A. wide | B. widely | C. widen | D. broad |
| 2. | A. body | B. bodily | C. power | D. brain |
| 3. | A. with | B. without | C. no | D. none |
| 4. | A. and | B. but | C. yet | D. or |

5. A. than B. with C. from D. apart
6. A. simple B. easy C. hard D. manual
7. A. learn B. study C. acquire D. know
8. A. Man B. One C. Human D. Mankind
9. A. parts B. regions C. fields D. nations
10. A. able B. unable C. not D. never

Exercise 2: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank following passage.

Everyone wants to reduce pollution. But the pollution (1) _____ is as complicated as it is serious. It is complicated (2) _____ much pollution is caused by things that benefit people. For example, (3) _____ from automobiles causes a large percentage of all air pollution. But the automobile (4) _____ transportation for millions of people. Factories (5) _____ much of material that pollutes air and water, but factories give employment to a large number of people.

Thus, to end (6) _____ greatly reduce pollution immediately, people would have to stop using many things that (7) them. Most people do not want to do that, of course. But pollution can be (8) _____ reduced in several ways. Scientists and engineers can work to find ways to lessen the amount of pollution that such things as automobiles and factories cause. Governments can pass and enforce laws that (9) _____ businesses and (10) _____ to stop, or cut down on certain polluting activities.

1. A. work B. problem C. accident D. event
2. A. because B. so C. that D. while
3. A. exhaust B. fire C. gas D. liquid
4. A. carries B. takes C. affords D. provides
5. A. offer B. bring C. discharge D. cause
6. A. to B. or C. so D. that
7. A. benefit B. harm C. motivate D. encourage
8. A. little B. gradually C. so D. that
9. A. require B. forbid C. prevent D. request
10. A. commercials B. surroundings C. individuals D. traffic

Exercise 3: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

We are using up the world's petroleum. We use (1) _____ in our cars and to heat our building in winter.

Farmers use petrochemicals to (2) _____ the soil rich. They use them to kill insects (3) ____ plants. These chemicals go (4) _____ rivers and lakes and kill the fish there. Thousands of pollutants also go into the air and pollute it. Winds carry this (5) _____ air to other countries and other continents.

Poor farmers use the same land over and (6) _____. The land needs a rest so it will be better next year. However, the farmers must have food this year. Poor people cut down forests (7) ____ firewood. In some areas when the trees are gone, the land (8) ____ desert. Poor people can't save the environment for the (9) _____.

This is not a problem for one country or one area of the world. It is a problem for all humans. The people and the nations of the world must work together to (10) _____ the world's resources.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. it | B. them | C. that | D. those |
| 2. A. enrich | B. change | C. make | D. let |
| 3. A. eat | B. eaten | C. eating | D. ate |
| 4. A. to | B. toward | C. at | D. into |
| 5. A. pollute | B. polluting | C. polluted | D. pollution |
| 6. A. over | B. again | C. repeated | D. repeating |
| 7. A. of | B. for | C. with | D. at |
| 8. A. gets | B. changes | C. turns | D. becomes |
| 9. A. future | B. time | C. times | D. period |
| 10. A. recycle | B. preserve | C. keep | D. use |

Exercise 4: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space following passage.

Every ten minutes, one kind of animal, plant or insect dies (1) _____ for ever. If nothing is done about it, one million species that are alive today will have become (2) _____ twenty years from now.

The seas are in (3) _____. They are being filled with poison: industrial and nuclear (4) _____, chemical fertilizers and pesticides, sewage. The Mediterranean is already nearly dead; the North Sea is following. If nothing is done about it, one day soon nothing will be able to live in the seas.

The tropical rain forests, which are the (5) _____ of half the earth's living things (including many rare animals and plants), are being destroyed . if nothing is done about it, they will have disappeared in twenty years. The (6) _____ on the world's climate - and on our agriculture and food supplies - will be disastrous. Fortunately, somebody is trying to do something about it. In 1961, the World Wildlife Fund was (7) _____ - a small group of people who wanted to raise money to save animals and plants from extinction.

Today, the World Wildlife Fund is a large international organization. It has raised over £35 million for conservation projects, and has created or given (8) _____ to National Parks in five continents. It has helped 30 mammals and birds - including the tiger - to (9) _____. Perhaps this is not much, but it is a start. If more people give more money - and if more governments wake up to what is happening - perhaps the World Wildlife Fund will be able to help us to avoid the disaster that (10) _____ the natural world, and all of us will be with it.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. off | B. on | C. out | D. over |
| 2. A. extinguished | B. extinct | C. distinct | D. invalid |
| 3. A. danger | B. death | C. debt | D. despair |
| 4. A. waste | B. rubbish | C. essence | D. mixture |
| 5. A. container | B. origin | C. house | D. home |
| 6. A. result | B. impression | C. effect | D. motivation |
| 7. A. founded | B. found | C. funded | D. fixed |
| 8. A. defence | B. support | C. preservation | D. rescue |
| 9. A. continue | B. endure | C. prolong | D. survive |
| 10. A. occurs | B. pollutes | C. threatens | D. suffers |

Exercise 5: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Television is one of man's most important (1) _____ of communication. It brings (2) _____ and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. A person with a television set can sit in his house and watch the President (3) _____ a speech or visit a foreign country. He can see a war being fought and watch statesmen try to (4) _____ peace. (5) _____ television, home viewers can see and learn about people, places, and things in faraway lands. TV even takes viewers out of this world. It brings them (6) _____ of America's astronauts as the astronauts explore outer space.

(7) _____ all these things, television brings its viewers a steady stream of programmes that are (8) _____ to entertain. In fact, TV provides many more(9) _____ programmes than any other kin. The programmes include action-packed dramas, light comedies, sporting (10) _____, and motion pictures.

-
- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. procedure | B. means | C. manner | D. technology |
| 2. A. pictures | B. images | C. visages | D. portraits |
| 3. A. compose | B. type | C. computerize | D. make |
| 4. A. bring about | B. make out | C. bring round | D. move around |
| 5. A. In | B. Because of | C. At | D. Through |
| 6. A. covering | B. views | C. coverage | D. looks |
| 7. A. In addition to | B. As to | C. Beside | D. By |
| 8. A. designed | B. patterned | C. monitored | D. built up |
| 9. A. excitement | B. distraction | C. fun | D. entertainment |
| 10. A. happenings | B. events | C. occurrences | D. meetings |

Exercise 6: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

TRAFFIC LIGHTS

The first traffic signal was invented by a railway signaling engineer. It was installed (1) _____ the Houses of Parliament in 1868. It (2) _____ like any railway signal of the

time, and was operated by gas. (3) _____, it exploded and killed a policeman, and the accident discouraged further development until cars became common.

(4) _____ traffic lights are an American invention. Red-green systems were installed in Cleveland in 1914. Three-color signals, operated (5) _____ hand from a tower in the (6) _____ of the street, were installed in New York in 1918. The first lights of this type to (7) _____ in Britain were in London, on the junction between St. James's Street and Piccadilly, in 1925. Automatic signals were installed (8) _____ year later.

In the past, traffic lights were special. In New York, some lights had a statue on top. In Los Angeles, the lights did not just change silently, but would ring bells to (9) _____ the sleeping motorists of the 1930s. These are gone and have been (10) _____ by standard models which are universally adopted.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. | A. outside | B. out | C. out of | D. outdoors |
| 2. | A. resembled | B. looked | C. showed | D. seemed |
| 3. | A. However | B. Therefore | C. Although | D. Despite |
| 4. | A. New | B. Recent | C. Modern | D. Late |
| 5. | A. by | B. with | C. through | D. in |
| 6. | A. middle | B. heart | C. focus | D. halfway |
| 7. | A. show | B. appear | C. happen | D. become |
| 8. | A. a | B. in the | C. in a | D. the |
| 9. | A. rise | B. raise | C. wake | D. get up |
| 10. | A. reproduced | B. replaced | C. removed | D. remained |

Exercise 7: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

The overall outlook for the hotel and tourism industry in Vietnam is very (1) _____. Tourism is viewed as an important economic (2) _____ in the future development of this country, and it is easy to see why Vietnam, among the countries in South East Asia, has become increasingly popular as a new (3) _____ destination. The sublime beauty of the country's natural settings is very (4) _____. The sights, the sounds and the tastes of Vietnam leave a lasting memory for many foreign (5) _____. Its key destination such as Da Lat, Phan Thiet, Hoi An or Nha Trang are offering, indeed, great tourism (6) _____.

Combine this with the friendly nature of the Vietnamese people and the current political (7) _____, and we are set for solid growth pattern for the years to come. It is therefore not a surprise that foreign (8) _____ to Vietnam have steadily increased during the past few years.

Also important is the increasing demand from the domestic market. It is will make a short trip in 2017 within the projected that 17 million domestic (9) _____ country for leisure and (10) _____.

- | | | | | |
|----|-----------|---------|-------------|----------|
| 1. | A. famous | B. good | C. positive | D. proud |
| 2. | A. force | B. goal | C. growth | D. task |

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 3. A. tour | B. tourist | C. tourism | D. touring |
| 4. A. impress | B. impressive | C. impressing | D. impression |
| 5. A. friends | B. foreigners | C. visitors | D. people |
| 6. A. industry | B. value | C. growth | D. worth |
| 7. A. stable | B. stability | C. unstable | D. instability |
| 8. A. arrive | B. arriving | C. arrival | D. arrivals |
| 9. A. tourists | B. people | C. guides | D. interpreters |
| 10. A. relax | B. relaxation | C. relaxed | D. relaxing |

Exercise 8: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

CARNIVOROUS PLANTS

All plants rely on nutrients taken from the soil in order to survive. However, in areas where the soil does not contain enough (1) _____ nutrients, some plants have adapted to (2) _____ their diets from another source: living organisms. Though they are few in number, carnivorous plants are (3) _____ fascinating beings that “eat” anything from one-celled organisms to insects in order to survive. They are commonly found in marshlands. Carnivorous plants feature one of several types of “traps” to ensnare prey, which they consume to make up for nutrients that may be missing from the soil. While there are over 400 species of carnivorous plants in the world today, some are more (4) _____ than others.

The most well-known of these plants are the snap traps, which include the Venus flytrap. Snap traps are easily identified by their leaves, which are separated into two lobes that have the ability to fold together. Inside the lobes, the surface is covered with tiny hairs that are (5) _____ to movement. When the plant’s prey brushes against the hairs, it triggers a closing mechanism that rapidly brings the two lobes together, trapping the prey (6) _____ inside. The response of the traps is phenomenal (7) _____ speed: the time between triggering the hairs and snapping shut is less than a second. As the prey struggles inside the trap, it only triggers more hairs, causing the leaves to tighten their (8) _____. The plant then secrets liquid chemicals from special glands into the trap to dissolve the prey and absorb all of its nutrients. Besides the Venus flytrap, only one other type of snap trap exists today, (9) _____ to as the waterwheel plant. The two share a common ancestor and differ only in a few ways. For instance, the waterwheel is an aquatic plant, while the flytrap is exclusively terrestrial. In addition, the flytrap feeds primarily on arthropods like spiders, while the waterwheel lives (10) _____ simple invertebrates, like certain types of plankton.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. critical | B. vital | C. crucial | D. indispensable |
| 2. A. modify | B. enlarge | C. augment | D. supplement |
| 3. A. nonetheless | B. though | C. contradictorily | D. yet |
| 4. A. prevalent | B. current | C. domineering | D. prevailing |
| 5. A. vulnerable | B. liable | C. prone | D. sensitive |

6. A. closely B. securely C. irreplaceably D. steadily
7. A. in accordance with B. in preference to
C. in regard to D. on merits of
8. A. fist B. hold C. seizure D. grip
9. A. denoted B. referred C. indicated D. implicated
10. A. off B. onto C. though D. with

Exercise 9: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Nearly 200 of the 1500 native plant species in Hawaii are at risk of going extinct in the near future because they have been (1) _____ to such low numbers. Approximately 90 percent of Hawaii's plants are found nowhere else in the world but they are (2) _____ by alien invasive species such as feral goats, pigs, rodents and (3) _____ plants.

The Hawaii Rare Plant Restoration Group is striving to (4) _____ the extinction of the 182 rare Hawaiian plants with fewer than 50 individuals remaining in the (5) _____. Since 1990, (6) _____ a result of their "Plant Extinction Prevention Program", sixteen species have been brought into (7) _____ and three species have been reintroduced. Invasive weeds have been removed in key areas and fencing put up in order to (8) _____ plants in the wild.

In the future, the Hawaii Rare Plant Restoration Program aims (9) _____ collecting genetic material from the remaining plants in the wild for storage as a safety net for the future. They also aim to manage wild populations and where possible reintroduce species into (10) _____.

1. A. disappeared B. reduced C. increased D. developed
2. A. guarded B. invested C. conserved D. threatened
3. A. national B. native C. international D. non-native
4. A. prevent B. encourage C. stimulate D. influence
5. A. wild B. atmosphere C. hole D. sky
6. A. so B. due C. as D. but
7. A. contamination B. production C. cultivation D. generation
8. A. derive B. vary C. remain D. protect
9. A. at B. for C. with D. on
10. A. shelters B. reserves C. gardens D. halls

Exercise 10: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Health is something we tend to (1) _____ when we have it. When our body is doing well, we are hardly (2) _____ of it. But illness can come, even (3) _____ we are young. In fact, childhood has been a very susceptible time. Many diseases attack children in particular, and people know very little (4) _____ to cure them once they struck. The result was that many children died. About a century ago, (5) _____, scientists found out about germs,

and then everything changed. The (6) _____ of many diseases was found, and cures were developed. As this medical discovery spread, the world became (7) _____ safer for children. The result is that (8) _____ a hundred years ago, the average man lived for 35 years, nowadays, in many areas of the world, people can (9) _____ to live for 75 years. And what do we expect by the year 2050? Undoubtedly, medical science will continue to (10) _____. Some people will be able to avoid medical problems that are unavoidable today.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. forget | B. ignore | C. give up | D. throw away |
| 2. A. awake | B. keen | C. aware | D. concerned |
| 3. A. if | B. so | C. when | D. while |
| 4. A. how | B. what | C. which | D. when |
| 5. A. therefore | B. however | C. although | D. moreover |
| 6. A. reason | B. origin | C. source | D. cause |
| 7. A. more | B. much | C. very | D. quite |
| 8. A. where | B. when | C. why | D. whereas |
| 9. A. desire | B. hope | C. want | D. expect |
| 10. A. speed up | B. advance | C. accelerate | D. run |

➤ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM ĐỌC HIẾU

Exercise 1: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Hundreds of thousands of persons each year fall to prey some types of cancer; but new methods of radiation therapy have enabled doctors to save more lives than ever before. Medical researchers have developed several experimental forms of this time-honored cancer treatment that seem effective in fighting the diseases.

One promising approach involves exposing cancer cells to radiation by implanting a radioactive source directly into the malignant tissue. This progress greatly increases the dosage and thus the effectiveness of the treatment. Another technique utilizes drugs to make cancer cells more susceptible to the effects of radiation and to make normal cells more resistant. Certain drugs are able to neutralize the genetic framework of cancer cells, thus making them more easily affected by radiation. Both techniques have been more positive results in the treatment of inoperable brain tumors.

These and other methods have helped to raise the recovery rate for cancer victims from 30 per cent 40 years ago to around 50 per cent today. This is encouraging news for those who fall prey to one of the world's leading killers.

1. What is the author's main purpose in the passage?
 - A. To provide statistical information on cancer.
 - B. To argue for new methods of cancer treatment.
 - C. To illustrate new techniques of radiation therapy.
 - D. To give the result of recent cancer research.

2. According to the passage, which of the following is true about radiation therapy?

 - A. There is only one effective form of this therapy.
 - B. It saves millions of lives each year.
 - C. It is an accepted method of cancer treatment.
 - D. It causes the incidence of cancer to rise dramatically.

3. The word “malignant” most closely means _____. .

 - A. disease
 - B. experimental
 - C. treated
 - D. poisonous

4. According to the passage, radiation therapy is most effective when_____.

 - A. drugs are used to relax the cancer patient
 - B. the cancer is directly exposed to the radioactive material
 - C. it is used on as many patients as possible
 - D. the cancer cells are resistant to treatment

5. It can be inferred from the passage that _____. .

 - A. improvements in cancer treatment during the last half century have been relatively ineffective
 - B. the number of deaths caused by Cancer has decreased substantially
 - C. fewer people are susceptible to the effects of cancer
 - D. scientists are close to eliminating cancer entirely

Exercise 2: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

European concern for wildlife was outlined by Dr. Peter Baum, an expert on the environment and nature resources division of the council, when he spoke at a conference arranged by the administrators of a British national park. The park is one of the few areas in Europe to hold the council's diploma for nature reserves of the highest quality, and Dr. Baum had come to present it to the park once again. He was afraid that public opinion was turning against national parks, and that those set up in the 1960s and 1970s could not be set up today. But Dr. Baum clearly remained a strong supporter of the view that natural environments needed to be allowed to survive in peace in their own right.

No area could be expected to survive both as a true nature reserve and as a tourist attraction, he went on. The short view that reserves had to serve immediately human demands for outdoor recreation should be replaced by full acceptance of their importance as places to preserve nature for the future.

"We forget that they are the guarantee of life systems, on which any built-up area ultimately depends," Dr. Baum went on. "We could manage without most industrial products, but we could not manage without nature. However, our natural environment areas, which are the original parts of our countryside, have shrunk to become mere islands in a spoilt and highly land mass."

1. Recent studies by the Council of Europe show that _____.

- A. it is only in Britain that wildlife needs more protection
 - B. all species of wildlife in Europe are in danger of dying out
 - C. the public is not in favor of national parks as before
 - D. certain species of reptiles and butterflies in Europe need protecting
2. Dr. Baum, a representative of the Council, visited one particular British national park because _____.
- A. he was presenting the park with a diploma for its achievement
 - B. he was concerned about how the park was being run
 - C. it was the only national park of its kind in Europe
 - D. it was the only park which had ever received a diploma from the Council
3. Although it is difficult nowadays to convince the public of the importance of nature reserves, Dr. Baum felt that_____ .
- A. people would support moves to create more environment areas
 - B. people would carry on supporting those natural parks in existence
 - C. existing natural parks would need to be more independent to survive
 - D. certain areas of countryside should be left undisturbed by man
4. In Dr. Baum's opinion, a true nature reserve _____.
- A. could never survive in a modern age
 - B. should provide buildings for human activities
 - C. should be regarded as a place where nature is protected
 - D. could provide special areas for tourists to enjoy
5. Although we all depend on the resources of nature for our survival _____.
A. industrial products are replacing all our natural resources
B. it is only on islands that nature survives
C. we have forgotten what our original countryside looks like
D. we have allowed areas of countryside to be spoilt by industrial development

Exercise 3: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Let children learn to judge their own work. A child learning to talk does not learn by being corrected all the time: if corrected too much, he will stop talking. He notices a thousand times a day the difference between the language he uses and the language those around him use. Bit by bit, he makes the necessary changes to make his language like other people's. In the same way, children learn to do all the other things, they learn to do without being taught - to walk, run, climb, whistle, ride a bicycle - compare their own performances with those of more skilled people, and slowly make the needed changes. But in school, we never give a child a chance to find out his mistakes for himself, let alone correct them. We do it all for him. We act as if we thought that he would never notice a mistake unless he was made to. Soon he becomes dependent on the teacher. Let him do it himself. Let him work out, with the help of other children if he wants it, what this word says, what the answer is to

that problem, whether this is a good way of saying or doing this or not.

If it is a matter of right answer, as it may be in mathematics or science, give him the answer book. Let him correct his own papers. Why should teachers waste time on such ridiculous work? Our job should be to help the child when he tells us that he cannot find the way to get the right answer. Let's end all this nonsense of grades, exams, marks. Let us throw them all out, and let the children learn what all educated persons must some day learn, how to measure their own understanding, how to know what they know or do not know.

Let them get on with this job in the way that seems most sensible to them, with our help as school teachers if they ask for it. The idea that there is a body of knowledge to be learnt at school and used for the rest of one's life is nonsense in a world as complicated and rapidly changing as ours. Anxious parents and teachers say, "But suppose they fail to learn something essential, something they will go out into the world and learn it."

1. What does the author think is the best way for children to learn things?
 - A. B. Copying what other people do.
 - B. By making mistakes and having them corrected,
 - C. By listening to explanations from skilled people.
 - D. By asking a great many questions.
2. What does the author think teachers do which they should not do?
 - A. They give children correct answers.
 - B. They point out children's mistakes to them.
 - C. They allowed children to mark their own work.
 - D. They encourage children to copy from one another.
3. The passage suggests that learning to speak and learning to ride a bicycle are _____.
 - A. not really important skills
 - B. more important than other skills
 - C. basically different from learning adult skills
 - D. basically the same as learning other skills
4. Exams, grades, and marks should be abolished because children's progress should only be estimated by _____.

A. educated persons	B. the children themselves
C. teachers	D. parents
5. The author fears that children will grow up into adults who are _____.

A. too independent of others	B. too critical of themselves
C. unable to think for themselves	D. unable to use basic skills

Exercise 4: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

The planet Earth is 4,600 million years old. It is difficult for us to think about such an enormous length of time because it has little meaning for us. We can, however, simplify the idea to make it more understandable. We can compare the planet Earth to a person of forty-

six years of age.

Nothing is known about the first seven years of this person's life. Very little information exists about the middle period either. It was only at the age of forty-two that the Earth began to flower.

Dinosaurs and great reptiles did not appear until one year ago, when the planet was forty-five. Mammals only arrived eight months ago. In the middle of last week, man like apes became ape-like men and began to communicate with each other. Last weekend, the Ice Age covered the Earth.

Modern man has only been around for four hours. During the last hour, man discovered agriculture. The Industrial Revolution and the rise of large cities began just sixty seconds ago.

During that short time, modern man has made a rubbish tip of the Earth. In one minute, he has increased his numbers to terrible proportions, and has caused the death of hundreds of species of animals. He has robbed and destroyed the planet in his search for fuels, now he stands like violent, spoilt child, delighted at the speed of his rise to power on the edge of the final mass destruction and of killing all the life which exists in the solar system.

1. The passage tells us that _____.
 - A. a great deal is known about how the Earth was created
 - B. life on Earth began relatively recently
 - C. more is known about the first part of the Earth's life than the middle part
 - D. scientists are well-informed about the middle part of the Earth's life
2. We are informed by the author that _____.
 - A. the dinosaurs appeared during the middle period
 - B. mammals and great reptiles both appeared at the same time
 - C. there were more than forty-five kinds of great reptiles
 - D. ape-like men appeared before the last Ice Age
3. The author is mainly interested in _____.
 - A. the time when man first evolved from apes
 - B. what has happened since the Industrial Revolution
 - C. the effects of farming
 - D. the period before the last Ice Age
4. It would appear that the main danger ahead is that _____.
 - A. man will destroy everything on Earth
 - B. man will use up all the fuels
 - C. there will be population explosion
 - D. more species of animals may die out
5. The author's general view of man seems to be that _____.
 - A. he has no right to be so destructive
 - B. he has been the most successful animal

- C. he will be able to control the environment
- D. he has learned a lot from past mistakes

Exercise 5: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

One of the most difficult questions to answer is how much a job is worth. We naturally expect that a doctor's salary will be higher than a bus conductor's wages. But the question becomes much more difficult to answer when we are compare, say, a miner with an engineer, or an unskilled man working on an oil-rig in the North Sea with a teacher in a secondary school. What the doctor, the engineer, and the teacher have in common is that they have devoted several years of their lives to studying in order to obtain the necessary qualifications for their professions. We feel instinctively that these skills and these years? When they were studying instead of earning money, they should be rewarded. At the same time we recognize that the work of the miner and the oil-rig laborers is both hard and dangerous, and that they must be highly paid for the risks they take.

Another factor we must take into consideration is how socially useful a man's work is, regardless of the talents he may bring to it. Most people would agree that looking after the sick or teaching children is more important than, say, selling secondhand cars or improving the taste of toothpaste by adding a red stripe to it. Yet it is almost certain that the used-car salesman earns more than the nurse, and the research chemist earns more than the school-teacher.

Indeed, this whole question of just rewards can be turned on its head. You can argue that a man who does a job which brings him personal satisfaction is already receiving part of his reward in the form of a so-called 'psychic wage', and that it is the man with the boring, repetitive job who needs more money to make up for the soul-destroying monotony of his work. It is significant that those jobs which are traditionally regarded as 'vocation' - nursing, teaching, and the Church, for example - continue to be poorly paid, while others, such as those in the world of sports or entertainment, carry financial rewards out of all proportion to their social worth.

Note: *say* (EXPRESSION): used to express surprise or pleasure, or to attract attention to what you are about to say

1. The professional man, such as the doctor, should be well-paid because _____.
 - A. he has spent several years learning how to do his job
 - B. his work involves much greater intelligence than, say, a bus conductor's
 - C. he has to work much harder than most other people
 - D. he knows more than other people about his subject (he is a specialist)
2. It is difficult to compare a doctor and a miner because _____.
 - A. a miner's work is not as useful as a doctor's
 - B. each is a specialist in his own field
 - C. a miner has to learn just as many skills to be able to do his job well
 - D. a miner's job is less skilled but on the other hand it is more dangerous

3. You can compare an engineer with a teacher because _____.
A. they both do useful work
B. they both earn the same kind of salary
C. one does socially important the other does dangerous work
D. they have both spent several years in training
4. As far as rewarding people for their work is concerned, the writer believes that _____.
A. we should pay for socially useful work, regardless of the person's talent
B. we should pay people according to their talents
C. market forces will determine how much a person is paid
D. qualified people should be the highest paid
5. The argument of the "psychic wage" is used to explain why _____.
A. people who do socially important work are not always well paid
B. people who do monotonous jobs are highly paid
C. you should not try to compare the pay of different professions
D. some professional people are paid more than others

Exercise 6: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Many countries face a somewhat more serious economic problem in the form of an unfavorable trade balance with other nations. Such an imbalance exists when the total value of a country's imports exceeds that of its exports. For example, if a country buys \$10 billion in products from other countries, yet sells \$10 billion of its own products overseas, its trade is \$20 billion. Many underdeveloped nations find themselves in this position because they lack natural resources or the industrial capacity to use these resources, and thus have to import raw materials or manufactured goods.

One effect of a trade deficit is the flow of currency out of a country. In the case of an underdeveloped nation, this can cause many financial difficulties, including failure to meet debt payments and obstacles to creation of an industrial base. Even in the case of a fully developed nation such as the United States, a large trade deficit is reason for alarm. American products, made by well-paid workers in U.S. industries, cost more to produce than those made in places like Asia, where labor and material costs are much lower. Money spent on foreign products is money not spent on items produced by domestic industries.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
A. Several worldwide economic problems.
B. The causes and consequences of trade deficits,
C. Lack of resources in underdeveloped countries.
D. The value of exports versus imports.
2. According to the passage, when does a trade imbalance occur?
A. A country has a serious economic problem.
B. A country sells more products overseas than its imports.

- C. The value of the products a country imports is greater than the value of the products it exports.
- D. A country cannot develop its natural resources.
3. The passage states that many underdeveloped nations have trade deficits because
- A. they find themselves in this position
 - B. they export most of their natural resources to other nations
 - C. they have to import most of their natural resources or manufactured products
 - D. they have failed to meet debt payments
4. Which of the following is not mentioned as a possible cause of a trade imbalance?
- A. Low labor and material costs in Asian countries.
 - B. A lack of natural resources.
 - C. An underdeveloped industrial base.
 - D. The high cost of exported items.
5. It can be inferred from this passage that American industries _____.
- A. do not pay their workers sufficient wages
 - B. are hurt by a trade imbalance
 - C. import labor and material from overseas
 - D. provide a strong industrial base that prevents a trade deficit

Exercise 7: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Before extensive industrialization took place in Europe, the extended family was common, and the home was also the workplace. People plied various crafts and trades at home and then sold the products of their labor in the local market place. As the workplace was centred in the home, all members of the household contributed their labor directly and indirectly. Extended families were common because each member actually participated in the family's economic function. In a typical example, the grandmother would mind the baby and sort the raw wool, the mother and daughter would spin and weave, the father would till the fields, the son would gather wood, and the grandfather would mind the animals.

The advent of industrialization in the 18th century changed this lifestyle. Large factories were established which replaced the cottage industries.

People were therefore forced to migrate to the towns for employment. Living and working conditions in the town meant that the extended family ceased to be viable. A smaller family unit became the most practical in the new industrial centres and, in fact, did become the norm.

This small or nuclear family was well suited to an industrialized society because of its mobility. To gain employment and accept promotion, the family breadwinner might be required to move from one place to another. It is relatively easier to move a small family group than a large one, and such geographic mobility would be impossible for an extended family.

In non-industrialized societies where the extended family is the norm, members other than parents assume many of the tasks and responsibilities associated with child care and education. In industrialized societies these functions are often performed for the nuclear family by specially trained people outside the family network. An extended family often assumes the responsibility of supporting and caring for members who are too old, young or infirm to work. This care is undertaken by members who have not joined the workforce. In an industrialized society the state or government can assume responsibility for these people. A country where this occurs is said to be a welfare state. In the welfare state, the government provides institutions for those in need of constant care, and financial support for those who are disadvantaged.

Although it is the case that the 18th century extended family structure hardly exists in industrialized societies today, other forms of the extended family are known. For instance, families with more than three generations can live in one house, although they may work in different places. On the other hand, some extended families can work together but live separately.

Notes: to mind = to take care of; norm (n) = the standard

1. The extended family is _____.
 - A. typical of an industrialized society
 - B. typical of a welfare state
 - C. typical of an non-industrialized society
 - D. very common in areas where there are large factories
2. The nuclear family is _____.
 - A. one with no other members than the parents and the children
 - B. one whose grandfather minds the animals and grandmother minds the baby
 - C. one where only the father works
 - D. one that moves from one place to another to make a living
3. Living and working conditions in industrial towns _____.
 - A. make it necessary for people to live in small families
 - B. make extended families more preferable
 - C. make it easier for small families to move from one place to another
 - D. make families have more members
4. In a welfare state, _____.
 - A. most people live in institutions provided by the government
 - B. it is the government that provides care and financial support for those who are too old to work
 - C. all the members of the family have to join the workforce
 - D. All are correct
5. _____. mainly assumes responsibility of educating children in an industrialized society.

- A. The government
- B. The nuclear family
- C. The teacher
- D. The grandparent

Exercise 8: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Through a series of experiments an American scientist has obtained an understanding of the social structure of the most complex of ant societies. The ants examined are the only creatures other than man to have given up hunting and collecting for a completely agricultural way of life. In their underground nests, they cultivate gardens on soil made from finely chopped leaves. This is a complex operation requiring considerable division of labour. The workers of this type of ant can be divided into four groups according to size. Each of the groups performs a particular set of jobs.

The making and care of the gardens and the nursing of the young ants are done by the smallest workers. Slightly larger workers are responsible for chopping up leaves to make them suitable for use in the gardens and for cleaning the nest. A third group of still larger ants does the construction work and collects fresh leaves from outside the nest. The largest are the soldier ants, responsible for defending the nest.

To find out how good the various size-groups are at different tasks, the scientist measured the amount of work done by the ants against the amount of energy they used. He examined first the gathering and carrying of the leaves. He selected one of the size-groups, and then measured how effectively these ants could find leaves and run back to the nest. Then he repeated the experiment for each of the other size-groups. In this way he could see whether any group could do the job more efficiently than the group normally undertaking it.

The intermediate-sized ants that normally perform this task proved to be the most efficient for their energy costs, but when the scientist examined the whole set of jobs performed by each group of ants it appeared that some sizes of worker ant were not ideally suited to the particular jobs they performed.

1. In which way are the ants different from other non-human societies?
 - A. They do not need to search for food.
 - B. They do not need to look for shelter,
 - C. Individuals vary in social status.
 - D. Individuals perform different functions.
2. IT SEEMS THAT SMALLER ANTS PERFORM MORE OF THE _____.
 - A. CONSTRUCTION TASKS
 - B. DOMESTIC TASKS
 - C. DEFENSIVE WORK
 - D. HEAVY WORK
3. “GOOD” (FIRST LINE OF THIRD PARAGRAPH) REFERS TO THE ANTS’ _____.
 - A. CO-OPERATION IN WORKING RESPONSIBILITY
 - B. EFFICIENCY IN WORKING
 - C. WILLINGNESS TO WORK HARD
 - D. SENSE OF

4. THE SCIENTIST'S WORK WAS BASED ON _____.
A. OCCASIONAL OBSERVATIONS B. SYSTEMATIC
OBSERVATIONS
C. OBSERVATIONS OF SEVERAL NESTS D. OBSERVATIONS OF
AN UNDISTURBED NEST
5. THE ORGANIZATION OF THE ANTS HAS THE EFFECT OF _____.
A. getting the most work done
B. dividing the work up systematically
C. each ant helping with all the tasks
D. each ant doing what it can do best

Exercise 9: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

After two decades of growing student enrollments and economic **prosperity**, business schools in the United States have started to face harder times. Only Harvard MBA School has shown a substantial increase in enrollment in recent years. Both Princeton and Stanford have seen decreases in their enrollments. Since 1990, the number of people receiving Masters in Business Administration (MBA) degrees has dropped about 3 percent to 75,000 and the **trend of** lower enrollment rates is expected to continue.

There are two factors causing this decrease in students' **seeking** an MBA degree. The first one is that many graduates of four-year colleges are finding that an MBA degree does not guarantee a **plush** job on Wall Street, or in other financial districts of major American cities. Many of the entry-level management jobs are going to students graduating with Master of Arts degrees in English and the humanities as well as those holding MBA degrees. Students have asked the question, "Is an MBA degree really what I need to be best prepared for getting a good job?", the second major factor has been the cutting of American payrolls and the lower number of entry-level jobs being offered. Business needs are changing, and MBA schools are struggling to meet the new demands.

1. What is the main focus of this passage?
A. jobs on Wall Street
B. types of graduates degrees
C. changes in enrollment for MBA schools
D. how schools are changing to reflect the economy
2. The word "**prosperity**" in the first paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
A. success B. surplus C. nurturing D. education
3. Which of the following business schools has NOT shown a decrease in enrollment?
A. Princeton B. Harvard C. Stanford D. Yale
4. The phrase "**trend of**" in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
A. reluctance of B. drawback to

- C. movement forward D. extraction from
5. As used, the word “**seeking**” in the second paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
A. examining B. avoiding C. seizing D. pursuing
6. Which of the following descriptions most likely applies to Wall Street?
A. a center for international affairs B. a major financial center
C. a shopping district D. a neighborhood of New York
7. The word “**plush**” in the second paragraph most probably means .
A. legal B. satisfactory C. fancy D. dependable
8. According to the passage, what are two causes of declining business school enrollments?
A. lack of necessity for an MBA and an economic recession
B. low salary and foreign competition
C. fewer MBA schools and fewer entry-level jobs
D. declining population and economic prosperity
9. As used, the word “**struggling**” in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to
A. evolving B. plunging C. starting D. striving
10. Which of the following might be the topic of the next paragraph?
A. MBA schools’ efforts to change
B. future economic predictions
C. a history of the recent economic changes
D. descriptions of non-MBA graduate programs

Exercise 10: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

A pilot cannot fly a plane by sight alone. In many conditions, such as flying at night and landing in dense fog, a pilot must use radar, an alternative way of navigating. Since human eyes are not very good at determining speeds of approaching objects, radar can show a pilot how fast nearby planes are moving.

The basic principle of radar is exemplified by what happens when one shouts in a cave. The echo of the sounds against the walls helps a person determine the size of the cave. With radar, however, the waves are radio waves instead of sound waves. Radio waves travel at the speed of light, about 300,000 kilometers in one second. A radar set sends out a short burst of radiation waves. Then it receives the echoes produced when the waves bounce off objects. By determining the time it takes for the echoes to return to the radar set, a trained technician can determine the distance between the radar set and other objects. The word “radar”, in fact, gets its name from the term “radio detection and ranging”. “Ranging” is the term for detection of the distance between an object and the radar set. Besides being of critical importance to pilots, radar is essential for air traffic control, tracking ships at sea, and for tracking weather systems and storms.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?
A. the nature of radar B. types of ranging
C. alternatives to radar D. history of radar
2. According to the passage, what can radar detect besides location of objects?
A. size B. weight C. speed D. shape
3. Which of the following words best describes the tone of this passage?
A. argumentative B. imaginative C. explanatory D. humorous
4. The phrase “a burst” in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
A. an attachment B. a discharge C. a stream D. a ray
5. The word “it” in paragraph 2 refers to which of the following?
A. a radar set B. a short burst C. a radiation wave D. light
6. Which of the following could best replace the word “bounce”?
A. overturn B. groove C. extend D. rebound
7. Which type of waves does radar use?
A. sound B. heat C. radio D. light
8. The word “tracking” in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
A. repairing B. searching for C. glancing at D. fighting
9. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph?
A. other uses of radar B. uses of sonar technology
C. other technology used by pilots D. a history of flying
10. What might be inferred about radar?
A. It takes the place of a radio.
B. It gave birth to the invention of the airplane,
C. It developed from a study of sound waves.
D. It has improved navigational safety.

Exercise 11: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Carnegie Hall, the famous concert hall in New York, has again undergone a restoration. While this is not the first, it is certainly the most extensive in the building’s history. As a result of this new restoration, Carnegie Hall once again has the quality of sound that it had when it was first built.

Carnegie Hall owes its existence to Andrew Carnegie, the wealthy owner of a steel company in the late 1800s. The hall was finished in 1891 and quickly gained a reputation as an excellent performing arts hall where accomplished musicians gained fame. Despite its reputation, however, the concert hall suffered from several detrimental renovations over the years. During the Great Depression, when fewer people could afford to attend performances, the directors sold part of the building to commercial businesses. As a result, a coffee shop

was opened in one corner of the building, for which the builders replaced the brick and terra cotta walls with windowpanes. A renovation in 1946 seriously damaged the acoustical quality of the hall when the makers of the film *Carnegie Hall* cut a gaping hole in the dome of the ceiling to allow for lights and air vents. The hole was later covered with short curtains and a fake ceiling, but the hall never sounded the same afterwards.

In 1960, the violinist Isaac Stern became involved in restoring the hall after a group of real estate developers unveiled plans to demolish Carnegie Hall and build a high-rise office building on the site. This threat spurred Stern to rally public support for Carnegie Hall and encouraged the city of New York to buy the property. The movement was successful, and the concert hall is now owned by the city. In the current restoration, builders tested each new material for its sound qualities, and they replaced the hole in the ceiling with a dome. The builders also restored the outer walls to their original appearance and closed the coffee shop. Carnegie Hall has never sounded better, and its prospects for the future have never looked more promising.

1. This passage is mainly about _____.
A. changes to Carnegie Hall
B. the appearance of Carnegie Hall
C. Carnegie Hall's history during the Great Depression
D. damage to the ceiling in Carnegie Hall
2. The word “extensive” in the first paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
A. fabulous **B.** thorough **C.** devoted **D.** continuous
3. What is the meaning of the word “detrimental” in the second paragraph?
A. dangerous **B.** significant **C.** extreme **D.** harmful
4. What major change happened to the hall in 1946?
A. The acoustic dome was damaged.
B. Space in the building was sold to commercial businesses.
C. The walls were damaged in an earthquake.
D. The stage was renovated.
5. What was Isaac Stern’s relationship to Carnegie Hall?
A. He made the movie “Carnegie Hall” in 1946.
B. He performed on opening night in 1891.
C. He tried to save the hall, beginning in 1960.
D. He opened a coffee shop in Carnegie Hall during the Depression.
6. What was probably the most important aspect of the recent renovation?
A. restoring the outer wall **B.** expanding the lobby
C. restoring the plaster trim **D.** repairing the ceiling
7. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word “unveiled” in the third paragraph?

- A. announced B. restricted C. overshadowed D. located
8. The author uses the word “spurred” in the third paragraph to show that Stern
A. predicted the result B. probed the plans
C. was told in advance D. was stimulated to act
9. How does the author seem to feel about the future of Carnegie Hall?
A. ambiguous B. guarded C. optimistic D.
negative
10. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph?
A. a scientific explanation of acoustics and the nature of sound
B. a description of people’s reactions to the newly renovated hall
C. a discussion of the coffee shop that once was located in the building
D. further discussion about the activities of Isaac Stern in 1960

Exercise 12: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Situated in the central mountains of Alaska, a peak named Denali rises 20,320 feet above sea level. It is the highest peak in North America and the center of Denali National Park. One of America’s greatest wilderness areas, the park has had limited access to visitors, but in spite of this tourism rose from under 6,000 visitors in 1950 to over 546,000 visitors in 1990. The increasing popularity of this park is prompting serious discussions about the future use of Denali as well as how to preserve wilderness areas in general.

One important issue of land use arises when parts of National Parks are owned by individuals. In Denali, though most of the land in this vast tract of more than a million acres is owned by the National Park Service, several thousand acres are still privately owned as mining tracts. These mining tracts in Denali were once abundant sources of gold, but they were sources of heavy metals such as arsenic and lead that polluted rivers and streams.

Environmentalists were successful in getting the government to require mining companies to submit statements showing the potential impact of a mining project before they are allowed to begin mining. Because of this requirement, many individuals closed their mines and some sold their land to the National Park Service. Some land owners, however, are wondering if it is better to sell their land to the government or keep it for possible future use. Tourism in this previously remote area is bound to rise, as more roads are built to provide easier access to the park. This increase in the number of visitors creates a demand for hotels and other real estate development. The economic implications of this are of interests to the land owners, but are dismaying to those interested in preserving the wilderness.

1. What is the primary focus of this passage?
A. controversies over land use in Denali
B. miners selling their property in Denali
C. Alaska building more roads to Denali
D. limiting tourist access to Denali

2. The word “**prompting**” in the first paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
A. promising B. sanctioning C. initiating D. trapping
3. The word “**arises**” in the second paragraph could be best replaced by _____.
A. surrenders B. occurs C. volunteers D. prospers
4. The word “**tract**” in the second paragraph as used in the passage refers to which of the following?
A. trail B. resort C. frontier D. expanse
5. Which of the following is most similar to the word “**abundant**” in the second paragraph?
A. plentiful B. sparse C. hopeful D. absolute
6. According to the passage, which of the following are pollutants in the Denali area?
A. gold B. pesticides C. human waste D. arsenic
7. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the phrase “**potential impact**” in the third paragraph?
A. appropriate cost B. expected value
C. proposed size D. possible effects
8. The author infers that some mine owners might hesitate to sell their land to the Park Service for which of the following reasons?
A. There may be increasing demand for the ore in the mines.
B. They might want to build a house on their property.
C. They might receive more money selling their lands to developers.
D. They might want to move to the towns.
9. What is the author’s purpose in writing this passage?
A. to demonstrate the changes in Denali National Park
B. to use Denali as an example of common park issues
C. to introduce the wonders of the wilderness area of Denali
D. to explain the problems occurring in Denali Park
10. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph in this passage?
A. conflict between land owners and environmentalists
B. the role of the National Park Service in development
C. tourist needs in Denali Park
D. wildlife in the park

Exercise 13: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Traditionally in America, helping the poor was a matter of private charities or local governments. Arriving immigrants depended mainly on predecessors from their homeland to help them start a new life. In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, several European

nations **instituted** public-welfare programmes. But such a movement was slow to take hold in the United States because the rapid pace of industrialization and the ready availability of farmland seemed to confirm the belief that anyone who was willing to work could find a job. Most of the programmes during the Depression era were temporary relief measures, but one of the programmes, Social Security, has become an American institution. Paid for by deduction from the paychecks of working people, Social Security ensures that retired persons receive a modest monthly income and also provides unemployment insurance, disability insurance, and other assistance to those who need it. Social Security payments to retired persons can start at the age of 62, but many wait until the age of 65 when the payments are slightly higher. Recently, there has been concern that the Social Security Fund may not have enough money to fulfill its obligations in the 21st century, when the population of elderly Americans is expected to increase dramatically. Policy makers have proposed various ways to make up the anticipated deficit, but a long-term solution is still being debated. In the years since President Franklin Roosevelt, other American presidents have established assistance programmes. These include Medicaid and Medicare, food stamps, certificates that people can use to purchase food, and public housing which is built at federal expense and made available to persons on low incomes. Needy Americans can also turn to sources other than the government for help. A broad spectrum of private charities and voluntary organizations is available. Volunteerism is on the rise in the United States, especially among retired persons. It is estimated that 50 percent of Americans over the age of 18 do volunteer work, and nearly 75 percent of us households contribute money to charity.

1. NEW IMMIGRANTS TO THE US COULD SEEK HELP FROM _____. .

- A. THE PEOPLE WHO CAME EARLIER B. THE US

GOVERNMENT AGENCIES

- C. ONLY CHARITY ORGANIZATIONS D. VOLUNTEER

ORGANIZATIONS

2. IT TOOK WELFARE PROGRAMMES A LONG TIME TO GAIN A
FOOTHOLD IN THE US DUE TO THE FAST

GROWTH OF _____. .

- A. INDUSTRIALIZATION B. MODERNIZATION
C. URBANIZATION D. POPULATION

3. THE WORD “INSTITUTED” IN PARAGRAPH 1 MOSTLY
MEANS _____. .

- A. EXECUTED B. STUDIED C. INTRODUCED D.
ENFORCED

4. THE SOCIAL SECURITY PROGRAMME HAS BECOME POSSIBLE
THANKS TO _____. .

- A. deduction from wages B. people’s willingness to work
C. donations from companies D. enforcement laws

5. Most of the public assistance programmes _____ after the severe economic crisis.
- A. were introduced into institutions
 - B. did not become institutionalized
 - C. functioned fruitfully in institutions
 - D. did not work in institutions
6. That Social Security payments will be a burden comes from the concern that _____.
A. elderly people ask for more money
B. the programme discourages working people
C. the number of elderly people is growing
D. younger people do not want to work

**7. PERSONS ON LOW INCOMES CAN ACCESS PUBLIC HOUSING
THROUGH _____.**

**A. LOW RENTS B. STATE SPENDING C. DONATIONS D.
FEDERAL EXPENDITURE**

8. AMERICANS ON LOW INCOMES CAN SEEK HELP FROM _____.
**A. FEDERAL GOVERNMENT B. GOVERNMENT AGENCIES
C. STATE GOVERNMENTS D. NON-GOVERNMENT**

AGENCIES
**9. PUBLIC ASSISTANCE HAS BECOME MORE AND MORE POPULAR
DUE TO THE _____.**

- A. young people's volunteerism only
- B. volunteer organizations
- C. people's growing commitment to charity
- D. innovation in the tax system

10. The passage mainly discusses _____ .

- A. public assistance in America
- B. immigration into America
- C. funding agencies in America
- D. ways of fund-raising in America

Exercise 14: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

All mammals feed their young. Beluga whale mothers, for example, nurse their calves for some twenty months, until they are about to give birth again and their young are able to find their own food. The behavior of feeding of the young is built into the reproductive system. It is a non-elective part parental care and the defining feature of a mammal, the most important thing that mammals - whether marsupials, platypuses, spiny anteaters, or placental mammals - have in common.

But not all animal parents, even those that **tend** their offspring to the point of hatching or birth, feed their young. Most egg-guarding fish do not, for the simple reason that their young are so much smaller than the parents and eat food that is also much smaller than the food eaten by adults. In reptiles, the crocodile mother protects her young after they have

hatched and takes them down to the water, where they will find food, but she does not actually feed them. Few insects feed their young after hatching, but some make other arrangement, **provisioning** their cells and nests with caterpillars and spiders that they have paralyzed with their venom and stored in a state of suspended animation so that their larvae might have a supply of fresh food when they hatch.

For animals other than mammals, then, feeding is not intrinsic to parental care. Animals add it to their reproductive strategies to give them an **edge** in their lifelong quest for descendants. The most vulnerable moment in any animal's life is when it first finds itself completely on its own, when it must forage and fend for itself. Feeding postpones that moment until a young animal has grown to such a size that it is better able to cope. The young that are fed by their parents become nutritionally independent at much greater fraction of their full adult size. And in the meantime, those young are **shielded** against the vagaries of fluctuating of difficult-to-find supplies. One a species does take the step of feeding its young, the young become totally dependent on the extra effort. If both parents are removed, the young generally do not survive.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
 - A. The care that various animals give to their offspring.
 - B. The difficulties young animals face in obtaining food,
 - C. The methods that mammals use to nurse their young.
 - D. The importance among young mammals of becoming independent.
2. The author lists various animals in the last sentence of paragraph I to _____.
 - A. contrast the feeding habits of different types of mammals
 - B. describe the process by which mammals came to be defined
 - C. emphasize the point that every type of mammal feeds its own young
 - D. explain why a particular feature of mammals is non-elective
3. The word "tend" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to _____.
 - A. sit on
 - B. move
 - C. notice
 - D. care for
4. What can be inferred from the passage about the practice of animal parents feeding their young?
 - A. It is unknown among fish.
 - B. It is unrelated to the size of the young,
 - C. It is dangerous for the parents.
 - D. It is most common among mammals.
5. The word "**provisioning**" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to _____.
 - A. supplying
 - B. preparing
 - C. building
 - D. expanding
6. According to the passage, how do some insects make sure their young have food?
 - A. By storing food near their young.
 - B. By locating their nests or cells near spiders and caterpillars,
 - C. By searching for food some distance from their nest.

D. By gathering food from a nearby water source.

7. THE WORD "EDGE" IN PARAGRAPH 3 IS CLOSEST IN MEANING TO _____.

A. OPPORTUNITY

B. ADVANTAGE

C. PURPOSE

D. REST

8. THE WORD "IT" IN PARAGRAPH 3 REFERS TO _____.

A. FEEDING

B. MOMENT

C. YOUNG ANIMAL

D. SIZE

9. ACCORDING TO THE PASSAGE, ANIMAL YOUNG ARE MOST DEFENSELESS WHEN _____.

A. their parents are away searching for food

B. their parents have many young to feed

C. they are only a few days old

D. they first become independent

10. The word "**shielded**" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.

A. raised

B. protected

C. hatched

D. valued

Exercise 15: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

A recent survey of crime statistics shows that we are all more likely to be burgled now than 20 years ago and the police advise everyone to take a few simple precautions to protect their homes.

The first fact is that burglars and other intruders prefer easy opportunities, like a house which is very obviously empty. This is much less of a challenge than an occupied house, and one which is well-protected. A burglar will wonder if it is worth the bother.

There are some general tips on how to avoid your home becoming another crime statistic. Avoid leaving signs that your house is empty. When you have to go out, leave at least one light on as well as a radio or television, and do not leave any curtains wide open. The sight of your latest music centre or computer is enough to tempt any burglar.

Never leave a spare key in a convenient hiding place. The first place a burglar will look is under the doormat or in a flower pot and even somewhere more 'imaginative' could soon be uncovered by the intruder. It is much safer to leave a key with a neighbour you can trust. But if your house is in a quiet, **desolate** area be aware that this will be a burglar's dream, so deter any potential criminal from approaching your house by fitting security lights to the outside of your house.

But what could happen if, in spite of the **aforementioned** precautions, a burglar or intruder has decided to target your home. Windows are usually the first point of entry for many intruders. Downstairs windows provide easy access while upstairs windows can be reached with a ladder or B, Climbing up the drainpipe. Before going to bed you should double-check that all windows and shutters are locked. No matter how small your windows may be, it is surprising what a narrow gap a determined burglar can manage to get through. For extra security, fit window locks to the inside of the window.

What about entry via doors? Your back door and patio doors, which are easily forced open, should have top quality security locks fitted. Even though this is expensive it will be money well spent. Install a burglar alarm if you can afford it as another line of defence against intruders.

A sobering fact is that not all intruders have to break and enter into a property. Why go to the trouble of breaking in if you can just knock and be invited in? Beware of bogus officials or workmen and, particularly if you are elderly, fit a chain and an eye hole so you can scrutinise callers at your leisure. When you do have callers never let anybody into your home unless you are absolutely sure they are genuine. Ask to see an identity card, for example.

If you are in the frightening position of waking in the middle of the night and think you can hear an intruder, then on no account should you approach the intruder. It is far better to telephone the police and wait for help.

1. A well-protected house _____.
A. is less likely to be burgled.
B. is regarded as a challenge by most criminals,
C. is a lot of bother to maintain.
D. is very unlikely to be burgled.
2. According to the writer, we should _____.
A. avoid leaving our house empty.
B. only go out when we have to.
C. always keep the curtains closed.
D. give the impression that our house is occupied when we go out.
3. The writer thinks that hiding a key under a doormat or flower pot _____.
A. is predictable. B. is useful.
C. is imaginative. D. is where you always find a spare key.
4. What word best replaces “desolate” in paragraph 4?
A. isolated B. populous C. dissatisfying D. depressing
5. What word best replaces “aforementioned” in paragraph 5?
A. foreseen B. predicted C. foresaid D. forethought
6. Gaining entry to a house through a small window _____.
A. is surprisingly difficult.
B. is not as difficult as people think.
C. is less likely to happen than gaining entry through a door.
D. is tried only by very determined burglars.
7. According to the writer, window locks, security locks and burglar alarms _____.
A. cost a lot of money but are worth it.
B. are good value for money,
C. are luxury items.

- D.** are absolutely essential items.
8. The writer argues that fitting a chain and an eye hole _____.
A. will prevent your home being burgled.
B. avoids you having to invite people into your home,
C. is only necessary for elderly people.
D. gives you time to check if the visitor is genuine.
9. What word best replaces “scrutinise” in paragraph 7?
A. glance **B.** gaze **C.** search **D.** examine
10. The best title for the text is _____.
A. Increasing household crime.
B. Protecting your home from intruders.
C. What to do if a burglar breaks into your home.
D. Burglary statistics

Fiberscopes are one of the most important outcomes of the science of fiber optics. Fibers made of glass and transparent acrylic plastic are capable of conveying light energy, and when thousands of these fibers are combined in what is called a fiberscope, they can transmit images. The most common fiberscopes contain about 750,000 fibers, each 0.001 centimeter, or 10 microns, in diameter. For certain uses, the diameter of the fiber may be as small as 5 microns.

Fiberscopes have a wide range of applications. In the medical field, physicians use fiberscopes to examine internal organs and as an aid in delicate surgery. Miniature probes have also been developed to view muscle fiber, skin tissue, and blood cells. Fiberscopes have also found varied uses in industry, particularly to inspect or control operations in **inaccessible** areas. Bundles of fiberscopes fused together in a solid plate, called a faceplate, are being used in the manufacture of television tubes and other cathode-ray tube devices.

The most far reaching applications of fiber-optic technology are in communication. Optical fibers carry voice message for telephone service. The sound of the voice is electronically broken down into thousands of pulses per second, which causes a transmitting laser to send **coordinated** pulses of light through the optical fibers. At the receiving end, the light pulses are **converted** to electrical signals and the voice message is reconstructed. Light-wave communication systems can handle an immensely greater number of telephone calls and television programmes than the current system, and **they** will form the basis of the “electronic superhighway” expected to crisscross the nation in the near future of the information age.

1. How do optical fibers carry voice message?
A. By fusing bundles of fiberscopes into a faceplate.
B. Converting electrical signals to light pulses.
C. By sending coordinated electrical pulses through optical fibers.
D. By using cathode-ray tube devices.
2. The word “inaccessible” in paragraph 2 means _____.

Exercise 17: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the

correct answer to each of the questions.

My family consists of four people. There's my father whose name is Jan, my mother whose name is Marie, my brother, Peter and of course, me. I have quite a large extended family as well but, only the four of us live together in our apartment in *a block of flats*. My father is fifty-two years old. He works as an accountant in an insurance company. He is tall and slim, has got short brown and gray hair and blue eyes. My father likes gardening very much as well as listening to music and reading books about political science. His special hobbies are bird watching and travelling.

Now I'll describe my mother and my brother. My mother is forty-seven and she works as a nurse in a hospital. She is small, and slim, has short brown hair and green eyes. She likes bird watching and travelling too, so whenever my parents are able to they go some place interesting for nature watching. Since we have a cottage with a garden they both spend a lot of time there. My brother is sixteen. He is slim and has short brown hair and blue eyes. He also attends high school. He is interested in computers and sports like football and hockey. He also spends a lot of time with his friends.

I have only one grandmother left still living. She is in pretty good health even at the age of seventy-eight so she still lives in her own flat. I enjoy spending time with her when I can. Both my grandfathers died from cancer because they were smokers, which was really a great tragedy because I didn't get chance to know them. My other grandmother died just a few years ago. I also have a lot of aunts, uncles, and cousins. The cousin I'm closest to is my uncle's daughter Pauline. We have a lot in common because we are both eighteen and so we are good friends.

My parents have assigned me certain duties around the house. I don't mind helping out because everyone in a family should contribute in some way. I help with the washing up, the vacuuming and the shopping. Of course I also have to help keep my room tidy as well. My brother is responsible for the dusting and mopping. He also has to clean his own room. Even though my brother and I sometimes fight about who has to do what job, we are still very close. I am also very close to my parents and I can rely on them to help me. My parents work together to keep our home well maintained and it seem they always have a project or another that they are working on. They respect each other's opinions and even if they disagree they can always come to a compromise. I hope in the future that I have a family like ours.

1. What is the writer's father?
A. a cashier B. an accountant C. a receptionist D. a writer
2. Which of the followings is NOT the hobby of the writer's father?
A. listening to music B. bird watching
C. painting D. doing the gardening
3. Where does the writer's mother work?
A. an a clinic B. at home C. in a company D. in a hospital
4. What does the writer's mother look like?

Exercise 18: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

A considerable **body** of research has demonstrated a correlation between birth order and aspects such as temperament and behavior, and some psychologists believe that birth order significantly affects the development of personality. Psychologist Alfred Adler was a pioneer in the study of the relationship between birth order and personality. A **key** point in his research and in the hypothesis that he developed based on it was that it was not the actual numerical birth position that affected personality; instead, it was the similar responses in large numbers of families to children in specific birth order positions that had an effect. For example, first-borns, who have their parents to themselves initially and do not have to deal with siblings in the first part of their lives, tend to have their first socialization experiences with adults and therefore tend to find the process of peer socialization more difficult. In contrast, later-born children have to deal with siblings from the first moment of their lives and therefore tend to have stronger socialization skills.

Numerous studies since Adler's have been conducted on the effect of birth order and personality. These studies have tended to classify birth order types into four different

categories: first-born, second-born and/or middle, last, and only child.

Studies have consistently shown that first-born children tend to exhibit similar, positive and negative personality traits. First-borns have consistently been linked with academic achievement in various studies; in one study, the number of National Merit scholarship winners who are first-borns was found to be equal to the number of second-and third-borns combined. *First-borns have been found to be more responsible and assertive than those born in other birth-order positions and tend to rise to positions of leadership more often than others; more first-borns have served in the U.S. Congress and as U.S. presidents than have those born in other birth-order positions.* However, studies have shown that first-borns tend to be more subject to stress and were considered problem children more often than later-borns.

Second-born and/or middle children demonstrate markedly different tendencies from first-borns. They tend to feel inferior to the older child or children because it is difficult for them to comprehend that their lower level of achievement is a function of age rather than ability, and they often try to succeed in areas other than those in which their older sibling or siblings excel. They tend to be more trusting, accepting, and focused on others than the more self-centered first-borns, and they tend to have a comparatively higher level of success in team sports than do first-borns or only children, who more often excel in individual sports.

The last-born child is the one who tends to be the eternal baby of the family and thus often exhibits a strong sense of security. Last-borns collectively achieve the highest degree of social success and demonstrate the highest levels of self-esteem of all the birth-order positions. They often exhibit less competitiveness than older brothers and sisters and are more likely to take part in less competitive group games or in social organizations such as sororities and fraternities.

Only children tend to exhibit some of the main characteristics of first-borns and some of the characteristics of last-borns. Only children tend to exhibit the strong sense of security and self-esteem exhibited by last-borns while, like first-borns, they are more achievement oriented and more likely than middle-or last-borns to achieve academic success. However, only children tend to have the most problems establishing close relationships and exhibit a lower need for affiliation than other children.

1. THE WORD "BODY" IN PARAGRAPH 1 COULD BE BEST REPLACED BY _____.

- A. CORPSE B. AMOUNT C. ORGANIZATION D.
SKELETON

2. THE WORD "KEY" IN PARAGRAPH 1 COULD BE REPLACED BY _____.

- A. LOCKED B. SECRET C. STUDIED D.
SIGNIFICANT

3. THE WORD "IT" IN PARAGRAPH 1 REFERS TO _____.

- A. personality B. component C. research D. hypothesis
4. What is stated in paragraph 1 about Adler?
A. He was one of the first to study the effect of birth order on personality.
B. He believed that it was the actual birth order that affected personality.
C. He had found that the responses by family members had little to do with personality.
D. He was the only one to study birth order.
5. _____ The word “traits” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. stresses B. marks C. characteristics D. fears
6. Which of the sentences below expresses the essential information in the italic sentence in paragraph 3? Incorrect choices change the meaning in important ways or leave out essential information
A. In spite of certain characteristics that first-borns possess, many of them become leaders.
B. An interesting fact that is difficult to explain is that many first-borns have served in high government positions.
C. Because first-borns tend to be very assertive, they are uncomfortable serving in government positions.
D. Several examples support the idea that first-borns have characteristics that make them leaders.
7. The word “accepting” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. tolerant B. affectionate C. admissible D. respectable
8. Which of the following is NOT true?
A. First-borns tend to do well in individual sports.
B. Middle children tend to have a preference for team sports,
C. Last-borns tend to prefer games with fierce competition.
D. Only children tend to prefer individual over team sports.
9. The phrase “**more achievement oriented**” in the paragraph 6 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. more directly involved B. more focused on accomplishments
C. more skilled as leaders D. more aware of surroundings
10. Which of the following would be most likely to have a successful career but few close friendships?
A. A second-born B. A middle child
C. A last-born D. An only child

Exercise 19: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Psychologists have debated a long time about whether a child’s upbringing can give it the ability to do outstandingly well. Some think that it is impossible to develop genius and

say that it is simply something a person is born with. **Others**, however, argue that the potential for great achievement can be developed. The truth lies somewhere between these two extremes.

It seems very obvious that being born with the right qualities from gifted parents will increase a child's ability to do well. However, this ability will be fully realized only with the right upbringing and opportunities. As one psychologist says, "To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel."

Scientists have recently assessed intelligence, achievement, and ability in 50 sets of identical twins that were separated shortly after birth and brought up by different parents. They found that achievement was based on intelligence, and later influenced by the child's environment.

One case involving very intelligent twins was quoted. One of the twins received a normal upbringing, and performed well. The other twin, however, was brought up by extremely supportive parents and given every possible opportunity to develop its abilities. That twin, though starting out with the same degree of intelligence as the other, performed even better.

This case reflects the general principle of intelligence and ability. The more **favorable** the environment, the more a child's intelligence and ability are developed. However, there is no link between intelligence and the socioeconomic level of a child's family. In other words, it does not matter how poor or how rich a family is, as this does not affect intelligence.

Gifted people cannot be created by supportive parents, but they can be developed by them. One professor of music said that outstanding musicians usually started two or three years earlier than ordinary performers, often because their parents had recognized their ability. These musicians then needed at least ten years' hard work and training in order to reach the level they were capable of attaining.

People who want to have very gifted children are given the following advice:

- Marry an intelligent person.
 - Allow children to follow their own interests rather than the interests of the parents.
 - Start a child's education early but avoid pushing the child too hard.
 - Encourage children to play; for example, playing with musical instruments is essential for a child who wants to become an outstanding musician.
1. The upbringing of highly intelligent children requires _____.
 - A. an expensive education
 - B. good musical instruments
 - C. parental support and encouragement
 - D. wealthy and loving parents
 2. The word "others'" used in the first paragraph refers to _____.

A. other people	B. other scientists
C. other children	D. other geniuses

3. When scientists studied intelligence and ability in twins, they found that _____.
A.ability depends mainly on intelligence and achievement
B.intelligence and development are irrelevant to ability
C. ability depends both on intelligence and on environment
D. different twins generally have different levels of ability.
4. Scientists chose twins for their study because _____.
A. each twin has the same environment as his/her twin
B. they are born into the same family, hence the same upbringing
C. they have the same economic background and hence the same opportunities
D. they have the same genetic background, usually with similar intelligence
5. How were great musicians different from ordinary musicians in their development?
A.Their ability was realized at an early stage and then nurtured.
B.They practice playing their instruments for many years.
C. They concentrated on music to the exclusion of other areas.
D. They were exceptionally intelligent and artistic.
6. The writer advises that gifted children should be allowed to follow _____.
A. their own interests
B. their parent's interests
C. only their interests in musical instruments
D. only their interests in computer games
7. When encouraging their gifted children, parents should avoid _____.
A.pushing their children too hard.
B.letting them play their own way
C. permitting them to follow their own interests
D. starting their education at an early age
8. The remark: "*To have a fast car, you need both a good engine and fuel.*" in paragraph 2 means that in order to become a genius _____.
A. you need to have good health and good nourishment
B. you need intelligence and you need to develop it
C. you should try to move quickly and efficiently
D. you must nourish your brain and train your muscles hard
9. The word "favorable" in paragraph 5 mostly means _____.
A. "good for someone and making him/her likely to be successful"
B. "helping somebody to be more intelligent compared to other people"
C. "of high quality or an acceptable standard"
D. "under the control or in the power of somebody else"
10. All of the following statements are true EXCEPT _____.
A. educational development depends completely on economic well-being

- B.** a child's intelligence is influenced by that of his/ her parents
- C.** to become successful, a child needs both native intelligence and development
- D.** studying different twins is a useful scientific procedure

Exercise 20: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Animation traditionally is done by hand-drawing or painting successive frames of an object, each slightly different than the preceding frame. In computer animation, although the computer may be the one to draw the different frames, in most cases the artist will draw the beginning and ending frames and the computer will produce the drawings between the first and the last drawing. This is generally referred to as computer-assisted animation, because the computer is more of a helper than an originator.

In full computer animation, complex mathematical formulas are used to produce the final sequence of pictures. These formulas operate on extensive databases of numbers that define the objects in the pictures as **they** exist in mathematical space. The database consists of endpoints, and color and intensity information. Highly trained professionals are needed to produce such effects because animation that obtains high degrees of realism involves computer techniques for three-dimensional transformation, shading, and curvatures.

High-tech computer animation for film involves very expensive computer systems along with special color terminals or frame buffers. The **frame buffer** is nothing more than a giant image memory for viewing a single frame. It temporarily holds the image for display on the screen.

A camera can be used to film directly from the computer's display screen, but for the highest quality images possible, expensive film recorders are used. The computer computes the positions and colors for the figures in the picture, and sends this information to the recorder, which **captures** it on film. Sometimes, however, the images are stored on a large magnetic disk before being sent to the recorder. **Once** this process is completed, it is repeated for the next frame. When the entire sequence has been recorded on the film, the film must be developed before the animation can be viewed. If the entire sequence does not seem right, the motions must be corrected recomputed, redisplayed, and rerecorded. This approach can be very expensive and time consuming. Often, computer-animation companies first do motion tests with simple computer-generated line drawings before selling their computers to the **task of** calculating the high-resolution, realistic-looking images.

1. What aspect of computer animation does the passage mainly discuss?
 - A.** The production process
 - B.** The equipment needed
 - C.** The high cost
 - D.** The role of the artist
2. According to the passage, in computer-assisted animation the role of the computer

IS TO DRAW THE _____ .

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| A. FIRST FRAME | B. MIDDLE FRAMES |
| C. LAST FRAME | D. ENTIRE SEQUENCE OF |
| FRAMES | |

3. THE WORD "THEY" IN THE SECOND PARAGRAPH REFERS TO _____.

- A. FORMULAS B. DATABASES C. NUMBERS D.
OBJECTS

4. ACCORDING TO THE PASSAGE, THE "FRAME BUFFERS" MENTIONED IN THE THIRD PARAGRAPH

ARE USED TO _____.

- A. ADD COLOR TO THE IMAGES B. EXPOSE SEVERAL FRAMES AT THE SAME TIME

- C. STORE INDIVIDUAL IMAGES D. CREATE NEW FRAMES

5. ACCORDING TO THE PASSAGE, THE POSITIONS AND COLOURS OF THE FIGURES IN HIGH-TECH

ANIMATION ARE DETERMINED BY _____.

- A. drawing several versions
B. enlarging one frame at a lime
C. analyzing the sequence from different angles
D. using computer calculations

6. The word "captures" in the fourth paragraph is closest in meaning to _____ .

- A. separates B. registers C. describes D. numbers

7. The word "Once" in the fourth paragraph is closest in meaning to _____ .

- A. before B. since C. After D. while

8. According to the passage, how do computer-animation companies often test motion?

- A. They experiment with computer-generated line drawings.
B. They hand-draw successive frames.
C. They calculate high-resolution images.
D. They develop extensive mathematical formulas.

9. The word "task" in the 4th paragraph is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. possibility B. position C. time D. job

10. Which of the following statements is supported by the passage?

- A. Computers have reduced the costs of animation.
B. In the future, traditional artists will no longer be needed.
C. Artists are unable to produce drawings as high in quality as computer drawings.
D. Animation involves a wide range of technical and artistic skills.KĨ NĂNG VIỆT

Dạng bài tập chuyên hóa (sentence transformation) có thể kiểm tra một khía cạnh ngữ pháp trong từng câu như hoặc có thể kiểm tra hơn một khía cạnh ngữ pháp trong từng câu.

Bài tập trắc nghiệm tìm câu đồng nghĩa có mục đích kiểm tra kiến thức ngữ pháp ở cấp độ câu thông qua việc yêu cầu học sinh đọc và chọn câu đồng nghĩa trong 4 phương án đã cho đúng nhất so với câu gốc. Đáp án được lựa chọn phải đúng về ngữ pháp và có nghĩa gần nhất với câu đã cho.

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập viết, ta cần ôn một số điểm sau:

I. Các loại mệnh đề phụ

Ngoài mệnh đề chính, ta còn có mệnh đề phụ (subordinate clauses). Sau đây là các loại mệnh đề phụ thường gặp.

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clauses)

Mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng các đại từ quan hệ *who, whom, which, that, whose* hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ *where, when, why*.

They decided not to import things which/that we could produce ourselves.

We stopped to help a driver whose car had broken down.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành cụm phân từ (participle phrase) với hai loại sau:

+ cụm hiện tại phân từ V-ing (present participle phrase) mang nghĩa chủ động

+ cụm quá khứ phân từ V-ed/V₃ (past participle phrase) mang nghĩa bị động

People who travel into the city every day are used to the traffic jam.

→ *People travelling into the city every day are used to the traffic jam.*

The song which was written by my uncle has become famous.

→ *The song written by my uncle has become famous.*

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành ngữ danh từ đồng vị (apposition).

Oak, which is one of the most durable hard woods, is often used to make furniture.

→ *Oak, one of the most durable hard woods, is often used to make furniture.*

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive phrase) sau cấu trúc:

the first/ second/.../ the last/ the only / the oldest... (so sánh nhất)

Who was the first person that conquered Mount Everest?

→ *Who was the first person to conquer Mount Everest?*

She is the only student who has signed up for the course.

→ *She is the only student to sign up for the course.*

My uncle was the oldest learner who attended that class.

→ *My uncle was the oldest learner to attend that class.*

2. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ** (adverb clauses)

- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *because, as, since, for, seeing that*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *so that, in order that, for fear that, in case*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *when, while, before, after, since, as, till, until, as soon as, once*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *as, as if, as though*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *so (+ tính từ + that), such (+ danh từ + that)*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *though, although, no matter...*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ điều kiện là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *if, unless, provided that, providing that, supposing*.
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự so sánh là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *as as, - er than....*

Ví dụ: *Don't put off going to the dentist until you have a problem.*

Since credit cards are so convenient, many people use them.

Some people arrived in taxis while others took the subway.

Once you have done the basic course, you can go on to the more advanced one.

Lưu ý:

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn thành các cụm từ với các liên từ *although, while, if, when, before, after, until* nhưng không với *because*.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn với phân từ (Reduced adverb clauses with participles):

Although it had been damaged, the machine was still operational.

→ *Although damaged, the machine was still operational.*

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn với tính từ (Reduced adverb clauses with adjectives):

Although he was nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.

→ *Although nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.*

3. **Mệnh đề danh ngữ** (noun clauses)

Mệnh đề danh ngữ thường bắt đầu với *that, if, whether* hoặc một từ dùng để hỏi như *what, when, where, how...*

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm chủ ngữ:

When the summit meeting will be held has not been decided.

That the majority of students in Vietnam learn English is obvious.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm tân ngữ:
We know that astronauts were very tired after their Ion2 trip.
The figures show how much the population has increased.
- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm bô ngữ:
The advantage of DVD is that it gives you much better picture quality.
It seems that the company has made a mistake in its marketing strategy.
- Mệnh đề danh ngữ với chức năng ngữ đồng vị:
You can't deny the fact that his fingerprints were on the gun.
(mệnh đề danh ngữ là ngữ đồng vị của “the fact”)
There is a rumour going round that the exam papers have been stolen.
(mệnh đề danh ngữ là ngữ đồng vị của “rumour”)

4. Những lỗi thường gặp với mệnh đề và cụm từ.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ thiếu đại từ quan hệ.

Câu sai: *I think the man is talking to John works for my company.*

Câu đúng: *the man who is talking to John....*

- Mệnh đề quan hệ thiếu động từ.

Câu sai: *Asking questions which essential in learning a language can be difficult for beginners.*

Câu đúng: *which is essential in....*

- Dùng mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn với hành động đã hoàn tất.

Câu sai: *The man escaping from prison is said to be dangerous.*

Câu đúng: *The man having escaped from....*

- Dùng *but* đi với *although* trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ.

Câu sai: *Although John was tired but he kept on working until midnight.*

Câu đúng: *Although John was tired, he kept on....*

- Dùng sai đại từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề danh từ làm ngữ đồng vị.

Câu sai: *The news which the plane had crashed came as a terrible shock.*

Câu đúng: *The news that the plane had crashed... (that ở đây là liên từ không phải là đại từ)*

- Dùng cụm phân từ và mệnh đề chính có chủ từ không chỉ cùng đối tượng.

Câu sai: *Walking along the street, a car crashed into a lorry.*

Câu đúng: *Walking along the street, I saw a car crash into a lorry.*

- Dùng sai hình thức phân từ:

Câu sai: *Founding in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university in the country.*

Câu đúng: *Founded in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university in the country.*

- Dùng sai hình thức động từ nguyên mẫu.

Câu sai: *Cross the river was one of the most difficult tasks in our expedition.*

Câu đúng: *Crossing the river was one of the most... Dùng sai giới từ hoặc liên từ.*

Câu sai: *Because his wife being there, I said nothing about it.*

Câu đúng: *Because his wife was there, I said nothing about it.* hoặc *Because of his wife being there, I said nothing about it.*

Câu sai: *Despite parrots are tropical birds, they can live in temperate or even cold climate.*

Câu đúng: *Although parrots are tropical birds, they can live...*

II. Hình thức đảo ngữ của chủ từ và động từ (inversion of subject and verb)

Người ta dùng hình thức đảo ngữ này trong một số trường hợp để nhấn mạnh. Khi đó ta đảo động từ ra trước chủ từ.

Sau đây là một số trường hợp đảo ngữ thường gặp trong tiếng Anh.

1. Đảo ngữ với các từ phủ định (inversion with negatives).

Những trạng từ và ngữ trạng từ quan trọng nhất là:

hardly ever = hầu như không bao giờ

hardly... when/ scarcely... when/ no sooner... than = vừa mới.... thì

not only.... = không những

not until/till = không... cho tới khi

nowhere = không nơi nào

on no account = không vì bất cứ lí do gì

only by = chỉ bằng cách

only in this way = chỉ bằng cách này

only then/when = chỉ lúc đó/ chỉ khi nào

scarcely ever = hầu như không bao giờ

seldom = ít khi

Sự đảo ngữ này được thực hiện bằng cách đưa trợ động từ (auxiliary verb) đứng trước chủ từ:

Tù/ cụm từ phủ định + trợ động từ + chủ từ + động từ chính

Ví dụ:

Never in my life have I seen such a strange behavior.

Only after arriving at the office did I realize that I had forgotten to turn off the gas cooker.

No sooner does he learn a few English words than he forgets them all.

Under no circumstances can you open this door.

Not until he had retired did he think about having a holiday.

Not only did she pass the exam but she also got scholarship.

Nowhere have I felt as comfortable as this town.

2. Đảo ngữ sau các cấu trúc “so + tính từ... that”, “such + be... that”, “neither/nor”.

Ví dụ:

So alike were the twins that few people could tell them apart.

Such is the popularity of the play that the theater is likely to be full every night.

He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.

After the accident, Jane couldn't hear, and neither could she see.

3. Đảo ngữ sau một số từ/ cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn (inversion with place expressions).

Khi đặt một số trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn ở đầu câu kết hợp với một số động từ như “stand, sit, lie, come, go...”, ta có hình thức đảo ngữ của chủ từ và động từ.

Ví dụ: *Around the corner is the hospital.*

On the grass sat an enormous frog.

In the doorway stood her father.

Under the tree was lying some children.

4. Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện (inversion with conditionals).

Ta có thể dùng hình thức đảo ngữ này để lược bỏ từ “if” trong câu điều kiện. Khi đó ta đưa các trợ động từ như “should, were, had” ra trước chủ từ.

Ví dụ: If you see Jane, please give her this message.

→ *Should you see Jane, please give her this message.*

He would get the job if he were more careful in writing his resume.

→ *He would get the job were he more careful in writing his resume.*

If the goalkeeper had played better, we would have won the game.

→ *Had the goalkeeper played better, we would have won the game.*

III. Cấu trúc song hành (parallel structure)

Cấu trúc song hành là cấu trúc đòi hỏi phải sử dụng cùng một loại cấu trúc ngữ pháp cho những ý có liên quan với nhau và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

Ví dụ: *I like to sing and dancing.*

→ *I like singing arid dancing*, hoặc *I like to sing and to dance.*

1. Cấu trúc song hành có thể được dùng cho hai từ, hai cụm từ hoặc hai mệnh đề. Hai thành phần này trong cấu trúc song hành phải có dạng giống nhau.

Ví dụ: *Ann enjoys swimming, riding arid k) play tennis.*

→ *Ann enjoys swimming, riding and playing tennis.*

The team leader demanded from his team members a serious altitude towards work, good team spirit, and that they work hard:

→ *The team leader demanded from his team members a serious attitude towards work, good team spirit, and their hard work.*

2. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các liên từ đẳng lập (coordinate conjunctions).

Các liên từ đẳng lập như *and, but, or* liên kết các danh từ, động từ, tính từ, trạng từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề với các ý tương đương và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

danh từ		danh từ
động từ	<i>and</i>	động từ
tính từ	<i>but</i>	tính từ
trạng từ	<i>or</i>	trạng từ
cụm từ		cụm từ
mệnh đề		mệnh đề

Ví dụ: *The examination last week was short bullet*
→*The examination last week was short but difficult.*

There ore students in the classroom am
→*There are students in the classroom and in front of the building.*

3. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các cặp liên từ.

Cấu trúc song hành cũng dùng với cặp liên từ liên kết các danh từ, động từ, tính từ, trạng từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề với các ý tương đương và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

both	<i>danh từ</i>	and	<i>danh từ</i>
either	<i>động từ</i>	or	<i>động từ</i>
neither	<i>tính từ</i>	nor	<i>tính từ</i>
not	<i>trạng từ</i>	but also	<i>trạng từ</i>
only	<i>cụm lử</i>		<i>từ cụm</i>
	<i>mệnh đề</i>		<i>mệnh đề</i>

Ví dụ:
I know both where you went and the thing you did

→*I know both where you went and what you did.*

The tickets are neither in my pocket nor I keep in my wallet
→*The tickets are neither in my pocket nor in my wallet.*

4. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các dạng so sánh.

Khi thực hiện sự so sánh, ta chỉ ra sự giống nhau hoặc khác nhau giữa hai đối tượng, và hai đối tượng này phải có cấu trúc ngữ pháp giống nhau.

<i>danh từ</i>	more ... than	<i>danh từ</i>
<i>động từ</i>	-er... than	<i>động từ</i>
<i>tính từ</i>	less ... than	<i>tính từ</i>
<i>trạng từ</i>	as ... as	<i>trạng từ</i>
<i>cụm từ</i>	the same ... as	<i>cụm từ</i>
<i>mệnh đề</i>	similar ... to	<i>mệnh đề</i>

Ví dụ:
To be rich is better than poor. → *To be rich is better than to be poor.*

IV. Câu chè hay câu nhấn mạnh (Cleft sentences)

Ta có thể dùng cấu trúc “It is/was...that” để nhấn mạnh phần ta muốn nói bằng cách đưa thành phần muốn nhấn mạnh vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*, phần còn lại của câu được đặt sau *that*. Thành phần được nhấn mạnh có thể là chủ ngữ, tên ngữ, hoặc trạng ngữ trong câu.

1. Subject focus (nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ, ta đưa chủ ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *who* hoặc *that*. Đổi với

chủ ngữ chỉ người, ta có thể dùng *who* hoặc *that* đối với chủ ngữ chỉ vật, sự vật, con vật thì ta dùng *that*.

It is/was + subject (for person) + who/that + verb....

It is/was + subject (for things/ animals) + that + verb....

Ví dụ: Ms. Lan Phuong teaches English at Chu Van An School.

→ *It is Ms. Lan Phuong who teaches English at Chu Van An School.*

(Chính cô Lan Phương dạy tiếng Anh ở Trường Chu Văn An.)

My father bought a new car last Saturday.

→ *It was my father who bought a new car last Saturday.*

(Chính cha tôi đã mua một ô tô mới thứ Bảy tuần trước.)

English becomes more and more popular in the world.

→ *It is English that becomes more and more popular in the world.*

(Đó chính là tiếng Anh trở nên ngày càng phổ biến trên thế giới.)

2. Object focus (nhấn mạnh tân ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh tân ngữ, ta đưa tân ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*.

It is/was + object + that + subject + verb...

Ví dụ: I met Lan at the party.

→ *It was Lan that I met at the party.*

(Đó chính là Lan người mà tôi gặp ở buổi tiệc.)

She sent her friend the postcard.

→ *It was the postcard that she sent her friend.*

(Đó chính là tấm bưu thiếp mà cô ấy gửi cho bạn.)

Lưu ý: Khi nhấn mạnh tân ngữ chỉ người, ta có thể dùng *who/whom* hoặc *that*. Tuy nhiên khi tân ngữ là danh từ riêng thì *that* được dùng phổ biến hơn là *who/whom*.

Ví dụ: It was his wife who(m)/that he met in Britain.

It was Mr. Nam that I met at the meeting.

3. Adverbial focus (nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, phương cách, lí do..., ta đưa trạng ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*.

It is/was + adverbial phrase + that + subject + verb...

Ví dụ: My father bought a new car last Saturday.

→ *It was last Saturday that my father bought a new car.*

(Chính vào thứ Bảy tuần trước cha tôi đã mua một ô tô mới.)

I was born in this house.

→ *It was in this house that I was born.*

(Chính trong ngôi nhà này tôi được sinh ra)

You can kill computer viruses by using some software.

→ *It is by using some software that you can kill computer viruses.*

(Chính là bằng cách dùng phần mềm bạn có thể tiêu diệt vi-rút máy tính.)

The father repaired the bicycle for Nam.

→ *It was for Nam that the father repaired the bicycle.*

(Chính là vì cho Nam mà cha cậu ấy sửa chiếc xe đạp.)

Ghi chú:

- Dạng phủ định cũng có thể được sử dụng trong câu chè.

Ví dụ: *My sister didn't write this letter.*

→ *It wasn't my sister who wrote this letter.*

- Trong tiếng Anh thông dụng, ta thường dùng *It's me* và *It's us* hơn là *It's I* và *It's we*.

Ví dụ: *It's us that have helped him out of the problem.*

V. Các cấu trúc thường gặp khác cần lưu ý

1. Thé truyền khiến (causative form)

To have somebody do something (sai khiến ai/ bảo ai làm gì)

I'll have John fix my laptop.

To get somebody to do something (sai khiến ai/ bảo ai làm gì)

They got the technician to repair the laptop.

To have/ to get something done (làm một việc gì bằng cách thuê/ sai khiến người khác)

I had my car washed and dried.

2. Cấu trúc với unless được sử dụng với nghĩa “trừ khi, trừ trường hợp..khi mệnh

đề unless đứng ở đầu câu, nó được tách biệt với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.

You won't have a sick leave unless you have a doctor's note.

Unless something unexpected happens, I'll attend the meeting.

3. Cấu trúc với until (cho đến khi.)

Let's wait until the rain stops.

Until she spoke I hadn't realized she wasn't English.

They did not come until the meeting was half over.

Cấu trúc “**It + be + not + until**” đặt ở vị trí đầu câu được sử dụng để nhấn mạnh hành động nào đó mãi đến thời điểm đó mới xảy ra.

It was not until 9 o'clock that I got out of bed. (=I didn't get out of bed until 9 o'clock./I stayed in bed until 9 o'clock.)

It was not until the meeting was half over that they came. (= They did not come until the meeting was half over.)

VI. Viết một đoạn văn (Paragraph writing)

Đoạn văn là một nhóm các câu văn liên quan với nhau có bố cục chung và cùng phát triển một ý chính.

A. Các yêu cầu khi viết một đoạn văn:

1. Đoạn văn phải có câu đề dẫn nêu ý chính và các ý triển khai một cách rõ ràng.

Đề đậm bảo sự thống nhất của một đoạn văn, mỗi câu của đoạn văn phải liên quan đến chủ đề và triển khai ý của chủ đề đó.

2. Đoạn văn phải có sự thống nhất: giải thích, phân tích hoặc bàn luận một chủ đề mà

thôi. Các cách thức để đạt được sự thống nhất của đoạn văn:

- lặp lại các danh từ chính của chủ đề hoặc sử dụng các đại từ đề cập đến các danh từ chính này

- sử dụng từ nối cho thấy một ý này liên quan đến ý tiếp theo như thế nào
- sắp xếp các câu văn theo một trình tự hợp lí, thường là theo một trong ba cách sắp xếp: thứ tự thời gian, sự phân chia hợp lí hoặc thứ tự của tầm quan trọng

3. Đoạn văn phải mạch lạc, chặt chẽ để người đọc có thể theo dõi các ý triển khai một cách dễ dàng. Các ý triển khai giúp làm rõ chủ đề và có sức thuyết phục người đọc đồng ý với cách giải thích, và lập luận trong đoạn văn.

4. Đoạn văn phải có câu kết luận trong đó chủ đề, ý chính và các ý triển khai một nháć lại một cách văn tắt, hay được trình bày dưới một dạng khác có cùng nội dung.

Lập dàn ý chi tiết trước khi viết một đoạn văn sẽ:

- giúp người viết sắp xếp ý và có bối cảnh đoạn văn tốt hơn
- giúp viết nhanh hơn
- giúp người viết hoàn thiện phần ngữ pháp

B. Các giai đoạn viết một đoạn văn:

1. Chọn nội dung:

- phân tích đề bài để hiểu nội dung có liên quan và những điều ta cần nói về đề bài. Ta phải xem từ hướng dẫn của đoạn văn là trình bày một sự việc hoặc nêu ý kiến về một vấn đề, xác định những từ chủ yếu đề cập một đề tài nhất định để sử dụng ngôn từ phù hợp nội dung chủ đề.
 - sắp xếp các ý theo trình tự hợp lí và cách thể hiện tốt các ý này.
2. Tìm và chọn ý: với một đoạn văn từ 100 đến 140 từ, ta không thể quá tham vọng về những gì mình viết, hoặc cứ lặp đi lặp lại một điều theo nhiều cách khác nhau mà không có ý cụ thể nào.
- sự động não: để sắp xếp ý cho một đề bài, điều cần thiết trước tiên là phải ghi các ý đó ra. Điều đơn giản là bạn ghi thật nhanh bất cứ khái niệm nào xuất hiện trong đầu có liên quan với đề bài được cho, ghi lại theo dạng chú thích và theo thứ tự bắt chót (nghĩa là theo bất cứ thứ tự nào chúng xuất hiện trong đầu bạn)
 - tìm thêm ý: nếu bạn gặp khó khăn trong việc nghĩ ra những ý có độ khái quát phù hợp thì hãy dùng một cách thức rất hay là nghĩa ra những ví dụ thật cụ thể, riêng biệt, rồi tìm xem những ví dụ này thuộc vào ý niệm trùu tượng nào cao hơn.

3. Chọn và sắp xếp nội dung:

- sau giai đoạn động não, bước tiếp theo rất quan trọng trong cả quá trình viết là bạn phải quyết định xem nên đưa những ý gì vào bài viết, những gì cần loại bỏ, và cần trình bày các ý này theo thứ tự nào.
- sau khi xem lại đề bài với những từ chủ yếu, ta phải xếp các loại ý vào nhóm hợp lí. Nói chung, có nhiều hệ thống phân loại, nhưng ta nên dùng hệ thống đơn giản nhất.
- ta cũng cần sắp xếp các ý theo thứ tự thích hợp như: từ quan trọng nhất đến ít quan trọng nhất, từ phổ biến nhất đến ít phổ biến nhất, từ khái quát nhất đến ít khái quát nhất,

hoặc từ sớm đến muộn (theo thứ tự thời gian). Có ba cách sắp xếp ý phô biến là: liệt kê các ý theo tầm quan trọng hoặc mức độ xảy ra; so sánh hai vật hoặc khái niệm; nêu nguyên nhân và hậu quả để trình bày ý kiến của bạn

4. Viết đoạn văn

- viết câu đề dẫn cho người đọc biết đề bài và khía cạnh chính của đề bài
- viết các câu phát triển ý, đưa ra các ý giải thích, nêu ví dụ cụ thể để làm rõ lý lẽ của bạn, nhớ triển khai các ý theo thứ tự của dàn bài chi tiết.
- nên chọn ngôn từ phù hợp với nội dung chủ đề, tránh lặp lại ý nguyên những từ của đề bài. Nếu bạn diễn đạt bằng những từ tương đương thì sẽ tạo ấn tượng tốt hơn.
- ta có thể viết câu kết luận ngắn gọn, nhưng đó không phải chỉ là sự lặp lại chủ đề chính của đoạn văn, vì điều đó sẽ gây nhảm chán khi đọc. Câu kết luận cần chứa ý tóm tắt của lập luận của đoạn văn hoặc nhận xét của bạn về đề tài đó như đưa ra một đề nghị, hoặc một nhận định.

Ví dụ minh họa:

In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the role of each family member in sharing housework chores in Vietnam.

Dàn ý chi tiết:

Câu đề dân:

- Different members have their own roles and responsibilities.

Các ý triển khai:

- the father: takes care of the family by earning, guiding the children, doing the hard stuff
- the mother: goes to work or stays at home as housewife, takes care of the children and supervises household tasks
- the son: helps the father with some household activities such as doing simple home repair, helps the mother in the kitchen
- the daughter: helps the mother to do some of the household tasks like grocery shopping, cooking, washing dishes, cleaning...

Câu kết luận:

- Every member should do some kinds of household work, making the home a nice and happy place to live in.

Đoạn văn đề nghị:

In a typical family in Vietnam, different members have their own roles and responsibilities to perform. The father takes care of the family by earning a living, guiding the children, and making the important decisions. He is responsible for doing the hard stuff like lifting heavy things and repair work like fixing plumbing and electricity. The mother takes care of the children and supervises household tasks. She also helps to earn a living and make decisions affecting the family. She does the shopping, prepares the family meals. The son helps the father with some household activities such as doing simple home repair, or

watering the plants. The daughter helps the mother to do some of the household tasks like cooking, washing dishes, or taking care of younger brothers or sisters. Every member should do some kinds of household work, making the home a nice and happy place to live in.

C. Các loại câu văn

1. Câu đơn (**a simple sentence**) chỉ có một mệnh đề chính và không có mệnh đề phụ.

Ví dụ:

At the end of trip, we gathered all our belongings.

2. Câu kép hay câu ghép (**a compound sentence**) gồm hai hay nhiều mệnh đề chính nhưng không có mệnh đề phụ.

Ví dụ:

I want to become a teacher, and my sister is studying to be a doctor.

3. Câu phức hợp (**a complex sentence**) gồm một mệnh đề chính và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

Ví dụ:

We should follow this method because it is very useful and practical.

4. Câu phức-kép (**a compound-complex sentence**) gồm hai hay nhiều mệnh đề và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

Ví dụ:

Since I had seen him the day before, I knew that he was unhappy, but I did not guess that he would give up his plans.

D. Các thành phần của câu văn

1. Ngữ giới từ (**a prepositional phrase**) bắt đầu bằng một giới từ hoặc một nhóm giới từ: cụm từ này là một nhóm từ bắt đầu bằng một giới từ và kết thúc bằng danh từ.

Ví dụ:

*I walked **to** the house/**around** the house/**through** the house.*

The taxi stopped **at** the station.

I am interested **in** learning a foreign language.

We arrived **ahead** of time.

Contrary to our expectations, the price of petrol did not go up.

Giới từ thường gặp:

<i>abroad</i>	<i>about</i>	<i>above</i>	<i>across</i>
<i>after</i>	<i>against</i>	<i>along</i>	<i>among</i>
<i>around</i>	<i>at</i>	<i>before</i>	<i>behind</i>
<i>below</i>	<i>beneath</i>	<i>beside</i>	<i>besides</i>
<i>between</i>	<i>beyond</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>down</i>
<i>during</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>in</i>
<i>inside</i>	<i>into</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>of</i>
<i>off</i>	<i>except</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>outside</i>

<i>over</i>	<i>since</i>	<i>through</i>	<i>throughout</i>
<i>to</i>	<i>toward</i>	<i>under</i>	<i>underneath</i>
<i>until</i>	<i>up</i>	<i>upon</i>	<i>within</i>
<i>without</i>			

Nhóm giới từ thường gặp

<i>ahead of</i>	<i>apart from</i>	<i>away from</i>
<i>aside from</i>	<i>contrary to</i>	<i>due to</i>
<i>owing to</i>	<i>because of</i>	<i>instead of</i>
<i>out of</i>	<i>together with</i>	<i>inside of</i>
<i>up to</i>	<i>as for</i>	
<i>by way of</i>	<i>by means of</i>	<i>for the sake of</i>
<i>in comparison with</i>	<i>at advance of</i>	<i>in addition to</i>
<i>in spite of</i>	<i>in place of</i>	<i>in case of</i>
<i>in reference to</i>	<i>on account of</i>	<i>on behalf of</i>
<i>with regard to</i>	<i>with respect to</i>	

Ngữ giới từ có thể được dùng làm:

- tính từ để bô nghĩa cho một danh từ hoặc đại từ

Ví dụ:

the girl *in the white dress*
some *of the most common methods*
a knife *for hunting*

- phó từ để bô nghĩa cho một động từ (cho biết hành động xảy ra khi nào, ở đâu, ra sao, tại sao,...); một tính từ, một phó từ khác hoặc cả mệnh đề:

Ví dụ:

John lives in the downtown. (**Where** does John live?)
The train arrived at eleven o 'clock. (**When** did the train arrive?)
They cut wastes by recycling. (**How** do they cut wastes?)
The bullet missed his heart by a couple of centimeters. (**How far** did the bullet miss his heart?)
She is very clever at dealing with customers.
Never in his life will he give up hopes.
According to the forecast, it will be rainy.

2. Ngữ phân từ (participial phrases)

Một phân từ (a participle) là một từ được hình thành từ động từ và dùng làm tính từ hoặc phó từ.

Phân từ có thể ở những dạng khác nhau:

	Active	Passive
Present participle	<i>doing</i>	<i>being done</i>
Past participle		<i>done</i>

Perfect participle	<i>having done</i>	<i>having been done</i>
--------------------	--------------------	-------------------------

Ngữ phân từ bao gồm một phân từ với các từ bổ nghĩa và tân ngữ nếu có.

Ví dụ:

The man **standing** near the gate is Mr. Smith.

Having finished the reports with great care, she sent them to the manager.

Cụm hiện tại hoặc quá khứ phân từ có thể được dùng làm một tính từ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ hoặc đại từ, hoặc làm vị ngữ.

Ví dụ:

- Active present participles: **living** conditions, **melting** snow, **falling** leaves, the **preceding** statement

- Passive past participles: **a forgotten** valley, the **stolen** car, **photocopied** documents

Để diễn tả một hành động hoàn thành trước một hành động khác trong câu văn, có thể sử dụng *past participle* hoặc *perfect participle*.

Ví dụ:

Translated into many languages, the book became famous.

Having finished the work, he sat down to rest.

Having been carefully repaired, the machine worked well.

Ngữ phân từ dùng làm bổ ngữ cho danh từ hoặc đại từ:

Ví dụ:

The railway **connecting** the two big cities has been used for ten years.

The boy jumped over the rope **extended** across the poles.

Trong nhiều trường hợp, ngữ phân từ thường liên hệ với động từ chính trong câu văn để diễn tả nguyên nhân, thời gian, điều kiện hoặc phương tiện.

Ví dụ:

Being a careless student, he **forgot** all about his homework.

Having had my breakfast, I **went** to school.

He stood on the deck, **listening** to the wind.

Taking more exercises every day, you can **improve** your health.

Running all the way, I **caught** the train in time.

3. Ngữ danh từ (gerund phrases)

Ngữ danh từ là một cụm từ hình thành từ một động từ và được dùng như danh từ. Tương tự như danh từ, ngữ danh từ có thể được dùng làm: chủ ngữ, bổ ngữ, tân ngữ trực tiếp, hoặc bổ ngữ của giới từ.

Ví dụ:

Learning rules without examples is useless.

His bad habit is *telling lies*.

I enjoy *listening to music*.

She is devoted to *bringing up her children*.

This device has been used for many years without *being repaired*.

4. Ngữ nguyên thể (infinitive phrases)

Động từ nguyên thể có những dạng sau:

	Active	Passive
Present infinitive	to do	to be done
Perfect infinitive	to have done	to have been done

Ngữ nguyên thể là một cụm từ bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên thể. Nó được dùng làm danh từ, tính từ hoặc phó từ.

Ví dụ:

To travel to that village by boat will be interesting.

I want to master the writing skills as quickly as possible.

We needed a guide to lead us through the jungle.

This is a pleasant cocktail to drink in hot weather.

She has gone to visit her aunt in the capital.

E. Từ nối (linking words or connectors)

Để cho đoạn văn được suông sẻ, và giúp người đọc hiểu sự liên kết hợp lí giữa các ý, ta nên sử dụng các từ nối trong cùng một câu văn và giữa các câu với nhau.

Các loại từ nối thường gặp:

1. Từ nối chỉ điều bổ sung (addition):

both ... and... (cả ... lẫn)

also (cũng)

not only but! also (không những ... mà còn)

furthermore (hơn nữa)

in addition (ngoài ra)

2. Từ nối chỉ sự tương phản (contrast):

but (nhưng)

however (tuy nhiên)

nevertheless (tuy nhiên)

in contrast (tương phản, đối lập)

on the other hand (mặt khác)

in spite of this (dù vậy)

instead of (thay vì)

3. Từ nối chỉ một liệt kê đơn giản (simple listing):

firstly (trước hết)

secondly (thứ hai là)

in addition (ngoài ra)

finally (sau cùng)

4. Từ nối chỉ hệ quả hoặc kết quả (effects or results):

therefore (vì vậy)

consequently (kết quả là)

for this reason (vì lí do này)

as a result (kết quả là)

because of this (vì lí do này)

5. Từ nối nêu ví dụ hoặc dẫn chứng (giving examples):

for example (chẳng hạn, ví dụ)

for instance (ví dụ như)

such as (như I à)

similarly (tương tự)

in fact (thật vậy)

in particular (cụ thể, đặc biệt là)

6. Từ nối chỉ sự kết luận (conclusion):

in conclusion (để kết luận)

generally speaking (nói chung)

clearly (rõ ràng là)

it is clear (rõ ràng là)

on the whole (nói chung)

in other words (nói cách khác)

Thang điểm cho viết đoạn văn của Bộ Giáo dục & Đào tạo (1,5 điểm)

- Các gợi ý nêu ra trong đề thi chỉ có giá trị tham khảo. Thí sinh có thể sử dụng lập luận riêng của mình mà không nhất thiết phải sử dụng các gợi ý đó.
- Nếu lạc đề, bài viết sẽ bị điểm 0 (không).

TT	Mô tả tiêu chí đánh giá	Điểm tối đa
1.	Bố cục <ul style="list-style-type: none">Đảm bảo viết đúng cấu trúc của một đoạn văn (paragraph)Bố cục:<ul style="list-style-type: none">Câu đe dẫn mạch lạc và nêu đúng chủ đềSắp xếp các ý hợp lý, rõ ràngCâu kết luận rõ ràng (tóm tắt được chủ đề và các ý đã triển khai)	0,40
2.	Phát triển ý - Nội dung <ul style="list-style-type: none">Phải nêu được lập luận, có dẫn chứng cho các lập luận đóPhát triển ý có trình tự logic, đủ thuyết phục người đọcBiết liên kết các ý một cách chặt chẽĐảm bảo số lượng từ theo yêu cầu <p>(Nếu bài viết có số lượng từ nhiều hơn hoặc ít hơn so với quy định 15% thì trừ hết số điểm của mục này là 0,10đ)</p>	0,55

3.	Sử dụng ngôn từ	0,30
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sử dụng ngôn từ: o phù hợp nội dung chủ đề o phù hợp văn viết o đa dạng về cấu trúc và từ vựng 	0,10 0,10 0,10
4.	Ngữ pháp, dâu câu và chính tả:	0,25
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sử dụng đúng dâu câu • Sử dụng thời thế, cấu trúc câu đúng ngữ pháp • Viết đúng chính tả (Nếu cùng một lỗi chính tả lặp lại thì chỉ tính là một lỗi) <p>Mục nào có số lỗi vượt quá 10% tổng số từ của bài viết (14 lỗi trên tổng số 140 từ của đoạn văn), mục đó sẽ bị trừ toàn bộ số điểm.</p>	0,05 0,10 0,10
	Tổng	1,50

➤ BÀI TẬP CÂU ĐÁO NGỮ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Not only _____.
 A. he refused to help me but he also made fun of me
 B. did he refuse to help me but he made fun of me also
 C. did he refuse to help me but he also made fun of me
 D. he did refuse to help me but also made fun of me
2. _____ had she opened the cupboard door than she stood in front of it petrified.
 A. No sooner B. As soon as C. Hardly D. The fact
3. _____ with enough life-boats she wouldn't have caused so heavy casualties.
 A. Were the Titanic to be equipped B. The Titanic were to be equipped
 C. The Titanic was to be equipped D. Had the Titanic been equipped
4. It was not until the doctors asked him to comment on his death _____ recognized their craziness.
 A. when he B. and he C. that he D. he
5. George would certainly have attended the meeting _____.
 A. if he didn't get a flat tire B. if the flat tire hadn't happened
 C. had he not had a flat tire D. had the tire not flattened itself
6. _____ received law degrees as today.
 A. Never so many women have B. Never have so many women
 C. The women aren't ever D. Women who have never

7. ____ during his dinner with us.
- A. Not did my grandfather say a single word
B. Not said a single word did my grandfather
C. Not my grandfather said a single word
D. Not a single word did my grandfather say
8. There is no water on the moon, nor _____ an atmosphere around it.
- A. there is B. it is C. there is not D. is there
9. _____ the work when his wife came in with two policemen.
- A. Had he hardly finished B. Had hardly he finished
C. Hardly he had finished D. Hardly had he finished
10. Not until the first land plants developed _____.
- A. land animals appeared B. did land animals appear
C. would land animals appear D. the land animals appeared
- Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. Not only _____ in the field of psychology but animal behavior is examined as well.
- A. is studied human behaviour B. is human behavior studied
C. did human behavior study D. human behavior studied
2. It was not until she had arrived home _____ remembered her appointment with the doctor.
- A. when she B. thatshe C. and she D. she
3. Not until a student has mastered algebra _____ the principles of geometry, trigonometry, and physics.
- A. he can begin to understand B. can he begin to understand
C. he begins to understand D. that he can begin to understand
4. _____ they go to the theatre.
- A. Only on rare occasions B. Only on rare occasions do
C. On rare occasions only D. Only do on rare occasions
5. .____ pleased with himself.
- A. Only after John received the first prize was he
B. Only after John received the first prize he was
C. After John received the first prize only was he
D. After John received the first prize only he was
6. ____ the lights went out.
- A. Hardly had the performance begun when
B. Hardly the performance had begun when did
C. Hardly had the performance begun than
D. Hardly the performance had begun than did

7. _____ visited her.
- A. Had I known she was sick, I would have
B. No sooner had I known she was sick, I would have
C. No sooner had I known she was sick than I
D. Hardly had I known she was sick when I
8. _____ I would give a party.
- A. Were she to come next month B. She were to come next month
C. She comes next month D. She would come next month
9. _____ more help, I could call my neighbour.
- A. Needed B. Should I need C. I have needed D. I should need
10. _____ my father sat down for lunch when there was a knock at the door.
- A. Hardly had B. No sooner had
C. At no time had D. Never before had
- Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.**
1. _____ the book, please return it to me.
- A. Should you find B. Will you be finding
C. will you find D. Will you have found
2. _____ graduated from college.
- A. Nowhere does he found a job after he had
B. Nowhere did he find a job after he had
C. Not anywhere did he find a job after had he
D. Nowhere did he find a job after had he
3. _____ he sold the house.
- A. Hardly did he have time to settle down when
B. Hardly has he had time to settle down when
C. No sooner had he had time to settle down when
D. No sooner had he had time to settle down than
4. _____ lost all his clothes.
- A. Before arriving in New York had he spent all his money and
B. No sooner had he arrived in New York than had he spent all his money
C. Not only had he spent all his money before arriving in New York but he also
D. Not only had he spent all his money before arriving in New York but had he also
5. _____ to speak to his wife about his ex-girlfriend!
- A. Never has he again dared B. Never again has hedared
C. Again never has he dared D. Never again did hehave dare
6. . _____ to say too much about oneself.
- A. Seldom does it wise B. Seldom is it wise
C. Seldom wise it is D. Seldom wise is it

7. Not until _____.
A. I approached the flat did I realize that it was completely empty
B. did I approach the flat that I realized it was completely empty
C. I approached the flat that I realized completely was it empty
D. did I approach the flat I realized that it was completely empty
8. _____ most of the soldiers gave up!
A. So was the exercise difficult that
B. So difficult was the exercise that
C. So was the exercise difficult that did
D. So difficult was the exercise that did .
9. _____ be impolite to our parents,
A. Not in any circumstances should we
B. In any circumstances shouldn't we
C. in no circumstances should we
D. No circumstances permit us to
10. _____ send the telegram.
A. No sooner the train should be delayed shall I
B. No sooner should the train be delayed than shall I
C. Should the train be delayed, I shall
D. Should the train is delayed shall I

Exercise 4: Choose the sentence that best rewrites the original one.

1. John certainly can't be held responsible for the accident.
A. In no way can John be held responsible for the accident.
B. Certainly can't John be held responsible for the accident.
C. For any reason can John not be held responsible for the accident.
D. On no account can John not be held responsible for the accident.
2. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
A. At all didn't the police suspect that the judge was the murderer.
B. Little did the police suspect that the judge was the murderer.
C. Seldom did the police at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
D. Never before suspected the police that the judge was the murderer.
3. You won't find fossils like this anywhere else.
A. Nowhere else will you find fossils like this.
B. Nowhere will you find fossils like this else.
C. Anywhere else won't you find fossils like this.
D. Anywhere will you not find fossils like this else.
4. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances.
A. Under no circumstances is the money not to be paid

- B. Under any circumstances isn't the money to be paid
C. In any circumstances is the money not to be paid
D. In no circumstances is the money to be paid
5. The demand for the tickets was so great that people queued day and night.
A. So great the demand for the tickets was that people queued day and night.
B. Such was the demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.
C. So great was the demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.
D. Such great was demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.
6. Just after the play started there was a power failure.
A. Hardly did the play start then there was a power failure.
B. Hardly had the play started when there was a power failure.
C. No earlier had the play started than there was a power failure.
D. No sooner did the play start before there was a power failure.
7. Harry broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder.
A. Not only did Harry break his leg but he also injured his shoulder.
B. Not only Harry broke his leg but also did he injure his shoulder,
C. Harry broke his leg and also did he injure his shoulder.
D. Also injured his shoulder did Harry break his leg.
8. The way so much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record.
A. Never before so much money has been spent to so little purpose must a record be.
B. So much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record,
C. So little must purpose be that so much money has been spent.
D. Never before has so much money been spent to so little purpose.
9. It was only when the office phoned me that I found out about the meeting.
A. Not until did the office phone me did I find out about the meeting.
B. Not until the office phoned me did I find out about the meeting,
C. Only the office phoned me did I find out about the meeting.
D. Only after did the office phone me that I found out about the meeting.
10. He never suspected that she was a witch.
A. At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.
B. Never did he suspect that a witch she was.
C. Never a witch did he suspect that she was.
D. No before did he suspect was she a witch.

Exercise 5: Choose the sentence that best rewrites the original one.

1. I shall never forget her in my life.
A. Never I shall forget her in my life.
B. Never in my life shall I forget her.
C. Never forget her in my life shall I.

- D.** Never in my life I shall forget her.
2. She was so nice that many people wanted to make friends with her.
- A.** So nice was she that many people wanted to make friends with her.
 - B.** So nice she was that many people wanted to make friends with her.
 - C.** Such a nice girl she was that many people wanted to make friends with her.
 - D.** Such nice a girl was she that many people wanted to make friends with her.
3. I can finish this work on time only if you help me.
- A.** Only if you help me I can finish this work on time.
 - B.** I can finish this work on time do you help me only if.
 - C.** Only if you help me can I finish this work on time.
 - D.** This work can be finished on time only if do you help me.
4. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.
- A.** As soon as had I got into the bath that someone knocked at the door.
 - B.** Hardly I had got into the bath when did someone knock at the door,
 - C.** No sooner had I got into the bath than someone knocked at the door.
 - D.** Barely did I get into the bath before someone had knocked at the door.
5. If you need money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
- A.** Need you money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
 - B.** Will you need money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
 - C.** You can go to the banks before 4.30 pm unless you need money.
 - D.** Go to the banks before 4.30 pm should you need money.
6. She is not only beautiful but also can study very well.
- A.** Not only she is beautiful but can she also study very well.
 - B.** Not only is she beautiful but she can also study very well,
 - C.** Not only beautiful she is but also can she study very well.
 - D.** Not only beautiful is she but she also can study very well.
7. If they had asked, I would have had to tell them.
- A.** I would have had to tell them had they asked.
 - B.** I would have had to tell them would they have asked,
 - C.** Did they ask, I would have had to tell them.
 - D.** Would I have had to tell them if they had asked
8. Paul hardly ever opens his mouth at the staff meeting.
- A.** Hardly ever Paul opens his mouth at the staff meeting.
 - B.** Hardly ever does Paul open his mouth at the staff meeting,
 - C.** At the staff meeting does Paul hardly ever open his mouth.
 - D.** Ever hardly Paul does open his mouth at the staff meeting.
9. If Mr. Mills were still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.
- A.** Would he not permit such bad behavior if Mr. Mills were still the headmaster.

- B. Did Mr. Mills be still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour,
C. Were Mr. Mills still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.
D. Should Mr. Mills have been the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.

10. It was only when I heard the full story that I realized I had been taken in.
A. Only when did I hear the full story that I realized I had been taken in.
B. Only when did I hear the full story did I realize that I had been taken in.
C. Only when I heard the full story that I realized had I been taken in.
D. Only when I heard the full story did I realize that I had been taken in.

➤ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆP HOÀN THÀNH CÂU

Exercise 1: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Never before in my life _____.
A. I have ever tasted such a good apple
B. I had ever tasted such a good apple
C. have I ever tasted such a good apple
D. will I ever taste such a good apple

2. The car was too expensive _____.
A. for us to buy
B. for us to buy it
C. enough for us to buy
D. that we wouldn't buy it

3. The accident _____ was the mistake of the driver.
A. which causes many people to die
B. to cause many people to die
C. caused great human loss
D. causing many people to die

4. The water well is said _____.
A. dug by the local people a long time ago
B. to be dug by the local people a long time ago
C. to have been dug by the local people a long time ago
D. to dig by the local people a long time ago

5. _____ seemed a miracle to all of us.
A. When he had recovered so soon
B. That he recovered so soon
C. What he recovered so soon
D. His recovery be so soon

6. It was imperative _____.
A. that he would arrive there in time
B. that he arrive there in time
C. that he had to arrive there in time
D. that he arrived there in time

7. _____ a helicopter, we would have saved the lives of the flood victims.
A. Haven't we had
B. Had we had
C. Did we have
D. May we have

8. Despite their efforts, _____.
A. they could not score another goal scored
B. another goal could not be
C. yet they could score another goal
D. and they could not score another goal

9. Supposing you had seen the incident, what _____?
A. would you do B. would you have done
C. would you have been done D. will you do
10. They were such difficult tests _____.
A. that I couldn't finish B. so I couldn't finish them
C. that I couldn't finish them D. for me to finish
- Exercise 2: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.**
1. Peter has received several scholarships _____.
A. as resulting of his ability in the arts and the academy
B. because of his academic and artistic ability
C. for both his academic ability as well as his artistic
D. not only because of his artistic but his academic ability
2. _____, he has never been out of his hometown.
A. Strange as it may seem B. Strange may as it seem
C. May it seem strange D. As strange it may seem
3. _____, we were all thirsty afterwards.
A. As a result of the soup was very salty
B. Although the soup was very salty
C. Because of the soup was very salty
D. As the soup was very salty
4. No sooner had the football match started _____.
A. than it started to rain heavily
B. than did it start to rain heavily
C. when did it start to rain heavily
D. when it started to rain heavily
5. _____ we've been having!
A. What a dreadful weather B. What dreadful weather
C. How dreadful is the weather D. How dreadful the weather
6. _____ has tickets is allowed in.
A. Only anyone whom C. Only anyone who
B. Only who is anyone D. Only is anyone who
7. The police advised _____.
A. the man against hiding the truth C. the man not hiding the truth
B. the man not hide the truth D. the man not to hiding the truth.
8. _____, this problem would not have happened.
A. You had followed the orders B. You followed the orders
C. Had you followed the orders D. Had you been followed the orders
9. It is important that _____

- A. an exact record should be kept B. an exact record to be kept
C. keeping an exact record D. to keep an exact record
10. This mountain is _____.
A. higher than that one nearly 100 metres
B. higher nearly 100 metres than that one
C. nearly 100 metres higher than that one
D. higher that one nearly 100 metres

Exercise 3: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Only after you finish your homework _____.
A. I will take you out for a walk B. will be you taken out for a walk
C. you will be taken out for a walk D. will I take you out for a walk
2. The classroom is empty. I think they _____ to the laboratory.
A. must have gone B. need have gone
C. should have gone D. can have gone
3. _____ the policeman arrived to arrest him.
A. He had entered the building no sooner than
B. No sooner had he entered the building than
C. Hardly had he entered the building than
D. No sooner he had entered the building than
4. _____ poor results but also may cause accidents.
A. Haste does not only produce B. Haste had not only produced
C. Haste not only produces D. Haste produces not only
5. But for mobile phones, _____ it difficult to communicate with each other now.
A. we would have found B. we would find
C. we will find D. we find
6. The building _____ is going to be pulled down next month.
A. in where his house is located B. in which his house is located in
C. where his house is located D. where his house is located in
7. _____ They complained _____.
A. the landlady about the leak on the roof
B. to the landlady about the leak on the roof
C. about the leak on the roof to the landlady
D. about the landlady the leak on the roof
8. Mary's work was _____.
A. as good as, if not, better than ours B. so good as, if not, better than ours
C. as good like, if not, better than our D. as well as, if not, better than ours
9. Could you tell me_____?
A. what is the weather like today B. what the weather is like today

Exercise 4: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. _____ causes of population growth.
 - A. Family planning's failure
 - B. Failure in family planning is one of the
 - C. Failure of family planning often
 - D. Failure in family planning are
 2. The post office offers _____.
 - A. a special mail service which is particularly fast
 - B. a special mail service, it is particularly fast
 - C. a special mail service, that is particularly fast
 - D. a special mail service who is particularly fast
 3. If I were the British Prime Minister, _____.

A. I'd lower taxes	B. I'd better lower taxes
C. I'd have lowered taxes	D. I'd lowered taxes
 4. When I retire, _____.
 - A. I'll do a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross
 - B. I'll expect doing a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross
 - C. a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross will be done
 - D. a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross will be expected to be done
 5. Most people think that volunteer work should _____.
 - A. encourage more in our communities
 - B. be encouraged more in our communities
 - C. be more encouraged in our communities
 - D. more encouraged in our communities
 6. The building _____ is being restored.
 - A. which built more than a century ago
 - B. built more than a century ago
 - C. was built more than a century ago
 - D. that built more than a century ago
 7. The first person _____.
 - A. to arrive at the meeting was the secretary
 - B. who arrives at the meeting was the secretary
 - C. arrived at the meeting was the secretary
 - D. who has arrived at the meeting was the secretary

8. What did you do? - After finishing my homework, _____.
A. I go out for a drink with my friends
B. I went out for a drink with my friends
C. I had gone out for a drink with my friends
D. I have gone out for a drink with my friends
9. The post clerk _ is my sister.
A. is talking to customers B. is to talk to customers
C. talking to customers D. talks to customers
10. He is intelligent enough _____.
A. to understand the problem
B. so that he can't understand the problem
C. for him to understand the problem
D. for us to understand the problem

Exercise 5: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. The hotel _____ was destroyed by a fire the next day.
A. which we stayed for two days B. where we stayed in for two days
C. that we stayed for two days D. in which we stayed for two days
2. Because of lack of money, _____.
A. he can't do nothing
B. so that he could not do anything
C. he could do nothing
D. he avoided not buying some more items
3. Doctors advise _____.
A. eating a lot of vegetables and doing regular exercise
B. that we to eat a lot of vegetables and to do regular exercise
C. to eat a lot of vegetables and to do regular exercise
D. we ate a lot of vegetables and did regular exercise
4. I am going to buy _____ with the money.
A. either a camera or a DVD player
B. both a camera or a DVD player
C. either a camera and a DVD player
D. not only a camera and also a DVD player
5. This is Mr. Brown, _____.
A. his son won the first prize in the talent show last week
B. whom his son won the first prize in the talent show last week
C. in the talent show last week whose son won the first prize
D. whose son won the first prize in the talent show last week
6. Having found that I was not at home, _____ .

- A. police arrested the thief
 - B. my house was broken into by the thief
 - C. the thief broke into my house
 - D. I didn't know that the thief broke into my house
7. The world _____ was to be a great adventure for him.
- A. he knew very little
 - B. that he knew very little
 - C. where he knew very little
 - D. about which he knew very little
8. _____ the whale species.
- A. The hunting of whales are in danger
 - B. Whale hunting is in danger
 - C. The hunting of whale endanger
 - D. Whale hunting endangers
9. Do you get on with the neighbours _____ ?
- A. you live next door with them
 - B. that you live next door with them
 - C. with whom you live next door to
 - D. who live next door
10. He isn't good enough to pass the test. He wishes _____ .
- A. he were good enough to pass the test
 - B. he is good enough to pass the test
 - C. he had been good enough to pass the test
 - D. he will be good enough to pass the test

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence using one of the four phrases given.

1. The film _____ wasn't very interesting.
- A. that I saw last night on TV
 - B. I saw on TV last night
 - C. I saw it on TV last night
 - D. which I last night saw on TV
2. Mr. Smith is the person _____ .
- A. whom I don't have much confidence in him
 - B. I don't have much confidence
 - C. in that I don't have much confidence
 - D. in whom I don't have much confidence
3. The Asian Games _____ intellectual knowledge and friendship within Asia.
- A. hold and develop
 - B. are held to develop
 - C. are held and developed
 - D. which are held and developed
4. They would have paid you more_____ .
- A. if they were told of its value
 - B. unless they had told of its value
 - C. would they be told of its value
 - D. had they been told of its value
5. The tree _____ over one hundred years old.
- A. was estimated to be
 - B. was estimated that it has been
 - C. had been estimated that it was
 - D. had estimated to be
6. I first started learning French _____ .
- A. since my first holiday in Paris
 - B. when I went to Paris for a holiday

- C. for my first holiday in Paris D. in two years in Paris
7. While her father was travelling abroad, _____.
A. she writes him often
B. she is waiting for him to return
C. she received postcards from him quite often
D. she had often written postcards to him
8. Linda started learning _____.
A. how to drive last year B. what to drive last year
C. to drive since last year D. driving last year
9. There are far more restaurants in the city _____.
A. than it was B. than it did
C. than there used to be D. than it was used to
10. I have been living in this part of the town _____.
A. when I moved here last month B. for last month
C. since two months D. for a couple of months
- Exercise 7: Complete each sentence using one of the four phrases given.**
1. Many good students sometimes have trouble _____.
A. to concentrate on the work B. and concentrate in their work
C. concentrating on their work D. to concentrate in the work
2. After students are admitted to the university, they tend to pay more attention _____.
A. about extracurricular activities as to their class work
B. with extracurricular activities than to their class work
C. in extracurricular activities than their class work
D. to extracurricular activities than to their class work
3. The United Kingdom has replaced many of its specialized secondary schools _____.
A. into comprehension high schools
B. with comprehension high schools
C. as comprehension high schools
D. unless with comprehension high schools
4. Career preparation involves _____.
A. to learn a variety of skills B. learning a variety of skills
C. what to learn a variety of skills D. that learning a variety of skills
5. Manufacturers can help conserve mineral and timber supplies _____.
A. which recycling materials left over from production processes
B. by recycling materials left over from production processes
C. that recycles materials being left over from production processes
D. recycling materials which left over from production processes
6. There were two small rooms in the beach house, _____ served as a kitchen.

- A. the smaller of them B. the smaller of which
C. the smallest of which D. smallest of that
7. John's score on the test is the highest in the class. He _____.
A. should study very hard B. must have studied very hard
C. must have to study well D. should have studied all the time
8. _____, they would have had what they wanted.
A. If they arrived at the fair early
B. Had they arrived at the fair early
C. Unless they arrived at the fair early enough
D. Supposing they were arriving at the fair early
9. John contributed fifty dollars, but he wishes he could contribute _____.
A. the same amount also B. more fifty dollars
C. another fifty D. one other fifty dollars
10. He agreed to sign the contract _____.
A. so he didn't know much about that company
B. in spite he knew much about it
C. because he didn't know much about that company's director
D. although he didn't know much about that company

Exercise 8: Complete each sentence using one of the four phrases given.

1. In high school, students develop basic verbal and numerical skills, _____.
A. studying habits and other practical abilities
B. that study habits and other practical abilities
C. which study habits and other practical abilities
D. study habits and other practical abilities
2. The availability of labor-saving household appliances since 1950 _____.
A. has contributed to the participation of women in the labor force
B. contributed to the participation of women in the labor force
C. contributing to the participation of women in the labor force
D. contributing to the participation of women who are in the labor force
3. As a little boy, _____.
A. I used to take my father to the circus
B. my father used to take me to the circus
C. I used to be taken to the circus
D. my father used to be taken me to the circus
4. Before Doi Moi, people in that region _____.
A. had lots of opportunities to find jobs
B. had to suffer severe unemployment
C. lacked of employment severely

- D. suffered a severe lack for unemployment
5. In recent years, with the economic reforms _____.
A. farmers have had more chance for export their products
B. their products have had more chance to be exported by farmers
C. farmers, products have had more chance to export
D. farmers have had more chance to export their products
6. His parents _____, but they fail to stop him.
A. don't approve of what he does B. didn't approve with what he did
C. don't approve with what he did D. didn't approve of what he does
7. I can understand your English _____.
A. if you make the grammar mistakes
B. however much grammar mistakes you make
C. despite you make the grammar mistakes
D. in spite of the grammar mistakes you make
8. I am glad to know that _____.
A. I'd do what you'd forgiven me
B. I've done what you've forgiven me
C. you've forgiven me for what I've done
D. you'd forgiven me for what I'd do
9. Despite having worked in the field day after day, _____.
A. the whole family could hardly enough to feed
B. her parents could hardly earn enough to feed the whole family
C. earning enough to feed the whole family is hardly for her parents
D. could her family hardly earn enough to feed her parents
10. The accident was my fault, _____.
A. so I had to pay for the repairs B. so I had to pay all the repairs
C. but I had to pay all the repairs D. but I had to pay for the repairs

Exercise 9: Complete each sentence using one of the four phrases given.

1. In the 1980's and 1990's, hundreds of protected areas _____.
A. would have been established in tropical forests
B. may be established in tropical forests
C. were established in tropical forests
D. are established in tropical forests
2. Protecting the habitat is the key method _____.
A. to preserving endangered species
B. to preserve dangerous species
C. of preserving endangered species
D. for the preserve endangered species

3. _____ in the desert, cacti are the most popular.
- A. Despite other kinds of plants can be found
 - B. In spite of finding other kinds of plants
 - C. Although we can find other kinds of plants
 - D. However other kinds of plants can be found
4. _____ to adapt themselves to the lack of water and extreme temperatures.
- A. Animals are living in the desert have
 - B. Animals live in the desert have
 - C. Animals that live in the desert has
 - D. Animals living in the desert have
5. Camels' humps store fat _____ .
- A. when crossing the desert and turn into food to help them survive
 - B. and turn into food and help them survive when crossing the desert
 - C. when crossing the desert that can turn into food to help them survive
 - D. that can turn into food to help them survive when crossing the desert
6. Whenever he applies for a job, he gets the refusal _____.
- A. before they know him to be 60 years old
 - B. as soon as they know he is 60 years old
 - C. while they know he is 60 years old
 - D. because they know to be 60 years old
7. _____ until I get my exam results.
- A. I will know if I have got into university
 - B. I didn't know whether I got into university
 - C. I won't know if I have got into university
 - D. I knew whether I got into university
8. Modern women now work outside the home _____.
- A. because they want to be economically independent
 - B. in spite of their economical independence
 - C. although they are economically independent
 - D. so that they are economically dependent
9. Women today should _____ .
- A. pay the same wage as men B. pay as many wage as men
 - C. be paid as many wage as men D. be paid the same wage as men
10. Today women in many countries make some of the decisions _____.
- A. of what will they do with their lives
 - B. over what they would do with their lives
 - C. about what they will do with their lives
 - D. in what would they do with their lives

Exercise 10: Complete each sentence using one of the four phrases given.

1. _____ in order to save endangered species.
 - A. Efforts have made through different conservation
 - B. Efforts have been made with different conservation
 - C. Different conservation efforts have been made
 - D. They have been made different conservation efforts
2. When all the trees in a region are cut, _____.
 - A. there is nothing remains but worthless desert
 - B. nothing remains but worthless desert
 - C. nothing but sand and land becomes desert
 - D. sand and land becomes desert
3. Bill was growing _____ as I told him the news.

A. angrier and angrier	B. more and more angry
C. angry and angry	D. more and more angrily
4. Do not start a book _____.
 - A. if you will see it is the one you can easily read and understand
 - B. if you see it is the one you can easily read and understand
 - C. unless you can see it is the one you can easily read and understand
 - D. unless you cannot see it is the one you can easily read and understand
5. You'd better leave early. _____, the more chance you can get a good seat.

A. The earlier you leave	B. The early you leave
C. The more early you leave	D. The earliest you leave
6. I am very interested _____.

A. about the information you gave me.	B. in the information you gave it to me
C. in the information you gave me	D. about the information you gave it to me
7. It takes him thirty minutes to go _____.

A. to work with motorbike every day	B. to work on motorbike every day
C. to work by motorbike every day	D. working by motorbike every day
8. I haven't got _____.

A. much money for buying that English book	B. any money to buy that English book
C. some money to buy that English book	D. no money to buy that English book
9. She regretted to tell him that _____.

A. she was leaving the tickets at home	B. the tickets at home would be left
C. she would have left the tickets at home	D. she had left the tickets at home

10. I spent one hour _____ .

- A. trying to find the answer to the question
- B. to try to find the answer to the question
- C. trying to find the answer with the question
- D. to try to find the answer with the question

➤ **BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM TÌM CÂU ĐÓNG NGHĨA**

Exercise 1: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. You can enrich your knowledge by listening to the radio.
 - A. You can be rich if you listen to the radio.
 - B. Listening to the radio makes you know less,
 - C. Listening to the radio enables you to be rich.
 - D. Listening to the radio can make you know more.
2. We started to write to each other three years ago.
 - A. We used to write to each other for three years.
 - B. We have written to each other for three years,
 - C. We have written to each other since three years.
 - D. We used to write to each other in three years.
3. It took him two hours to do his homework.
 - A. He did his homework two hours ago.
 - B. He finished his homework two hours ago.
 - C. He did his homework in two hours.
 - D. He spent two hours doing his homework.
4. He last had his eyes tested a year ago.
 - A. He hadn't tested his eyes for a year.
 - B. He didn't have any tests on his eyes in a year,
 - C. He hasn't had his eyes tested for a year.
 - D. The last time he tested his eyes was a year ago.
5. The exam lasted three hours.
 - A. We finished the exam at three o'clock.
 - B. It is a three-hours exam,
 - C. It is a three-hour exam.
 - D. It takes us three hours to take the exam.
6. If it hadn't been so late, I would have called you.
 - A. It was not late when I called you.
 - B. It was late, so I did not call you.
 - C. It was late, but I called you.
 - D. It was not late but I did not call you.

7. No one but the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.
 - A. Only the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.
 - B. No one at all saw the seven-year-old boy's accident,
 - C. The seven-year-old boy saw no one in the accident.
 - D. No one in the accident saw the seven-year-old boy.
8. Most people get fewer colds in summer than in winter.
 - A. A person is more likely to get a cold in winter.
 - B. More people have summer colds than winter colds,
 - C. People get colder in summer than in winter.
 - D. Winter is much colder than summer.
9. They are watering the flowers.
 - A. The flowers are being watered by them.
 - B. They need some water and flowers,
 - C. There are some water on the flowers.
 - D. They are putting the flowers in water.
10. I would rather you stopped talking about her.
 - A. I would rather stop talking about her.
 - B. I prefer you not to talk about her any more,
 - C. I would rather you not talk about her.
 - D. I want you to talk about her.

Exercise 2: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Unlike her friends, Jane prefers an independent life.
 - A. Jane doesn't like her friends because she prefers an independent life.
 - B. Her friends live in an independent life and Jane doesn't like it.
 - C. Jane doesn't like her friends to live in a dependent life.
 - D. Jane prefers an independent life but her friends do not.
2. I used to live in Santa Clara Valley.
 - A. I'm used to living in Santa Clara Valley.
 - B. I'm living in Santa Clara Valley.
 - C. I once lived in Santa Clara Valley but no longer live there.
 - D. I've always lived in Santa Clara Valley.
3. My sister speaks little German.
 - A. My sister can speak German rather well.
 - B. My sister doesn't speak much German,
 - C. My sister speaks German softly.
 - D. My sister speaks German badly.
4. Who made you work so hard yesterday?
 - A. Who forced you to work so hard yesterday?

- B. Why did you work so hard yesterday?
 - C. What made you work so hard yesterday?
 - D. How could you work so hard yesterday?
5. Her father fell ill because he had worked so hard.
- A. Her father was too ill to work hard.
 - B. Her father was ill and he could not work hard,
 - C. Her father didn't work hard because he fell ill.
 - D. Her father fell ill because of working so hard.
6. She didn't ring the bell but just walked in.
- A. She just walked in without the bell ringing.
 - B. she just walked in not ringing the bell,
 - C. She just walked in and then rang the bell.
 - D. She just walked in without ringing the bell.
7. When they arrived, the good seats were already taken.
- A. They didn't get good seats because they arrived too late.
 - B. They arrived late enough to get good seats.
 - C. They had to stand for a long time to have good seats.
 - D. They couldn't get good seats although they arrived early.
8. Anna never wants to see another horror film.
- A. Anna hasn't seen a horror film.
 - B. Anna has enjoyed all the horror films she has seen.
 - C. Anna is tired of seeing horror films.
 - D. Anna is worried to miss the next horror film.
9. It won't rain tomorrow.
- A. There won't be any rain tomorrow.
 - B. There won't be no rain tomorrow,
 - C. There won't be some rain tomorrow.
 - D. There won't be raining tomorrow.
10. Their game of badminton is always on Thursday.
- A. They always play badminton on Thursday.
 - B. They have always played badminton on Thursday,
 - C. They always play their game on Thursday.
 - D. They play badminton always on Thursday.

Exercise 3: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. After he gets up, he enjoys having a bath.
- A. He likes having a bath after he gets up.
 - B. He likes having a bath before he gets up.
 - C. He likes having a bath while he gets up.

- D. He likes having a bath during he gets up.
2. She started school when she was six years old.
- A. At the year of six, she started school.
 - B. At the time of six, she started school,
 - C. At the old of six, she started school.
 - D. At the age of six, she started school.
3. He couldn't afford the flat.
- A. He didn't have enough money for the flat.
 - B. He had never afforded for the flat,
 - C. He couldn't stay in the flat.
 - D. He wouldn't buy the flat.
4. The villagers in my hometown lived in poverty.
- A. The villagers in my hometown lived with poor people.
 - B. The villagers in my hometown were poor.
 - C. The villagers in my hometown live in a poor village.
 - D. The villagers in my hometown were living in a polluted environment.
5. Peter took a class to learn how to use a computer.
- A. Peter used a computer for his class.
 - B. Peter joined a computing class in order to use a computer,
 - C. Peter took a computer to his class for students to learn.
 - D. Peter taught his students how to use a computer.
6. She likes learning Chemistry best.
- A. Chemistry is one of her best subjects.
 - B. She tries her best to study Chemistry,
 - C. She finds Chemistry easy to study.
 - D. Chemistry is her favourite subject.
7. This flat is too small for my family.
- A. This flat is not enough big for my family.
 - B. This flat is not big enough for my family,
 - C. This flat is not very big for my family.
 - D. This flat is not rather big for my family.
8. They didn't meet again until the war was over.
- A. Because the war was over, they couldn't meet again.
 - B. They met again when the war happened,
 - C. They met again after the war had stopped.
 - D. They couldn't meet again although the war finished.
9. Smoking in the theater is forbidden.
- A. It is forbidden from smoking in the theater.

- B. It is forbidden from people to smoke in the theater,
C. It is forbidden to smoke in the theater.
D. The theater is forbidden to smoke in.
10. I'm looking for a job as a secretary.
A. I'm looking for someone who works as a secretary.
B. I'm trying to find a job as a secretary.
C. A secretary is looking for a job as my job.
D. I was offered a job as a secretary.
- Exercise 4: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, c or D which has the meaning as the given one.**
1. "Never borrow money from friends," my father said.
A. My father said to me never borrow money from friends.
B. My father told me never to borrow money from friends,
C. My father advised me not borrow money from friends.
D. My father suggested me never borrowing money from friends.
 2. Mr. Richards lost his job because he was late every day.
A. If Mr. Richards were late every day, he would lose his job.
B. If Mr. Richards had been late every day, he would have lost his job.
C. If Mr. Richards weren't late every day, he wouldn't lose his job.
D. If Mr. Richards hadn't been late every day, he wouldn't have lost his job.
 3. It is difficult to start looking for a job at my age.
A. I'm young, so it is difficult to start looking for a job.
B. It is difficult for me to get employed at my age.
C. Getting employed at such ages is also difficult.
D. I don't think I can start looking for a job now.
 4. Although she is intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
A. In spite of intelligent, but she doesn't do well at school.
B. Despite being intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
C. Even though her intelligence, she doesn't do well at school.
D. In spite the fact that she is intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
 5. Life in Vietnam in 2050 will be very different.
A. Vietnam will be very different in 2050.
B. The year 2050 will see great changes in Vietnam.
C. The year 2050 will see great differences in life in Vietnam.
D. People of Vietnam will make great changes for the country.
 6. "Why don't you complain to the company, John?" said Peter.
A. Peter asked John why he doesn't complain to the company.
B. Peter advised John complaining to the company,
C. Peter suggested John to complain to the company.

- D.** Peter suggested that John should complain to the company.
7. He was driving very fast because he didn't know the road was icy.
A. If he knew the road was icy, he wouldn't drive so fast.
B. If he had known the road was icy, he wouldn't have been driving so fast,
C. He wasn't driving very fast if he would know the road was icy.
D. He hadn't been driving very fast if he would have known the road was icy.
8. He was annoyed because I walked across his field.
A. He objected to me because I walked across his field.
B. He objected to me to have walked across his field,
C. He objected to my walking across his field.
D. He objected for me to walk across his field.
9. The dictionary was so expensive that I didn't buy it.
A. The dictionary was enough expensive for me to buy.
B. The dictionary was too expensive for me to buy it.
C. It was an expensive dictionary so that meant I didn't buy.
D. It was such an expensive dictionary that I didn't buy it.
10. I'm sure it wasn't Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
A. It couldn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
B. It can't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London,
C. It mustn't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
D. It mightn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

Exercise 5: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, c or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. "Don't walk on the grass," the gardener said to us.
A. The gardener said to us don't walk on the grass.
B. The gardener told us not to walk on the grass.
C. The gardener suggested us not to walk on the grass.
D. The gardener advised us not walking on the grass.
2. Keeping calm is the secret of passing the driving test.
A. Keep calm or you will pass the driving test.
B. As long as you keep calm, you will pass the driving test,
C. Unless you keep calm you will pass the driving test.
D. Pass the driving test is without keeping calm.
3. If students have problems, you can ask questions to check their understanding.
A. I advise you to ask questions to check their understanding.
B. It's better to check their understanding by asking questions.
C. Questions can be asked to check their understanding if students have problems.
D. Asking questions to check their understanding if they have problems.
4. This passage focuses on helping students read faster.

- A. How to read this passage faster and faster.
 - B. Reading faster in the content of this passage.
 - C. The purpose of this passage is to help students read more quickly.
 - D. The purpose of this passage is to helping students to read more quickly.
5. The exam was much easier than he had expected.
- A. The exam was much easier that he finished it all.
 - B. He did not find the exam as difficult as he had thought,
 - C. It's possible for him to perform well on the exam.
 - D. fie had expected that the exam was easy.
6. To find a house in this city is difficult.
- A. It's impossible to buy a house in this city.
 - B. It's so difficult to find a house in this city,
 - C. It's very difficult to build a house in this city.
 - D. It costs a lot to rent a house in this city.
7. John and Mary have been married for five years.
- A. John and Mary's marriage life lasted five years.
 - B. It took John and Mary five years to prepare their wedding,
 - C. It is five years since John and Mary got married.
 - D. John and Mary got married after five years of being friends.
8. It is important to let disabled children develop in the way they want.
- A. To let children develop in the way they want is important.
 - B. To help disabled children develop in the way they want is important.
 - C. To help disabled children develop in the way they want is unimportant.
 - D. It is important that disabled children can't develop in the way they want.
9. Nam won the scholarship; he studied well.
- A. Nam, who studied well, won the scholarship.
 - B. Nam, that studied well, won the scholarship,
 - C. Nam who studied well won the scholarship.
 - D. Nam won the scholarship, so he studied well.
10. He is very lucky because his parents tried their best to help their son with his interest.
- A. He is fortunate because his parents are very famous.
 - B. He is unlucky because his parents didn't try their best to help him with his interest,
 - C. Because he is very interested in music, he is lucky.
 - D. He is very lucky because his parents tried their best to help him follow his interest.

Exercise 6: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, c or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. My sister gets high pay because she works well.
- A. My sister will work well if she gets good salary.
 - B. My sister gets high pay because of her good work,

- C. My sister works well because she is high.
 - D. My sister gets a well-paid job and she works well.
2. Nobody has invited her to the party.
- A. No one has been invited to the party.
 - B. She has invited nobody to the party,
 - C. Nobody has given a party to her.
 - D. She hasn't been invited to the party.
3. He started working as an engineer 5 years ago.
- A. He worked as an engineer 5 years ago.
 - B. He had worked as an engineer for 5 years,
 - C. He didn't work as an engineer any more.
 - D. He has worked as an engineer for 5 years.
4. They have built a new bridge across the river.
- A. The new bridge across the river have been built.
 - B. The new bridge has built across the river.
 - C. A bridge has been built new across the river.
 - D. A new bridge has been built across the river.
5. I will get home at about seven and I'll give you a ring then.
- A. I will give you a ring when I get home at about seven.
 - B. I will give you a ring unless I get home at about seven,
 - C. I will give you a ring then I get home at about seven.
 - D. I will give you a ring when I will get home at about seven.
6. David used to smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
- A. David often smokes 20 cigarettes a day.
 - B. David didn't use to smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
 - C. David often smoked 20 cigarettes a day.
 - D. David is used to smoking 20 cigarettes a day.
7. Nobody has finished the work.
- A. The work has been finished by everybody.
 - B. The work haven't been finished,
 - C. The work has been finished.
 - D. The work hasn't been finished.
8. My brother prefers typing to writing by hand.
- A. My brother would rather type than write by hand.
 - B. My brother doesn't like typing at all.
 - C. My brother likes typing than writing by hand.
 - D. My brother likes tying better writing by hand.
9. Getting to know a person is always time-consuming.

- A. Knowing a person so long is a waste of time.
 - B. People spend time on knowing each other,
 - C. It takes so long to get to know a person.
 - D. It is time to get to know a person.
10. I haven't seen her since we left school.
- A. It's ages since I last left school.
 - B. The last time I saw her was when we were at school,
 - C. I didn't see her when we left school.
 - D. The last time I saw her was when we left school.

Exercise 7: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. He decided to go to London on the last day.
 - A. He decided to go to London yesterday.
 - B. A decision was made to go to London by him the day before last,
 - C. He made a decision to go to London on the last day.
 - D. He made a decision to go to London at last.
2. I don't think Jane will win the tennis match.
 - A. In my opinion, Jane will not likely to win the tennis match.
 - B. I will never think Jane will win the tennis match,
 - C. The fact is that Jane won't win the tennis match.
 - D. Jane will win the tennis match, I don't think that.
3. All of the students but Peter went to the meeting.
 - A. Peter went to the meeting, and so did all of the students.
 - B. Except for Peter, all of the students went to the meeting.
 - C. All of the students, especially Peter went to the meeting.
 - D. All of the students including Peter went to the meeting.
4. There is not a single corner of Hue that my friend hasn't visited.
 - A. My friend has visited only a single part of Hue.
 - B. My friend has visited every part of Hue already,
 - C. My friend has visited most parts of Hue.
 - D. My friend hasn't visited any parts of Hue.
5. We take great pride in offering the best service in town.
 - A. Our service is the best. That's why people can see our pride.
 - B. We are very proud of offering the best service in town.
 - C. The best service in town is offered to people with great pride.
 - D. No one takes great pride in offering the best service in town, but we do.
6. She said, "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday."
 - A. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy that day as it had been the day before.
 - B. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it had been yesterday,

- C. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it was the day before.
D. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it was yesterday.
7. "I will pay him if I can", she said.
A. She said that she would pay him if she could.
B. She said that I would pay him if I could,
C. She told that I would pay him if she could.
D. She said that she would have paid him if she could have.
8. "I can cook as well as my mother", Hoa said.
A. Hoa said she could cook as well as my mother.
B. Hoa said she can cook as well as my mother,
C. Hoa says she could cook as well as her mother.
D. Hoa said she could cook as well as her mother.
9. He found it extremely difficult to learn this subject.
A. The subject was so easy that he could learn it well.
B. It was extremely difficult for him to learn this subject,
C. He had difficulty finding the subject.
D. He did not find it difficult to learn this subject.

10. The bank was open until nine o'clock and the department store until ten.
A. The bank opened at nine and the department store at ten.
B. The bank closed at nine and the department store at ten.
C. The bank opened at nine, and the department store closed at ten.
D. The bank closed at nine, and the department store opened at ten.

Exercise 8: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Susan hasn't driven a car before.
A. It is the first time Susan goes B, Car.
B. It is the first time Susan has driven a car.
C. It is the first time Susan goes in a car.
D. It is the first time Susan is driving a car.
2. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell it to you.
A. If I knew the answer, I wouldn't tell it to you.
B. If I knew the answer, I would tell it to you.
C. If I knew the answer, I will tell it to you.
D. If I had known the answer, I would tell it to you.
3. It appears that you make no mistakes in the test.
A. You seem to make no mistakes in the test.
B. No mistakes appear in your test.
C. It doesn't matter you make mistakes in the test.
D. Your appearance makes no mistakes to me.

4. Nam said, "There is a nice restaurant here."
- A. Nam said there is a nice restaurant here.
 - B. Nam told there was a nice restaurant here,
 - C. Nam said there was a nice restaurant there.
 - D. Nam told there is a nice restaurant there.
5. He has had the TV set repaired before the football season starts.
- A. He has arranged the TV set for repairs before the football season starts.
 - B. He has arranged for the TV set to be repaired before the football season starts,
 - C. He has repaired the TV set before the football season starts.
 - D. He has replaced the TV set before the football season starts.
6. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.
- A. If you don't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
 - B. If you mustn't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
 - C. If you keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
 - D. If you don't keep silent, you would wake the baby up.
7. He said, "I bought these books last week."
- A. He said he bought these books last week.
 - B. He told he bought these books the week before,
 - C. He said he had bought those books the week before.
 - D. He told he had bought these books last week.
8. I didn't have an umbrella with me, so I got wet.
- A. If I hadn't had an umbrella with me, I would have got wet.
 - B. If I didn't have an umbrella with me, I would get wet.
 - C. If I had an umbrella with me, I wouldn't get wet.
 - D. If I had had an umbrella with me, I would not have got wet.
9. Ann started learning French at the age of six.
- A. Ann studied French for six years.
 - B. Ann started learning French in a class for children over six years old.
 - C. Ann started learning French six years ago.
 - D. Ann started learning French when she was six years old.
10. If you don't rest, you really will be ill.
- A. You really won't be ill unless you don't rest.
 - B. You really won't be ill if you don't rest,
 - C. If you rest, you really will be ill.
 - D. Unless you rest, you really will be ill.

Exercise 9: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, c or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. David felt sick from eating too many green apples.
- A. David felt sick because he has eaten a lot of green apples.

- B. David felt sick because he has eaten so many green apples.
C. David felt sick because there were too many green apples he ate.
D. David felt sick because he had eaten too many green apples.
2. When did you last ride a bike?
A. What time is it since you ride a bike?
B. How long is it since you last rode a bike?
C. How much time did you ride a bike?
D. How often did you ride a bike?
3. Why don't we go out for a drink?
A. I suggest us going out for a drink. B. How about to go out for a drink?
C. We are going out for a drink. D. Let's go out for a drink.
4. The day was so cold that we stayed indoors.
A. It was such cold a day that we stayed indoors.
B. It was such a cold day that we stayed indoors,
C. It was a so cold day that we stayed indoors.
D. It was a cold day so that we stayed indoors.
5. They usually walk in the park after dinner.
A. They used to walk in the park after dinner.
B. They are used to walking in the park after dinner,
C. They are used to walk in the park after dinner.
D. They used to walking in the park after dinner.
6. Although he has a lot of money, he feels unhappy.
A. Despite his money, he feels unhappy.
B. He feels unhappy whether he has a lot of money or not.
C. He has a lot of unhappiness because of his money.
D. He has a lot of money, so he feels unhappy.
7. In the middle of our lunch, there was a knock at the door.
A. When we were having lunch, there was a knock at the door.
B. Our lunch were in the middle there was a knock at the door.
C. When we had just finished lunch, there was a knock at the door.
D. When they knock at the door, we were having lunch.
8. I haven't been to the cinema for several months.
A. The last time I went to the cinema several months ago.
B. It is several months since I last went to the cinema.
C. It has been several months after I last went to the cinema.
D. I didn't go to the cinema until several months ago.
9. I am sorry that I didn't learn English when I was younger.
A. I regret not to have learned English when I was younger.

- B. I regret not to be learned English when I was younger,
 - C. I regretted not to learn English when I was younger.
 - D. I wish that I had learned English when I was younger.
10. That Hoa is lazy makes her parents sad.
- A. That Hoa makes her parents sad is terrible.
 - B. Hoa is lazy, which makes her parents sad.
 - C. Hoa who is lazy makes her parents sad.
 - D. Hoa is lazy which makes her parents sad.

Exercise 10: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Someone has robbed the bank near our house.
 - A. The bank have been robbed near our house.
 - B. The bank near our house has been robbed,
 - C. The bank near our house had been robbed.
 - D. The bank near our house has robbed.
2. The picnic was cancelled because it rained.
 - A. The picnic was cancelled due to the rain.
 - B. We planned to go on a picnic because we didn't know it would rain,
 - C. Despite the rain, we went on a picnic as planned.
 - D. We postponed the picnic whether it rained or not.
3. The architect designed these new flats; he has moved to Hue.
 - A. The architect designed these new flats moved to Hue.
 - B. The architect designed these new flats has moved to Hue.
 - C. The architect who designed these new flats has moved to Hue.
 - D. The architect, that designed these new flats, has moved to Hue.
4. They are going to hold next year's conference in Hanoi.
 - A. Next year's conference is going to hold in Hanoi.
 - B. Next year's conference is going to be held in Hanoi,
 - C. Hanoi is going to hold next year's conference.
 - D. Hanoi is going to be held next year's conference.
5. He used to write home once a week.
 - A. He was forced to write home once a week.
 - B. He enjoys writing home once a week,
 - C. He no longer writes home once a week.
 - D. He never fails to write home once a week.
6. I'm grateful that you helped my brother do that work.
 - A. Thank you for helping my brother do that work.
 - B. Thank you about helping my brother do that work,
 - C. Thank you because you helped me do that work.

- D. Thank you that you helped my brother do that work.
7. This is the first time I have gone out for a picnic.
- A. I have ever gone out for a picnic.
 - B. I have never gone out for a picnic before,
 - C. I had never gone out for a picnic before.
 - D. All are correct.
8. What about going to the beach this weekend?
- A. Why didn't we go to the beach this weekend?
 - B. Ought we go to the beach this weekend?
 - C. How about going to the beach this weekend?
 - D. All are correct.
9. I won't swim in the sea because it is too cold.
- A. The sea isn't enough warm for us to swim in.
 - B. The sea is not so warm that I can swim in.
 - C. The sea is not warm for me to swim in.
 - D. The sea is not warm enough for me to swim in.
10. He said, "They will take you to the hotel."
- A. He said that they would take me to the hotel.
 - B. He said that they will take you to the hotel,
 - C. He said that he will take you to the hotel.
 - D. He said that he would take me to the hotel.

Exercise 1. (Verb tenses) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I didn't see her again for five years.

Five years _____.

2. He started investigating the case a week ago.

He has been _____.

3. He hasn't been back to his hometown for over twenty years now.

It is _____.

4. Tom learned to drive when he was nineteen.

Tom has _____.

5. How long have they get engaged?

When _____?

6. Six years ago we started writing to each other.

We have _____.

7. The last time it rained was a fortnight ago.

It has _____.

8. The last time she had a swim was five years ago.

She hasn't _____.

9. It is three weeks since I last saw Julie.

I haven't _____.

10. How long have Catherine and Henry been engaged?

When _____.

11. She started working as a secretary five years ago.

She has _____.

12. John and Mary moved to Edinburgh twenty years ago.

It is _____.

13. It was two years ago at the end of this week that I started working here.

At the end _____.

14. I went to the zoo last week and that is where I saw a real tiger for the first time.

Before I _____.

15. Mary knew what the answer was after reading the book.

By the time _____.

16. He left school, and then joined the army.

After _____.

17. I haven't been able to see them for over a year.

It is _____.

18. It is years since we decorated this room.

We haven't _____.

19. How long is it since they bought the house?

When _____.

20. Jim will be eighteen years old next week.

It is Jim's _____.

Exercise 2. (Gerunds or infinitives) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. The film star wore dark glasses so that no one would recognize him.

The film star avoided _____.

2. The boss said to me, "You may leave early."

The boss permitted _____.

3. My best friend said, "I'll help you with your homework today."

My best friend offered _____.

4. I felt that it had been a mistake to write the letter.

I regretted ever _____.

5. He was very sorry that he didn't see Ann on her trip to London.

He greatly regretted not _____.

6. "If I were you, I wouldn't trust Peter," she told John.
She advised John_____.
7. It's pointless to have that old typewriter repaired.
That old typewriter is not_____.
8. I was going to leave, but because of what she said, I didn't.
She persuaded_____.
9. She admitted that she had taken the necklace.
She admitted to_____.
10. "Why don't we share the cost?" said my friend.
My friend suggested_____.
11. He was sorry he hadn't said goodbye to her at the airport.
He regretted not_____.
12. The hijacker said to the pilot, "You must land the plane immediately."
The hijacker forced the pilot_____.
13. The teacher always says to the students, "You are supposed to come to class on time."
The teacher expects_____.
14. The teacher said to the students, "Try harder and get good marks next time."
The teacher encouraged_____.
15. It is not a good idea to stand under a tree when it is raining.
It is better to avoid_____.
16. Could you stop making so much noise, please?
Would you mind_____?
17. The driver of the car said that it was true that he was speeding when the accident happened.
The driver of the car admitted_____.
18. Are you sorry that you didn't accept his offer?
Do you regret_____.
19. Don't complain any more and do something.
Why don't you put off_____.
20. "If I were you, I would give up that relationship," said she.
She advised me_____.

Exercise 3. (Passive voice) Finish each of the following sentences in such that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. The zoo keepers feed the lions at 3 pm every day.
The lions_____.
2. They haven't cleaned the street this week.
The street_____.

The street _____.

3. The architect has drawn plans for an extension to the house.

Plans _____.

4. They make these artificial flowers of glossy paper.

These artificial _____.

5. The leak was repaired by the plumber this morning.

The plumber _____.

6. They will have to make new projects for extra places in schools.

New projects _____.

7. We can avoid serious injuries by wearing seat-belts in cars.

Serious injuries _____.

8. People believe that the Chinese invented paper in 105 A.D.

Paper _____.

9. They believe that the robbers got into the bank through the roof.

The robbers are _____.

10. People think that acid rain is now a familiar problem in the industrialized countries in Europe.

Acid rain is _____.

11. Thousands of tourists visit the spectacular ruins of Mayan civilization every year.

The spectacular ruins _____.

12. Experts say that the fall in the birth rate between 1990 and 1995 caused the drop in the number of school leavers.

The drop in the number of school leavers _____.

13. People think that the climate is changing.

The climate _____.

14. It's thought that the accident was caused by human error.

The accident is _____.

15. Don't touch this switch.

This switch _____.

16. A fire destroyed most of the old city of London in the 1600s.

The destruction of the old city of London in the 1600s _____.

17. We have a six o'clock deadline for this work.

This work must _____.

18. I didn't let him know what I was thinking.

He was not _____.

19. The number of people killed in industrial accidents is now fifteen.

Already this year _____.

20. No one has challenged his authority before.

- This is the first time _____.
21. The usher showed us to our seats.
We _____.
22. The robbers made the bank manager hand over all the money.
The bank manager _____.
23. What mainly distinguishes man from other animals is the power of speech.
Man _____.
24. Is it really necessary for me to type the application?
Does the application _____?
25. The authorities will prosecute anyone they find trespassing on this land.
Anyone found _____.
26. Oil was slowly covering the edge of the shore.
The edge of the shore _____.
27. Someone has suggested abolishing income tax.
It has _____.
28. We may not be able to give the party.
The party may have _____.
29. The police let him leave after they had questioned him.
He was _____.
30. He has numerous operations.
He has been _____.
31. They have recently improved the bus service in this town.
Some improvements _____.
32. They will not announce the decision formally.
No formal _____.
33. We have no seats left for the concert on December 14th.
All the seats for the concert on December 14th _____.
34. It is said that there is plenty of oil off our own coast.
There is _____.
35. Perhaps no one will ever know what happened that fateful night.
What happened that fateful night _____.
36. The secretary didn't reply to me for ten days.
No reply from the secretary _____.
37. We may not be able to give the concert.
The concert _____.
38. My parents let me go abroad alone for the first time last year.
I was _____.
39. It is thought that the prisoner was recaptured while drinking in a pub.

The prisoner_____.

40. The deadline for the receipt of completed application forms is 3 pm on Friday, 18th December.

Completed application forms must_____.

41. Sally's parents gave her a new iPad for her birthday.

Sally_____.

42. Mr. Hill teaches his students to understand different English accents.

Mr. Hill's students_____.

43. Did they build the garage at the same time as the house?

Was the garage_____?

44. For further information, please send a self-addressed envelope to the above address.

Further information_____.

45. The manager was very astounded when they told him about the robbery.

On_____.

46. Is it essential to meet your aunt at the station?

Does your aunt really need_____?

47. It is essential that Professor Van Helsing will be met at the airport.

Professor Van Helsing_____.

48. Customs officials are stopping more travellers than usual this week.

An increased number of travellers_____.

49. They couldn't find the manager anywhere.

The manager was_____.

50. The poor should not be despised.

Do_____.

Exercise 4. (Causative form, relative clauses) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. The decorators have finished our first floor.

We have_____.

2. The gas explosion blew out all the shop windows.

All the shops_____.

3. Mr. Dryden mended the washing machine for me.

I had_____.

4. If the work is finished by lunchtime, you can go home.

Get_____.

5. They serviced her car yesterday.

She had_____.

6. Somebody stole his watch yesterday.

He_____.

7. Somebody repaired her car yesterday.

She _____.

8. My suit needs to be cleaned before the interview.

I must _____.

9. My sister helps me wash my clothes when I am busy.

When I am busy, I often get _____.

10. The manager usually asks his personal assistant to sort out his documents.

The manager usually has _____.

11. Everyone was surprised that the singer had very little money when he died.

The singer had _____.

12. I have forgotten that poet's name, but he is very well-known.

That poet, _____.

13. I work in the factory which has more than one thousand employees.

There are _____.

14. I'm only interested in why he did it

The only thing _____.

15. The football team have won all their matches this season, and their manager is a famous Spanish footballer.

The football team, _____.

16. I spoke to Mr. and Mrs. Gibbs only last week just before they died in that terrible train accident.

Mr. and Mrs. Gibbs, _____.

17. Michael laughed when I told him the joke.

The joke _____.

18. I know this reporter's background well and he is absolutely honest.

This reporter, _____.

19. Because there was late frost, much of the fruit crop was spoiled.

A frost which _____.

20. A man I don't know told me about that.

I was _____.

Exercise 5. (Comparison) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I don't have any hats as cheap as this one.

This hat is _____.

2. Home computers used to be much more expensive.

Home computers aren't _____.

3. There isn't anywhere as nice as your own country, is there?

Nowhere is _____?

4. People no longer smoke so many cigarettes as they used to.

The smoking of cigarettes _____.

5. She knows a lot more about it than I do.

I don't know _____.

6. Everyone heard about the accident before I did.

I was the _____.

7. Couldn't you find a better hotel?

Is this _____?

8. That is the best meal I have ever eaten.

I have never _____.

9. He has never behaved so violently before.

He is behaving _____.

10. He is the man most likely to win the race.

No one stands a _____.

11. I can't describe people as well as you can.

You are _____.

12. More people are infected with HIV this year than they were 5 years ago.

Not as many people _____.

13. Peter is a better mechanic than Jim.

Jim is not _____.

14. 6,000 pounds is a better offer than you have ever had before.

You have never had _____.

15. I thought that Martin's last novel was more interesting.

Martin's latest novel _____.

16. The President is the statesman I admire most of all.

There is no statesman _____.

17. My mother is the most warm-hearted person I have ever known.

I have _____.

18. The Pacific Ocean is on average deeper than the Atlantic.

The average _____.

19. It was more an argument than a discussion.

It was not so much _____.

20. In my opinion, he is the best pianist in the whole orchestra.

In my opinion, there is _____.

21. What I earn in a month he earns in a week.

He earns _____.

22. The north-west of Britain has more rain each year than the south-east.

The annual _____.

23. Skyscrapers in the USA are on average higher than anywhere else in the world.

The average _____.

24. There weren't nearly as many people there as I had expected.

There were far_____.

25. You are the best guitarist in the world.

No one_____.

26. If you run a lot, you will become healthy.

The more_____.

27. My boss works better when he's pressed for work.

The less_____.

28. As I get older, I want to travel less.

The older_____.

29. His fondness for the game increase with his proficiency.

The more_____.

30. Success in the academic field depends on your ability to get qualifications.

The more_____.

Exercise 6. (Conditionals, I wish, Past Subjunctive) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. The only reason Jimmy often gets bad marks is because he is lazy.

If Jimmy_____.

2. We got lost because we didn't have a map.

If we_____.

3. We didn't go on holiday because we did not have enough money.

If we_____.

4. She didn't hurry, so she missed the train.

If she_____.

5. I bought beef because I didn't know she couldn't eat it.

If I_____.

6. Providing that you leave a forwarding address, we will be able to contact you.

Unless_____.

7. Unless you save some money, you will never be able to buy a car.

Provided that_____.

8. The boys don't have any matches, so they can't light the fire.

If the boys_____.

9. The new car was so expensive that he didn't buy it.

If_____.

10. In the event of your failing your driving test, would you take it again?

Supposing that_____.

11. The captain said, "If that tanker breaks up, there will be an oil slick all along the coast."

The captain told us that if_____.

12. If you don't water these flowers, they will die soon.

Unless _____.

13. It was his incompetence that led to their failure.

If _____.

14. Given fair warning, I could have avoided that date.

If you had _____.

15. We didn't finish the work because of his carelessness.

If he _____.

16. My husband didn't leave the car keys, so I couldn't pick him up at the station.

If my husband _____.

17. Working for this travel agency will not be possible without a good command of English.

Unless _____.

18. If you followed my advice, you would be successful.

Were _____.

19. The company will probably make a profit next year.

I wouldn't _____.

20. It was the weakness of the foundations that led to the collapse of the building.

If _____.

21. It was the goalkeeper that saved the match for us.

Had it _____.

22. It was his over-confidence that led to his defeat in the Wimbledon final.

If _____.

23. We will put out to sea if the weather is good.

Provided that _____.

24. Thanks to Mary's support I was able to finish the project.

Had it _____.

25. Thanks to his aunt's legacy of \$10,000 he was able to buy the house he wanted.

Had his _____.

26. The only thing that makes this job worthwhile is the money.

Were it _____.

27. It's my opinion that you should take more exercise.

If I _____.

28. Without his wife's constant support, he would never have achieved his ambition,

If he _____.

29. I found it a very readable book, which is why I was able to get through it so quickly.

If it _____.

30. Follow this instruction carefully and you won't have any problems.

As long as _____.

31. He lives for the others and he finds his life meaningful.
Unless _____.
32. I didn't realize he was the author and that's why I was so rude about his new book.
Had I _____.
33. If she hadn't insisted on kissing everyone goodbye, she would have caught the train.
If it hadn't _____.
34. if his solicitor hadn't advised him, he would have made a serious mistake.
Had it _____.
35. Mr. Watson managed to repair the garage roof only because his neighbour helped him.
Without _____.
36. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.
But for _____.
37. Thanks to his great speed, John won the gold medal.
But for _____.
38. Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.
As long as _____.
39. He didn't study his lessons carefully, so he gets bad marks now.
If he _____.
40. There was no point trying to phone as he never answers the phone after midnight.
Even if I _____.
41. Brenda is a star because a famous director saw her act in a school play.
Unless _____.
42. It's such a pity your sister can't come as well.
If only _____.
43. I'm sorry that I didn't finish my homework last night.
I wish _____.
44. They regret ever doing business with him.
They wish _____.
45. It's a pity I didn't take my doctor's advice.
I wish _____.
46. Mary says she'd like to have been put in a higher class.
Mary wishes _____.
47. My English is not fluent enough to go for the interview.
If only _____.
48. It is a pity that you didn't tell us about your mother's problem.
I wish _____.
49. Maria didn't apply for the job in that international company, and regrets it now.
Maria wishes _____.

- 50.** Mrs. Taylor does not like living in such a small house.

Mrs. Taylor wishes_____.

Exercise 7. (Reported speech) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- 1.** "Why didn't you go to the club last night?" the girl said to Jim.

The girl asked_____.

- 2.** "If I were you, I would not come here today," she said to me.

She said that if_____.

- 3.** "How many survivors are there?" asked the journalist.

The journalist wanted to know_____.

- 4.** The doctor told him, "Try to get out in the sun as often as possible if you don't want to get ill again."

The doctor advised him_____.

- 5.** "What time does the manager come back?" the customer asked.

The customer wanted_____.

- 6.** "Over \$40 million has been received over the last ten days."

It was reported that_____.

- 7.** "You stole the jewels" the inspector said to him.

The inspector accused_____.

- 8.** "Will I ever find a job?" Tim said to himself.

Tim wondered_____.

- 9.** A police patrol said, "Don't park your car on the double yellow line!"

A police patrol warned_____.

- 10.** "Can I borrow your typewriter, Janet?" asked Peter.

Peter asked if_____.

- 11.** "If Brian doesn't train harder, I won't select him for the team" said the manager.

The manager threatened_____.

- 12.** I asked the hotel porter to wake me at 7 o'clock the following morning.

"Please_____.

- 13.** "Don't forget to buy some bread on your way home from work, Vivian," said Mark.

Mark reminded_____.

- 14.** "I don't think John will come," said Bill.

Bill doubted_____.

- 15.** Barbara said. "I saw them at my parents' house last year."

Barbara said that_____.

- 16.** Tony said, "I have never been to London. I think I shall go there next year."

Tony said that_____.

- 17.** "I can't explain this rule to you," said my classmate to me.
My classmate told me _____.
- 18.** "I will let you know the answer by the end of this week," Tom said to Janet.
Tom promised _____.
- 19.** My friend told me, "If I were you, I wouldn't smoke so much."
My friend advised _____.
- 20.** "I wasn't in the shop when the robbery happened," the suspect exclaimed.
The suspect denied _____.

Exercise 8. (Deduction, perfect modals) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- 1.** I wasn't in the office yesterday, so you must have spoken to my assistant.
I wasn't in the office yesterday, so it _____.
- 2.** I'm sure it wasn't Mrs. Elton you saw because she's in Bristol.
It can't _____.
- 3.** I am certain he finished all his exercises and went shopping.
He must _____.
- 4.** It is impossible that Andy is having a bath.
Andy can't _____.
- 5.** I am sure they are hungry now.
They must _____.
- 6.** It is impossible that John is at school right now.
John can't _____.
- 7.** Nam was not at home either. Perhaps he went out with his girlfriend.
Nam might _____.
- 8.** I am sure that Tina didn't steal the money.
Tina couldn't _____.
- 9.** Certainly Kate wrote the article.
The article must _____.
- 10.** I am sure Helen is playing the guitar now.
Helen must _____.
- 11.** In the event, the extra insurance we took out wasn't necessary.
In the event, we _____.
- 12.** It was careless of you to leave the window open last night.
You shouldn't _____.
- 13.** It was a mistake of mine to park my car outside the police station.
I shouldn't _____.
- 14.** I gave Ted the message, but he already knew about it.
I needn't _____.
- 15.** Tom wished he had studied harder for his graduation exams.

Tom should_____.

- 16.** It was wrong of you not to call the fire brigade at once.

You should_____.

- 17.** Francis didn't try as hard as he should have to find his brother.

Francis ought_____.

- 18.** It was essential that Mike listen to your advice, but he didn't.

Mike should_____.

- 19.** James was not told the news a long time ago although it was necessary for him.

James should_____.

- 20.** The father gave the daughter too much money, but she did not spend much.

The father needn't_____.

Exercise 9. (Inversion of Subject and Verb) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

- 1.** Her success went beyond her expectation.

Never_____.

- 2.** Children learn a lot about how to behave in a situation like this.

Only in a situation like this_____.

- 3.** The only way to eliminate world terrorism is by united opposition.

Only by_____.

- 4.** They had to wait for twelve hours before the flight left.

Only after a_____.

- 5.** We only deliver goods after receiving the money.

Only after_____.

- 6.** You can drive a car only after you obtain a driving license.

Only after_____.

- 7.** A country can't be prosperous if it's not quite independent.

Only when_____.

- 8.** The realization that I had made a big mistake came later.

Only later_____.

- 9.** She doesn't understand how much suffering she has caused.

Little_____.

- 10.** It wasn't clear to us at the time how serious the problem was.

Little_____.

- 11.** She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.

Not a tear_____.

- 12.** John did not celebrate a party until he received the offer of promotion in writing.

Not until John_____.

- 13.** The men continued to feel unsafe until they crossed the border.

Not until_____.

14. I only recognized him when he came into the light.
Not until _____.
15. Diana sprained her ankle and broke her leg.
Not only _____.
16. Immediately after their arrival, things went wrong.
No sooner _____.
17. He got down to writing the letter as soon as he returned from his walk.
No sooner _____.
18. Tear gas was released as soon as the thieves touched the safe.
No sooner _____.
19. She just had time to put up her umbrella before the rain came down in torrents.
No sooner _____.
20. The soldiers leaped into the water as soon as the ship touched the shore.
No sooner _____.
21. The lights failed the moment they began work.
Hardly _____.
22. Just after solving one problem, I was faced with another.
Hardly _____.
23. I write to him almost every day.
Hardly _____.
24. They had such a fierce dog that nobody would visit them.
So _____.
25. He is so foolish that he can't remember his lessons.
So _____.
26. He never suspected that money had been stolen.
At no time _____.
27. The demand was so great that they had to reprint the book immediately.
So _____.
28. There was no precedent for the king's resignation.
Never before _____.
29. I am not to be disturbed under any circumstances.
Under _____.
30. The company presents a gold watch to each of its retiring employees.
Each _____.
31. The passengers don't realize how lucky they have been in this accident.
Little _____.
32. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.

- Only by_____.
33. Alice and Charles did not decide to move to a bigger house until after the birth of their second child.
Only when_____.
34. The two sides never looked likely to reach an agreement.
At no time_____.
35. The workers only called off the strike after a new pay offer.
Only after_____.
36. Everyone started complaining the moment the announcement was made.
No sooner_____.
37. Her success went beyond her expectation.
Never_____.
38. I didn't realize how ill he was until I visited him.
Not until_____.
39. It was pure chance that a policeman was passing when I was attacked.
Only_____.
40. The truth only came out on the publication of the general's personal diaries.
Only when_____.
- Exercise 10. (Phrasal Verbs) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.**
1. I was offered to work for IBM, but I rejected.
I turned_____.
 2. "There is no cooking oil left I'm afraid."
I'm afraid we have run_____.
 3. Paula came after everyone had gone home.
Paula turned_____.
 4. Derek happened to meet his former teacher on the way to the stadium yesterday.
Derek ran_____.
 5. Steve met some of his high school friends while he was waiting outside the shop.
Steve came_____.
 6. Mr. Roberts will return your call as soon as he comes.
Mr. Roberts will call you_____.
 7. Ann and her mother are alike.
Ann takes_____.
 8. We should not make an important decision until we have thought carefully about it.
We'd better think it_____.
 9. The company rejected Hung's offer.
The company turned_____.
 10. She has always had a good relationship with the children.

She has always got _____.

11. Our wedding had to be postponed until September.

We had to put _____.

12. I'm sorry I was rude to you yesterday.

I apologize _____.

13. "Without the rapid growth in population, there would be fewer food shortages," he said.

He blamed _____.

14. My protests were ignored.

Nobody _____.

15. I dislike it when people criticize me unfairly.

I object to _____.

16. You must congratulate her - she's passed the exams. She's succeeded.

You must _____.

Exercise 11 (-ever words) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. You can use it as long as you like, and it will not wear out.

No matter how _____.

2. Driving fast is dangerous whether you are an experienced driver or not.

However _____.

3. We'll always remember these days together at our meeting in the future.

Whenever we _____.

4. We must find him no matter where he is hiding.

Wherever _____.

5. No matter how hard I tried I couldn't open the door.

Try as hard _____.

6. You can take any of the routes, it will still take you about three hours to get there.

Whichever _____.

7. He can shout even louder but I still won't take any notice.

No matter how _____.

8. I couldn't understand him even though I listened very carefully.

No matter _____.

9. My parents find fault with everything I do.

No matter _____.

10. She never seems to succeed even though she works hard.

However _____.

11. I'll find that man, no matter how long it takes.

However _____.

12. He would never agree to sell his business, even if he received a very tempting offer.

However_____.

13. No matter what your requirement is, the Volvo meets it admirably.

Whatever_____.

14. I won't sell the painting, no matter how much you offer me.

Whatever_____.

15. No matter how hard Fred tried to start the car, he didn't succeed.

However_____.

Exercise 12. (Time clauses) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. James spoke to his lawyer before signing the contract.

James didn't_____.

2. Only after all the guests had gone home could we relax.

It wasn't_____.

3. It's only when you'll be ill that you start to appreciate good health.

It isn't_____.

4. He did not pass his driving test until he was nearly 30.

It wasn't_____.

5. You can leave only when I tell you.

Until_____.

6. During dinner, the phone rang.

While I_____.

7. You'll learn the basic rules, and then you'll find it easy to play.

Once you_____.

8. In the absence of the cat, the mice will play.

When the cat_____.

9. My decision to get up and dance coincided with the band's decision to stop playing.

The moment

I_____.

10. Soon after they sold their house, they were offered a better price for it.

They had no_____.

Exercise 13. (Adverbial clauses of result/purpose, noun clauses) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. The film was so interesting that I couldn't go to bed.

It was such_____.

2. The bridge was so low that the bus couldn't go under it.

It was_____.

3. The tea was so bad that we couldn't drink it.

- It was_____.
4. It was such rotten meat that it had to be thrown away.
The meat was_____.
5. The demand for tickets was so great that people queued day and night.
It was such_____.
6. Their dog was so fierce that nobody would visit them.
They had_____.
7. The protest has been so vociferous that the committee has had to reconsider.
There has been_____.
8. She wore a hearing-aid even though she could hear the phone ring perfectly well.
She wasn't so_____.
9. The door was so heavy that the child couldn't push it open.
The door was too_____.
10. It was such a delicious hamburger that I ate twice.
The hamburger_____.
11. The gate is closed to stop the children running into the road.
The gate is closed so that_____.
12. He will come because he wants to be sure of meeting you.
He will come so as_____.
13. We left quietly so that we wouldn't disturb the children.
So as_____.
14. They left fifteen minutes earlier than necessary because they didn't want to be late.
In order_____.
15. We got up early because we didn't want to miss the first bus.
So as_____.
16. The fate of the two climbers is unknown.
It's a
mystery_____.
17. I am amazed by the mistakes he makes.
What_____.
18. It was his lack of confidence that surprised me.
What I_____.
19. The headmaster said some very reassuring things.
What the headmaster_____.
20. Mosquitoes cause malaria and this is well-known.
That mosquitoes_____.
21. Such a ridiculous proposal isn't worth serious consideration.
There is no
point_____.

22. The way people deface walls really makes me angry.
What _____.
23. Ann's mother gave her a gold watch.
What Ann's mother _____.
24. It took us three hours to paint the door.
We spent _____.
25. We spent half an hour walking from our house to the river.
It _____.

Exercise 14. (Phrases) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. No sooner had he been appointed to the post than the new editor fell ill.
Immediately after his _____.
2. As soon as the ship arrived at the airport, the victims were taken to hospital.
On _____.
3. Its lack of irregular verbs makes Esperanto a unique language.
Unlike _____.
4. When the goods arrive at the shop, they are inspected carefully.
On _____.
5. Her husband died. When she heard the news she fainted.
On hearing _____.
6. When the Prime Minister was asked about the strike, he declined to comment.
On _____.
7. After the beginning of the opera, late-comers had to wait before taking their seats.
Once the opera _____.
8. Martin has taken the time to help me and I wanted to thank him for that.
I wanted _____.
9. He became ill because he not only worked too hard but ate too little.
What with _____.
10. As she hadn't been there before, America was a whole new experience for her.
Not having _____.
11. These workmen hadn't been told about the new regulations of the company and complained about it.
These workmen complained about _____.
12. Although the dog appeared harmless, it was, in fact, quite dangerous.
Contrary to _____.
13. You think that fat people are always jolly, but you are wrong.
Contrary to _____.
14. Their chances of success are small.
It is not _____.

15. "Look, I know you were very rude to me, but I don't really mind because I know you were in a bit of state," Jennifer said.

Jennifer forgave me for _____.

Exercise 15. (Clauses/ phrases of concession) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. Linda felt very depressed but she still went to the party.

Although Linda _____.

2. Although both his legs were broken in the crash, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.

Despite _____.

3. Although Judy was severely disabled, she took part in many sports.

Despite _____.

4. Despite having a lot of money, he wasn't happy.

Even though _____.

5. Although he is industrious, he hasn't succeeded.

Industrious _____.

6. In spite of the forecast, it stayed fine.

Although rain _____.

7. Tony is very charming, but I wouldn't trust him.

Charming as _____.

8. Although he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.

In spite _____.

9. The robbery took place in broad daylight, but there seems to have been no eye witnesses.

Although _____.

10. Professor Thompson finished his lecture although he was constantly interrupted.

Despite _____.

11. Although I warned them not to climb that tree, they did.

In spite _____.

12. In spite of his age, he often plays badminton every morning.

Although _____.

13. Despite having few passengers, the coach to Dover will still leave as planned.

Even though _____.

14. However friendly he seems, he is not to be trusted.

Friendly as _____.

15. However strong he is, he still can't lift the box.

Strong _____.

16. Tired as he was, he agreed to help me with my homework.

Although _____.

17. We were very impressed by the new cinema, but found it rather expensive.

Impressed_____.

18. Albrecht Durer created a fairly good picture of a rhinoceros without even having seen one.

Despite_____.

19. Much as George loved travelling in Asia, he decided not to go to Indonesia because of his fears of terrorism.

Even though_____.

20. Despite the weatherman's forecast of rain for tomorrow, they will go camping.

Even though_____.

Exercise 16. (Structures) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I have never read such a romantic story.

This is_____.

2. I am not surprised to hear that Harry had failed his driving test.

It came as_____.

3. It is not easy to stop him from drinking every day.

To_____.

4. The house seems to have been unoccupied for several months.

It looked as if_____.

5. I think it may rain.

It look as if_____.

6. The fact that every child has the same educational opportunities is essential.

It is essential that_____.

7. Tom was the first person to recognize her extraordinary musical gift.

It was Tom_____.

8. Next year's turnover and profits can't be forecast.

It's impossible_____.

9. Can I speak to him about the problem?

Would it_____.

10. I'm always nervous when I traveled by air.

Travelling by air_____.

11. The sea was so rough that the ferry couldn't sail.

The rough sea_____.

12. Happiness is elusive to rich or poor alike.

Whether you_____.

13. I don't really want to have lunch yet.

I'd rather _____.

14. Would you mind not smoking in here?

I'd rather that you _____.

15. Please don't give me an injection.

I'd rather you _____.

16. I'd prefer you to deliver the sofa on Friday.

I would rather you _____.

17. I think you should buy a new pair of shoes and get rid of those trainers.

It's high time _____.

18. You really should be able to dress yourself by now!

It's high _____.

19. Your hair needs cutting.

It's time you _____.

20. The doctor advised me to rest for a few days after the operation.

The doctor suggested I _____.

21. You'd better go to the doctor if you've got a pain in your back, Anna" Henry said.

Henry suggested to Anne that _____.

22. "Why don't you put a better lock on the door, Barbara?" said John.

John suggested _____.

23. "Let's invite Dustin and Sophie to a barbecue this weekend," said John.

John suggested _____.

24. It is your duty to obey him.

You are _____.

25. I'd do anything to be able to travel to the States.

Nothing _____.

Exercise 17. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I'm certainly not going to give you any more money.

I have no _____.

2. I never intended to go to the meeting.

I never had _____.

3. The rail workers do not intend to call off their strike.

The rail workers have no _____.

4. Philip's inability to make decisions dates from his accident.

Ever since _____.

5. The fisherman's life was one of great poverty.

Throughout _____.

6. He was suspended for two matches for swearing at the referee.

Swearing at the referee earned _____.

7. The students' riotous behaviour should have been severely punished.

The students deserved _____.

8. She is proud of being such a good pianist.

She prides _____.

9. I didn't know why people are attracted to spending all day on the beach.

I can't see the _____.

10. The patient recovered more rapidly than expected.

The patient made _____.

11. He refused to help, which surprised us.

His _____.

12. I was greatly relieved to hear that her condition was not serious.

It was with _____.

13. Nobody expected her to lose, but she did.

Against _____.

14. He wanted to have his own way. He insisted, and this led to difficulties.

His _____.

15. This is an important scheme and we want him to approve.

We _____.

want _____.

16. It's either this or that. You must choose.

It's a _____.

17. There was a whole series of crimes. He confessed and this amazed everybody.

His _____.

18. The engine failed because a part had been badly fitted.

The engine failure was due _____.

19. We've been thinking the matter over and have finally come to a decision.

We've given _____.

20. He speaks more persuasively than his brother.

He is a _____.

Exercise 18. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. You needn't make an appointment to see the personnel manager.

There is _____.

2. She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know.

She is a _____.

3. Our hotel booking hasn't been confirmed.

- We haven't received _____.
4. Attendance at the exhibition has been down this year.
The exhibition has not _____.
5. Do you agree with Jill's views on male-female relations?
Are you _____?
6. The dress was so tempting that I bought it.
I couldn't resist the _____.
7. She doesn't pass the exams. She fails and this depresses her.
Her _____.
8. We must think about ways of improving the transport system.
Thoughts must _____.
9. We regret to inform you that your application has not been successful.
Much to _____.
10. Many people were severely critical of the proposals for the new motorway.
There was _____.
11. While I strongly disapprove of your behaviour, I will help you this time.
Despite my _____.
12. There aren't many other books which explain this problem so well.
In few other books _____.
13. We had to postpone the meeting because of bad weather.
Bad weather _____.
14. According to his arrangement, a pension will be provided for everyone over sixty.
He has arranged _____.
15. As no one has disapproved of the scheme, I suggest we go ahead.
As no one has expressed _____.
16. Everyone must admit that prevention is better cure.
There is no _____.
17. I don't want to go to that party tonight.
I don't feel _____.
18. A house in that district will cost you at least \$ 200,000.
You won't be _____.
19. Why did he decide to go to Italy instead of France?
What convinced _____.
20. These new machines have put an end to queuing.
Before these _____.

Exercise 19. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. He didn't come until six o'clock.

It
was _____.

2. Do not blame me if the tin-opener's broken.

It is
not _____.

3. The train journey from London to Bristol takes two hours.

It is
a _____.

4. Please check for damage before signing the delivery.

Do not _____.

5. It is my impression that she is enjoying her new job a great deal.

She
seems _____.

6. Whose suitcase is this?

Who
does _____?

7. I can't often afford to spend my holiday abroad.

I'm seldom
able _____.

8. I was very impressed by his performance.

I found
his _____.

9. Her employers often send her to the United States.

She often
gets _____.

10. If you have bars on your windows, people can't break into your house.

Having bars on your window
_____.

11. She needs to study harder.

She
doesn't _____.

12. That dress has only the slightest mark on it.

I can barely
see _____.

13. He insisted on a full apology.

Nothing
but _____.

14. Tim insisted on being told the complete story.

Nothing

but_____.

15. It's a good idea to take the train.

You
had_____.

16. I don't really want to go out tonight.

I'd
rather_____.

17. I only paid a few hundred pounds for the car.

The
car_____.

18. If there's an emergency, ring this number.

In
case_____.

19. You pay \$20 a month for a period of one year.

You pay in twelve successive
_____.

20. That's none of your business.

That's got nothing_____.

Exercise 20. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences In such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. My income does not enable me to meet all my financial commitments.

I can't_____.

2. Most students can work very hard when they feel like it.

Most students are
capable_____.

3. She didn't inherit anything in her uncle's will.

Her uncle didn't leave_____.

4. It seems that no one predicted the correct result.

No one seems_____.

5. She acted brilliantly in the school play.

She gave_____.

6. They were married in the summer of 2000.

Their
wedding_____.

7. His life was despaired of.

All hope that_____.

8. There was never any answer when we rang.

Every time we_____.

9. That is the last time I go to that restaurant.

I certainly_____.

10. The heavy rain made it impossible for us to have our picnic.

We were not

_____.

11. Can we trust her?

Is she _____?

12. I never miss out on a cup of coffee when I visit her flat.

She always_____.

13. The police are advising vigilance as there have been more robberies lately.

Due to the recent_____.

14. Joseph is going to Athens for graduate work in archeology.

Joseph is leaving_____.

15. Nobody helped me to build this.

I built _____.

16. If we wait long, we'll get what we want.

It's just a_____.

17. That rumour about the politician and construction contract is absolutely false.

There is absolutely no_____.

18. Martin may not be very well but he still manages to enjoy life.

Martin's poor_____.

19. I didn't realize how much he was influenced by his brother.

I didn't realize the_____.

20. He did all out of his kindness.

All that he did_____.

Exercise 21. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I would do anything for you.

There's nothing_____.

2. If you weren't born in this country, you can't vote in the election.

Not_____.

3. Letters of application must be handwritten.

You must_____.

4. I'm more interested in the people than the job.

It's not the_____.

5. Our present financial problems will soon be a thing of the past.

We shall soon_____.

6. Cheques should only be accepted with proof of identity.

Never accept_____.

7. It appears that I have left my medical cards at home.

- I don't seem_____.
8. He used to rise at dawn until he was old.
His habit of_____.
9. That question cannot be answered satisfactorily.
There is_____.
10. They went on smoking all through the meal.
They didn't_____.
11. The instructions say you just add boiling water to the soup powder.
The soup powder just needs_____.
12. "I wasn't there at that time," said he.
He denied_____.
13. Why was she late?
What_____?
14. I had better get back to work.
It is better_____.
15. You can eat as much as you like for \$50 at the new lunch bar.
There is no_____.
16. We couldn't get nearer because of the police.
The police would not_____.
17. Jack loses his temper easily.
It doesn't take_____.
18. Shirley didn't begin to read until she was eight.
It wasn't_____.
19. Alan worked too hard at the office, and this led to his illness.
Alan's illness_____.
20. Galileo is considered to be the father of modern astronomy.
Galileo is regarded_____.
- Exercise 22. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.**
1. Arthur said he was sorry he had hurt my feelings.
Arthur apologized_____.
2. "I must see the manager," he said.
He insisted_____.
3. To be successful in business, one must work hard.
It is essential_____.
4. The drama critic of the "Daily News" regards the new play as a major breakthrough.
According to

5. Reading science books is one of my interests.
I am _____.
6. She discovered eight new comets in the course of her work.
Her work resulted _____.
7. I took little notice of the girl standing at the gate.
I didn't pay _____.
8. Most of the students ignore what Professor Harrison was saying.
Few students _____.
9. No one but you and I knew who the robber was.
Only you _____.
10. It isn't necessary for you to finish the work by Saturday.
You _____.
11. I didn't arrive in time to see him.
I wasn't
early _____.
12. The children couldn't go swimming because the sea was rough.
The sea was
too _____.
13. David Beckham is too old to play in that teenagers' soccer championship.
David Beckham is
not _____.
14. He couldn't afford to buy the new car.
The new
car _____.
15. The furniture was so expensive that I didn't buy it.
The furniture was too _____.
16. It was so late that nothing could be done.
It was too _____.
17. The water was so cold that the children couldn't swim in it.
The water was not _____.
18. It was easy for us to find the house.
We had _____.
19. "Don't forget to phone the office," she told him.
She reminded _____.
20. You may get hungry on the train, so take some sandwiches.
In _____.

Exercise 23. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it

means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. It takes six hours to drive from here to London.

It is a _____.

2. We spent 5 hours travelling to London.

It took _____.

3. I get to work in 20minutes.

It _____.

4. He objected to the fact that his secretary came to work late.

He was annoyed _____.

5. She is not accustomed to life in London.

She is not used _____.

6. My English friend finds driving on the right difficult.

My English friend isn't _____.

7. He left without saying a single word, which is very impolite.

It was impolite _____.

8. Let's go abroad for our holiday this year.

Why _____?

9. Smoking is not allowed in the ward.

Would you mind _____?

10. He was so tired that he fell asleep before the end of the film.

He was too _____.

11. These young men became doctors after six years training.

After these young men _____.

12. I would do anything to be able to travel to China.

There is _____.

13. My father finds maps hard to follow.

My father has _____.

14. Hearing that an earthquake had occurred was a great shock to us.

We were _____.

15. Yoghurt is supposed to be good for you.

Yoghurt is supposed to do _____.

16. The chances are that the whole thing will have been forgotten by next term.

In all _____.

17. They were unable to finish their game of tennis because of a heavy shower.

A heavy shower _____.

18. He never has enough money.

He is always _____.

19. We have been trying to sell our house for over six months.

Our house_____.

20. My uncle's generosity enabled us to go on a Mediterranean cruise.

Thanks_____.

Exercise 24. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. Riding a bicycle along the pavement is against the law.

You_____.

2. They declared war on the pretext of defending their territorial rights.

The excuse for_____.

3. They stretched the rope from one side of the crevasse to the other in order to haul their equipment across.

By stretching_____.

4. This scheme is too risky for my liking.

The risks_____.

5. You can try to get Jim to lend you his car, but you won't succeed.

There is no point_____.

6. He knows nearly everything about whales.

There is_____.

7. Simon hadn't expected that he would feel so weak after the operation.

The operation left_____.

8. You can't park here. It's a restricted area.

No_____.

9. Failing prompt payment, the goods must be returned by you.

You must

either_____.

10. Collecting stamps gives me a lot of pleasure.

I

derive_____.

11. You haven't explained exactly how the money disappeared.

You haven't accounted_____.

12. Only an unforeseen problem can stop the scheme now.

Nothing_____.

13. I won't be able to hear you if you don't speak up.

If you

want_____.

14. Apart from Philip, everyone else at the meeting was a party member.

With_____.

15. No tuition fees are payable in any publicly-maintained school.

Publicly-maintained school do_____.

16. Can I speak to someone about my problem?

Would it

be_____?

17. Mrs Wilson says she is sorry she didn't attend the meeting yesterday morning.

Mrs Wilson sends_____.

18. If you want accommodation in Brighton, you should book in advance.

If you want accommodation in Brighton, it_____.

19. Only a few minutes remained when the winning goal was scored.

There wasn't

20. I was surprised when Mary got into university, given the fact that she hadn't worked hard at school.

To my_____.

Exercise 25. (Paraphrasing) Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I have held this meeting in order to present the latest sales figures.

My purpose_____.

2. Something must be done quickly to solve the problem of homelessness.

Urgent_____.

3. In order to make a profit, the new leisure centre needs at least 2,000 visitors a month.

No fewer_____.

4. The team is the same as it was for last Saturday's match.

There have_____.

5. These two boxers weigh exactly the same.

There is

no_____.

6. "Nothing will persuade me to sleep in that haunted house," she said.

She flatly refused_____.

7. It was surprising the storm caused little damage in the area.

The storm_____.

8. If anyone succeeds in solving the problem, it will probably be him.

He is the most_____.

9. This will be the group's first concert in the USA.

This will be the first time_____.

10. Le Corbusier was very influential in developing architectural styles.

Le Corbusier had_____.

11. She contributes with enthusiasm to class discussions.

- Her_____.
12. You could be arrested for not giving a breath sample to the police.
Refusal to_____.
13. You will certainly meet lots of people in your new job.
You are_____.
14. It won't make any difference if it rains because we will still go.
We will still go whether_____.
15. It's nobody's fault that the meeting was cancelled.
Nobody_____.
16. I write to him almost every day.
Hardly a day_____.
17. Because the chemicals were properly combined, the prescription has brought about the expected result.
Because
of_____.
18. The man's life was one of great poverty.
Throughout his life, the
man_____.
19. What was the reason for their late arrival?
Why did they
turn_____?
20. I would do anything to prevent him from going there.
There is nothing_____.

➤ VIẾT ĐOẠN VĂN (Writing a paragraph)

Theme 1: Family life

Topic 1.1. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about how the family members should share their responsibility to run a family.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The equality in sharing household tasks
- The responsibilities that each family member does in sharing the household chores (the father, the mother and the children)
- The purpose of sharing the household chores equally

Topic 1.2. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about how the family members in your own family do to share the household chores, using the cues given below.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- How many and who the people are in the family
- What roles the father and mother perform
- What responsibilities each family member takes

- What attitude to doing household tasks each family member has
- The general atmosphere of the family

Topic 1.3. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the advantages of being a working mother.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Mothers should be greatly encouraged to work outside the home
- Working mothers contribute to household income
- Working mothers are good educators for their children
- Working mothers set examples for their children

Topic 1.4. “Many hands make light work” is the saying which can be applied to doing housework in the family. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about how your family members split the housework and what they do to make the work become easier.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The number of people in your family
- The way in which each member splits the housework in the family
- Household chores that each member of the family does
- The benefits of sharing the housework to each family member

Topic 1.5. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the factors to enable a longer life.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- the quality of food
- medical services
- regular sports

Topic 1.6. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the causes of the fact that families now are not as close-knit as they were in the past.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- busy lives and dynamic lifestyles
- explosion of modern technologies
- different viewpoints due to generation gaps

Topic 1.7. Cooking for yourself is good not only for your health but also for your pleasure. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about your opinion about this.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- saving money
- enjoying food of your own taste
- having pleasure when you prepare food

Topic 1.8. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the role of parents in forming their children’s personalities.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- having close emotional bonds with children

- satisfying children's needs
- being affectionate, caring persons to their children

Theme 2: Education & Employment

Topic II.1. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the formal school system in Vietnam.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Two levels of education: primary and secondary education
- The examinations that students have to take at the end of each level

Topic II.2. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the preparations in the subject of English you have made for the high school graduation examinations.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The role of the subject
- Revision of knowledge
- Practice of skills
- Revision of English textbooks with the themes and contents, especially English 12.
- Mental preparations
- The benefits of the preparations you have made in the examinations.

Topic II.3. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the importance of English to higher education.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The role of English in communication
- The source of knowledge
- The means of communication

Topic II.4. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the course and the university you have decided to apply to.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Name of the course and the university
- Reason for your choice
- Your ability to take up the course
- Your expectation
- What you should do to prepare for the entrance examination

Topic II.5. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why you would like to follow a Vietnamese university.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Living with your own family
- Using the mother tongue in study
- Low tuition

Topic II.6. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why students would like to study abroad.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- gaining higher academic qualifications
- learning foreign languages and communicating with native speakers
- becoming more mature and independent

Topic II.7. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the importance of knowledge from books.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- having the fundamental part of our future career
- making contributions to our society
- acquiring knowledge about life and the world

Topic II.8. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why people want to go to college or university.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- requirement of more knowledge and skills for your career
- social life of a student
- acquisition of confidence from higher education

Topic II.9. In about 140 words, write a paragraph on the following topic: “University education is the best choice for all of us”.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- gaining competence for a better life
- changing our life
- increasing our knowledge

Topic II.10. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the bad effects of cheating in study.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Preventing the study progress
- Having bad results in examinations
- Having bad effect on characters

Topic II.11. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the advantages of using electronic devices in learning.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Getting access to helpful learning applications
- Encouraging communication and entertainment
- Being useful for research and study

Topic II. 12. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the role of teachers in our lives.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- offering the best way for your learning
- helping you to focus on what you are learning

- giving knowledge and experience more than the textbook

Topic II.13. in about 140 words, write a paragraph about your preparations for a job interview.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Finding out as much as possible about the company and the job you apply for
- Writing a letter of application and your curriculum vitae
- Working out the answers for the questions which are possibly asked in the job interview
- Having a right attitude towards the interview

Topic II.14. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about your favourite subject at school.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

It is English.

- being one of the core subjects at school
- helping me read books or magazines in English
- having interest in the lessons

Theme 3: Culture, Community, Technology

Topic III. 1. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about what customs a visitor to Vietnam should know.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The lack of cultural awareness may lead to misunderstanding and inconvenience to foreign visitors
- What things visitors should do and what they should not do during their visit in Vietnam
- The benefits of cultural awareness

Topic III.2. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about marriage customs in Vietnam.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Three stages of getting married: before the wedding, during the wedding and after the wedding.

Topic III.3. in about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why people especially the young should take part in volunteering work.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The tendency to do something good for others
- The benefits that volunteering has on the characters
- A great way to gain experience in a variety of fields
- A good way to lead to a paid job

Topic III.4. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the international organization you would like to work for and give the reasons of your choice.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- giving you good opportunities
- furthering your knowledge
- having right attitude towards life

Topic III.5. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why friendship is important.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- sharing everything with him/ her
- giving help friends out of trouble
- offering fun and enjoyment of life

Topic III.6. Do you agree with the statement “Married women should pursue a career”?

In about 140 words, write a paragraph about your opinions about the topic.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The advantages of a female worker
- The independence that women can get when they go to work
- The ways to split housework in the family

Topic III.7. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the characteristics of good team-working.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- independence
- optimism
- teamwork spirit

Topic III.8. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the importance of computers.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Effects of computers on every aspect of our lives
- The role of Internet
- Disadvantages of computers

Topic III.9. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the changes that information technology brings to your life.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- bringing the family members closer
- staying in touch with the world around
- having more chances to find jobs
- losing confidential documents or files

Topic HI. 10. in about 160 words, write a paragraph about advantages and disadvantages of the Internet

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- providing a lot of information and some kinds of entertainment
- keeping in touch with our friends and family
- making us become lazy

- wasting too much time

Theme 4: Nature

Topic IV. 1. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about air pollution, and the measures to solve the problem.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Sources of air pollution from industry, vehicles
- Bad effects of air pollution on our lives (the greenhouse effect, global warming,...)
- Responsibilities and measures to reduce air pollution

Topic IV.2 in about 140 words, write a paragraph about the importance of conservation to our lives.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Preventing endangered species from extinction
- Recycling wastes in order to conserve natural resources
- Maintaining the biodiversity

Topic IV.3. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the responsibility that everyone should take to preserve the environment

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- The ways people dispose wastes
- The ways to cut wastes
- The awareness to protect the environment

Topic IV.4. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about some problems with ecotourism in Vietnam.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Vietnam's natural and cultural potential for ecotourism ~ Tourists' lack of awareness of environmental protection
- Their poor understanding of Vietnam's cultural diversity

Topic IV.5. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about what governments should do to save energy.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Encouraging people to use public transport
- Reducing the use of fossil fuels by increasing tax on petrol
- Developing renewable sources of energy

Topic IV.6. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the bad influence of human activity on our environment.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- exhausting natural resources
- greenhouse effect
- lack of space for leisure

Topic IV.7. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons why you like to

solve the air pollution problem of your hometown.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- the quality of the atmosphere
- the attraction of investors
- people's health

Topic IV.8. In about 140 words, write a paragraph to suggest measures governments and individuals can take to reduce the global warming.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- using less energy, and cutting waste
- practising recycling, planting more trees
- educating the community
- passing stricter laws on environmental problems

Theme 5: Recreation & Travelling

Topic V. 1. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about advantages of television.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- learning useful things
- providing us with entertainment
- **making things memorable**

Topic V.2. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the statement "Reading is fun".

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Name some kinds of books you like
- Name some advantages of reading: expand vocabulary, improve general knowledge

Topic V.3. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the role of music in our life.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- An important part of our daily events
- A way to express one's feelings
- A way of entertainment

Topic V.4. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about a leisure activity that like to do after school.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Introducing your leisure activity, and the reasons why you like it
- Mentioning the benefits of your hobby
- Writing about what you will do to develop your hobby

Topic V.5. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the benefits of doing exercise.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- reducing stress
- feeling more energetic
- feeling more self-confident

Topic V.6. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the benefits of travelling by

plane.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- the speed
- excitement
- the safety

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ

(Kỳ thi Trung học Phổ thông QG)

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 1

Đ***&

SECTION A (8 points)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. vertical | B. water | C. vulnerable | D. wilderness |
| 2. A. succeed | B. accept | C. account | D. accident |
| 3. A. possible | B. computer | C. loss | D. job |

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 4. A. determine | B. advertise | C. nursery | D. applicant |
| 5. A. optimistic | B. compulsory | C. independent | D. conservation |

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. Foreman Inc. usually _____ retiring employees luxury watches as farewell gifts.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|
| A. gives | B. given | C. giving | D. is giving |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|

7. A \$20 fine will be _____ to replace any lost or stolen card keys.

- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|-------------|
| A. charge | B. charged | C. charges | D. charging |
|-----------|------------|------------|-------------|

8. _____ A fire in the building could be a problem for firefighters.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. ninety-storey-tall | B. ninety-tall-storey |
| C. ninety-storeys-tall | D. ninety- storeyed |

9. Please take all personal belongings with you _____ leaving the train.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|
| A. when | B. what | C. whom | D. which |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|

10. It is still unclear _____ the Mayor will accept the recommendations of the City Council.

- | | | | |
|--------|----------|-----------|------------|
| A. yet | B. about | C. before | D. whether |
|--------|----------|-----------|------------|

11. We anticipate _____ the first phase of the project will take approximately two weeks to complete.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| A. that | B. which | C. there | D. those |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|

12. _____ anyone wish to access the information on the status of his or her order, the password should be entered.

- | | | | |
|-------|-----------|------------|--------------|
| A. If | B. Should | C. Whether | D. As though |
|-------|-----------|------------|--------------|

13. Bill asked Tom _____ .

- A. where is he going B. where he is going
C. where he was going D. where was he going
14. That chefs popular spicy shark steak and mushroom salad is a favourite _____ customers.
A. past B. among C. toward D. despite
15. Any player who wishes to participate in the Gracey Tennis Tournament should register _____ August 14.
A. until B. about C. since D. before
16. Jane installed security software on her new computer to _____ it against viruses.
A. protect B. protector C. protection D. protective
17. Lucy, a three-year Yorkshire terrier, _____ against 23 other dogs to win the 18th annual Courtland Dog Show.
A. formed B. repeated C. followed D. competed
18. Every year, the Healthy Heart Research Committee holds meetings in five different cities to spread information about the treatment and _____ of heart disease.
A. cured B. access C. prevention D. carefulness
19. Please _____ all of the information on the application form is accurate to the best of your knowledge.
A. true B. copy C. handle D. verify
20. My uncle was _____ ill last month; however, fortunately, he is now making a slow but steady recovery.
A. seriously B. deeply C. fatally D. critically
21. Bills for electricity _____ heating should be paid by the 15th of every month.
A. so B. nor C. but D. and
22. Bus schedules are updated frequently, _____ check our website for the latest departure and arrival times.
A. so B. if C. neither D. whereas
23. David: “_____” Monica: “Good luck to you.”
A. I don’t like rock music. B. How do you do?
C. Have a nice day. D. I’m taking a test this afternoon.
24. Charles: “Do you mind if I smoke?” Lisa: “_____”
A. Yes, I don’t mind. B. No, I don’t think so.
C. Yes, go ahead. D. No, go ahead.

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

25. The teacher gave some suggestions on what could come out for the examination.
A. effects B. symptoms C. hints D. demonstrations
26. The money was donated by a local businessman who wishes to remain anonymous.
A. unknown B. publicized C. identified D. followed

27. In spite of her embarrassment in front of John's urgent and challenging look, she could not deny herself that satisfaction.

- A. demanding B. hard C. difficult D. curious

Mark the letter A, B, c or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

28. The story told by the teacher amused children in the class.

- A. astonished B. frightened C. jolted D. saddened

29. The farmers removed some undeveloped trees to improve the growth of the rest.

- A. eliminated B. planted C. fertilized D. transferred

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

30. John congratulated us to our excellent results although we didn't know each other

A B C D

very well.

31. California has more land under irrigation than any another states.

A B C D

32. In the 1920's cinema became an important art form and one of the ten largest
industry in the United States.

A B C D

33. Ripe fruit is often stored in a place where contains much carbon dioxide so that
A B C

the fruit will not decay too rapidly.

D

34. In the nineteenth century, women used quilts to inscribe their responses to social,
A B C
economic, and politics issues.

D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 35 to 44.

No one can say when sports began. Since it is impossible to (35) _____ a time when children did not spontaneously run races or wrestle, it is clear that children have always included sports in their play, but one can only speculate about the (36) _____ of sports as autotelic physical contests for (37) _____.

Hunters are depicted in prehistoric art, but it cannot be known (38) _____ the hunters pursued their prey in a mood of grim necessity or with the joyful abandon of sportsmen. It is certain, (39) _____, from the rich literary and iconographic evidence of all ancient civilizations that hunting soon became an end in itself at least for royalty and

nobility. Archaeological evidence also indicates that ball games were common among ancient peoples as (40) _____ as the Chinese, and the Aztecs. If ball games were contests rather than (41) _____ ritual performances, such as the Japanese football game *kemari*, then they were sports in the most rigorously (42) _____ sense. That it cannot (43) _____ be assumed that they were contests is clear from the evidence presented by Greek and Roman antiquity, which indicates that ball games had been for the most part playful pastimes (44) _____ those recommended for health by the Greek physician Galen in the 2nd century AD.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 35. A. think | B. see | C. have | D. imagine |
| 36. A. emergence | B. emerge | C. emergency | D. immersion |
| 37. A. people | B. children | C. adults | D. society |
| 38. A. when | B. whether | C. how | D. why |
| 39. A. therefore | B. so | C. consequently | D. however |
| 40. A. different | B. far | C. similar | D. old |
| 41. A. competitive | B. competitively | C. noncompetitive | D. competition |
| 42. A. definite | B. defined | C. definitive | D. definition |
| 43. A. really | B. actually | C. usually | D. simply |
| 44. A. as | B. like | C. alike | D. of |

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 45 to 54.

Anthropology is the science of humans. In fact, however, it is only one of the sciences of humans, bringing together those disciplines the common aims of which are to describe human beings and explain them on the basics of the biological and cultural characteristics of the populations among which they are distributed and to emphasize, through time, the differences and variations of these populations. The concept of race, on the other hand, and that of culture have received special attention; and although their meaning is still subject to debate, these terms are doubtless the most common of those in the anthropologist's vocabulary.

Anthropology, which is concerned with the study of human differences, was born after the Age of Discovery had opened up societies that had remained outside the technological civilization of the modern West. In fact, the field of research was at first restricted to those societies that had been given one unsatisfactory label after another, "savage", "primitive", "tribal", "traditional" or even "preliterate", "prehistoric", and soon. What such societies had in common, above all, was being the most "different" or the most foreign to the anthropologist, and in the early phrases of anthropology, the anthropologists were always European or North American. The distance between the researcher and the object of his study has been a characteristic of anthropological research; it had been said of the anthropologist that he was the "astronomer of the sciences of man".

Anthropologists today study more than just primitive societies. Their research extends

not only to village communities within modern societies but also to cities, even to industrial enterprises. Nevertheless, anthropology's first field of research, and the one that perhaps remains the most important, shaped its specific point of view with regard to the other sciences of man and defined its theme. If, in particular, it is concerned with generalizing about patterns of human behaviour seen in all their dimensions and with achieving a total description of social and cultural phenomena, this is because anthropology has observed small-scale societies, which are simpler or at least more homogenous than modern societies and change at a slower pace. Thus, they are easier to see whole.

What has just been said refers especially to the branch of anthropology concerned with the cultural characteristics of man? Anthropology has, in fact, gradually divided itself into two major spheres, the study of man's biological characteristics and the study of his cultural characteristics. The reasons for this split are manifold, one being the rejection of the initial mistakes regarding correlations between race and culture. More generally speaking, the vast field of the 19th century's anthropology was subdivided into a series of increasingly specialized disciplines, using their own methods, and techniques, that were given different label according to national traditions.

Notes:

- **discipline (n.)** = môn học, ngành kiến thức; **scientific disciplines** = các môn khoa học
- **manifold (adj.)** = đa dạng
- **homogeneous (adj.)** = đồng nhất, thuần nhất
- **correlation (n.)** = sự tương quan

45. According to the passage, anthropology is most likely defined as the study of
- A. one of the sciences of humans
 - B. the biological and cultural characteristics of human beings
 - C. the lives of peoples all over the world
 - D. the distribution of human beings over the world
46. Which of the following is NOT stated in the passage?
- A. Anthropology has been subdivided into special disciplines.
 - B. Anthropology gives special attention to the concept of race.
 - C. Anthropology is concerned with the study of human differences.
 - D. Anthropologists are agreed on the meaning of race and culture.
47. It is implied in the passage that the early anthropologists did research only on
- A. large societies
 - B. modern groups
 - C. racial minorities
 - D. civilized societies
48. It can be inferred from the passage that anthropology was first developed in
- A. Europe and North America
 - B. some primitive societies
 - C. some tribal societies
 - D. some prehistoric societies
49. Anthropologists of the early phases were regarded as the "astronomers of the

sciences of man" because _____ .

- A. they also studied the sun, moon, stars, planets, etc.
- B. they also studied our planets as the sciences of man
- C. they did not belong to the societies into which they did research
- D. they applied the sciences of man to astronomy

50. According to the passage, modern anthropologists study _____ .

- A. only primitive and tribal societies
- B. both communities and modern societies
- C. only modern industrial enterprises
- D. both primitive and modern societies

51. The phrase "**first field of research**" in paragraph 3 most likely refers to the study of _____ .

- A. modern societies
- B. primitive societies
- C. large societies
- D. industrial societies

52. Small societies are preferable to anthropological research because they are

- A. simple, homogeneous, and change slowly
- B. small, isolated, and easy to study
- C. ancient, exotic, and interesting
- D. similar to primitive societies

53. It is mentioned in the passage that the split of anthropology into two major areas is partly due to _____ .

- A. more knowledge to be gained
- B. the development of the sciences of humans
- C. the interpretation of race and culture
- D. the development of modern anthropology

54. It is mentioned in the passage that anthropology began to divide into various disciplines in _____ .

- A. prehistoric times
- B. the Age of Discovery
- C. the 20th century
- D. the 19th century

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 55 to 64.

It is said that George Washington was one of the first to realize how important the building of canals would be to the nation's development. In fact, before he became the President, he headed the first company in the United States to build a canal, which was to connect the Ohio and Potomac Rivers. It was never completed, but it showed the nation the **feasibility** of canals. As the country expanded westward, settlers in western New York, Pennsylvania, and Ohio needed a means to ship goods. Canals linking natural waterways

seemed to supply an effective method.

In 1791, engineers commissioned by the state of New York investigated the possibility of a canal between Albany on the Hudson River and Buffalo on Lake Erie to link the Great Lakes area with the Atlantic seacoast. It would avoid the mountains that served as a barrier to canals from Delaware and Potomac rivers.

The first attempts to dig the canal, to be called the Eric Canal, was made by private companies but only a comparatively small portion was built before the project was halted for lack of funds. The cost of the project was an estimated \$5 million, an enormous amount for those days. There was some **on-again-off-again** federal funding, but this time the War of 1812 put an end to construction. In 1817, DeWitt Clinton was elected Governor of New York and persuaded the state to finance and build the canal. It was completed in 1825, costing \$2 million more than expected.

The canal rapidly lived up to its sponsors' faith, quickly paying for itself through **tolls**. It was far more economical than any other form of transportation at the time. It permitted trade between the Great Lakes region and the East coast, robbing the Mississippi River of much of its traffic. It allowed New York to supplant Boston, Philadelphia, and other eastern cities as the chief center of both domestic and foreign commerce. Cities sprang up along the canal. It also contributed in a number of ways to the North's victory over the South in the Civil War.

An expansion of the canal was planned in 1849. Increased traffic would undoubtedly have **warranted** its construction had it not been for the railroads.

55. Why does the author most likely mention George Washington in the first paragraph?

- A. He was President at the time the Eric Canal was built.
- B. He commissioned engineers to study the possibility of building the Eric Canal.
- C. He successfully opened the first canal in the United States.
- D. He was involved in pioneering efforts to build canals.

56. The word “**feasibility**” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. possibility
- B. capability
- C. difficulty
- D. profitability

57. According to the passage, the Eric Canal connected the _____ .

- A. Delaware and Potomac Rivers
- B. Hudson River and Lake Erie
- C. Atlantic Ocean and the Hudson River
- D. Potomac and Ohio Rivers

58. The phrase “**on-again-off-again**” in paragraph 3 could be replaced by which of the following with the least change in the meaning?

- A. ineffectual
- B. unsolicited
- C. intermittent
- D. gradual

59. The completion of the Eric Canal was financed by _____ .

- A. a private company
- B. DeWitt Clinton
- C. the federal government
- D. New York

SECTION B (2 points)

I. Finish each of the following sentences In such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers on your answer sheet.

65. Have you ever used gestures to communicate before?
Is it _____

66. "Don't forget to return the survey next Saturday," he said.
He reminded _____

67. "What shall I do with my heavy luggage?"
she said _____

68. He had a light breakfast and then went to work.
After he _____

69. "You damaged the television set in the living room," said Tom

II. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about what kind of work you would like to do when you finish your education.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Introducing the career of your own choice
 - Giving reasons why you would like to follow the career: interest, encouragement from your family, good prospect of the career, promotion
 - Stating your determination to follow that kind of work

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 2
S***&

SECTION A (8 points)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>heavy</u> | B. <u>head</u> | C. <u>weather</u> | D. <u>easy</u> |
| 2. A. <u>aut<u>u</u>umn</u> | B. <u>sum<u>u</u>mer</u> | C. <u>pub<u>l</u>ic</u> | D. <u>str<u>u</u>ggle</u> |
| 3. A. <u>abs<u>e</u>nt</u> | B. <u>ab<u>re</u>pt</u> | C. <u>ab<u>s</u>ence</u> | D. <u>b<u>a</u>nkrup<u>t</u></u> |

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 4. A. attract | B. decide | C. reject | D. beauty |
| 5. A. considerate | B. photographer | C. community | D. circumstances |

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. Beginning in August, free parking _____ available to anyone taking the commuter train from Green City.
- | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|------------|
| A. were | B. to be | C. being | D. will be |
|---------|----------|----------|------------|
7. Your wage _____ at a rate of \$20 for every hour of work.
- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| A. calculated | B. calculation | C. to calculation | D. will be calculated |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
8. Customers who spend more than \$100 will earn a 25% discount on_____ next purchase.
- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|----------|
| A. they | B. their | C. them | D. those |
|---------|----------|---------|----------|
9. say that property taxes have increased faster than homeowner's incomes.
- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| A. Analyze | B. Analysts | C. Analysis | D. Analyzable |
|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
10. A law was _____ passed that gives tax benefits to landowners who sell their land to the government.
- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| A. late | B. hardly | C. recently | D. repeatedly |
|---------|-----------|-------------|---------------|
11. The ambassador to Vietnam oversaw the opening_____ at the Music Festival.
- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| A. studio | B. effect | C. ceremony | D. termination |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|----------------|
12. At first she was trained to be _____ scriptwriter, but later she worked as _____ secretary.
- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|--------------|------------|
| A. the -a | B. a - a | C. the - the | D. a - the |
|-----------|----------|--------------|------------|
13. Some crimes seem to be_____ in this country than in others.
- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| A. less common enough | B. much less common |
| C. the least common | D. very less common |

14. Medical researchers are continually looking for ways to control, _____, and cure diseases.
- A. prevented B. to prevent C. prevent D. preventing
15. Swimming is a beneficial exercise, _____ aerobic activity and uses a number of muscle groups.
- A. not only because it provides B. because it both provides
C. for provision D. as a result of providing
16. The activities of the international marketing researcher are frequently much broader than _____.
- A. the domestic marketer has B. the domestic marketer does
C. those of the domestic marketer D. that which has the domestic marketer
17. The collapse of tin prices in the 1980s destroyed the tin-mining industry, _____ former employees have since turned in desperation to growing coca.
- A. all of whom B. none of their C. several of its D. many of whose
18. When a fire broke out in the Louvre, at least twenty _____ paintings were destroyed, including two by Picasso.
- A. worthless B. priceless C. valueless D. worthy
19. His _____ of the school regulations really can't ignore any longer.
- A. carelessness B. inattention C. unfamiliarity D. disregard
20. Many scientists _____ all their lives to working out answers to problems.
- A. send B. promote C. spend D. devote
21. During the starvation, we used to keep a _____ of dried food in the factory.
- A. conserve B. substitute C. reserve D. preserve
22. British and Australian people share the same language, but in other aspects they are as different as _____.
- A. cats and dogs B. chalk and cheese
C. salt and pepper D. here and there
23. A: "I'm sorry for shouting at you." B: "_____ "
- A. It's OK. B. So do I.
C. I still can't hear you. D. I am too.
24. A: "_____" B: "She's sociable and very kind-hearted"
- A. How does your mother look?
B. What's your mother like?
C. What's your mother's social status?
D. What kind of heart does your mother have?
- Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*
25. I was working for a trucking company and the owner wanted me to do extra work on top of my job as a mechanic.

- A. including B. next to C. except for D. in addition to
26. Tourists today flock to see the two falls that actually constitute Niagara Falls.
- A. come without knowing what they will see
B. come in large numbers
C. come out of boredom and enjoy something
D. come by plane
27. People are busy buying gifts, cleaning and decorating the house and cooking traditional foods to welcome Tet holiday now.
- A. favorite B. important C. customary D. national

Mark the letter A, B, c or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

28. In common with many mothers, she feels torn between her family and her work.
- A. In association with B. In imitation of
C. Ignoring D. Unlike
29. Every effort was made to reduce the budget substantially.
- A. proportionally B. effectively
C. in great amount D. in little amount

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

30. Foreign students who are doing a decision about which school to attend may not
- A B C
know exactly where the choices are located.
D

31. Regardless of your teaching method, the objective of any conversation class
- A B
should be for the students to practise speaking words.
C D

32. Mrs. Stevens, along with her cousins from New Mexico, are planning to attend the festivities.
- A B C D

33. The teacher asked him why hadn't he done his homework, but he said nothing.
- A B C D

34. Hardly had he entered the room than all the lights went out.
- A B C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 35 to 44.

AS OLD AS YOU FEEL

It might after all be true that you are only as old as you feel. A British clinic is carrying

out new high-tech tests to calculate the “real” biological age of patients (35) _____ on the rate of physical deterioration. Information on every (36) _____ of a patient’s health, fitness, lifestyle and family medical history is (37) _____ into a computer to work out whether they are older or younger than their calendar age suggests.

The availability and increasing accuracy of the tests has (38) _____ one leading British gerontologist to call for biological age to be used to determine when workers should retire. He (39) _____ that if an employee’s biological or “real” age is shown, for example, to be 55 when he reaches his 65th birthday, he should be (40) _____ to work for another decade. Apparently, most employers only take into (41) _____ a person’s calendar years, and the two may differ considerably. Some of those prepared to pay a substantial sum of money for the examinations will be able to smugly walk away with medical (42) _____ showing that they are really as young as they feel, giving them the confidence to act and dress as if they were younger. Dr. Lynette Young, resident doctor at the clinic where the tests are offered claims that the purpose of these tests will be to motivate people to (43) _____ their health.

The concept of “real” age is set to become big (44) _____ in the USA with books and websites helping people work out whether their body is older or younger than their years. Others simply believe that looks will always be the best indicator of age.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 35. A. prospect | B. arranged | C. based | D. established |
| 36. A. attitude | B. position | C. decided | D. aspect |
| 37. A. planned | B. provided | C. supplied | D. fed |
| 38. A. prodded | B. prompted | C. projected | D. provoked |
| 39. A. argues | B. discusses | C. enquires | D. debates |
| 40. A. incited | B. encouraged | C. supported | D. promoted |
| 41. A. detail | B. account | C. interest | D. importance |
| 42. A. evidence | B. signs | C. grounds | D. demonstration |
| 43. A. increase | B. gain | C. improve | D. progress |
| 44. A. pursuit | B. concern | C. trade | D. business |

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 45 to 54.

Biological diversity has become widely recognized as a critical conservation issue only in the past two decades. The rapid destruction of the tropical rain forests, which are the ecosystems with the highest known species diversity on Earth, has awakened people to the importance and fragility of biological diversity. The high rate of species extinction in these environments is jolting, but it is important to recognize the significance of biological diversity in all ecosystems. As the human population continues to expand, it will negatively affect one after another of Earth’s ecosystems. In terrestrial ecosystems and in fringe marine ecosystems (such as wetlands), the most common problem is habitat destruction. In most situations, the result is irreversible. Now humans are beginning to destroy marine

ecosystems through other types of activities, such as disposal and runoff of poisonous waste; in less than two centuries, by significantly reducing the variety of species on Earth, they have irrevocably redirected the course of evolution.

Certainly, there have been periods in Earth's history when mass extinction has occurred. The extinction of the dinosaurs was caused by some physical event, either climatic or cosmic. There has also been less dramatic extinction, as when natural competition between species reached an extreme conclusion. Only 0.01 percent of the species that have lived on Earth have survived to the present, and it was largely chance that determined which species survived and which died out.

However, nothing has ever equaled the **magnitude** and speed with which the human species is altering the physical and chemical world and demolishing the environment. In tact, there is wide agreement that it is the rate of change humans are inflicting, even more than the changes themselves, that will lead to biological devastation. Life on Earth has continually been **in flux** as slow physical and chemical changes have occurred on Earth, but life needs time to adapt, time for migration and genetic adaptation within existing species and time for the proliferation of new genetic material and new species that may be able to survive in new environments.

Notes:

- **fragility** (n.) = tính mỏng manh
- **redirect** (v.) = chuyển hướng
- **irrevocably** (adv.) = không thể thay đổi
- **inflict** (v.) = gây ra
- **proliferation** (n.) = (sinh vật) sự sinh sôi nảy nở, sự tăng nhanh
- **irreversible** (adj.) = không thể đảo ngược lại, không thể thay đổi được

45. What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. The variety of species found in tropical rain forests.
- B. The cause of the extinction of the dinosaurs.
- C. The time required for species to adapt to new environments.
- D. The impact of human activities on Earth's ecosystems.

46. The word “**critical**” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to .

- A. essential B. negative C. complicated D. interesting

47. The word “**jolting**” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to .

- A. illuminating B. unknown C. shocking D. predicted

48. The author mentions the reduction of the variety of species on Earth in the third sentence of paragraph 1 to suggest that .

- A. humans are often made ill by polluted water
- B. new habitats can be created for species
- C. some species have been made extinct by human activity
- D. understanding evolution can prevent certain species from disappearing

49. The author mentions all of the following as/examples of the effect of humans on the world's ecosystems EXCEPT _____.
- A. damage to marine ecosystems
 - B. habitat destruction in wetlands
 - C. the introduction of new varieties of plant species
 - D. destruction of the tropical rain forests
50. The author mentions the extinction of the dinosaurs in the 2nd paragraph to emphasize that_____.
- A. not all mass extinction has been caused by human activity
 - B. actions by humans could not stop the irreversible process
 - C. Earth's climate has changed significantly since the dinosaurs' extinction
 - D. the cause of the dinosaurs' extinction is unknown
51. The word "magnitude" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. carelessness B. extent C. determination D. concern
52. According to the passage, natural evolutionary change is different from changes caused by humans in that changes caused by humans _____.
A. affect fewer ecosystems
B. are occurring at a much faster rate
C. are reversible
D. are less devastating to most species
53. Which of the following can best replace "in flux"?
A. breaking B. producing C. changing D. increasing
54. With which of the following statements would the author be most likely to agree?
A. The extinction of a few species is an acceptable consequence of human progress.
B. Technology will provide solutions to problems caused by the destruction of ecosystems.
C. Human influence on ecosystems should not be a factor in determining public policy.
D. Humans should be more conscious of the influence they have on ecosystems.

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 55 to 64.

Though Edmund Hailey was most famous because of his achievement as an astronomer, he was a scientist of diverse interests and great skill. In addition to studying the skies, Hailey was also deeply interested in exploring the unknown depths of the oceans. One of his lesser-known accomplishments that were quite remarkable was his design for a diving bell that facilitated exploration of the watery depths.

The diving bell that Hailey designed had a major advantage over the diving bells that were in use prior to his. Earlier diving bells could only make use of the air contained within the bell itself, so divers had to surface when the air inside the bell ran low. Hailey's bell was an improvement because its design allowed for an additional supply of fresh air that enabled

a crew of divers to remain underwater for several hours.

The diving contraption that Hailey designed was in the shape of a bell that measured three feet across the top and five feet across the bottom and could hold several divers comfortably; it was open at the bottom so that divers could swim in and out at will. The bell was built of wood, which was first heavily tarred to make it water repellent and was then covered with a half-ton sheet of lead to make the bell heavy enough to sink it in water. The bell shape held air inside for the divers to breathe as the bell sank to the bottom.

The air inside the bell was not the only source of air for the divers to breathe, and it was this improvement that made Hailey's bell superior to its predecessors. In addition to the air already in the bell, air was also supplied to the divers from a lead barrel that was lowered to the ocean floor close to the bell itself. Air flowed through a leather pipe from the lead barrel on the ocean floor to the bell. The diver could breathe the air from a position inside the bell, or he could move around outside the bell wearing a diving suit that consisted of a lead bell-shaped helmet with a glass viewing window and a leather body suit, with a leather pipe carrying fresh air from the diving bell to the helmet.

Notes:

- **contraption** (n.) = dụng cụ thay thế tạm thời
 - **tar** (v.) = bôi hắc ín
 - **repellent** (adj.) = không thể thâm qua (nuốt...)
 - **predecessor** (n.) = người tiền nhiệm, vật có trước
 - **suffocate** (v.) = làm chết ngạt

SECTION B (2 points)

I. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers on your answer sheet.

65. John didn't accept the job at the computer company because the salary was too low.
If it _____.

66. Tom is working on two jobs right now, so he doesn't have time to help you.
Were Tom _____.

67. It was thought that the thief was still in the house.
The thief _____.

68. They didn't let him enter the restricted area.
He _____.

69. The man's wife had been admitted to the hospital, and I spoke to him.
I spoke to _____.

IL In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the reasons for studying English. The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- being an international language
 - being acquainted with other cultures
 - being a requirement of many universities
 - communicating effectively

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 3

J***&

SECTION A (8 points)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. reformed B. sacrificed C. dissolved D. ploughed
2. A. appeal B. heat C. deal D. clear
3. A. future B. figure C. adventure D. mature

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

4. A. substantial B. eternal C. outstanding D. industry
5. A. commercial B. impolite C. regretful D. dedicate

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. After _____ in Italy for two years, John was able to speak Italian fluently.
A. live B. lived C. living D. livable
7. Founded ten years ago, the Youth Media Network _____ the leading source of print and broadcast news for teenagers.
A. become B. becomes C. becoming D. has become
8. It gets _____ to understand what the professor has explained.
A. the more difficult B. difficult more and more
C. more difficult than D. more and more difficult
9. Little _____ he know how much suffering he has caused.
A. didn't B. should C. won't D. does
10. _____, he felt so unhappy and lonely.
A. Despite his wealthy B. Rich as was he
C. Rich as he was D. In spite of his being wealth
11. All commuters _____ the main highway to get to the center of the city will face delay of up to an hour today because of on-going construction.
A. use B. used C. using D. will use
12. Mr. Barry oversaw the development of the Nissan Building _____ its initial stages to its completion.
A. of B. to C. from D. about
13. County legislators called for an update of the _____ safety for the Darcy Power Plant.
A. regulate B. regulatory C. regulative D. regulations
14. Only if you promise to study hard _____ to tutor you.

- A. will I agree B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree
15. The city libraries present a gloomy picture of the _____ who used to flock the libraries every evening.
- A. gradual reduction of readers B. gradual readers reduction
C. gradual readers of reduction D. reduction gradual readers
16. Of course an encyclopedia is not a book you read _____
- A. from the start to the stop B. from cover to cover
C. from the top to the end D. from page by page
17. Please accept our _____ apology for the inconvenience this delay is causing all the passengers here at Pearson International Airport.
- A. sincere B. original C. estimated D. completed
18. It will be next to _____ a room at the Ashton Hotel this week because of the film festival.
- A. reserve B. respond C. connect D. appoint
19. The presentation of this evening's winners will commence _____ at seven following dinner at six.
- A. precise B. precision C. precisely D. preciseness
20. The new sports complex will accommodate an Olympic-sized swimming pool and other _____, including a fitness center and a spa, to name just a few.
- A. facilities B. categories C. qualities D. supplies
21. The advertisements printed in this magazine do not _____ imply endorsement by the management.
- A. highly B. barely C. gradually D. necessarily
22. One of the reasons why our sales team has become a leader today is that they are put through a number of vigorous training sessions to keep up with the _____ changes that occur in the market.
- A. prosperous B. continuous C. straight D. mature
23. A: "Look at that beautiful butterfly!" B: "_____"
- A. Why can't you? B. Where? I don't see it.
C. No, it's your turn. D. I'll take it, don't worry.
24. A: "Let's have fish and chips." B: "_____"
- A. Not tonight. B. Yummy, I like sweet things,
C. Not at all. D. It was delicious.
- Mark the letter A, B, c or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*
25. Fruit is customarily treated with sulfur prior to drying to reduce any colour change.
- A. in front of B. previous to C. subsequent to D. at the time of
26. Deer like figures made from willow shoots are the oldest evidence of human habitation in the Grand Canyon.

- A. clue B. dispute C. exhibit D. proof
27. The diver's task was complicated by the fact that, besides the gold, the wreck contained bombs and ammunition.

A. next to B. away from C. allied to D. in addition to

Mark the letter A, B, c or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

28. The river should be controlled in order to facilitate navigation.

A. make difficult B. make impossible
C. make unpopular D. make busy

29. Local dwellers' houses gather right in the middle of the valley.

A. scatter B. collect C. distribute D. bloom

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

30. Linh didn't know how to swim although she jumped into the swimming pool

A B C D

31. The shopkeeper warned the boy don't lean their bicycles against his windows

A B C D

32. He comes from a large family, all of them now live in Australia.

A B C D

33. What happened in that city were a reaction from city workers, including firemen

A B C

and policemen who had been laid off from their jobs.

D

34. The residence of Greenville, Texas hold an annual Cotton Jubilee to remember

A B

the crop that caused their city to prosper.

C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 35 to 44.

Feminism, the collective term for systems of belief and theories that pay special (35) _____ to women's rights and women's position in culture and society. The term tends to be used for the women's rights movement, which began in the late 18th century and continues to campaign for complete political, social, and economic equality between women and men. This article (36) _____ specifically with the development of the ideas behind that movement and their (37) _____ and impact.

Feminists are united by the idea that women's position in society is unequal to that of men, and that society is structured in such a way as to benefit men to the political, social, and economic (39) _____ of women. However, feminists have used different theories to

explain these (40) _____ and have advocated different ways of redressing inequalities, and there are marked geographical and historical variations in the nature of feminism.

Historically, feminist thought and activity can be divided into two waves. The first wave, which began in about 1800 and (41) _____ until 1930s, was largely concerned with gaining equal rights between women and men. The second wave, which began in the late 1960s, has continued to fight for (42) _____ but has also developed a (43) _____ of theories and approaches that stress the difference between women and men and that draw attention to the (44) _____ needs of women.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 35. A. notice | B. attention | C. benefit | D. equality |
| 36. A. deals | B. tends | C. develops | D. initiates |
| 37. A. pressure | B. problem | C. variation | D. influence |
| 38. A. most | B. those | C. that | D. which |
| 39. A. detriment | B. benefit | C. position | D. advocate |
| 40. A. difference | B. attention | C. equalities | D. inequalities |
| 41. A. widened | B. spent | C. lasted | D. lengthened |
| 42. A. freedom | B. independence | C. tradition | D. equality |
| 43. A. kind | B. sort | C. range | D. type |
| 44. A. definite | B. specific | C. vague | D. general |

Read the following passage and mark the letter At B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 45 to 54.

During the nineteenth century, women in the United States organized and participated in a large number of reform movements, including movements to reorganize the prison system, improve education, ban the sale of alcohol, grant rights to people who were denied them, and most importantly, free slaves. Some women saw similarities in the social status of women and slaves. Women like Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Lucy Stone were feminists and abolitionists who supported the rights of both women and blacks. A number of male abolitionists, including William Lloyd Garrison and Wendell Phillips, also supported the rights of women to speak and to participate equally with men in antislavery activities. Probably more than any other movement, abolitionism offered women a previously denied entry into politics. They became involved primarily in order to better their living conditions and improve the conditions of others.

When the Civil War ended in 1865, the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments to the Constitution adopted in 1868 and 1870 granted citizenship and suffrage to blacks but not to women. Discouraged but resolved, feminists worked tirelessly to influence more and more women to demand the right to vote. In 1869, the Wyoming Territory had yielded to demands by feminists, but the states on the East Coast resisted more stubbornly than before. A women's suffrage bill had been presented to every Congress since 1878, but it continually failed to pass until 1920, when the Nineteenth Amendment granted women the right to vote.

Notes:

- **feminist** (n.) = người bênh vực bình quyền cho phụ nữ
- **abolitionism** (n.) = (sử học) chủ nghĩa bãi bỏ

45. With what topic is the passage primarily concerned?

- A. The Wyoming Territory
- B. The Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments
- C. Abolitionists
- D. Women's suffrage

46. The word "ban" in paragraph 1 most nearly means to _____.

- A. encourage
- B. publish
- C. prohibit
- D. limit

47. The word "supported" in paragraph 1 could best be replaced by _____.

- A. disregarded
- B. acknowledged
- C. contested
- D. promoted

48. According to the passage, why did women become active in politics?

- A. To improve the conditions of life that existed at the time.
- B. To support Elizabeth Cady Stanton for president,
- C. To be elected to public office.
- D. To amend the Declaration of Independence.

49. The word "primarily" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. above all
- B. somewhat
- C. finally
- D. always

50. What had occurred shortly after the Civil War?

- A. The Wyoming Territory was admitted to the Union.
- B. A women's suffrage bill was introduced in Congress,
- C. The eastern states resisted the end of the war.
- D. Black people were granted the right to vote.

51. The word "suffrage" in paragraph 2 could best be replaced by which of the following?

- A. pain
- B. citizenship
- C. freedom from slavery
- D. the right to vote

52. What does the Nineteenth Amendment guarantee?

- A. Voting rights for blacks
- B. Citizenship for blacks
- C. Voting rights for women
- D. Citizenship for women

53. The word "it" in paragraph 2 refers to _____.

- A. bill
- B. Congress
- C. vote
- D. Nineteenth Amendment

54. When were women allowed to vote throughout the United States?

- A. after 1866
- B. after 1870
- C. after 1878
- D. after 1920

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 55 to 64.

Aging is the process of growing old. It occurs eventually in every living thing provided, of course, that an illness or accident does not kill it prematurely. The most familiar outward

signs of aging may be seen in old people, such as the graying of the hair and the wrinkling of the skin. Signs of aging in a pet dog or cat include loss of playfulness and energy, a decline in hearing and eyesight, or even a slight graying of the coat. Plant age too, but the signs are much harder to detect.

Most body parts grow bigger and stronger, and function more efficiently during childhood. They reach their peak at the time of maturity, or early adulthood. After that, they begin to decline. Bones, for example, gradually become lighter and more **brittle**. In the aged, the joints between the bones also become rigid and more inflexible. This can make moving very painful.

All the major organs of the body show signs of aging. The brain, for example, works less efficiently, and even gets smaller in size. Thinking processes of all sorts are slowed down. Old people often have trouble in remembering recent events.

One of the most serious changes of old age occur in the arteries, the blood vessels that lead from the heart. They become thickened and constricted, allowing less blood to flow to the rest of the body. This condition accounts, directly or indirectly, for many of the diseases of the aged. It may, for example, result in heart attack.

Aging is not a uniform process. Different parts of the body wear out at different rates. There are great differences among people in their rate of aging. Even the cells of the body differ in the way they age. The majority of cells are capable of reproducing themselves many times during the course of a lifetime.

Gerontologists - scientists who study the process of aging - believe this wearing out of the body is controlled by a built-in biological time-clock. They are trying to discover how this clock works so that they can slow down the process. This could give man a longer life and a great number of productive years.

55. What is the main idea of the first paragraph?

- A.** Signs of aging are easier to detect in animals than in plants.
- B.** Aging occurs in every living thing after it has reached maturity,
- C.** Not all signs of aging are visible.
- D.** The outward signs of aging may be seen in old people.

56. What does the word "it" in paragraph 1 refer to?

- A.** aging
- B.** a living thing
- C.** an illness
- D.** an accident

57. All of the following may be the outward signs of aging EXCEPT _____.

- A.** the graying of the hair
- B.** the wrinkling of the skin
- C.** the decline in hearing and eyesight
- D.** the loss of appetite

58. When does the human body begin to lose vigour and the ability to function efficiently?

- A.** Soon after reaching adulthood
- B.** During childhood
- C.** Early adulthood
- D.** Past middle age

59. What happens to memorization when the brain begins to age?

SECTION B (2 points)

I. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers on your answer sheet.

65. The meeting has been postponed until next Friday.
They have put _____.

66. There is no ice-cream left.
We have run _____.

67. Bob's training accident meant he couldn't take part in the race.
Bob's training accident prevented _____.

68. School uniform must be worn at all times by young pupils.
Young pupils _____.

69. Michael didn't listen to what his doctor told him.
Michael took _____.

II. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about measures to take to protect endangered animals.

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- raising the awareness of the importance of the wildlife
- protect their habitats
- raising the living standards of local people
- passing and enforcing laws to protect endangered species

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 4

§***§

SECTION A (8 points)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. lakes B. certificates C. homes D. tapes
2. A. lean B. teammate C. beacon D. overhead
3. A. change B. stomach C. watch D. church

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

4. A. enthusiasm B. development C. athletic D. politics
5. A. rhinoceros B. advertisement C. eventually D. dedicated

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. We are pleased _____ the winner of this year's Award for Outstanding Achievement in Management.
A. announces B. announced C. to announce D. are announcing
7. We regret to inform you that Ms. Markowitz's workshop on public speaking postponed until next week.
A. were B. being C. has been D. would be
8. In the preparation of fibrous material for production uses, stiff woody fibers from plants _____ fibers from animal sources.
A. the most heat the B. need, the more heat than
C. than more heat the D. need more heat than
9. Environmentalists are earnestly trying to determine _____ of the ozone layer over the poles.
A. what is causing the deterioration B. what the cause of the deterioration
C. is causing the deterioration D. the deterioration is causing
10. They were such difficult tests _____.
A. so I couldn't finish them B. that I couldn't finish
C. that I couldn't finish them D. for me to finish
11. _____ to Jim myself, I can't really tell you why he would say such terrible things.
A. Not to be speaking B. Because of not speaking
C. Not to have spoken D. Not having spoken
12. Tuna, _____, may weigh up 1,000 pounds.
A. is the sea giant B. can be giants of the sea
C. the sea of the giant D. one of the sea giants

13. In the film, a teenager _____ to pursue a singing career meets resistance from his strong-willed father.
- A. wants B. wanted C. wanting D. who want
14. _____ most of his co-workers, Chris prefers to arrive early for work rather than stay late.
- A. Among B. Except C. Unlike D. Following
15. The company will open three manufacturing plants _____ the end of next year.
- A. on B. to C. by D. of
16. Last year, nearly \$14 billion was _____ in funds across Asia and Latin America.
- A. invest B. Bo invested C. investor D. investment
17. Doctors usually have to study for at least six years before becoming fully_____ .
- A. examined B. qualified C. tested D. approved of
18. The football match tomorrow evening will be broadcast _____ on TV and radio.
- A. simultaneously B. communally C. uniformly D. jointly
19. The sales representative suggested an initial meeting to discuss the proposal as soon as the beta product is ready, _____ that might be.
- A. no matter B. which C. whenever D. what
20. The team members have the same opinions on the matter _____ they shared the same information.
- A. following B. more than C. because D. unless
21. _____ a few sounds produced by insects can be heard by humans.
- A. Only B. There are only C. That only D. With only
22. Population expansion seems to surpass the ability of the earth to meet _____ food.
- A. the requirement of B. the command of
C. the demand for D. the necessity for
23. Tom: "I'm sorry. I won't be able to come." Mary: "_____ "
- A. Great. B. Oh, that's annoying.
C. Well, never mind. D. Sounds like fun.
24. A: "You're already leaving? The ball is only starting."
B: "But it's very late, so _____ ."
- A. take care B. have a good day
C. goodbye for now D. it's great fun
- Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*
25. Did she get the better of you in the argument?
- A. try to beat B. gain a disadvantage over
C. gain an advantage over D. try to be as good as

26. Currently, there are more deer in our country than at any other time in the history.

- A. At present B. At once C. Before long D. Up to now

27. The doctor advised me not to assume too much work in the future.

- A. absorb in B. take on C. go over D. come into

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

28. The massacre of the Jews in World War II has accounted for its people's hostility towards foreigners.

- A. disease B. hazard C. offence D. friendliness

29. I have a vague recollection of meeting him when I was a child.

- A. apparent B. indistinct C. imprecise D. ill-defined

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

30. Insufficient protein in the diet may cause a lack of energy, stunted growth, and

A B C

lowering resistance to disease.

D

31. All of NASA's man spacecraft projects are headquartered at the Space Center

A B C D

in Houston.

32. Allowing children to help plan and prepare family meals provide enjoyable learning

A

experiences that later encourage them to eat the foods they have prepared

B C D

33. My father used to give me a good advice whenever I had a problem.

A B C D

34. Had it not been for you help me, I wouldn't have succeeded.

A B C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 35 to 44.

A worrying question which (35) global attention is severe overpopulation and its drastic effect in the countries of the Third World. In regions where the birth rate is extremely high, poverty and starvation are (36) _____. In India, there is (37) _____ of thirty-five infants being born every minute, yet the most shocking figures are those which (38) _____ the enormous number of the victims of famine in certain African territories. Communities afflicted with acute destitution are additionally confronted with illiteracy, life in appalling conditions and infectious diseases (39) _____ the indigenous populations. There is an urgent need for these problems to be solved. Unless measures are taken to (40)

_____ the suffering of the impoverished underdeveloped nations, desperate crowds of immigrants will (41) _____ in flooding the richest states in (42) _____ of a brighter future. It is the most (43) _____ task for the international giants nowadays to help the poor populations get out of the poverty (44) _____ .

Notes:

- **profuse** (adj.) = dồi dào
- **rife** = lan rộn, hoành hành
- **decimate** (v.) = tàn sát, tiêu hao nhiều

·numerate (v.) = đếm, liệt kê

linger (v.) = kéo dài, nán lại

- **persist in sth** = khăng khăng

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 35. A. insists | B. wishes | C. requires | D. asks |
| 36. A. profuse | B. rife | C. generous | D. predominant |
| 37. A. a ratio | B. a measure | C. an average | D. a proportion |
| 38. A. appear | B. refer | C. indicate | D. comprise |
| 39. A. decimating | B. enumerating | C. discounting | D. outnumbering |
| 40. A. discard | B. vanish | C. evaporate | D. ease |
| 41. A. linger | B. maintain | C. persist | D. remain |
| 42. A. search | B. chase | C. lookout | D. survey |
| 43. A. confronting | B. challenging | C. rousing | D. plaguing |
| 44. A. lure | B. pitfall | C. snare | D. trap |

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 45 to 54.

Any list of the greatest thinkers in history contains the name of the brilliant physicist Albert Einstein. His theories of relativity led to entirely new ways of thinking about time, space, matter, energy, and gravity. Einstein's work led to such scientific advances as the control of atomic energy, even television as a practical application of Einstein's work. In 1902, Einstein became an examiner in the Swiss patent office in Bern. In 1905, at age 26, he published the first of five major research papers. The first one provided a theory explaining Brownian movement, the zigzag motion of microscopic particles in suspension. The second paper laid the foundation for the photon, or quantum, theory of light. In it, he proposed that light is composed of separate packets of energy, called quanta or photons, which have some of the properties of particles and some of the properties of waves. The third paper contained the "special theory of relativity" which showed that time and motion are relative to

the observer, if the speed of light is constant and the natural laws are the same everywhere in the universe. The fourth paper was a mathematical addition to the special theory of relativity. Here Einstein presented his famous formula: $E = mc^2$, known as the energy mass equivalence. In 1916, Einstein published his general theory of relativity. In it, he proposed

that gravity is not a force, but a curve in in the space time continuum, created by the presence of mass.

Einstein spoke out frequently against nationalism, the exalting of one nation above all others. He opposed war ad violence and supported Zionism, the movement to establish a Jewish homeland in Palestine. When the Nazis came to power in 1933, they denounced his ideas. He then moved to United States. In 1939, Einstein learned that two German chemists had split the uranium atom. Einstein wrote to President Franklin D. Roosevelt warning him that this scientific knowledge could lead to Germany developing an atomic bomb. He suggested the United States begin its own atomic bomb research.

Notes:

- **Zionism** (n.) = chủ nghĩa phục quốc Do Thái
- **denounce** (v.) = lênh án, phản đối kịch liệt

45. Einstein's primary work was in the area of _____.
- A. chemistry B. biology C. physics D. engineering
46. Which of the following inventions is mentioned in the passage as a practical application of Einstein's discoveries?
- A. Radio B. Automobiles C. Computers D. Television
47. According to the passage, Einstein supported all of the following EXCEPT _____.
A. the establishment of a Jewish homeland in Palestine
B. nationalism
C. atomic bomb research in the United States
D. the defeat of the Nazis
48. In which country did Einstein work before he published his major research papers?
A. Switzerland B. United States C. Germany D. Israel
49. What is "Brownian movement"?
A. The zigzag motion of microscopic particles in suspension.
B. The emission of electrons from solids when struck by light,
C. The motion of photons in light.
D. The basis of the theory of relativity.
50. Einstein worked in all of the following countries EXCEPT _____.
A. Belgium B. Germany C. United States D. Switzerland
51. It is clear from the tone of the passage that the author feels .
A. Einstein's work in physics was somewhat tarnished by his conservative political views.
B. Albert Einstein was one of the most brilliant thinkers in history.
C. Einstein's work in physics, though theoretically impressive, led to few practical applications.
D. Einstein's theories have been consistently proven incorrect.
52. According to Einstein's special theory of relativity _____.

- A. all properties of matter and energy can be explained in a single mathematical formula
 - B. light is composed of separate packets of energy
 - C. time and motion are relative to the observer
 - D. some solids emit electrons when struck by light
53. The word “exalting” in paragraph 2 most nearly means _____.
- A. elevation
 - B. criticism
 - C. support
 - D. elimination
54. According to Einstein, light is composed of separate packets of energy called
- A. electrons
 - B. photoelectrons
 - C. quanta
 - D. gamma rays

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 55 to 64.

The human criterion for perfect vision is 20/20 for reading the standard lines on a Snellen eye chart without a hitch. The score is determined by how well you read the bottom line on the eye chart does not approximate perfection as far as other species are concerned. Most birds would consider us very visually handicapped. The hawk, for instance, has such sharp eyes that it can spot a dime on the sidewalk while perched on top of the Empire State Building. It can make fine visual distinctions because it is blessed with one million cones per square millimeter in its retina.

And in water, humans are farsighted, while the kingfisher, swooping down to spear fish, can see well in both the air and water because it is endowed with two foveae - areas of the eye, consisting mostly of cones - that provide visual distinctions. One foveae permits the bird, while in the air, to scan the water below with one eye at a time. This is called monocular vision. Once it hits the water, the other foveae joins in, allowing the kingfisher to focus both eyes, like binoculars, on its prey at the same time. A frog's vision is distinguished by its ability to perceive things as a constant motion picture. Known as “bug detectors”, a highly developed set of cells in a frog's eyes responds mainly to moving objects. So, it is said that a frog sitting in a field of dead bugs wouldn't see them as food and would starve.

The bee has a “compound” eye, which is used for navigation. It has 15,000 facets that divide what it sees into a pattern of dots, or mosaic. With this kind of vision, the bee sees the sun only a single dot, a constant point of reference. Thus, the eye is a superb navigational instrument that constantly measures the angle of its line of flight in relation to the sun. A bee's eye also gauges flight speed. And if that is not enough to leave our 20/20 “perfect vision” paling into insignificance, the bee is capable of seeing something we can't - ultraviolet light. Thus, what humans consider to be “perfect vision” is in fact rather limited when we look at other species. However, there is still much to be said for the human eye. Of all the mammals, only humans and some primates can enjoy the pleasures of color vision.

Notes:

- **foveae** (n.) = (giải phẫu) học nhỏ ở giữa võng mạc (noi tập trung nhiều tế bào nhạy với màu sắc và ánh sáng)

- primate (n.) = động vật linh trưởng

55. What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. Limits of the human eye
- B. Perfect vision
- C. Different eyes for different uses
- D. Eye variation among different species

56. The word “criterion” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. standard
- B. need
- C. expectation
- D. rule

57. The phrase “without a hitch” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. unaided
- B. without glasses
- C. with little hesitation
- D. easily

58. According to the passage, why might birds and animals consider humans very visually handicapped?

- A. Humans can't see very well in either air or water.
- B. Human eyes are not as well suited to our needs.
- C. The main outstanding feature of human eyes is color vision.
- D. Human eyes can't do what their eyes can do.

59. The word “that” in paragraph 2 refers to _____.

- A. foveae
- B. areas of the eye
- C. cones
- D. visual distinctions

60. According to the passage, “bug detectors” are useful for _____.

- A. navigations
- B. seeing moving objects
- C. avoiding bugs when getting food
- D. avoiding starvation

61. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT true?

- A. Kingfishers have monocular vision.
- B. Bees can see patterns of dots.
- C. Hawks' eyes consist mostly of cones that can allow it to scan with one eye at a time.
- D. Humans are farsighted in water.

62. Where in the passage does the author discuss that eyes are useful for avoiding starvation?

- A. The first sentence of paragraph 1.
- B. The first sentence of paragraph 3.
- C. The third sentence of paragraph 2.
- D. The last sentence of paragraph 2.

63. The phrase “paling into insignificance” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to

- A. fading away
- B. of less importance
- C. without colored light
- D. being reduced to little importance

64. Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?

- A. Eyes have developed differently in each species
- B. Bees have the most complex eyes
- C. Humans should not envy what they don't have.
- D. Perfect vision is not perfect.

SECTION B (2 points)

I. *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers on your answer sheet.*

65. When he was a child in the countryside, Nam went swimming almost every day.

During _____.

66. All the witnesses said that the accident was my fault.

All the witnesses said that I _____.

67. I do not intend to tell you my plans.

I have no _____.

68. She did not thank us for our help when she left.

She left without _____.

69. Jane is the only person I know who enjoys collecting coins.

I don't know anyone else _____.

II. *In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the disadvantages of using electronic devices in class.*

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

- Distracting students from their studies
- Having access to inappropriate information
- Using the devices for a bad purpose

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 5

Đ***&

SECTION A (8 points)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. laugh B. naughty C. slaughter D. taught
2. A. question B. presentation_ C. modernization_ D. industrialization_
3. A. eternal B. energy C. eradicate D. eliminate

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.

4. A. prevent B. recent C. receive D. remote
5. A. appropriate B. intimacy C. miraculous D. solidify

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. The boys proposed that their group leader _____ a camping trip.
A. organized B. organize C. organizes D. organizing
7. Imagine _____ when the ancient Egyptians built the pyramids. How would your life have been different?
A. you had been living B. you are living
C. you live D. you have been living
8. The more you talk about the matter, _____.
A. the situation seems the worse B. the situation seems worse
C. the worse seems the situation D. the worse the situation seems
9. Only when the ground is kept moist_____ germinate.
A. will grass seeds B. grass seeds will
C. does grass seeds D. grass seeds does
10. Using many symbols makes _____ to put a large amount of information on a single map.
A. it possible B. possible C. it is possible D. that possible
11. A few animals sometimes fool their enemies _____ to be dead.
A. have been appearing B. to be appearing
C. to appear D. by appearing
12. A good essay must _____ contain enough interesting ideas and specific exam but also have good organization.
A. in addition B. either C. not only D. as well
13. You must always have a good breakfast every morning _____ late you are.
A. even if B. whatever C. no matter D. however

14. The bridge connecting Potsdam to Suffern will open _____ traffic on Tuesday.
A. to B. at C. as D. from
15. The healthcare community was shocked _____ Peter's resignation after only one year as president of Health corps.
A. in B. up C. of D. by
16. Because of the _____ of hospital employees at that hospital, the head of administration began advertising job openings in the newspaper.
A. short B. shorter C. shorten D. shortage
17. proficiency in German would be of much help, it is not a requirement for the advertised position.
A. Otherwise B. Despite C. Regarding D. Although
18. _____. none of the participants has showed any interest, numerous outdoor activities have to be cancelled.
A. Whether B. Since C. For D. Which
19. . ____ her hard work and commitment to the company, Ms.Ramirez was promoted to the head of the public relations department.
A. Due to B. While C. In that D. In case
20. ____ , William Shakespeare is the most widely known.
A. All writers in English B. All of the writers in English
C. Of all writers in English D. With all, writers in English
21. Sports competitions are held to ____ cooperation and solidarity among countries.
A. grow B. upgrade C. spring up D. promote
22. The Seville Group must acquire at least one more _____ before it can purchase the property.
A. command B. obstacle C. investor D. demonstration
23. John: "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary?" Mary: " ____"
A. Thank you very much. I'm afraid.
B. Thank you for your compliment,
C. You are telling a lie.
D. I don't like your sayings.
24. Tom: "Can I have another cup of tea?" Linda: " ____"
A. Be yourself. B. Do it yourself,
C. Allow yourself. D. Help yourself.
- Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.*
25. Advanced students need to be aware of the importance of word collocation.
A. of high level B. of great improvement
C. of high position D. of great progress
26. Please stop making that noise! It really gets on my nerves.

- A. wakes me up B. cheers me up C. amuses me D. annoys me
27. As tourism is more developed, people worry about the damage to the flora and fauna of the island.
- A. fruits and vegetables B. flowers and trees
C. plants and animals D. mountains and forests

Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following questions.

28. Polluted water and increased water temperatures have driven many species to the verge of extinction.
- A. enriched B. contaminated C. purified D. strengthened
29. The use of lasers in surgery has become relatively commonplace in recent years.
- A. absolutely B. relevantly C. virtually D. comparatively

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to show the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

30. Not until he came back home he realized that his house had been burgled into.

A B C D

31. The novelist Shirley Hazzard is noted for the insight, poetic style, and sensitive
- A B C

she demonstrates in her works.

D

32. Although they reflect a strong social conscience, Arthur Miller's stage works
- A

are typical more concerned with individuals than with systems.

B C D

33. Laser discs provide images of better quality than that of either television signals
- A B C D

or video tapes.

34. Have you ever considered to move another city to find a new job that uses

A B

the same skills but offers a better salary?

C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 35 to 44.

Reference books are not designed to be read from the first page to the last but rather to be consulted to answer the questions and provide both general and specific pieces of information.

One of the most (35) _____ used reference books is a dictionary, which provides information about words. It lists meanings and spellings, (36) _____ how a word is

pronounced, gives (37) _____ of how it is used, may reveal its origin and also lists synonyms and (38) _____. To help you find the words faster, there are guide words at the top of each page showing the first and last words on that page, and of course it (38) _____ to know the alphabet.

There may be numerous special sections at the back with (40) _____ about famous people and places, lists of dates and scientific names, etc. There is usually a section at the front (41) _____ how to use the dictionary, which includes the special abbreviations or signs.

An atlas is also a reference book and (42) _____ charts, tables and geographical facts, as well as maps. Political maps locate countries and cities, physical maps show the formation of the land with its mountains and valleys, and economic maps show industries and agriculture. To find a specific place, you need to look in the (43) _____ at the back of the atlas and the exact position on the map. There are numerous map (44) _____ that you need to know in order to be able to read a map - almost like a special language - and these are explained at the front of the atlas.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 35. A. greatly | B. mainly | C. widely | D. largely |
| 36. A. speaks | B. tells | C. says | D. gives |
| 37. A. evidence | B. roof | C. examples | D. cases |
| 38. A. antonyms | B. closest | C. opposite | D. controversies |
| 39. A. assists | B. pays | C. helps | D. works |
| 40. A. events | B. stories | C. facts | D. materials |
| 41. A. explaining | B. interpreting | C. suggesting | D. presenting |
| 42. A. composes | B. includes | C. consists | D. contains |
| 43. A. foreword | B. preface | C. complement | D. index |
| 44. A. marks | B. signs | C. signals | D. symbols |

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 45 to 54.

Being aware of one's own emotions - recognizing and acknowledging feelings as they happen - it at the very heart of Emotional Intelligence. And this awareness encompasses not only moods but also thoughts about those moods. People who are able to monitor their feelings as they arise are less likely to be ruled by them and are thus better able to manage their emotions.

Managing emotions does not mean suppressing them; nor does it mean giving free rein to every feeling. Psychologist Daniel Goldman, one of several authors who have popularized the notion of Emotional Intelligence, insisted that the goal is balance and that every feeling has value and significance. As Goldman said, "A life without passion would be a dull wasteland of neutrality, cut off and isolated from the richness of life itself." Thus, we manage our emotions by expressing them in an appropriate manner. Emotions can also be managed by engaging in activities that cheers us up, soothe our hurts, or reassures us

when we feel anxious.

Clearly, awareness and management of emotions are not independent. For instance, you might think that individuals who seem to experience their feelings more intensely than others would be less able to manage them. However, a **critical** component of awareness of emotions is the ability to assign meaning to them — to know why we are experiencing a particular feeling or mood. Psychologists have found that, among individuals who experience intense emotions, individual differences predict differences in the ability to manage **them**. In other words, if two individuals are intensely angry, the one who is better able to understand why he or she is angry will also be better able to manage the anger.

Self-motivation refers to strong emotional self-control, which enables a person to get moving and **pursue** worthy goals, persist at tasks even when frustrated, and resist the temptation to act on impulse. Resisting impulsive behaviour is, according to Goldman, “the root of all emotional self-control”.

Of all the attributes of Emotional Intelligence, the ability to postpone immediate gratification and to persist in working toward some greater future gain is most closely related to success - whether one is trying to build a business, get a college degree, or even stay on a diet. One researcher examined whether this trait can predict a child’s success in school. The study showed that four-year-old children who can delay instant gratification in order to advance toward some future goal will be “far superior as students” when they graduate from high school than will four-year-olds who are not able to resist the impulse to satisfy their immediate wishes.

Notes:

- **free rein** = the freedom to do something
- **persist** (v.) = khăng khăng, CO chap, kiên trì
- **gratification** (n.) = sự hài lòng

45. Which of the following can we infer from paragraph 1?

- A. If people pay attention to their feelings, they will not be able to manage them.
- B. If people pay attention to their feelings, they can control their emotions better.
- C. People who can manage their emotions will be controlled by them.
- D. Some people can understand their feelings better than others.

46. The word “**soothe**” in paragraph 2 could be best replaced by _____.

- A. worsen
- B. reduce
- C. weaken
- D. relieve

47. According to paragraphs 1 to 3, people should be aware of their emotions so that they can _____.

- A. stop feeling angry
- B. manage their emotions appropriately
- C. experience feelings more intensely
- D. explain their emotions to others

48. From paragraph 2, we can see that Daniel Goldman _____

- A. wrote about Emotional Intelligence
 - B. studied how people manage their emotions
 - C. trained people to increase their Emotional Intelligence
 - D. treated patients who had emotional problems
49. All of the following are mentioned in paragraph 2 about our emotions EXCEPT _____.
- A. we can manage our emotions
 - B. we should ignore some feelings
 - C. every feeling is important
 - D. emotions are part of a satisfying life
50. The word “critical” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.
- A. indecisive
 - B. inessential
 - C. dynamic
 - D. important
51. The word “them” in paragraph 3 refers to _____.
- A. intense emotions
 - B. psychologists
 - C. individuals
 - D. individual differences
52. In paragraph 3, the author explains the concept of awareness and management of emotions by _____.
- A. giving examples of why people get angry
 - B. describing how people learn to control their emotions
 - C. comparing how two people might respond to an intense emotion
 - D. explaining why some people are not aware of their emotion
53. The word “pursue” in paragraph 4 mostly means _____.
- A. be involved in something
 - B. improve or develop something
 - C. try to achieve something
 - D. find out about something
54. According to paragraph 5, children if they can resist impulses.
- A. have more friends at school
 - B. easily understand new information
 - C. might be more successful in school
 - D. might be more popular with their teachers

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 55 to 64.

Esperanto is what is called a planned, or artificial language. It was created more than a century ago by Polish eye doctor Ludwik Lazar Zamenhof. Zamenhof believed that a common language would help to alleviate some of the misunderstandings among cultures.

In Zamenhof's first attempt at a universal language, he tried to create a language that was as uncomplicated as possible. This first language included words such as *ab, ac, ba, eb, be*, and *cc*. This did not result in a workable language in that these monosyllabic words, though short, were not easy to understand or to retain. Next, Zamenhof tried a different way of constructing a simplified language. He made the words in his language sound like words that people already knew, but he simplified the grammar tremendously. One example of how he simplified the language can be seen in the suffixes: all nouns in this language end in

—o, as in the noun *amiko*, which means “friend”, and all adjectives end in -a, as in the adjective *bela*, which means “pretty”. Another example of the simplified language can be seen in the prefix *mal-*, which makes a word opposite in meaning; the word *malamiko*, therefore, means “enemy”, and the word *malbela*, therefore, means “ugly” in Zamenhof’s language.

In 1887, Zamenhof wrote a description of this language and published it. He used a pen name, Dr. Esperanto, when signing the book. He selected the name Esperanto because this word means “a person who hopes” in his language. Esperanto clubs began popping up throughout Europe, and by 1950, Esperanto had spread from Europe to America and Asia.

In 1905, the First World Congress of Esperanto took place in France, with approximately 700 attendees from 20 different countries. Congresses were held annually for nine years, and 4,000 attendees were registered for the Tenth World Esperanto Congress scheduled for 1914, when World War I erupted and forced its cancellation.

Esperanto has had its ups and downs in the period since World War I. Today, years after it was introduced, it is estimated that perhaps a quarter of a million people are fluent in it. This may seem like a large number, but it is really quite small when compared with the billion English speakers and billion Mandarin Chinese speakers in today’s world. Current advocates would like to see its use grow considerably and are taking steps to try to make this happen.

55. The topic of this passage is _____.

- A. how language can be improved
- B. a language developed in the last few years
- C. one man’s efforts to create a universal language
- D. using language to communicate internationally

56. According to the passage, Zamenhof wanted to create a universal language _____.

- A. to create one world culture
- B. to resolve cultural differences
- C. to provide a more complex language
- D. to build a name for himself

57. It can be inferred from the passage that the Esperanto word *mcilespera* means _____.

- A. hopelessness B. hope C. hopeful D. hopeless

58. The expression “popping up” in paragraph 4 could best be replaced by _____.

- A. leaping B. hiding C. shouting D. opening

59. It can be inferred from the passage that the Third World Congress of Esperanto took place _____.

- A. in 1907 B. in 1905 C. in 1909 D. in 1913

60. According to the passage, what happened to the Tenth World Esperanto Congress?

- A. It had attendees from 20 countries.
- B. It never took place
- C. It had 4,000 attendees.
- D. It was scheduled for 1915.

SECTION B (2 points)

I. *Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers on your answer sheet.*

65. We haven't got the central heating, so the house is rather cold.
If we _____.

66. "I have just received a message," he said, "I must go home".
He said _____.

67. People think that he has information which will be useful to the police.
He is _____.

68. He got up early but he missed the first bus.
In spite _____.

69. There has been a definite improvement in your work lately.
Lately your work _____.

II. In about 140 words, write a paragraph about the topic "University is not the only way for students who have just graduated from high school"

The following prompts might be helpful to you:

 - The way for students who are good at technique
 - The need of our society for skilled workers and technicians
 - The opportunity to get higher education later

ĐÁP ÁN

Chuyên đề
1

NGỮ ÂM

Exercise 1:

1.D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. C

Notes:

1. *Dáp án là D: talk /tɔ:k/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɔ:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.*
2. *Dáp án là D: wash /wɒʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ae/.*
3. *Dáp án là D: any /'eni/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ei/.*
4. *Dáp án là B: lapel /bə'pel/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ei/.*
5. *Dáp án là A: butter /'bʌtə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /o/.*
6. *Dáp án là D: good /gʊd/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/.*
7. *Dáp án là A: would /wʊd/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aʊ/.*
8. *Dáp án là C: sew /sau/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/.*
9. *Dáp án là C: women /'wɪmɪn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a/.*
10. *Dáp án là C: many /'menɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.*

Exercise 2:

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. B

Notes:

1. *Dáp án là A: pretty /'prɪti/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.*
2. *Dáp án là A: children /'tʃɪldrən/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.*
3. *Dáp án là C: said /sed/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ei/.*
4. *Dáp án là A: mean /mi:n/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.*

5. Đáp án là B: lose /lu:z/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.
6. Đáp án là B: busy /'bɪzɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.
7. Đáp án là D: hair /heə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ei/.
8. Đáp án là D: limb /lim/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
9. Đáp án là B: receive /r'si:v/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.
10. Đáp án là B: wash /wɒʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /o:/.

Exercise 3:

1.A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là A: come /kʌm/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
2. *Đáp án là A: replace /ri'pleɪs/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/.*
3. *Đáp án là B: limit /'lɪmɪt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.*
4. *Đáp án là D: puncture /'pʌŋktʃə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/.*
5. *Đáp án là A: ghost /gəʊst/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/.*
6. *Đáp án là D: breathe /bri:ð/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.*
7. *Đáp án là A: suitable /'su:təbl/ có phằng gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/.*
8. *Đáp án là D: psychology /saɪ'kɒdʒɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/.*
9. *Đáp án là C: gravity /'grævəti/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.*
10. *Đáp án là C: many /'menɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.*

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là B: nasty /'nɔ:sti/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ:/. Các phương án khác*

có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ei/.

2. *Đáp án là A*: distribute /dɪ'stribju:t/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/.
3. *Đáp án là B*: creative /kri'eitiv/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /iei/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.
4. *Đáp án là B*: idiom /'ɪdiəm/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
5. *Đáp án là A*: title /'taɪtl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/.
6. *Đáp án là B*: laugh /la:f/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a:/ . Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɔ:/.
7. *Đáp án là C*: thorough /'θʌrəʊ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.
8. *Đáp án là D*: furious /'fjuərɪəs/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /juə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/.
9. *Đáp án là A*: manage /'mænɪdʒ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
10. *Đáp án là B*: marry /'mæri/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.

Exercise 5:

1.C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là C*: tin /tɪn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
2. *Đáp án là D*: park /pa:k/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a:/ . Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
3. *Đáp án là A*: boot /bu:t/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/.
4. *Đáp án là B*: father /'fa:ðə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a:/ . Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
5. *Đáp án là B*: bury /'berɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có **PHẦN GẠCH CHÂN PHÁT ÂM LÀ /ʌ/**.
6. *Đáp án là A*: head /hed/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.
7. *Đáp án là B*: driven /'drɪvn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
8. *Đáp án là B*: scenic /'si:nɪk/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.
9. *Đáp án là A*: food /fu:d/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có

phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/.

10. *Đáp án là C: courageous /kə'reɪsəs/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.*

Exercise 6:

1. C 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là C: heal /hi:l/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.*
2. *Đáp án là D: proper /'prɒpə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
3. *Đáp án là D: undo /ʌn'du:/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ju/.*
4. *Đáp án là A: portrait /'pɔ:t्रɪət/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.*
5. *Đáp án là A: review /rɪ'veju:/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ju:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪə/.*
6. *Đáp án là D: miner /'maɪnə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/.*
7. *Đáp án là A: knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /d/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
8. *Đáp án là B: device /dɪ'veɪs/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/.*
9. *Đáp án là B: clear /klɪə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.*
10. *Đáp án là C: common /'kɒmən/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/.*

Exercise 7:

1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là B: pleasure /'pleʒə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.*
2. *Đáp án là B: good /gud/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/.*
3. *Đáp án là B: cost /kɒst/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
4. *Đáp án là A: head /hed/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.*
5. *Đáp án là C: fairly /'feəlɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.*

6. *Đáp án là D: courage /'kʌrɪdʒ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɔ:/.*
7. *Đáp án là C: bank /bæŋk/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /b/.*
8. *Đáp án là B: bow /baʊ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
9. *Đáp án là B: tomb /tu:m/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.*
10. *Đáp án là C: man /mæn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.*

Exercise 8:

1.D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là D: mould /məʊld/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ao/.*
2. *Đáp án là C: foot /fʊt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/.*
3. *Đáp án là A: bush /buʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.*
4. *Đáp án là B: bead /bi:d/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/ Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.*
5. *Đáp án là C: foul /faʊl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ao/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.*
6. *Đáp án là A: says /sez/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ez/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪz/.*
7. *Đáp án là D: good /gud/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/.*
8. *Đáp án là A: butter /'bʌtə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʊ/.*
9. *Đáp án là C: pear /peə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/.*
10. *Đáp án là C: represent /,reprɪ'zerr/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là //.*

Exercise 9:

1.D 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là D: horses /'hɔ:siz/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /siz/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ziz/.*
2. *Đáp án là C: sugar /'ʃʊbgə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án*

khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/.

3. *Đáp án là A*: accurate /'ækjərət/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ks/.
4. *Đáp án là A*: cat /kæt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/.
5. *Đáp án là C*: that /ðæt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
6. *Đáp án là B*: hour /'aʊə (r)/ có phần gạch chân không phát âm (âm câm). Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/.
7. *Đáp án là A*: who /hu:/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /w/.
8. *Đáp án là B*: of /əv/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /v/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /f/.
9. *Đáp án là B*: gentle /'dʒentl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /dʒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /g/.
10. *Đáp án là C*: chemist /'kemɪst/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/.

Exercise 10:

1.A 2. D 3.C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là A*: whole /həʊl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /w/.
2. *Đáp án là D*: permission /pə'miʃn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʒ/.
3. *Đáp án là C*: who /hu:/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /w/.
4. *Đáp án là B*: cherish /'tʃerɪʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/.
5. *Đáp án là C*: historic /hɪ'stɔːrɪk/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân không phát âm (âm câm).
6. *Đáp án là A*: research /rɪ'sɜːtʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /z/.
7. *Đáp án là C*: expansion /ɪk'spænʃn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʒ/.
8. *Đáp án là B*: finished /'fɪnɪʃt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /U/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /d/.
9. *Đáp án là B*: therefore /ðeəfɔ:(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
10. *Đáp án là C*: ensure /ɪn'sjuə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án khác có

phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʒ/.

Exercise 11:

1.A 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. D

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là A: looked /lʊkt/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /t/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /d/.
2. *Đáp án là A: gentle /'dʒentl/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /dʒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /g/.
3. *Đáp án là D: ache /eɪk/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/.
4. *Đáp án là D: architect /'a:kɪtekt/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/.
5. *Đáp án là A: page /peɪdʒ/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /dʒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /g/.
6. *Đáp án là D: advertise /'ædvətaɪz/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /z/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/.
7. *Đáp án là B: champagne /ʃæm'peɪn/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʂ/.
8. *Đáp án là A: measure /'meʒə(r)/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /z/.
9. *Đáp án là A: practised /'præktɪst/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /t/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /d/.
10. *Đáp án là D: hospital /'hɒspɪtl/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /h/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân không phát âm (âm câm).

Exercise 12:

1.B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. A

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là B: chapter /'tʃæptə(r)/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /k/.
2. *Đáp án là D: books /buks/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /z/.
3. *Đáp án là A: tension /'tenʃn/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʃ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʒ/.
4. *Đáp án là C: plough /pləʊ/* có phần gạch chân không phát âm (âm câm). Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /f/.
5. *Đáp án là D: farther /'fa:ðə(r)/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
6. *Đáp án là B: there /ðeə(r)/* có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có

phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.

7. *Đáp án là C*: smooth /smu:ð/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
8. *Đáp án là B*: lose /lu:z/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /z/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /s/.
9. *Đáp án là A*: exchange /ɪks'tseɪndʒ/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /k/.
10. *Đáp án là A*: ploughed /plaʊd/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /d/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /t/.

Exercise 13:

1.B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. B

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là B*: breathe /bri:ð/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
2. *Đáp án là C*: students /'stju:dnts/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /s/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /z/.
3. *Đáp án là B*: with /wi ð/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
4. *Đáp án là D*: cube /kju:b/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /s/.
5. *Đáp án là A*: though / ðəʊ/ có phản gạch chân không phát âm (âm câm). Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /f/.
6. *Đáp án là C*: naked /'neɪkɪd/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /d/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /t/.
7. *Đáp án là A*: breathe /bri:ð/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
8. *Đáp án là C*: chord /kɔ:d/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /k/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /tʃ/.
9. *Đáp án là D*: with /wi ð/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ð/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /θ/.
10. *Đáp án là B*: sighs /saɪz/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /z/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /s/.

Exercise 14:

1.B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. C

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là B*: glory /'glɔ:ri/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ɔ:/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.
2. *Đáp án là A*: promise /'prɒmɪs/ có phản gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phản gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.

3. *Đáp án là B*: height /haɪt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.
4. *Đáp án là D*: tool /tu:l/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/ . Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /o/.
5. *Đáp án là A*: natural /nætʃrəl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.
6. *Đáp án là C*: terrific /tə'rifɪk/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.
7. *Đáp án là D*: rigid /'ridʒɪd/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
8. *Đáp án là D*: honey /'hʌni/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/.
9. *Đáp án là A*: pretty /'prɪti/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.
10. *Đáp án là C*: heighten /'haɪtn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ai/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.

Exercise 15:

1. C 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là C*: park /pa:k/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /a:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
2. *Đáp án là D*: wash /wɒʃ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
3. *Đáp án là D*: prefer /prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /s/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /z/.
4. *Đáp án là A*: monk /mʌŋk/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɒ/.
5. *Đáp án là B*: distribute /dɪ'stribju:t/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aɪ/.
6. *Đáp án là D*: tough /tʌf/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aʊ/.
7. *Đáp án là B*: beverage /'bevərɪdʒ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɪ/.
8. *Đáp án là C*: soup /su:p/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /u:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /aʊ/.
9. *Đáp án là B*: come /kʌm/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.
10. *Đáp án là A*: surgical /'sɜ:dʒɪkl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ɜ:/. Các phương án

khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/.

Exercise 16:

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B

Notes:

1. *Đáp án là D*: muscular /'mʌskjələ(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ju:/.
2. *Đáp án là A*: karate /kə'rɑ:tɪ/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/.
3. *Đáp án là C*: aspect /'æspekt/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə:/.
4. *Đáp án là C*: mutual /'mjʊ:tʃuəl/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ju:/ . Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.
5. *Đáp án là D*: cough /kɒf/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/.
6. *Đáp án là C*: advertise /'ædvətaɪz/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ə/.
7. *Đáp án là C*: steal /sti:/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /i:/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /e/.
8. *Đáp án là C*: champagne /ʃæm'peɪn/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /æ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /eɪ/.
9. *Đáp án là D*: encounter /m'kaʊntə(r)/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /əʊ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/.
10. *Đáp án là B*: umbrella /ʌm'brelə/ có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ʌ/. Các phương án khác có phần gạch chân phát âm là /ju:/.

TRỌNG ÂM

Exercise 17:

- 1.A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. D 8.A 9. C 10. A

Notes:

1. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
3. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
4. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
5. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
6. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
7. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
8. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
9. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.

10. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

Exercise 18:

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. B

Notes:

1. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
2. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ bốn, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
3. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
4. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
6. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
7. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
8. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
9. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
10. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

Exercise 19:

1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. B

Notes:

1. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
2. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
3. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
4. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
7. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
8. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ bốn.
9. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
10. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

Exercise 20:

1. D 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Notes:

1. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
3. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
4. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
7. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
8. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

9. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
10. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ bốn, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.

Exercise 21:

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. C

Notes:

1. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ bốn.
2. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ năm, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ bốn.
3. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
4. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
7. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
8. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
9. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
10. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.

Exercise 22:

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. C

Notes:

1. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
3. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
4. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
7. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
8. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
9. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
10. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

Exercise 23:

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. B

Notes:

1. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
3. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
4. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
5. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
7. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

8. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
9. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
10. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

Exercise 24:

1.A 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. C

Notes:

1. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
3. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
4. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
5. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
7. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
8. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
9. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
10. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.

Exercise 25:

1.B 2. A 3.B 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. B 10.C

Notes:

1. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
2. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
3. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
4. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
5. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
6. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
7. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
8. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.
9. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
10. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.

Exercise 26:

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Notes:

1. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ ba, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
2. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ ba.
3. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
4. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
5. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
6. Đáp án C có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.

7. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
8. Đáp án A có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
9. Đáp án B có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ hai.
10. Đáp án D có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai, các từ khác ở âm tiết thứ nhất.

PHƯƠNG THỨC CẤU TẠO TỪ

Exercise 1:

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Notes:

1. *Intense* (tính từ) = rất mạnh, mãnh liệt; *intensely* (phó từ) = mãnh liệt, dữ dội; *intensity* (danh từ) = sức mạnh, tính mãnh liệt; *intensify* (động từ) = làm mạnh lên, làm mãnh liệt.
2. *Subjective* (về ý kiến, quan điểm cá nhân) = chủ quan; *subject* (động từ) = bắt phải chịu; *subjectivism* (danh từ) = chủ nghĩa chủ quan.
3. *Invariably* (phó từ) = lúc nào cũng vậy; *variable* (tính từ) = có thể thay đổi được; *variety* (danh từ) = sự đa dạng; *various* (tính từ) = khác nhau.
4. *inconvenient* (tính từ) = bất tiện, phiền phức; *convenient* (tính từ) = tiện lợi, thuận tiện; *conveniently* (phó từ) = một cách tiện lợi; *convenience* (danh từ) = sự thuận tiện.
5. *Creation* (danh từ) = sự sáng tác, tác phẩm; *create* (động từ) = sáng tạo, tạo ra; *creator* (danh từ) = người sáng tạo, người tạo nên; *creativity* (danh từ) = óc sáng tạo, tính sáng tạo.
6. *Decoration* (danh từ) = sự trang trí, đồ trang trí; *decorator* (danh từ) = người trang trí; *decorative* (tính từ) = để trang trí; *decorativeness* (danh từ) = sự hấp dẫn, sự duyên dáng.
7. *Demonstrate* (động từ) = chứng tỏ, giải thích; *demonstration* (danh từ) = sự thuyết minh; *demonstrator* (danh từ) = người thao diễn; *demonstrative* (tính từ) = có luận chứng.
8. *Dependent* (tính từ) = lệ thuộc, phụ thuộc; *independence* (danh từ) = nền độc lập; *dependable* (tính từ) = đáng tin cậy; *dependability* (danh từ) = tính đáng tin cậy.
9. *Dictate* (động từ) = ra lệnh; *dictation* (danh từ) = sự ra lệnh; *dictatorial* (tính từ) = độc tài, chuyên chính; *dictatorship* (danh từ) = nền chuyên chính, chế độ độc tài.
10. *Employment* (danh từ) = hành động thuê người làm; *employment agency* = cơ quan giới thiệu việc làm; *employee* (danh từ) = người lao động; *employer* (danh từ) = chủ, người sử dụng lao động; *unemployed* (tính từ) = thất nghiệp.

Exercise 2:

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Notes:

1. *Enthusiastic* (tính từ) - hăng hái, nhiệt tình; *enthusiast* (danh từ) = người hăng hái; *enthusiastically* (phó từ) = một cách hăng hái; *enthusiasm* (danh từ) = sự hăng hái, sự nhiệt tình.

2. *Absent* (tính từ) = không có mặt ở nơi nào đó; *absently* (phó từ) = lơ đãng; *absentee* (danh từ) = người vắng mặt; *absenteeism* (danh từ) = tình trạng thường xuyên vắng mặt (ở công sở, ở trường học...).
3. *History* (danh từ) = lịch sử; *historical* (tính từ) = thuộc sở học; *historian* (danh từ) = nhà viết sử; *historically* (phó từ) = về phương diện lịch sử.
4. *Passion* (danh từ) = sự đam mê; *passionate* (tính từ) = hăng hái, nhiệt tình; *passionately* (danh từ) = một cách nồng nhiệt; *dispassionate* (tính từ) = không xúc động, thản nhiên.
5. *Donate* (động từ) “cho, tặng (một tổ chức từ thiện); *donation* (danh từ) = sự tặng, tặng phẩm; *donor* (danh từ) = người cho, người tặng.
6. *Communicate* (động từ) = truyền cái gì, giao tiếp; *communicate a disease* = truyền bệnh; *communication* (danh từ) = sự truyền đi; *communication of disease* = sự lan truyền bệnh tật; *communicable* (tính từ) = có thể lây; *a communicable disease* = bệnh có thể lây; *communicator* (danh từ) = người truyền tin.
7. *Chronology* (danh từ) = trình tự xảy ra các sự kiện; *chronological* (tính từ) = theo thứ tự thời gian; *chronologically* (phó từ) = theo niên đại; *chronologist* (danh từ) = nhà nghiên cứu niên đại.
8. *Significance* (danh từ) = ý nghĩa, sự quan trọng; *significant* (tính từ) = có ý nghĩa, quan trọng; *significantly* (phó từ) = đầy ý nghĩa; *signify* (động từ) = có tầm quan trọng.
9. *Imagine* (động từ) = tưởng tượng; *imagination* (danh từ) = trí tưởng tượng; *imaginary* (tính từ) = tưởng tượng, không có thực; *an imaginary disease* = bệnh tưởng tượng; *imaginative* (tính từ) = giàu tưởng tượng.
10. *Industrial* (tính từ) = thuộc về công nghiệp; *industrious* (tính từ) = cần cù, siêng năng; *industrialized* (tính từ) = được công nghiệp hóa; *industrialist* (danh từ) = nhà tư bản công nghiệp.

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. C

Notes:

1. *Observe* (động từ) = quan sát; *observatory* (danh từ) = đài quan sát; *observant* (tính từ) = hay quan sát, tinh mat; *observation* (danh từ) = sự quan sát; *a man of no observation* = người không có năng lực quan sát.
2. *Shortage* (danh từ) = sự thiếu; *shortly* (phó từ) = trong thời gian ngắn; *shorten* (động từ) = rút ngắn.
3. Xem lời giải thích Exercise 1, câu 9.
4. *Indicate* (động từ) = tỏ ra, biểu lộ; *indicative* (tính từ) = tỏ ra, ngụ ý; *be indicative of their lack of interest* = ngụ ý sự thiếu hứng thú của họ; *indicator* (danh từ) = người chỉ, dụng cụ chỉ cho biết; *indication* (danh từ) = sự biểu lộ.
5. *Progress* (danh từ) = sự tiến bộ; *progression* (danh từ) = sự xúc tiến; *progressive* (tính từ) = tiến bộ; *progressively* (phó từ) = tăng lên.
6. *Describe* (động từ) = miêu tả; *descriptive* (tính từ) = miêu tả; *description* (danh từ) = sự

miêu tả.

7. *Visual* (tính từ) = (thuộc) thị giác; *visible* (tính từ) = có thể nhìn thấy; *view* (danh từ) = tầm mat; *visibility* (danh từ) = tầm nhìn.
8. *Exclude* (động từ) = ngăn chặn, loại trừ; *exclusion* (danh từ) = sự loại trừ; *exclusive* (tính từ) = (thuộc về thương mại) độc quyền; *exclusively* (phó từ) = một cách độc quyền.
9. *Incompetence* (danh từ) = sự thiếu khả năng; *incompetency* (danh từ) = như *incompetence*; *incompetent* (tính từ) = thiếu khả năng; *incompetently* (phó từ) = non yếu, kém cỏi.
10. *Achieve* (động từ) = giành được, đạt được; *achievable* (tính từ) = có thể đạt được; *achievement* (danh từ) = thành tích, thành tựu.

Exercise 4:

1. C 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. A

Notes:

1. *Controversial* (tính từ) = có thể gây ra tranh luận; *controversially* (phó từ) = có tính cách tranh luận; *controvert* (động từ) = bàn cãi, tranh luận; *controversy* (danh từ) = sự tranh luận.
2. *Ambiguous* (tính từ) = mơ hồ; *ambiguously* (phó từ) = mơ hồ, nh�p nhằng; *ambiguity* (danh từ) = sự mơ hồ; *ambiguousness* (danh từ) = như *ambiguity*.
3. *Energize* (động từ) = làm cho mạnh mẽ; *energetic* (tính từ) = mạnh mẽ.
4. *Imprison* (động từ) = bỏ tù, tống giam; *imprisonment* (danh từ) = sự bỏ tù; *prison* (danh từ) = nhà tù; *prisoner* (danh từ) = tù nhân.
5. *Infectious* (tính từ) = hay lây, lây nhiễm; *infection* (danh từ) = sự lây nhiễm; *infected* (tính từ) = bị nhiễm trùng.
6. *Reside* (động từ) = sinh sống, cư trú; *residence* (danh từ) = nơi ở; *resident* (danh từ) = cư dân; *residential* (tính từ) = (thuộc) nhà ở, dân cư.
7. *Disorganized* (tính từ) = thiếu tổ chức, bát nháo; Ví dụ: *She's so disorganized that she never gets anything done.* (Cô ta đâu óc to chức kém đén nỗi không làm được cái gì đên noi đén chon.); *unorganized* (tính từ) = không ngăn nắp; *organized* (tính từ) = ngăn nắp.
8. *Endanger* (động từ) = gây nguy hiểm; *endangered* (tính từ) = trong tình thê nguy hiểm, có nguy cơ tuyệt chủng; *dangerous* (tính từ) = nguy hiểm.
9. Xem cách giải thích Exercise 2, câu 9. *Imaginable* (tính từ) = có thể tưởng tượng được, có thể hình dung được.
10. *Analyse* (động từ) = phân tích; *analysis* (danh từ) = sự phân tích; *analyst* (danh từ) = người phân tích.

Exercise 5:

- 1.B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Notes:

1. *Specify* (động từ) = chỉ rõ, định rõ; *specific* (tính từ) = rõ ràng, cụ thể; *specifically* (phó từ) = một cách cụ thể, rõ ràng; *specification* (danh từ) = sự chỉ rõ.

2. *Consider* (động từ) = xem xét, coi ai/ cái gì như một cái gì; *considerate* (tính từ) = thận trọng, chu đáo, ý tứ; *considerable* (tính từ) = đáng kể, lớn lao; *consideration* (danh từ) = sự đế ý.
3. *Stylish* (tính từ) = hợp thời trang; *stylishly* (phó từ) = hợp thời trang; *stylistic* (tính từ) = (thuộc) văn phong, (thuộc) phong cách nghệ thuật; *stylistically* (phó từ) = có liên quan phong cách nghệ thuật.
4. *Differ* (động từ) = khác, không giống; *differentiate between A and B/ A from B* (động từ) = phân biệt.
5. *Ignore* (động từ) = không để ý đến, lời đi; *ignorant of something* (tính từ) = không biết; *ignorantly* (phó từ) = không biết, dốt nát; *ignorance* (danh từ) = sự không biết.
6. *Define* (động từ) = định rõ, vạch rõ; *definite* (tính từ) = rõ ràng; *definitely* (phó từ) = chắc chắn, rõ ràng; *definition* (danh từ) = sự định rõ.
7. *Migrate* (động từ) = di trú, di cư; *migrant* (tính từ) = di trú; *migrant birds* = chim di trú; *migration* (danh từ) = sự di trú.
8. *Transform* (động từ) = biến đổi; *transformation* (danh từ) = sự biến đổi; *transformable* (tính từ) = có thể biến đổi.
9. Xem lại Exercise 1, câu 10. *Unemployment* (danh từ) = nạn thất nghiệp.
10. *Embarrass* (động từ) = làm lúng túng; *embarrassed* (tính từ) = lúng túng; *embarrassing* (tính từ) = làm lúng túng; *embarrassment* (danh từ) = sự lúng túng.

CHỌN TỪ - Sự KẾT HỢP TỪ

Exercise I:

1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Notes:

1. *Upon/on the whole* = tính hết mọi lẽ, tổng quát.
2. *Period* (danh từ) = thời kì, thời gian; *a period of time* - một khoảng thời gian.
3. *Memorize* (động từ) = ghi nhớ; *install* (động từ) = lắp đặt; *concern* (động từ) = lo âu.
4. *Devastate* (động từ) = tàn phá, phá huỷ; *battle* (động từ) = chiến đấu (trong trận đánh); *mop* (động từ) = lau, chùi.
5. *Chore* (danh từ) = việc vặt, việc mọn (thường dùng ở số nhiều); *pot plant* = cây trồng trong chậu.
6. *Obvious* (tính từ) = rõ ràng, hiển nhiên; *vigorous* (tính từ) = sôi nổi, mãnh liệt; *foolish* (tính từ) = ngớ ngẩn.
7. *Chemical* (danh từ) = hoá chất; *harmful chemical* = hoá chất độc hại.
8. *Concentrate on something* = tập trung vào cái gì, không làm cái gì khác.
9. *Essential* (tính từ) = cần thiết, thiết yếu; *efficient* (tính từ) = có hiệu quả; *available* (tính từ) = có sẵn; *dependable* (tính từ) = đáng tin cậy.
10. *Achieve one's goal(s)* = đạt mục đích; *catch* (động từ) = bắt lấy, nắm bắt, bắt kịp (không thê kết hợp với *goal*), *establish* (động từ) = thành lập.

Exercise 2:

1.C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Notes:

1. **Expectation** (danh từ) = sự trông mong (điều gì xảy ra) - từ này có nghĩa gần giống với từ *hope* đứng trước đó; **obligation** (danh từ) = nghĩa vụ, bỗn phận; **wish** (danh từ) = sự ước mong.
2. **Pay attention to something** = chú ý đến.
3. **Recognize** (động từ) = nhận ra; **know** (động từ) = quen biết với ai; **admit** (động từ) = thừa nhận.
4. **Career** (danh từ) = nghề nghiệp; **employment** (danh từ) = việc thuê mướn người; **workplace** (danh từ) = nơi làm việc.
5. **Reform** (danh từ) = (sự) cải cách; **educational reform/ reform in education** = cải cách giáo dục.
6. **Cooperation** (danh từ) = sự chung sức, sự hợp tác; **combination** (danh từ) = kết hợp; **competition** (danh từ) = (sự) đua tranh.
7. Xem Exercise 1, câu 10.
8. **Opportunity** (danh từ) = cơ hội; **at every opportunity** = as often as possible (càng thường xuyên càng tốt).
9. **Join** (động từ) = trở thành một thành viên; **perform** (động từ) = hoàn thành, biểu diễn; **participate in something** = tham gia.
10. **Ambition** (danh từ) = tham vọng; **direction** (danh từ) = sự điều khiển, phương hướng.

Exercise 3:

1.D 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. A

Notes:

1. **(have) an effect on someone/ something** = có tác động với ai/ cái gì; **damage to something** = (sự) thiệt hại.
2. **Volunteer (something) for something** (động từ) = tình nguyện, xung phong làm; **volunteer her services for an environmental group** — tình nguyện phục vụ trong nhóm bảo vệ môi trường.
3. **Absorb** (động từ) = tiếp thu; **provide someone with something/ something for someone** (động từ) = cung cấp; **transmit** (động từ) = truyền, phát tín hiệu.
4. **Insist** (động từ) = nhấn mạnh, khăng khăng. “*Some people insist that you can learn more by travelling to a place than by reading about it. They say firmly that it is true.*” (Một số người nhấn mạnh rằng anh có thể học hỏi về nơi nào đó bằng cách đến đó hơn là đọc trong sách vở. Họ quả quyết điều đó là đúng.)
5. **in addition** = ngoài ra; **in brief** = tóm lại; **in conclusion** = sau cùng, cuối cùng; **in contrast** = tương phản, đối照.
6. **Shortage** (danh từ) = sự thiếu, số lượng thiếu; **supply** (danh từ) = sự cung cấp; **surplus** (danh từ) = số dư, thặng dư; **failure** (danh từ) = sự thất bại, sự không thực hiện.

7. **Rare** (tính từ) = hiếm, ít thấy; **rare birds** = chim hiếm; **unknown** (tính từ) = không biết, không được nhận ra; **frightened** (tính từ) = hoảng sợ.
8. **Drought** (danh từ) = hạn hán; sự khô cạn. “*While some areas are suffering from drought, others are experiencing heavy rains and floods.* ” (Trong khi một số vùng đang bị hạn hán thì những vùng khác đang trải qua những cơn mưa to và ngập lụt.)
9. **Enhance** (động từ) = làm tăng, nâng cao; **enhance one's enjoyment of reading** = làm tăng hứng thú đọc sách.
10. **Sensitive (to something)** (tính từ) = có sự thông cảm, biểu lộ sự thông cảm, nhạy cảm; **sensitive to the patients' needs** = thông cảm/ nhạy cảm với nhu cầu của bệnh nhân.

Exercise 4:

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. D

Notes:

1. **Abundance** (danh từ) = (sự) nhiều; **abundance of wildlife** = nhiều động vật hoang dã; **impression** (danh từ) = ấn tượng; **entertainment** (danh từ) = cuộc giải trí; **organization** (danh từ) = tổ chức.
2. **Highly** (phó từ) = hết sức, ở mức độ cao; **highly recommend** = giới thiệu một cách đặc biệt; **deeply** (phó từ) = sâu sắc; **fully** (phó từ) = đầy đủ; **truly** (phó từ) = chân thành.
3. **Consist in something/ doing something** = cốt ở, cot tại. “*True learning does not consist in gathering facts from the teachers; it requires active assimilation of knowledge.* ” (Việc học tập thật sự không cốt ở thu thập những điều ghi chép từ thầy cô mà đòi hỏi sự thông hiểu kiến thức)
4. **Domestic violence** = nạn bạo hành trong gia đình.
5. **Touching/ moving** (tính từ) = (gây) cảm động; **a touching documentary** = phim tài liệu gây xúc động; **touched/ moved** (tính từ) = xúc động; Ví dụ: “I was very touched to receive your kind letter.” (Tôi rất xúc động nhận thư ân cần của ông.); **touchy** (tính từ) = quá nhạy cảm; **a touchy issue** = vấn đề nhạy cảm.
6. **In terms of something** = về mặt; **in terms of patience** = về tính kiên nhẫn; **in front of** = phía trước; **in spite of something** = mặc dù; **regardless of something** = không để ý, không màng đến; Ví dụ: **regardless of consequences** = không màng đến hậu quả.
7. **Put/ lay a stress on something** = nhấn mạnh; **put someone under pressure to do something** = thúc bách ai làm điều gì. “*The manager of the hotel always puts a great stress on the service quality.* ” (Ông giám đốc khách sạn luôn luôn hết sức nhấn mạnh chất lượng phục vụ.)
8. **Accuse someone of something** (động từ) = buộc tội, cáo buộc; **warn against something** = đe dọa ai để phòng cái gì. “*Human carelessness has been accused of damaging marine life.* ” (Sự bất cẩn của con người bị cáo buộc đã làm tổn hại đến đời sống dưới biển.)
9. **Starve** (động từ) = chết vì đói; **starve to death** = đói đến chết.
10. **Singly** (phó từ) = từng người một, từng cái một. “*Misfortunes never come singly/ alone.* ” (Hoá vô đơn chí.)

Exercise 5:

Notes:

1. **The innocent** = người vô tội; **innovative** (tính từ) = có tính chất đổi mới; **innovation** (danh từ) = sự đổi mới; **initiative** (danh từ) = sáng kiến.
2. **Financial** (tính từ) = thuộc về tài chính; **funded** (tính từ) = để vào quỹ công trái nhà nước.
3. **Acceptable** (tính từ) = có thể chấp nhận được; **negative** (tính từ) = không tốt, xấu, tiêu cực; **comprehensive** (tính từ) = bao hàm toàn diện. “*The environmental impact of tourism can be shocking and upsetting, but many governments think it is acceptable.* ” (Tác động của du lịch lên môi trường có thể gây sốc và tồi tệ, nhưng nhiều chính phủ cho là chấp nhận được.)
4. **Cultural contact** = tiếp xúc văn hoá.
5. **Cure an illness** = chữa bệnh. **Treatment** (danh từ) = cách điều trị; **symptom** (danh từ) = triệu chứng bệnh; **sicken** (động từ) = cảm thấy ôm.
6. **Measure** (danh từ) = phương sách, biện pháp; **take measures** = áp dụng biện pháp.
7. **Be on the go** = bận rộn hoạt động.
8. **Sample** (danh từ) = hàng mẫu; **deal** (danh từ) = sự thoả thuận (trong kinh doanh); **instance** (danh từ) = trường hợp. “*Many companies now advertise their new products by distributing free samples in public places.* ” (Ngày nay nhiều công ty quảng cáo bằng cách phát tặng hàng mẫu nơi công cộng.)
9. **Boost** (danh từ) = sự tăng; *a significant boost in the sales figures* = sự tăng đáng kể về doanh số; **addition** (danh từ) = người hoặc vật thêm vào.
10. **Concern** (động từ) = liên quan; **refer to something** = có liên quan đến; **deal with something** (động từ) = giải quyết; **respect someone** (động từ) = đánh giá cao.

Exercise 6:

Notes:

1. **Factor** (danh từ) = nhân tố; **turn** (danh từ) = lần, lượt, phiên; **side** (danh từ) = bên, phía; **remark** (danh từ) = nhận xét. “*Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several factors including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.* ” (Trước khi chọn việc làm, anh nên xem xét nhiều nhân tố bao gồm sự cung ứng và đòi hỏi của người có chuyên môn ở một lãnh vực nhất định.)
2. **(be) in need of something** = cần cái gì đó.
3. **Proportion** (danh từ) = phần, bộ phận; **a high/ large proportion** = một phần lớn.
4. **Jump to conclusions** = vội vàng đưa ra kết luận.
5. **Do someone a favour** - giúp đỡ ai.
6. **In danger of something** = lâm vào cảnh nguy hiểm; **at risk of something** = lieu lịnh.

7. **Suspicion** (danh từ) = sự nghi ngờ. “The boy's strange behavior aroused the suspicion of the shop assistant.” (Hành vi khác thường của cậu bé gây cho người bán hàng sự nghi ngờ.)
8. **Involve oneself in something** = để hết tâm trí vào cái gì.
9. **Know something from experience** = biết được điều gì dựa vào kinh nghiệm. **conscience** (danh từ) = lương tâm; **wisdom** (danh từ) = sự khôn ngoan.
10. **Show** (động từ) = cho thấy. “Your second essay showed improvement on the first one. (Bài luận thứ hai của em khá hơn bài đầu.)

Exercise 7:

1. D 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. C

Notes:

1. **Grow** (động từ) = gia tăng, phát triển; **popularity** (danh từ) = tính chất được nhiều người yêu men; **grow in popularity** = ngày càng được công chúng yêu thích hơn.
2. **Successive** (tính từ) = liên tục, kế tiếp; **four successive football matches** — bốn trận bóng đá liên tiếp.
3. **Impress** (động từ) = gây ấn tượng; **enliven** (động từ) = làm phấn chấn (tình cảm); **delight** (động từ) = làm vui thích.
4. **Admission** (danh từ) = sự nhận vào (trường học,...); **admittance** (danh từ) = sự cho ai vào (nơi riêng tư); **permission** (danh từ) = sự cho phép; **permit** (danh từ) = giấy phép.
5. **Secure** (tính từ) = bảo đảm, vững chắc; **a secure job** = một công việc vững chắc; **tough** (tính từ) = khó khăn; **demanding** (tính từ) = đòi hỏi khắt khe; **a demanding job** = một công việc đòi hỏi nhiều cố gắng; **challenging** (tính từ) = thử thách; **a challenging job** = một công việc đầy thử thách.
6. Xem Exercise 3, câu 1.
7. **Extended family** = gia đình nhiều thế hệ.
8. **Unsolved** (tính từ) = (vẫn đẽ) không được giải quyết; **dissolved** (tính từ) = hoà tan.
9. **Reward for something** (danh từ) = phần thưởng cho cái gì.
10. **Under threat of something** = đang bị đe dọa; **in fear of someone/ something** = sợ ai/ cái gì; **for fear of something** = sợ cái gì.

Exercise 8:

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. C

Notes:

1. **Enact (a law)** (động từ) = ban hành đạo luật.
2. **(have/ show) a sense of responsibility** = (có/ tỏ ra có) tinh thần trách nhiệm.
3. **Take responsibility/responsibilities** = chịu trách nhiệm.
4. **Make sure (of something/that)** = làm cho chắc chắn.
5. **Lend a (helping) hand** = giúp đỡ ai một tay.
6. **Cause something for someone** = gây ra.
7. **Turn something into something else** = biến đổi, làm cho.

8. **Canal** (danh từ) = kênh, sông đào; **channel** (danh từ) = eo biển.
9. Xem Exercise 7, câu 10. “*People living in that area are under the threat of lead poisoning.*” (Người dân sống ở vùng đó đang bị đe doạ nhiễm độc chì.)
10. **Aerial** (tính từ) = ở trên trời, trên không; **aerial photography** = chụp ảnh từ trên không.

Exercise 9:

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. A

Notes:

1. **Sloping** (tính từ) = nghiêng, dốc; **face** (danh từ) = bờ mặt; **steep** (tính từ) = dốc đứng; **sloping face** = bờ mặt dốc; **steep face** = bờ mặt dốc đứng.
2. **Circle** (động từ) = vây quanh, bao quanh; **round** (động từ) = tròn nê tròn; **hold** (động từ) = giữ (trong tư thế), ôm (ai).
3. 20 metres high = cao 20 mét.
4. **Loose** (tính từ) = xốp, mềm; **loose soil** = đất dễ làm rơi; **loosen** (động từ) = làm cho rơi.
5. **So** (liên từ) = vì vậy, cho nên.
6. **However** (phó từ) = tuy nhiên.
7. **Habitat** (danh từ) = môi trường sống; **natural habitat** - môi trường sinh sống tự nhiên.
8. Xem Exercise 5, câu 6.
9. **Reserve** (danh từ) = khu bảo tồn; **wildlife reserve** = khu bảo tồn động vật hoang dã.
10. **Verge** (danh từ) = bờ, ven; **drive something to the verge of extinction** = đẩy đến bờ tuyệt chủng.

Exercise 10:

- 1.B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. C

Notes:

1. **On the verge of** = sắp, gần, suýt; **on the verge of bankruptcy** = sụp đổ.
2. **Pass a law** = thông qua đạo luật.
3. **Put down** (động từ) = bỏ xuống.
4. **Source** (danh từ) = nguồn; **source of knowledge** - nguồn tri thức; **resource** (danh từ) = tài nguyên; **flow** (danh từ) = dòng chảy; **provision** (danh từ) = sự cung cấp.
5. **Dip into** (động từ) = xem lướt qua; **dip into a report** = xem lướt qua bản báo cáo; **turn round** (động từ) = quay lại; **get through** (động từ) = làm trọn, làm xong; **go into** (động từ) = xem xét, đi sâu (vào chi tiết).
6. **By accident** = do tình cờ; **by Comparison** = khi so sánh; **by Choice** = chọn như thế; Ví dụ: *Is she single by Choice?* (Có phải cô ấy thích sống độc thân?); **by heart** = thuộc lòng.
7. **Overtime** (danh từ) = (thể thao) giờ đấu thêm (để quyết định thắng bại)
8. **Foul** (danh từ) = (thể thao) cú ăn gian, cú chơi xấu; **fault** (danh từ) = khuyết điểm, thiếu sót; **mistake** (danh từ) = lỗi lầm; **error** (danh từ) = sự sai sót.
9. **Promote** (động từ) = đẩy mạnh, xúc tiến; **spring up** (động từ) = nhảy lên, bật lên; **upgrade** (động từ) = nâng cấp; **grow** (động từ) = phát triển, gia tăng. “Sports

competitions are held to promote cooperation and solidarity among countries. " (Các cuộc thi đấu thể thao được tổ chức nhằm đẩy mạnh sự hợp tác và tình đoàn kết giữa các quốc gia.)

10. **Delegate** (danh từ) = người đại biểu, đoàn đại biểu; **acquaintance** (danh từ) = người quen; **attendant** (danh từ) = người phục vụ; **host** (danh từ) = chủ nhà.

Exercise 11:

- 1.C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5.C 6. C 7.B 8. B 9. C 10. B

Notes:

1. **National anthem** - bài quốc ca; **version** (danh từ) = kiểu (của cái gì được chế tạo); **lyric** (danh từ) = thơ trữ tình, lời bài hát; **composition** (danh từ) = tác phẩm (bản nhạc, bài thơ).
2. **Host** (động từ) = đăng cai tổ chức; **own** (động từ) = sở hữu; **present** (động từ) = trình bày; **lead** (động từ) = dẫn dắt.
3. **Synchronized swimming** = môn bơi nghệ thuật.
4. **Defend** (động từ) = (thể thao) tham gia cuộc thi để giữ địa vị của mình; **protect** (động từ) = bảo vệ; **assure** (động từ) = đảm bảo; **hold** (động từ) = cầm, nắm.

Exercise 12:

- 1.C 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. D

Notes:

4. **found** (động từ) = thành lập; **put up** (động từ) = đê lên, đặt lên; **erect** (động từ) = xây dựng lên; **set out** (động từ) = bắt đầu khởi hành.
5. **Recognition** (danh từ) = sự công nhận, sự thừa nhận; **realization** (danh từ) = sự thấy rõ, sự nhận thức rõ.
6. **Dedicated** (tính từ) = tận tụy, hết lòng.
7. **Lay down** (động từ) = đê ra, sắp đặt.
8. **Mission** (danh từ) = sứ mệnh, nhiệm vụ.
9. **Hit** (động từ) = xà ra, ập đến; **beat** (động từ) = đánh, gõ, đập; **reach** (động từ) = đi đến tận chỗ nào; **defeat** (động từ) = đánh bại.
10. **Deep-seated** (tính từ) = vững chắc.

Exercise 13:

- 1.B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. D 8.C 9. C 10. A

Notes:

1. **Lose one's temper** = bức tức, giận dữ; **(be) in a bad mood** = ở tâm trạng giận dữ; **get nervous** = lo lắng; **lose one's nerve** = mất tinh than; **(be) in bad humour** = bức bối, cáu gắt.
2. **Make up one's mind** = quyết định.
3. **Check-up** (danh từ) = cuộc kiểm tra toàn bộ (nhất là kiểm tra sức khoẻ).
4. **As a rule** = theo lệ thường.
5. **Not to have a leg to stand on** = không có lí lẽ gì để bào chữa cho thuyết của mình.

6. *All at once* = thình lình, đột nhiên.
7. *A nod and a wink* - hiểu ý (không cần nói ra).
8. *At the bottom of the heap* = có địa vị thấp nhất (trong một tổ chức hoặc xã hội.)
9. *First come first served* (thành ngữ) = đến trước thì được giải quyết trước.
10. *Part with something* (động từ) = cho đi hoặc từ bỏ cái gì.

Exercise 14:

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Notes:

1. *Out of order* = hỏng (máy); *out of job* = thất nghiệp; *out of hand* = không nắm được, không kiểm soát được; *out of mind* = lâng quên.
2. *Cash in hand* — tiền mặt có trong tay, tiền mặt đang có sẵn.
3. *Next to nothing* = gần như chẳng có gì.
4. *On the tip of one's tongue* = sắp nói ra, sắp nhớ ra.
5. *Not to make sense of something* = không thể hiểu được.
6. *Status* (danh từ) = địa vị; *state* (danh từ) = tình trạng; *being* (danh từ) = sự tồn tại; *welfare* (danh từ) = sự thịnh vượng.
7. *Be involved in something* = để hết tâm trí vào cái gì.
8. *Right* (danh từ) - quyền; *right to vote* = quyền bỏ phiếu.
9. *Advocate* (động từ) = tán thành, ủng hộ. “*The local council advocates campaigns against illiteracy.*” (Hội đồng địa phương ủng hộ chiến dịch xoá nạn mù chữ.)
10. *Doubt* (danh từ) = (sự) nghi ngờ, ngờ vực. “*Widespread doubt about women's intellectual ability restricted their job opportunities.*” (Sự nghi ngờ thường gặp về năng lực trí tuệ của phụ nữ đã hạn chế cơ hội tìm việc làm của họ.)

THÀNH NGỮ

Exercise 1:

1. D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. D

Exercise 2:

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. A

Exercise 6:

1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. c 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 7:

1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 8:

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 9:

1. B 2.D 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. A

2. **As far as** = xa tận, cho đến tận, đến chừng mức mà; **On behalf of** = thay mặt cho; **In regards to** — liên quan đến; **In contrast to** = tương phản với.

3. **in anticipation of sth** = chuẩn bị để đề phòng điều gì xảy ra.

4. **regarding** (prep.) = về cái gì.

7. **at last** = sau cùng; at times = đôi khi; at least = ít nhất; at stake = đang bị đe dọa.

8. **in celebration of** = nhân dịp kỉ niệm/ tổ chức.

9. **pull one's weight** = làm tròn trách nhiệm.

10. **now that** = xét vì, vì rằng.

Exercise 10:

1.C 2. D 3.C 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. A

1. **make a/ some difference to sb/ sth** = có ý nghĩa quan trọng với ai/ cái gì.

2. **the brink/ verge of sth** = sáu sútA.

5. **here to stay** = được chấp nhận rộng rãi; **here today, gone tomorrow** = chóng tàn; here and there = khắp nơi; **neither here nor there** = không đúng vào vấn đề. **barrage** = chuỗi, hàng loạt; **barrage of complaints** = hàng loạt lời phàn nàn; **pool** = vũng nước, hố bơi.

6. **beyond** = vượt ra ngoài giới hạn; **beyond repair** = không chữa được vì hư hỏng quá nhiều.

7. **failing** (prep.) = nếu không có (ai/ cái gì).

8. **in the process of sth/ doing sth** = đang thực hiện một nhiệm vụ nào đó; **in view of sth** = xét thấy, bởi vì; **in the hopes of sth** = với niềm hi vọng cái gì; **with view to doing sth** = với ý định làm cái gì; **impeccable** (adj.) = hoàn hảo.

9. **with respect to sth** = đối với; **in respect of (noi in respect for)** = đặc biệt nói về; as for = còn như, về phần.

Exercise 11:

1.D 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. D

6. **be on a roll** = có một khoảng thời gian thành công.

7. **with a view to doing sth** = với ý định làm cái gì; **target** = bia, mục tiêu.

8. **few and far between** = thưa thường, không thường xuyên; **far and away** = dĩ nhiên, chắc chắn; **far from it** = không hề như vậy, ngược lại là khác; **as far as** = xa tận, cho đến tận.

9. **do sb a good turn** = giúp đỡ ai.

Exercise 12:

1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. B 10. C

2. **ups and downs** = sự thăng trầm; **the ins and outs** = dữ liệu chi tiết của cái gì; **safe and sound** = bình an vô sự; odds and ends = đồ linh tinh.

3. **pull one's socks up** = cố gắng, tập trung sức lực; **have a hand in** = tham gia.

4. **once in a blue moon** = rất hiếm, ít khi, năm thì mười hoa.

5. **a good head for figures** = giỏi tính toán.

6. **and the like** = và những người/ vật tương tự như thế/ thuộc loại như thế.

7. **in person** = đích thân

9. **leave behind** = để lại.

10. **the cheese** = bậc nhất.

Chuyên đề 3

NGỮ PHÁP

I. THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:

1.D 2.C 3. B 4. A 5.D 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:

1. A 2. B 3. c 4. A 5. c 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:

1.c 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 4:

1.C 2.A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. A 9.C 10. C

Exercise 5:

1.A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. A

Exercise 6:

1.B 2. D 3. C 4.C 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:

1.C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7.D 8. A 9.C 10. D

Exercise 8:

1.B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. B 9.B 10. D

Exercise 9:

1.B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9.C 10. B

Exercise 10:

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. B 8.D 9.B 10. A

II. ĐỘNG TỬ TÌNH THÁI

Exercise 1:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:

1C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 3:

1.B 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. D

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 5:

1.C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. B

III. TÍNH TỬ, TRẠNG TỬ, CÁU TRÚC SO SÁNH

Exercise 1:

1.B 2. A 3.D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. C

Exercise 2:

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. A 9.C 10. C

Exercise 3:

1.B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:

1.C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 6:

1.C 2. D 3. A 4. A 5.C 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 7:

1.D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 8:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. c 5. A 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. A

IV. THÊM BỊ ĐỘNG

Exercise 1:

1.B 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. A 6.D 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B

Exercise 2:

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B

Exercise 4:

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 5:

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. A

V. CÂU GIÁN TIẾP**Exercise 1:**

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:

1. D 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 4:

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5:

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

VI. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN**Exercise 1:**

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. A

Exercise 2:

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 3:

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 4:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 5:

1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. B

VII. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ**Exercise 1:**

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

VIII. TỪ NỘI MỆNH ĐỀ, TỪ NÓI CÂU**Exercise 1:**

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. c

Exercise 2:

1.B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 3:

1.D 2.D 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. A

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:

1.D 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. D

Exercise 6:

1.C 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 7:

1.C 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 8:

1.B 2. D 3.D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:

1.C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5.C 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 10:

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9.C 10. B

IX. MẠO TÙ & GIÓI TÙ MẠO TÙ**Exercise 1:**

1.C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:

1.B 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 3:

1.B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4

1.A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 5:

1.B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

GIÓI TÙ**Exercise 1:****1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. D****Exercise 2:****1. C 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. B**

Exercise 3:

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 4:

1. D 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 5:

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Exercise 6:

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:

1. D 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 8:

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:

1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. D 10. C

Exercise 10:

1. B 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A

Exercise 11:

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 12:

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 13:

1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 14:

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 15:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. B

Exercise 16:

1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A

Exercise 17:

1.C 2. A 3. A 4. A 5.B 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. C 10. D

Exercise 18:

1.C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 19:

1.B 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 20:

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. A 6.D 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 21:

1.D 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. A 8.D 9. B 10. D

X. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MAU & DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:

1.B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. D 8.C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:

1.C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. A

Exercise 3:

1.B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. A

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. D 3.B 4. B 5.B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5:

1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 6:

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 7:

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 8:

1.C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. C 10. D

Exercise 9:

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. B

Exercise 10:

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

XI. QUÁ KHỨ GIẢ ĐỊNH & THÚC GIẢ ĐỊNH

Exercise 1:

1.C 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 2:

1.B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5.C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:

1.C 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. D

Exercise 5:

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 6:

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C

XII. Sự HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ TÙ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:

1.A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 2:

1.D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. D

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 4:

1.C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

XIII. NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:

1.C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5.D 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 2:

1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 3:

1.D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 4:

1.B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. B 10.C

Exercise 5:

1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 6:

1.C 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:

1.B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. B

Exercise 8:

1.B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 9:

1.B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B

2. fall over = ngã lộn nhào; fall off = rơi xuống; fall back = ngã ngửa, rút lui; fall out = rơi ra ngoài.

4. put sb up = cho ai trọ.

5. put sth back = hoãn lại. keep in = giữ không cho ra ngoài.

6. get down to sth = bắt đầu tập trung nỗ lực vào cái gì.

7. look for = tìm kiếm; look in = ghé thăm; look over = xem xét, nhìn bao quát; look from = nhìn từ.

8. favourable (adj.) = thuận lợi; favourably (adv.) = một cách thuận lợi; favourite (adj.) = ưa thích nhất; favour (n.) = đặc ân.

9. run out of sth = cạn, hết; get into sth = bắt đầu (một nghề nghiệp...); keep up with sb/ sth = theo kịp, ngang hàng với, không thua kém; come up against = đối mặt, đương đầu.

Exercise 10:

1.A 2.D 3.D 4.A 5.A 6.B 7.C 8.B 9.B 10.B

1. catch up on sth = đuổi kịp, theo kịp; cut down on sth = cắt giảm; take up with dưa ra vấn đề để thảo luận; put up with = thảo luận.
2. bring sth forward = dời sớm hơn.
5. come around = thăm ai đó; come about = (sự việc) xoay chuyển bất ngờ; come to somewhere = đi đến; come away = đi xa.
6. run sb down = bôi nhọ, nói xấu, gièm pha; run off = chạy trốn; run over = chạy đè lên, cán ai; run out = chảy ra, cạn kiệt.
7. come up with = tìm ra lời giải, ý tưởng.
8. do away with sth = stop doing or having sth - chấm dứt.
9. call off = hoãn lại; put out = dập tắt; run out = cạn hết; set off = khởi hành.
10. make up for something = đền bù, bù đắp cái gì đó; make up with = thay thế cái gì; do with something = dung thứ, chịu đựng cái gì; come up with = tìm ra lời giải, ý tưởng.

XIV. PHÁT HIỆN& SỬA CHỮA LỖI SAI

Exercise 1 (Verb tenses):

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. D → becomes | 11. D → was |
| 2. C → needs | 12. D → did |
| 3. A → is | 13. C → did I find |
| 4. D → are | 14. D → had said |
| 5. C → are lacking | 15. C → had already |
| 6. B → have worn/have been wearing | 16. C → comes |
| 7. C → have prepared | 17. C → has to leave |
| 8. B → has changed | 18. C → ends |
| 9. B → graduates/has graduated | 19. A → comes |
| 10. C → since | 20. D → is signed |

Exercise 2 (Infinitives, gerunds):

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. | A → to smoke | 11. A → moving |
| 2. | B → to help | 12. B → taking |
| 3. | B → to help | 13. C → of understanding |
| 4. | B → to make | 14. B → damaging |
| 5. | A → to pick | 15. B → telling |
| 6. | D → to talk | 16. C → waiting |
| 7. | B → spending | 17. A → from swimming |
| 8. | D → checking | 18. A → to being |
| 9. | D → locking | 19. C → (in) spending |
| 10. C → to water | 20. C → dealing | |

Exercise 3 (Passive voice, causative form):

1. B→ is required 11. A→ being rebuilt
2. A→is/was said 12. B→ to be seen/ seeing
3. B→ can operate 13. C→ washed
4. D→ has been approved 14. B→ solved
5. A→ often use 15. B→ to take
6. D→ to have met 16. C→ replaced
7. B→ to enter 17. A→ having a house
built
8. D→ was announced 18. A→ take

Exercise 4 (Conditionals):

1. A→had finished 6. C→ hadn't been
2. A→ had had 7. C→ had won
3. D→ buy 8. A→ Without
4. C→ would have spoken 9. D→ be
5. A→ had taken 10. C→ would have tried
to learn

Exercise 5(Past Subjunctive: Present Subjunctive):

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. | A→ hadn't spoken | 6. C→ started |
| 2. | D→had | 7. B→ give |
| 3. | A→ had done | 8. B→ should/ Ø |
| 4. | A→ hadn't taken part | 9. B→ check/ |
| should check | | |
| 5. | B→ did | 10. B→ stay |

Exercise 6(Comparison):

1. B→ not as quick 11. C→ the better
2. C→ than I've ever 12. B→ as much
3. C→ worse 13. B→ than
4. C→ best 14. B→ best
5. C→ more difficult to 15. A→ lower
6. C→ better 16. C→ more
7. A→ less 17. C→ much more windy
8. B→ less protein 18. D→ greater than that
of
9. A→ still more and more 19. A→ greatest
10. D→ fewer 20. D→ that in the
country

Exercise 7 (Inversion of subjects and verbs):

1. B → have I
2. B → did I meet
3. C → when
4. B → than
5. B → did Jack break
6. C → when
7. C → was I
8. A → had it stopped
9. C → can we
10. B → are they
11. C → did I realize
12. C → when
13. B → could she
14. A → a flag is
15. A → will Antarctic icebergs
16. C → did I remember
17. B → than
18. A → I got
19. A → had I
20. A → are the lakes

Exercise 8 (Parallel structures):

1. B → drinking
2. C → collecting
3. D → convenient
4. B → and do
5. C → (to) spend
6. A → written
7. D → to write correctly
8. C → timidity
9. C → carry
10. D → directed
11. C → hibernation
12. C → technological institutions
13. C → pressure and create
14. B → taking
15. D → spoilt
16. A → fog
17. C → (has) used them
18. B → told not only
19. D → honesty
20. B → finance

Exercise 9 (Clauses):

1. A → That
2. D → a hydrogen bomb explodes
3. C → it would take
4. B → the last staff meeting was
5. C → your friend lived
6. B → what
7. C → will
8. D → the point is
9. B → Mathew looked
10. C → was
11. B → so that/ in order that
12. B → to make
13. B → in order
14. C → so that
15. D → to do
16. B → to carry
17. A → such a smart/ so smart a
18. A → so
19. A → So
20. A → so

Exercise 10 (Clauses):

1. A → Although
2. A → Although she
3. B → Ø
4. C → not all of
5. A → Ø
11. C → which
12. A → whose
13. B → in which
14. A → in which/ where
15. C → which

6. B → although/though
7. A → Despite/ In spite of
8. A → Despite being
9. A → who
10. B → which is
16. B → which
17. C → which is
18. B → which was believed
19. A → who study
20. C → which

Exercise 11:

1. A → viewed
2. C → made
3. B → written
4. D → done
5. D → replaced
6. A → destroyed
7. A → having read
8. A → Having had
9. A → Having finished
10. D → while attending
11. A → Following
12. A → Hoping
13. B → covered with
14. C → applied
15. C → holding
16. A → Turning on
17. A → Having washed
18. D → what he looks like
19. C → why/whether
20. A → Whatever

Exercise 12:

1. A → is
2. D → our school has
3. C → is standing
4. D → didn't you
5. B → had been running
6. D → called
7. A → has taken
8. A → have been playing
9. B → has written
10. A → have been polishing

Exercise 13:

1. B → has graduated/ graduates
2. B → will have been
3. B → will have discovered
4. A → have seen
5. C → think
6. B → have given
7. C → had attended
8. A → have been waiting
9. A → for
10. C → began

Exercise 14:

1. A → object to
2. B → what was
3. D → was still alive
4. D → graduated/had graduated
5. C → had put
6. B → make full use
7. D → be
8. A → Ø
9. A → considers
10. B → are announced

Exercise 15:

1. C → work
2. B → in my attempt
3. A → obedient
6. C → had worked for
7. B → said
8. B → whether

4. C → share

5. C → went

Exercise 16:

1. D → abroad

2. C → have tried to learn

3. C → or

4. D → for which

5. C → constantly

9. A → Pointing at

10. B → how much

Exercise 17:

1. A → Despite/In spite of

2. C → of growing

3. C → Ø

4. C → by

5. D → the next

6. C → to help

7. C → interesting

8. A → hadn't

9. C → have made

10. A → don't

Exercise 18:

1. D → were going

2. B → have been

3. C → hasn't spoken

4. B → happened

5. C → since

6. D → lent

7. C → ever been

8. D → has been

9. C → was

10. A → work

Exercise 19:

1. A → of

2. C → on

3. A → who

4. B → whose

5. B → from whom

6. C → of whom

7. C → have made

8. B → who

9. A → whom

10. B → where

Exercise 20:

1. C → because of

2. B → told not only

3. A → hard

4. C → Ø

5. B → peaceful

6. B → rapidly

7. B → might be

8. B → in

9. C → although

10. B → to hunt

Exercise 21:

1. B → long-distance

2. B → has been

3. C → of

4. B → was published

5. C → Ø

6. D → as

7. C → a little

8. B → performed

9. B → is close

10. D → will be awarded

Exercise 1:

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 2:

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:

1. A 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 5:

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. C

Exercise 6:

1. A 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. C

Exercise 8:

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. B

Exercise 9:

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B

Exercise 10:

1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. D

Exercise 11:

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. B

Exercise 12:

1. C 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 13:

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B

Exercise 14:

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 15:

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Bài tập đọc trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống

Exercise 1:

1.C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 2:

1.B 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 3:

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 4:

1.C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. C

Exercise 5:

1.B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 6:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B

Exercise 7:

1.C 2.A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 8:

1.B 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:

1.B 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. c 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 10:

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. B

Bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu

Exercise 1: 1.C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B

Exercise 2: 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D

Exercise 3: 1.A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C

Exercise 4: 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. A

Exercise 5: 1. A 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. A

Exercise 6: 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B

Exercise 7: 1.C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C

Exercise 8: 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B

Exercise 9:

1.C 2.A 3.B 4.C 5.D 6.B 7.C 8.A 9.D 10.A

Exercise 10:

1.A 2.C 3.C 4.B 5.A 6.D 7.C 8.B 9.A 10.D

Exercise 11:

1.A 2.B 3.D 4.A 5.C 6.D 7.A 8.D 9.C 10.B

Exercise 12:

1.A 2.C 3.B 4.D 5.A 6.D 7.D 8.C 9.B 10.A

Exercise 13:

1.A 2.A 3.C 4.A 5.B 6.C 7.D 8.D 9.C 10.A

Exercise 14:

1.A 2.C 3.D 4.D 5.A 6.A 7.B 8.C 9.D 10.B

Exercise 15:

1.A 2.D 3.A 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.A 8.D 9.D 10.B

Exercise 16:

1.B 2.C 3.B 4.B 5.B 6.B 7.D 8.B 9.C 10.D

Exercise 17:

1.B 2.C 3.D 4.A 5.B 6.A 7.C 8.B 9.D 10.B

Exercise 18:

1.B 2.D 3.C 4.A 5.C 6.D 7.A 8.C 9.B 10.D

Exercise 19:

1.C 2.B 3.C 4.D 5.A 6.A 7.A 8.B 9.A 10.A

Exercise 20:

1.A 2.B 3.D 4.C 5.D 6.B 7.C 8.A 9.D 10.D

**Chuvin đê
6**

KĨ NĂNG VIẾT

Bài tập câu đảo ngữ**Exercise 1:**

1.C 2.A 3.D 4.C 5.C 6.B 7.D 8.D 9.D 10.B

Exercise 2:

1.B 2.B 3.B 4.B 5.A 6.A 7.A 8.A 9.B 10.A

Exercise 3:

1.A 2.B 3.D 4.C 5.B 6.B 7.A 8.B 9.C 10.C

Exercise 4:

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. A

Notes:

4. in/ under no circumstances = dù trong bất cứ hoàn cảnh nào cũng không bao giờ.

Exercise 5:

- 1.B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. D

Notes:

10. take someone in = lừa gạt, lừa phỉnh.

Bài tập trắc nghiệm hoàn thành câu

Exercise 1:

- 1.C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Exercise 2:

- 1.B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. C

Exercise 3:

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

Notes:

8. if not = used to say what the situation will be if something does not happen (bằng không thì, nếu không thì).

Exercise 4:

- 1.B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5:

1. D 2. C 3.C 4. A 5.D 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 6:

- 1.B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 7:

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. D

Exercise 8:

- 1.D 2.A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:

- 1.C 2.C 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. C

Exercise 10:

- 1.C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. A

Bài tập trắc nghiệm tìm câu đồng nghĩa

Exercise 1:

- 1.D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. B

Exercise 2:

1. D 2.C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 3:

1.A 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 4:

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. C 9.D 10. B

Exercise 5:

1.B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D

Exercise 6:

1.B 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 7:

1.C 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. B

Exercise 8:

1.B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. D

Exercise 9:

1.D 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 10:

1.B 2. A 3.C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. A

Bài tập chuyên hoá câu

Exercise 1.

1. Five years *have passed since I last saw her.*
2. He has been *investigating the case for a week.*
3. It is *over twenty years since he last went back to his hometown.*
4. Tom has *driven/been driving since he was nineteen.*
5. When *did they get engaged?*
6. We have *written/ been writing to each other for six years.*
7. It has *not rained for a fortnight.*
8. She hasn't *had a swim for five years.*
9. I haven't *seen Julie for three weeks.*
10. When *did Catherine and Henry get engaged?*
11. She has *worked/ been working as a secretary for five years.*
12. It is *(now) twenty years since John and Mary moved to Edinburgh.*
13. At the end *of this week, I will have worked/ will have been working here for two years.*
14. Before I *went to the zoo last week, I had never seen a real tiger.*
15. By the time *Mary had read the book, she knew what the answer was.*
16. After *leaving/ having left school, he joined the army, (or) After he had left school, he joined the army.*

17. It is *a year since I last saw them.*
18. We haven't *decorated this room for years.*
19. When *did they buy the house?*
20. It is Jim's *18th birthday next week.*

Exercise 2.

1. The film star avoided *being recognized by wearing/putting on dark glasses.*
2. The boss permitted *me to leave early.*
3. My best friend offered *to help me with my homework that day.*
4. I regretted ever *having written the letter.*
5. He greatly regretted not *seeing Ann on her trip to London.*
6. She advised John *not to trust Peter.*
7. That old typewriter is not *worth repairing.*
8. She persuaded *me not to leave.*
9. She admitted to *having taken the necklace.*
10. My friend suggested *sharing the cost.*
11. He regretted not *saying/ having said goodbye to her at the airport.*
12. The hijacker forced the pilot *to land the plane immediately.*
13. The teacher expects *the students to come to class on time.*
14. The teacher encouraged *the students to try harder and get good marks the next time.*
15. It is better to avoid *standing under a tree when it is raining.*
16. Would you mind *not making so much noise?*
17. The driver of the car admitted *speeding when the accident happened.*
18. Do you regret *not accepting/not having accepted his offer?*
19. Why don't you put off *complaining and do something?*
20. She advised me *to give up that relationship.*

Exercise 3.

1. The lions *are fed by the zoo keepers at 3 pm every day.*
2. The street *hasn't been cleaned this week.*
3. Plans *for an extension to the house have been drawn by the architect.*
4. These artificial flowers *are made of glossy paper.*
5. The plumber *repaired the leak this morning.*
6. New projects *for extra places in schools will have to be made.*
7. Serious injuries *can be prevented by wearing seat-belts in cars.*
8. Paper *is believed to have been invented by the Chinese in 105 A.D.*
9. The robbers are *believed to have got into the bank through the roof.*
10. Acid rain is *thought to be now a familiar problem in the industrialized countries in Europe.*
11. The spectacular ruins of Mayan civilization *are visited by thousands of tourists every year.*

12. The drop in the number of school leavers *is said to have been caused by the fall in the birth rate between 1990 and 1995.*
13. The climate *is thought to be changing.*
14. The accident *is thought to have been caused by human error.*
15. This switch *isn't to be touched.*
16. The destruction of the old city of London in the 1600s *was caused by a fire.*
17. This work must *be finished by six o'clock.*
18. He was not *allowed to know what I was thinking.*
19. Already this year *fifteen people have been killed in industrial accidents.*
20. This is the first time *(that) his authority has been challenged.*
21. We *were shown to our seats by the usher.*
22. The bank manager *was made to hand over all the money (by the robbers).*
23. Man *is mainly distinguished from other animals by the power of speech.*
24. Does the application *have to be typed?*
25. Anyone found *trespassing on this land will be prosecuted (by the authorities).*
26. The edge of the shore *was slowly being covered with oil.*
27. It has *been suggested that income tax should be abolished.*
28. The party *may have to be cancelled.*
29. He was *allowed to leave after he had been questioned by the police.*
30. He has been *operated on many times, (to operate on somebody for something = mo, phau thuât.)*
31. Some improvements *have recently been made to/in the bus service in this town.*
32. No formal *announcement of the decision will be made.*
33. All the seats for the concert on December 14th *have been sold/ booked.*
34. There is *said to be plenty of oil off our own coast.*
35. What happened that fateful night *may/will possibly never be known.*
36. No reply from the secretary *was sent to me for ten days.*
37. The concert *may have to be cancelled.*
38. I was *allowed to go abroad alone for the first time last year.*
39. The prisoner *is thought to have been recaptured while drinking in a pub.*
40. Completed application forms must *be handed in/returned by 3 pm on Friday, 18th December.*
41. Sally *was given a new iPad for her birthday by her parents.*
42. Mr. Hill's students *are taught to understand different English accents.*
43. Was the garage *built at the same time as the house (was)?*
44. Further information *can be obtained by sending a self-addressed envelope to the above address.*
45. On *being told about the robbery the manager was very astounded.*
46. Does your aunt really need *meeting/ to be met at the station?*

47. Professor Van Helsing *needs meeting/ to be met at the airport.*
48. An increased number of travellers *are being stopped B, Customs officials.*
49. The manager was *nowhere to be found.*
50. Do not *despise the poor*, (despise (v.): to feel contempt for sb/sth = xem thường, khinh miệt.

Exercise 4.

1. We have *had the decorators finish our first floor.*
2. All the shops *had their windows blown out in the gas explosion.*
3. I had *the washing machine mended by Mr. Dryden.*
4. Get *the work finished by lunchtime and you can go home.*
5. She had *her car serviced yesterday.*
6. He *had his watch stolen yesterday.*
7. She *had her car repaired yesterday.*
8. I must *have my suit cleaned before the interview.*
9. When I am busy, I often get *my sister to wash my clothes/ my clothes washed by my sister.*
10. The manager usually has *his personal assistant sort out his documents/ his documents sorted out by his personal assistant.*
11. The singer had *very little money (left) when he died, which surprised everybody.*
12. That poet, *whose name I have forgotten, is very well-known.*
13. There are *more than one thousand employees in the factory where I work.*
14. The only thing *(that) I am interested in is why he did it.*
15. The football team, *whose manager is a famous Spanish footballer, have won all their matches this season.*
16. Mr. and Mrs. Gibbs, *to whom I spoke only last week, died in that terrible train accident.*
17. The joke *that/which I told made Michael laugh.*
18. This reporter, *whose background I know well, is absolutely honest.*
19. A frost which *came late spoiled much of the fruit crop.*
20. *was told about that by a man whom/ that I don't know.*

Exercise 5.

1. This hat is *the cheapest of mine.*
2. Home computers aren't *as/so expensive as they used to be.*
3. Nowhere is *as nice as your own country, is it?*
4. The smoking of cigarettes is *no longer as popular/ widespread as it used to be.*
5. I don't know *about it as much as she does/her.*
6. I was the *last to know/hear about the accident.*
7. Is this *the best hotel you could find?*
8. I have never *had such a good meal before.*
9. He is behaving *more violently than ever before.*

10. No one stands a better chance of winning the race than him.
11. You are better at describing people than I am.
12. Not as many people were infected with HIV 5 years ago as they are this year.
13. Jim is not such a good mechanic/so good a mechanic as Peter.
14. You have never had such a good offer as/so good an offer as 6,000 pounds before.
15. Martin's latest novel is not as interesting as his last one.
16. There is no statesman that I admire more than the President.
17. I have never known a more warm-hearted person than my mother (is).
18. The average depth of the Pacific (Ocean) is greater than that of the Atlantic.
19. It was not so much a discussion as an argument.
20. In my opinion, there is no better pianist than him/ no one that is a better pianist than him in the whole orchestra.
21. He earns as much in a week as I do in a month.
22. The annual rainfall in the north-west of Britain is higher/ greater than that in the south-east.
23. The average skyscraper in the USA is higher anywhere else in the world, (or) The average height of skyscrapers in the USA is higher than anywhere else in the world.
24. There were far fewer people there than I had expected.
25. No one in the world can play the guitar as well as you.
26. The more you run, the healthier you will become.
27. The less time my boss has, the better he works.
28. The older I get, the less I want to travel.
29. The more proficient he is, the more he is fond of the game.
30. The more qualifications you can get, the more success you can/ will make, (or) The more qualifications you can get, the more successful you are/ will be.

Exercise 6.

1. If Jimmy weren't lazy, he wouldn't often get bad marks.
2. If we had had a map, we wouldn't have got lost.
3. If we had had enough money, we would/could have gone on holiday.
4. If she had hurried, she would have caught the train.
5. If I had known she couldn't eat beef, I wouldn't have bought it.
6. Unless you leave a forwarding address, we will not be able to contact you.
7. Provided that you save some money, you will be able to buy a car.
8. If the boys had some matches, they could light the fire.
9. If the new car had not been so expensive, he would have bought it.
10. Supposing that you failed your driving test, would you take it again?
11. The captain told us that if that tanker broke up, there would be an oil slick all along the coast.
12. Unless you water these flowers, they will die soon.

- 13.** If it hadn't been for his competence/he hadn't been so incompetent, they would not have failed.
- 14.** If you had told me in advance, I could have avoided that date.
- 15.** If he had been more careful, we would/could have finished the work.
- 16.** If my husband had left the car keys I could have picked him up at the station.
- 17.** Unless you have a good command of English, you can't/won't be able to work for
- 18.** this travel agency. Were you to follow my advice, you would be successful.
- 19.** I wouldn't be surprised if the company made a profit next year.
- 20.** If the foundations hadn't been weak, the building wouldn't have collapsed.
- 21.** Had it not been for the goalkeeper, we would have lost the match/ we wouldn't have won the match.
- 22.** If he hadn't been so over-confident, he wouldn't have been defeated in the Wimbledon final.
- 23.** Provided that the weather is good, we will put out to sea.
- 24.** Had it not been Mary's support, I wouldn't have been able to finish the project.
- 25.** Had his aunt not died and left/given him a legacy of \$10,000 he would not have been able to buy the house he wanted, (legacy (n) = tài sản thừa kế.)
- 26.** Were it not for the money this job wouldn't be worthwhile.
- 27.** If I were you, I'd take more exercise.
- 28.** If he hadn't had his wife's constant support, he would never have achieved his ambition.
- 29.** If it hadn't been readable, I wouldn't have got through the book so quickly.
- 30.** As long as you follow this instruction carefully, you won't have any problems.
- 31.** Unless he lived for the others, his life would be meaningless.
- 32.** Had I known that he was the author, I wouldn't have been so rude about his new book.
- 33.** If it hadn't been for her insistence/insisting on kissing everyone goodbye, she would have caught the train.
- 34.** Had it not been for his solicitor's advice, he would have made a serious mistake.
- 35.** Without his neighbour's help, Mr. Watson couldn't have repaired (he garage roof).
- 36.** But for his father's early retirement, Richard wouldn't have taken over the family business.
- 37.** But for his great speed, John wouldn't/couldn't have won the gold medal.
- 38.** As long as you (can) keep/stay calm, you will pass your driving test.
- 39.** If he had studied his lessons carefully, he wouldn't get bad marks now/ he would get good marks now.
- 40.** Even if I had tried to telephone him, he wouldn't answer the phone after midnight.
- 41.** Unless a famous director had seen her act in a school play, she wouldn't be a star.
- 42.** If only your sister could come as well.
- 43.** I wish I had finished my homework last night.
- 44.** They wish they hadn't done business with him.

45. I wish *I had taken my doctor's advice.*
46. Mary wishes *she had been put in a higher class.*
47. If only *my English were fluent enough to go for the interview.*
48. I wish *you had told us about your mother's problem.*
49. Maria wishes *she had applied for the job in that international company.*
50. Mrs. Taylor wishes *she lived in a bigger house*, (or) Mrs. Taylor wishes *she had a bigger house.*

Exercise 7.

1. The girl asked *Jim why he hadn't gone to the club the night before/ the previous night.*
2. She said that if *she were me, she would not come there that day.*
3. The journalist wanted to know *how many survivors there were.*
4. The doctor advised him *to get out in the sun as often as possible or he could get ill again.*
5. The customer wanted to know *when the manager came back.*
6. It was reported that *over \$40 million had been received during the previous ten days.*
7. The inspector accused *him of stealing/ having stolen the jewels.*
8. Tim wondered *if he would ever find a job.*
9. A police patrol warned *us not to park our car on the double yellow line*, (or) A police patrol warned *us against parking our car on the double yellow line.*
10. Peter asked if *he could borrow Janet's typewriter.*
11. The manager threatened *not to select Brian for the team unless he trained harder/ if he didn't train harder.*
12. "Please wake me at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning," *I asked the hotel porter.*
13. Mark reminded Vivian *to buy some bread on her way home from work.*
14. Bill doubted *whether John would come.*
15. Barbara said that *she had seen them at her parents' house the previous year.*
16. Tony said that *he had never been to London and he thought he would go there the following year.*
17. My classmate told me *he/she couldn't explain that rule to me.*
18. Tom promised *to give Janet the answer by the end of that week.*
19. My friend advised *me not to smoke so much.*
20. The suspect denied *having been in the shop when the robbery happened.*

Exercise 8.

1. I wasn't in the office yesterday, so it *must have been my assistant (that) you spoke to.*
2. It can't *have been Mrs. Elton you saw because she's in Bristol.*
3. He must *have finished all his exercises and gone shopping.*
4. Andy can't *be having a bath.*
5. They must *be hungry now.*
6. John can't *be at school right now.*

7. Nam might *have gone out with his girlfriend*.
8. Tina couldn't *have stolen the money*.
9. The article must *have been written by Kate*.
10. Helen must *be playing the guitar now*. In the event, we *needn't have taken out the extra insurance*.
11. You shouldn't *have left the window open*.
12. I shouldn't *have parked my car outside the police station*.
13. I needn't *have given Ted the message*.
14. Tom should *have studied harder for his graduation exams*.
15. You should *have called the fire brigade at once*.
16. Francis ought *to have tried harder to find his brother*, (or) Francis ought *to have made more effort to find his brother*.
17. Mike should *have listened to your advice*.
18. James should *have been told the news a long time ago*.
19. The father needn't *have given the daughter too much money*.

Exercise 9.

1. Never *had she expected that she was so successful*.
2. Only in a situation like this *do children learn a lot about how to behave*.
3. Only by *united opposition can we eliminate world terrorism*.
4. Only after a *twelve-hour wait/ a delay of twelve hours did their flight leave*.
5. Only after the *money is received will we deliver goods*.
6. Only after you *obtain a driving license can you drive a car*.
7. Only when it is quite independent *can the country be prosperous*.
8. Only later *did I realize that I had made a big mistake*.
9. Little *does she understand how much suffering she has caused*.
10. Little *did we know at the time how serious the problem was*.
11. Not a tear *did she shed when the story ended in tragedy*.
12. Not until John *received the offer of promotion in writing did he celebrate a party*.
13. Not until the men *had crossed the border did they feel safe*.
14. Not until he *came into the light did I recognize him*.
15. Not only *did Diana sprain her ankle but she also broke her leg*.
16. No sooner *had they arrived than things went wrong*.
17. No sooner *had he returned from his walk than he got down to writing the letter*.
18. No sooner *had the thieves touched the safe than tear gas was released*.
19. No sooner *had she put up her umbrella than the rain came down in torrents*.
20. No sooner *had the ship touched the shore than the soldiers leaped into the water*.
21. Hardly *had they begun work when the lights failed*.
22. Hardly *had I solved one problem when I was faced with another*.
23. Hardly *does a day pass without my writing to him*.

24. So fierce was the dog that nobody would visit them.
25. So foolish is he that he can't remember his lessons.
26. At no time did he suspect (that) the money had been stolen.
27. So great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.
28. Never before had a king resigned/ was there any king's resignation.
29. Under no circumstances am I to be disturbed.
30. Each retiring employee is given/presented a gold watch by the company.
31. Little do the passengers realize how lucky they have been in this accident.
32. Only by training hard every day can you become a good athlete.
33. Only when Alice and Charles (had) had their second child did they decide to move to a bigger house.
34. At no time did the two sides look likely to reach an agreement.
35. Only after a new pay offer did the workers call off the strike.
36. No sooner had the announcements been made than everyone started complaining.
37. Never had she expected that she was so successful.
38. Not until I visited him did I realize how ill he was.
39. Only B, Chance was a policeman passing when I was attacked.
40. Only when the general's personal diaries were published did the truth come out.

Exercise 10.

1. I turned down the offer to work for IBM. (turn down = bác bỏ (lời đề nghị).)
2. I'm afraid we have run out of cooking oil. (run out of = hết, cạn kiệt.)
3. Paula turned up when everyone had gone home, (turn up = đến nơi, xuất hiện.)
4. Derek ran into his former teacher on the way to the stadium yesterday, (happen (v.) = tình cờ; run into someone = ngẫu nhiên gặp.)
5. Steve came across some of his high school friends while he was waiting outside the shop, (come across = gặp một cách tình cờ.)
6. Mr. Roberts will call you back as soon as he comes.
7. Ann takes after her mother, (take after somebody/something = to resemble (giống với, tương tự với) người nào hoặc vật nào).
8. We'd better think it over before we made an important decision, (think something over = xem xét kĩ, nhất là trước khi đi đến quyết định.)
9. The company turned down Hung's offer.
10. She has always got on well with the children, (get on/along with somebody = hòa đồng với ai, có quan hệ thân hữu.)
11. We had to put off our wedding until September, (put off = hoãn lại)
12. apologize for being/ having been rude to you yesterday.
13. He blamed the food shortages on the rapid growth in population, (blame something on somebody/ something = đổ lỗi.)
14. Nobody paid attention to my protests/ took (any) notice of my protests, (take no notice

of = không quan tâm đến.)

15. I object to people criticizing me unfairly/ my being unfairly criticized, (object to somebody/ something - phản đối ai/ cái gì.)
16. You must congratulate her on her success in passing the exams, (congratulate somebody on something = chúc mừng.)

Exercise 11.

1. No matter how long you use it, it will not wear out.
2. However experienced you are, driving fast is dangerous.
3. Whenever we meet again in the future, we'll always remember these days together.
4. Wherever he is hiding, we must find him.
5. Try as hard as I might I couldn't open the door.
6. Whichever route you take, it will still take you about three hours to get there.
7. No matter how much louder he can shout, I still won't take any notice.
8. No matter how carefully I listened, I couldn't understand him.
9. No matter what I do, my parents find fault with me.
10. However hard she works, she never seems to succeed.
11. However long it may take/ takes, I'll find that man.
12. However tempting the offer was, he would never agree to sell his business.
13. Whatever your requirement is, the Volvo meets it admirably.
14. Whatever price you offer for the painting, I won't sell it.
15. However hard Fred tried to start the car, he didn't succeed, (or) However hard Fred tried, he couldn't start the car.

Exercise 12.

1. James didn't sign the contract until he had spoken to his lawyer.
2. It wasn't until all the guests had gone home that we could relax.
3. It isn't until you'll be ill that you start to appreciate good health.
4. It wasn't until he was 30 that he passed his driving test.
5. Until I tell you, you cannot leave.
6. While I was having dinner, the phone rang.
7. Once you have learned the basic rules, you'll find it easy to play.
8. When the cat is absent/ away, the mice will play.
9. The moment I got up to dance the band stopped playing.
10. They had no sooner sold their house than they were offered a better price for it.

Exercise 13.

1. It was such an interesting film that I couldn't go to bed.
2. It was such a low bridge that the bus couldn't go under it.
3. It was such bad tea that couldn't drink it.
4. The meat was so rotten that it had to be thrown away.
5. It was such a great demand for tickets that people queued day and night.

6. They had such a fierce do that nobody would visit them.
7. There has been such a vociferous protest that the committee has had to reconsider.
8. She wasn't so deaf/hard of hearing that she couldn't hear the phone ring.
9. The door was too heavy for the child to push open.
10. The hamburger was so delicious that I ate twice.
11. The gate is closed so that the children cannot/will not to run into the road.
12. He will come so as to be sure of meeting you.
13. So as not to disturb/ to avoid disturbing the children, we left quietly.
14. In order not to be late, they left fifteen minutes earlier than necessary.
15. So as not to miss the first bus, we got up early.
16. It's a mystery what (has) happened to the two climbers.
17. What amazes me is the mistakes he makes.
18. What I found surprising was his lack of confidence.
19. What the headmaster said was very reassuring, (reassuring (adj.) = làm yên lòng, làm vững dạ.)
20. That mosquitoes cause malaria is well-known.
21. There is no point in considering such a ridiculous proposal seriously.
22. What really makes me angry is the way people deface walls, (deface (v.) = làm xấu đi, làm mất vẻ đẹp.)
23. What Ann's mother gave her was a gold watch.
24. We spent three hours painting the door.
25. It took us half an hour to walk from our house to the river.

Exercise 14.

1. Immediately after his appointment to the post, the new editor fell ill.
2. On safe arriving of the ship at the airport, the victims were taken to hospital.
3. Unlike other languages, Esperanto has no irregular verbs.
4. On arrival at the shop the goods are inspected carefully.
5. On hearing the news of her husband's death she fainted.
6. On being asked about the strike, the Prime Minister declined to comment.
7. Once the opera had begun, late-comers had to wait before taking their seats.
8. I wanted to thank Martin for having taken the time to help me.
9. What with working too hard and eating too little, he became ill.
10. Not having been to America before, she found it a whole new experience.
11. These workmen complained about not having been told about the new regulations of the company.
12. Contrary to appearance/ its harmless appearance, the dog was, in fact, quite dangerous.
13. Contrary to your belief/ to what you think, fat people are not always jolly.
14. It is not likely that they will succeed.
15. Jennifer forgave me for having been very rude to her because she knew I had been in a

bit of state.

Exercise 15.

1. Although Linda *felt very depressed*, she went to the party.
2. Despite his *both broken legs in the crash*, he managed to get out of the car before
3. it exploded. Despite her *severe disability/ being severely disabled*, Judy took part in many sports.
4. Even though *he had a lot of money*, he wasn't happy.
5. Industrious as *he is*, he hasn't succeeded.
6. Although rain *was forecast*, it stayed fine.
7. Charming as *Tony is*, I wouldn't trust him.
8. In spite of *a good salary/ having a good salary*, he was unhappy in his job.
9. Although the robbery *took place in broad daylight*, there seems to have been no eye-witnesses.
10. Despite *being constantly interrupted*, Professor Thompson finished his lecture.
11. In spite of *my warning*, they climbed that tree.
12. Although *he is old*, he often plays badminton every morning.
13. Even though *there are few/ not many passengers on it*, the coach to Dover will still leave as planned.
14. Friendly as *he seems/ may seem*, he is not to be trusted.
15. Strong as *he is*, he still can't lift the box.
16. Although *he was tired*, he agreed to help me with my homework.
17. Impressed as *we were by the new cinema*, we found it rather expensive.
18. Despite *not having seen a rhinoceros*, Albrecht Durer created a fairly good picture of one.
19. Even though *George loved travelling in Asia*, he decided not to go to Indonesia because of his fears of terrorism.
20. Even though *the weatherman predicted rain for tomorrow*, they will go camping.

Exercise 16.

1. This is *the most romantic story that I have ever read*, (or) This is *the first time I have read such a romantic story/ so romantic a story*.
2. It came as *no surprise (to me) that Harry had failed his driving test*.
3. To *stop him from drinking every day* is not easy.
4. It looked as if *the house had been unoccupied for several months*.
5. It look as if *it is going to rain*.
6. It is essential that *every child have/should have the same educational opportunities*.
7. It was Tom who *first recognized her extraordinary musical gift*.
8. It's impossible *to forecast next year's turnover and profits*.
9. Would it be possible *to speak to him about the problem*?
10. Travelling by air *always makes me nervous*.

11. The rough sea *made the ferry unable to sail*.
12. Whether you *are rich or poor, happiness is elusive*, (*elusive* (adj.) = khó tìm thấy.)
13. I'd rather *not have lunch yet*.
14. I'd rather *that you didn't smoke in here*.
15. I'd rather *you didn't give me an injection*.
16. I would rather *you delivered the sofa on Friday*.
17. It's high time *(that) you bought a new pair of shoes and got rid of those trainers*.
18. It's high time *(that) you were able to dress yourself*.
19. It's time *you cut your hair*.
20. The doctor suggested *I (should) rest for a few days after the operation*.
21. Henry suggested to Anne that *she should go to the doctor if she had (got) a pain in her back*.
22. John suggested *(that) Barbara (should) put a better lock on the door*.
23. John suggested *inviting Dustin and Sophie to a barbecue that weekend*.
24. You are *supposed to obey him*. (*supposed to do something* = được cho là.)
25. Nothing *can prevent/ stop/ keep me from going to the States*.

Exercise 17.

1. I have no *intention of giving you any more money*.
2. I never had *any intention of going to the meeting*.
3. The rail workers have no *intention of calling off their strike*.
4. Ever since *his accident/he had the accident, Philip has been unable to make decisions*.
5. Throughout *his life, the fisherman was very poor*.
6. Swearing at the referee earned *him a suspension of two matches*, (*earn somebody something* = (ai) *đáng nhận cái gì*; *suspend* (v.) = *treo giờ* (*cầu thủ*); *suspension* (n.) = *sự đình chỉ*.)
7. The students deserved *severe punishment for their riotous behaviour*.
8. She prides *herself on her playing the piano/herself on being such a good pianist*.
(*be proud of something* = *tự hào, hánh diện*; *to pride oneself on something* = *tự hào, hánh diện về* (ai/ cái gì).
9. I can't see the *attraction of spending all day on the beach*.
10. The patient made *a more rapid recovery than expected*.
11. His *refusal to help surprised us*.
12. It was with *great relief to hear that her condition was not serious*.
13. Against *everybody's expectation, she lost*.
14. His *insistence on having his own way led to difficulties*.
15. We want *his approval offor this important scheme*.
16. It's a *choice between this and that*.
17. His *confession of a whole series of crimes amazed everybody*, (*to confess to something/doing something* = *thú nhận*; *confession of something /doing something* = *sự*

thú nhện.)

18. The engine failure was due to a badly fitted part (*to the fact that a part had been badly fitted*).
19. We've given the matter some thought and have finally come to a decision.
20. He is a more persuasive speaker than his brother.

Exercise 18.

1. There is no need to make an appointment to see the personnel manager.
2. She is a more sympathetic listener than anyone else I know.
3. We haven't received confirmation of/ about our hotel booking yet.
4. The exhibition has not been so well attended this year.
5. Are you in agreement with Jill's views on male-female relations?
6. I couldn't resist the temptation to buy the dress.
7. Her failure in passing/ to pass the exams depresses her.
8. Thoughts must be given to ways of improving the transport system.
9. Much to our regret, we must/ have to inform you that your application has not been successful.
10. There was severe criticism of the proposals for the new motorway.
11. Despite my strong disapproval of your behaviour, I will help you this time.
12. In few other books there is such a good explanation of this problem.
13. Bad weather led to the postponement of the meeting.
14. He has arranged for everyone over sixty to be provided with a pension, (arrange for somebody to do something = dàn xếp dề ai làm cái gì.)
15. As no one has expressed any disapproval of the scheme, I suggest we go ahead.
16. There is no denial that prevention is better cure.
17. I don't feel like going to that party tonight.
18. You won't be able to buy/ get a house in that district for less than \$ 200,000.
19. What convinced him to go to Italy instead of France? (convince/ persuade somebody to do something = thuyết phục.)
20. Before these machines were invented, people had to queue.

Exercise 19.

1. It was not until six o'clock that he came/ It was six o'clock when he came.
2. It is not my fault if the tin-opener's broken.
3. It is a two-hour train journey from Loudon to Bristol.
4. Do not sign the delivery without checking for damage.
5. She seems to me to be enjoying her new job a great deal.
6. Who does this suitcase belong to?
7. I'm seldom able to afford to spend my holiday abroad.
8. I found his performance very impressive.
9. She often gets permission from her employers to go to the United States.

- 10.** Having bars on your window *prevents people from breaking into your house*.
- 11.** She doesn't *study hard enough*.
- 12.** I can barely see *any mark on that dress*.
- 13.** Nothing but *a full apology would satisfy him*.
- 14.** Nothing but *a complete story would satisfy Tim*.
- 15.** You had *better take the train*.
- 16.** I'd rather *stay in tonight*.
- 17.** The car *cost me only a few hundred pounds*.
- 18.** In *case of emergency, ring this number*.
- 19.** You pay in twelve successive monthly *installments of \$20*.
- 20.** That's got nothing *to do with you*.

Exercise 20.

- 1.** I can't *meet all my financial commitments with my income*.
- 2.** Most students are capable *of working very hard when they feel like it*.
- 3.** Her uncle didn't leave *her anything in his will*.
- 4.** No one seems *to have predicted the correct result*.
- 5.** She gave *a brilliant performance in the school play*.
- 6.** Their wedding *took place in the summer of 2000*.
- 7.** All hope that *he was alive was in vain*, (to despair of something/doing something = *het hi vọng, tuyệt vọng*. *His life was despaired of*. (Bệnh tình anh ấy thâthết hi vọng cùa chා.)
- 8.** Every time we *rang, there wasn't any answer*.
- 9.** I certainly *won't ever go to that restaurant*.
- 10.** We were not *able to have our picnic because of the heavy rain*.
- 11.** Is she *trustworthy*?
- 12.** She always *gives me a cup of coffee when I visit her flat*.
- 13.** Due to the recent *increase in the robberies, the police are advising vigilance*. (vigilance (n.) = sự cảnh giác, sự đề phòng (nguy hiểm).
- 14.** Joseph is leaving *for Athens for graduate work in archeology*.
- 15.** I built *this on my own*.
- 16.** It's just a *question/ matter of waiting long enough to get what we want*.
- 17.** There is absolutely no *truth in that rumour about the politician and construction contract*.
- 18.** Martin's poor *health does not stop/prevent him (from) enjoying life*.
- 19.** I didn't realize the *extent to which he was influenced by his brother*, (to some/ a certain/ the extent = *đến một mức độ nào đó*).
- 20.** All that he did *was due to his kindness*, (out of = because of)

Exercise 21.

- 1.** There's nothing *I would not do for you*.

2. Not having been born in this country means that you can't vote, (or) Not having been born in this country prevents you from voting.
3. You must write letters of application by hand.
4. It's not the job I'm interested in, it's the people.
5. We shall soon find a solution to overcome our present financial problems.
6. Never accept cheques without proof of identity.
7. I don't seem to have brought my medical card with me.
8. His habit of rising at dawn lasted until his old age.
9. There is no satisfactory answer for that question.
10. They didn't stop smoking through the meal.
11. The soup powder just needs boiling water added to it according to the instructions.
12. He denied being/ having been there at that time.
13. What made her late?
14. It is better for me to get back to work.
15. There is no limit to what you eat for \$50 at the new lunch bar. (no limit to something = không có giới hạn đối với cái gì.)
16. The police would not allow us to get nearer/let US get nearer.
17. It doesn't take Jack long to lose his temper.
18. It wasn't until Shirley was eight that she began to read.
19. Alan's illness was the result of/ was caused by (his) working too hard at the office.
20. Galileo is regarded as being the father of modern astronomy.

Exercise 22.

1. Arthur apologized for hurting/ having hurt my feelings.
2. He insisted on seeing the manager.
3. It is essential to work very hard if you want to be successful in business.
4. According to the drama critic of the "Daily News", the new play is regarded as a major breakthrough.
5. I am interested in reading science books.
6. Her work resulted in the discovery of eight new comets.
7. I didn't pay much attention to the girl standing at the gate.
8. Few students paid attention to what Professor Harrison was saying.
9. Only you and I knew who the robber was.
10. You needn't finish the work by Saturday, (or) You don't need to finish the work by Saturday.
11. I wasn't early enough to see him.
12. The sea was too rough for the children to go swimming.
13. David Beckham is not young enough to play in that teenagers' soccer championship.
14. The new car was too expensive for him to buy.
15. The furniture was too expensive for me to buy.

16. It was too *late* to do anything, (or) It was too *late* for anything to be done.

17. The water was not *warm enough* for the children to swim in.

18. We had *no difficulty* (in) finding the house.

19. She reminded *him* to phone the office.

20. In *case* you get hungry on the train, take some sandwiches.

Exercise 23.

1. It is a *six-hour drive from here to London*.

2. It took *us 5 hours to travel to London*.

3. It *takes me 20 minutes to get to work*.

4. He was annoyed *with his secretary for coming to work late*, (or) He was annoyed *that his secretary came to work late*.

5. She is not used *to life in London*.

6. My English friend isn't used *to driving on the right*.

7. It was impolite *of him to leave without saying a single word*.

8. Why *don't we go abroad for our holiday this year?*

9. Would you mind *not smoking in the ward?*

10. He was too *tired to watch the whole film, so he fell asleep*.

11. After these young men *had had six years of training, they became doctors*.

12. There is *nothing I wouldn't do to be able to travel to China*.

13. My father has *difficulty* (in) *following maps*.

14. We were *so shocked to hear that an earthquake had occurred*.

15. Yoghurt is supposed to do *you good*. (do you good = cải thiện sức khoẻ hoặc cuộc sống.)

16. In all *probability/ likelihood*, the whole thing will have been forgotten by next term, (in all probability/ likelihood = rất có thể.)

17. A heavy shower stopped/prevented them from finishing their game.

18. He is always *short of money*.

19. Our house *has been for sale/ on the market for over six months*.

20. Thanks to my uncle's generosity, we were able to go or7 a Mediterranean cruise.

Exercise 24.

1. You *mustn't aren't allowed to ride a bicycle along the pavement*.

2. The excuse for *declaration of war was the defence of their territorial rights*.

(pretext of something/ doing something = có, lí do.)

3. By stretching *the rope from one side of the crevasse to the other, they were able to haul their equipment across*.

4. The risks of *this scheme are too great for my liking*.

5. There is no point in trying to get Jim to lend you his car/ in trying to borrow Jim's car.

6. There is *hardly anything/ very little that he doesn't know about whales*.

7. The operation left Simon weaker feeling than he (had) expected.
8. No parking is allowed here.
9. You must either pay the bill at once or return the goods.
10. I derive a lot of pleasure from collecting stamps, (derive something from = nhận được từ; derive pleasure from = tìm thấy niềm vui thích từ.)
11. You haven't accounted exactly for the disappearance of the money, (account for something = giải thích nguyên nhân gây ra điều gì.)
12. Nothing but an unforeseen problem can stop the scheme now.
13. If you want me to hear you, you will have to speak up.
14. With the exception of Philip, everyone else at the meeting was a party member. (with the exception of = ngoại trừ.)
15. Publicly-maintained school do not charge tuition fees.
16. Would it be possible to speak to someone about my problem?
17. Mrs Wilson sends her apologies for not having attended the meeting yesterday morning.
18. If you want accommodation in Brighton, it is advisable to book in advance.
19. There wasn't much time/a long time left when the winning goal was scored.
20. To my surprise, Mary got into university despite the fact that/although she hadn't worked hard at school.

Exercise 25.

1. My purpose in holding this meeting is to present the latest sales figures.
2. Urgent action must be taken to solve the problem of homelessness. (or) Urgent measures are necessary to solve the problem of homelessness.
3. No fewer than 2,000 visitors a month must visit/use the new leisure centre to make a profit.
4. There have been no changes to the team since last Saturday's match.
5. There is no difference in weight between these two boxers.
6. She flatly refused to sleep in that haunted house.
7. The storm surprisingly caused little damage in the area.
8. He is the most likely person to succeed in solving the problem.
9. This will be the first time the group has appeared/ has played in the USA.
10. Le Corbusier had a great influence on the development of architectural styles.
11. Her contributions to class discussions are enthusiastic.
12. Refusal to give a breath sample to the police could lead to your arrest.
13. You are certain/ bound to meet lots of people in your new job.
14. We will still go whether it rains or not.
15. Nobody is to blame/ responsible for the fact that the meeting was cancelled.
16. Hardly a day passes/ goes by without my writing to him.
17. Because of the proper combination of the chemicals, the prescription has brought about the expected result.

18. Throughout his life, the man *suffered from great poverty*.
19. Why did they turn *up so late*?
20. There is nothing *I wouldn't do to prevent him from going there*.

Gợi ý viết đoạn văn Theme 1: Family life

Topic I.1

In modern society, the roles of men and women are similar. The father takes care of the family by providing all the necessities, and guiding the children. The mother, in most families, also goes to work, looks after the children, and supervises household tasks. The son can assist in household activities such as doing simple home repairs and taking care of his younger brother or sister. The daughter can help the mother with household chores such as grocery shopping, cooking, or keeping the house tidy. Sharing household chores helps the family have a happier atmosphere, and closer relationship. All of them will be more sociable and active in their daily lives at work or at school. All the family members should share the household chores equally in order to have a happy family.

Topic I.2

Of all household chores, I dislike washing up most because it is boring. The chore I enjoy doing is tidying up my own room because it makes my room look more clean and nice. Among his/her household tasks, my brother/sister prefers to helps the mother prepare and cook dinner because the work is interesting. My father also shares in housework. His main responsibilities are repairing the household furniture or appliances especially electric ones. My mother is the manager of the household. She runs the family well to make sure that all members can live under the same roof comfortably.

Topic I.3

Mothers should be greatly encouraged to work outside the home. First, working mothers contribute to household income. They help their husbands pay household expenses and satisfy their children's growing needs. When life is getting more and more expensive, women's salaries are becoming important to their household budgets. Second, working mothers are good educators for their children. Experiences at work widen their knowledge. Through working, they discover their strengths and weaknesses, and find good ways to educate their children. Finally, working mothers set examples for their children. When children see how their parents work hard to support the family and share household chores, they will learn many things from them. Family values such as hard work, responsibilities and love are likely to pass from generation to generation. Clearly, mothers should be strongly supported to work outside the home.

Topic I.4

I live in a family of four: my parents, my younger brother and I. We are all very busy people, for example my parents sometimes work late in the evening or work at the weekend, so we split the household chores equally. My dad is responsible for mending things around the house. My mother does most of the cooking and grocery shopping.

Being the elder child in the family, I take up a large share of housework. I do the laundry, take out the garbage, and clean the fridge once a week. My younger sister helps Mum prepare meals and wash the dishes. My sister and I take turns laying the table for meals, sweeping the house and feeding the pet. We do our share of household chores willingly because we know that if everyone contributes, the burden is less and each family member can have some time to relax: "*Many hands make light work*".

Topic I.5

With the development of sciences, people are living longer now. The three most factors enabling the longer life are: the quality of life, good medical services, and regular sports. We could have not only enough food we want but also the healthy food. With the development of transportation systems, inland people now could enjoy seafood and tropical fruit. Furthermore, governments are paying more and more money on medical services so that citizens can have good medical services easily. Many illnesses that were considered fatal can be cured nowadays. The better prevention and cures enable people's longer lives. Finally, people care more for their own health. Regular exercises and sports can resist more diseases. We can see a large number of people doing morning exercises in the parks every morning. To sum up, the development of our society brings the longer life of people.

Topic I.6

It is true that the social, economic changes make the traditional family standards vary. Many people agree that families are not as close-knit as they used to be for a number of reasons. First, we all seem to have so busy lives and dynamic lifestyles, so we are now so busy working, earning, getting promotions, taking part in social activities. In families, both parents work so they have less time for themselves as well as for other family members. Second, due to the explosion of modern technologies, people are more interested in their online lives than interacting with other family members. It is sometimes thought that people seem to isolate themselves with their smart phones, computers, etc. In addition, having different viewpoints is the other cause of the issue. The generation gaps sometimes cause misunderstanding or even arguments. Although changes of traditional families are unavoidable, we can reduce the gaps between family members to be as close-knit as possible.

Topic I.7

Nowadays, more and more people prefer to eat at food stands or restaurants, but I still prefer to prepare and eat food at home for a number of reasons. First, you can save money if you eat at home. In order to get profit, restaurants ask for more money on the same food you cook at home, and that is a waste of money. Second, the food in restaurants is not what you are expecting. You may dislike the way restaurants cook the same dishes in different tastes. Finally, if you prepare food by yourself, you will have a happy mood and pleasure when you eat it, regardless of the savour of the food. You can improve your method of cooking considering your taste on that day. Cooking has become my hobby now, and I prefer to eat food at home.

Topic I.8

When children grow up, they need parental support in order to establish good personalities. First, parents with the help of close emotional bonds with children will be able to enhance a child's motivation to comply with rules and requests. Children are associated with positive long-term outcomes so that they will grow up more independent, emphatic, and socially competent. Secure attachment to parents will give a child support for positive, self-fulfilling expectations about other people that he will take into future relationships. Second, parents with good jobs will be able to satisfy their children's needs as an asset to a child's overall development. The income of parents is directly influential in the quality of care as well as of life a child has. In addition, children need their parents to be affectionate, caring persons who loves them, fosters secure attachments with the child, and understands what the child's needs.

Theme 2: Education & Employment

Topic II. 1

The formal school system in Vietnam consists of two levels of education: primary and secondary education. Primary school begins when a child gets 6, and lasts for 4 years; that is, he or she finishes the primary education at the age of 10. Then second education opens up. The child starts the lower secondary education with Grade 6 when he or she is 11 years old, and stays on until the age of 14 at Grade 9. At the end of Grade 9, the student moves on to the upper secondary school as long as he or she passes a Grade 10 entrance examination. Then the student follows the upper secondary education, which is supposed to last three years. In other words, when finishing Grade 12, the student completes his formal education in Vietnam.

Topic II.2

English has become one of the three compulsory subjects in the high school graduation examinations. First, students have to revise basic English grammar, especially sentence structures, vocabulary, and use of English. Second, they should also improve reading skills (understand the main ideas, look for specific or relevant details, and find the closest meaning of the words/ phrases from the passage based on the context); writing skills (make the detailed outlines with the main ideas, supporting ideas, and linking words). In addition, revision of English textbooks with the themes and contents, especially English 12 has proved to be very important. Last but not least, mental preparations are also important: go to bed early the night before the examination day, keep calm and alert while doing the test papers. In short, the preparations you have made will help you have confidence in order to succeed in the important examinations.

Topic II. 3

English has become the language of international communication in many fields including education, especially higher education. English will help you get much more knowledge from reference books written in English. Most science books are written or translated in English, so we can get ready access to mankind knowledge. English is also the

means of communication when we study abroad or take part in international projects with foreign universities or companies. A good command of English is a must when we work for foreign companies in Vietnam. In short, English helps us become more successful in our higher education and future career.

Topic II. 4

I have decided to apply to Ho Chí Minh City University of Technology majoring in Information Technology in order to become an IT engineer. I have had the love of science since my childhood, and at present I am very interested in using computers. I am very good at subjects of natural sciences such as Maths, Physics, Chemistry, and also English. I hope that I will do the exam papers very well so that I will be able to get enough qualifications to pass the college entrance exams to attend the course of my own choice. Up to now, I have reviewed all the basic knowledge and necessary skills in Grade 12 to complete the exam papers.

Topic II. 5

When we choose to attend a Vietnamese university, we can live with our own family during the course of study and get constant support and encouragement from each family member. In addition, students can learn all subjects in Vietnamese, the mother tongue. Students who do not have a good command of English have no difficulty in following the courses. Most Vietnamese universities offer a variety of courses of high quality for low tuition. It is really necessary for poor students in order to follow higher education. Nowadays, more and more Vietnamese universities gain the regional and international recognition of the university degrees, in short, attending a domestic university is the best choice for most Vietnamese students and they will have enough qualifications to get good careers.

Topic II. 6

There are several reasons why students would like to study abroad. First, they can gain higher academic qualifications when studying overseas. A large number of prestigious universities in the world have professional lecturers who are experts in their fields and better courses. Therefore, students can have more opportunities to find a well-paid job in their home country or get promoted in their career path after graduation. Second, living and studying in other countries may help students learn foreign languages such as English or French and communicate with native speakers. Finally, if students are sent to foreign countries for their studies, they will be likely to become more mature and independent. Experiencing new things including customs and cultures would be beneficial to their later lives because they learn many useful things. In short, it seems that studying abroad is a good opportunity to help young learners prepare for their future best.

Topic II. 7

We gain our knowledge about the world and our life mostly from books. Knowledge from books forms a very important part of our knowledge structure. In schools and colleges, we learn knowledge which is fundamental to our future career.

We learn knowledge from books in order to make our contributions to our society in the future. A student learns mathematics and other scientific knowledge and becomes a scientist or an engineer. We will be illiterate and ignorant without learning knowledge from books. Moreover, we acquire knowledge about life and the world by reading books, magazines and newspapers. This is also very important because we cannot experience everything by ourselves. In short, we should have a real understanding of knowledge from books, and learn how to apply this knowledge to real world situations.

Topic II. 8

First, people would like to gain more knowledge and learn more skills. Recently, most jobs require people with higher education and good job skills. Next, as technology advances all over the world, people require more and more education. Furthermore, many people follow college or university to make more friends and increase their interpersonal skills. They can meet more people who have the similar interests with them. Last but not least, people who graduate from college seem more confident in our community. They are more respected by society, and they can confidently talk and do their jobs as they are more educated. Therefore, most people want to get the confidence through the university or college study. In today's society, people need more knowledge and skills to be adapted, and the university or college study is a good way to achieve this.

Topic II.9

More and more students try their best to attend college or university. First, going to university means gaining competence in order to live a better life in the future. Competitions of our days have become more and more drastic, and even a simple job or low position will attract hundreds of candidates to apply for it. Only those who have a good education and a college degree can gain better work. Therefore, we should attend college or university for better competence. Second, attending college can change our life. People who have taken higher education can get better jobs in their hometown or in big cities where a lot of people want to go to. Finally, attending college is to increase our knowledge. The process of study is so interesting that it makes our lives meaningful and exciting. It expands our vision by offering us with lots of new things which we can gain from our daily life.

Topic II.10

Nowadays, some students have the bad habit of cheating in their study and have an illusion of achievement. When a student have an intention of cheating in exams, he does not study hard enough. In class, the student does not pay attention to the teachers' explanations, and he is unwillingly to complete his homework in an appropriate way. As a result, the academic abilities will become worse and worse. Although some students can cheat during the tests in class, they cannot do anything wrong at the important examinations. Therefore, they are certainly to fail to satisfy the requirements of the graduation or admission to any institutions. Above all, the bad habit of cheating leaves a bad effect on the development of the student's characters. People will look down on him. It is our duty to make that kind of students be aware of the bad effects of cheating in study and help them keep on with their study in the correct direction.

Topic II.11

Nowadays, students have greatly benefited from modern technology, especially electronic devices in learning. First, students study better by using helpful learning applications on smartphones, laptops, tablets and other media players (dictionary, spelling, translation, pronunciation, and others). Second, electronic devices help students communicate with each other or relax by listening to music and playing games when they are bored and tired of studying. Finally, they can be used for research and study, and for storing information and textbooks. This can save time and make students' backpacks lighter. In short, electronic devices in learning have many advantages, but they may bring more harm than good to students if they use these devices too much or in inappropriate ways.

Topic II.12

In order to learn about something complex, it is always best to have a teacher. Teachers can help students learn in the ways that are best for each student. A good teacher can adapt her teaching to your needs. Teachers help you focus on what you are learning. If you are learning something by yourself, it is easy to become distracted and go on to other activities. Teachers keep your attention on the subject. They also approach a subject logically, taking it one step at a time. Learning a subject on your own is a very narrow way because you can only use the information you get from the textbook. With a teacher, you get the information in the extra written materials as well as the teacher's own knowledge and experience of the topic. Although you can learn on your own, a good teacher is the biggest help you can have for your learning.

Topic II.13

Preparing for a job interview can be stressful and very important when you are called for the first interview. First, you should find out as much as possible about the company and the job you apply for. You can surf the company website to collect all the necessary information about the vacancy. Second, before the interview you have to send a letter of application and your curriculum vitae stating all your strengths and potentials. In addition, you have to imagine the questions which are possibly asked in the job interview and work out the best answers. Finally, you should have good concentration and make a real effort to answer all the questions the interviewer asks. You shouldn't avoid difficult questions about the job, but show enthusiasm when it is explained to you. Good preparations and the right attitude towards the job interview help you succeed in getting the job offer.

Topic II.14

My favourite subject is English because of a number of reasons. First, I like to learn this subject because it is one of the core subjects which are vital and essential in my career path. I try to learn this international language well so that I can communicate with foreigners and find a good job in the future. Second, learning English well can help me read books or magazines in English. Through reading books in English, I can be exposed to various cultures and customs. Next, my English teacher is a dedicated person who can engage me in her lessons and bring the passion to me. I find her lessons interesting because she delivers

them in a way that I really like. In short, English is an important subject that I am really keen on.

Theme 3: Culture, Community, Technology

Topic III.1

Visitors coming from a different culture should have a look into Vietnamese culture before their visit to Vietnam. First, they should call first when planning to visit someone at home, arrive on time when invited to someone's home, and bargain when buying things in open-air markets. Moreover, they should not wear casual clothes such as shorts, pullovers... when coming to visit pagodas or temples, open a gift in front of the giver, kiss friends when meeting them in public places because these behaviours are considered impolite in Vietnam. The cultural awareness will help visitors get respect from Vietnamese people and they can enjoy their visit.

Topic III. 2

Despite the variety, the typical marriage customs in Vietnam proceed through three stages: before the wedding, during the wedding and after the wedding. Before getting married, most couples have their engagement period which may vary from several months to several years, depending on their individual decision. When the couple are ready for the marriage life, it is the right time for the wedding ceremony which can be held either in church, pagoda or at home, depending on the couple's religions and family traditions. Following the ceremony is usually the wedding party which can be held in a restaurant with the fine foods and drinks. The guests to the reception usually give the couple money as gifts to help them cover their expenses. After the wedding, the couple may take their time by going on their honeymoon in a place of their interest to start a new life together.

Topic III. 3

People volunteer for a number of different reasons. First, they want to do something good for others. People who volunteer in the community want to make it a better place for themselves and for others. Second, many people choose to volunteer because of the personal benefits that volunteering has on their characters. Indeed, a volunteer often says that the experience has made him or her become a better person. In addition, volunteer work is a great way to gain experience in a variety of fields. They can gain experience in education, social work, health care, web design... Volunteering is also a good way to put in a little of your time and gain some valuable skills whether professional or practical. Volunteer work can often lead to a paying job. English teaching is a great example of a volunteer job that often turns into a career.

Topic III. 4

I have harbored the dream to work for the World Health Organization (WHO) for a number of reasons. First, working for WHO gives me opportunities to live abroad, to use English at work, and to have a high salary. I think it will be an interesting life to have chance to travel around to meet different people from many cultures. Second, I will be able to further my biology knowledge by doing numerous medical researches, understand more

about the cures of illnesses and the reactions of the bodies to the changes of the surroundings. Last but not least, working for WHO helps me to be more aware of the value of life. Looking after people who struggle to survive will give me strength and hope, help me think more optimistically and do more positive things. I will try my best to realize my dream of working for WHO some day in the future.

Topic III.5

There are various reasons why many people think that friendship plays an important role in their lives. Firstly, everyone needs at least a friend to share everything regardless happiness or sadness. To me, I like chatting with my friends about what happened every day and discussing personal problems. Secondly, our friends will be ready to help us out of our trouble. They will give us some good advice and support when we are in difficulty. Finally, thanks to friendship, we will have fun and enjoy a meaningful life. Our close friends are helpful, caring, honest people who are willing to help us when we need. In short, without friendship, life would be dull and boring.

Topic III.6

Women are more hard-working than men although they are physically weaker. Housewives often become passive and dependent on their husbands. Women with good qualifications should have a right to pursue their interests and follow their own career in order to lead an independent life. More and more women are now working in jobs that used to be considered suitable for men only. However, women often become exhausted if they have to do two jobs at work and at home. Married men and women spend about equal amounts of time working, but women still have to spend more time on housework. Therefore, men should share household tasks with their wives.

Topic III.7

We work with many different kinds of people. In my opinion, my co-workers should have some important characteristics such as independence, optimism, and teamwork spirit. A good co-worker should have his own opinions, and dare to propose his own ideas. Everyone tries his best to analyze every aspect of a subject so that it can be done best. Another important characteristic is optimism. If we have some difficult problems, we should encourage others to find methods to solve the problems. One's good mood can easily influence others. In addition, teamwork spirit is an important characteristic of a co-worker. A co-worker should be tolerant to different people and their ways of working. He should be willing to dedicate his energy, time, and knowledge to reach the goal of the whole team. If everyone in a work group has these characteristics, the group can overcome difficulties and gain its aims.

Topic III.8

Life without computers seems simply impossible now. Computers have affected every aspect of our lives. Since the time they were invented, computers have encouraged great technological progress in different fields. For example, computers are used in many industries, corporations, organizations, homes to lead to many inventions, or achievements.

Along with computers, the Internet has aided the development in technology. The Internet has made our planet become smaller, and maintained the communication for billions of people. Computers can offer a great source of information, help students with their study and provide a variety sources of entertainment. However, many people argue that computers have killed physical contact between people. For example, nowadays teenagers prefer chatting on the computer to meeting face to face.

Topic III. 9

Information technology brings me so many positive changes though sometimes it causes some troubles. It is undeniable that information technology helps bring the family members closer as we always keep in touch with help of smart phones, laptops. Besides, it helps us stay in touch with the world around from our own tables or even beds by reading on-line newspapers, surfing websites. Information technology helps us to broaden our knowledge as we can learn or take various online and offline courses. Moreover, we have more chance to earn because there are always numerous jobs available in the IT field. On the other hand, we sometimes feel annoyed by bad and poisonous information, images, or websites. We are also afraid of losing confidential documents or files due to viruses or hackers. The most important thing I need to do is to take full of its advantages and try hard to reduce the bad effects that may bring to my life.

Topic III. 10

Nowadays, the Internet, which has many benefits and some drawbacks, is becoming common all over the world. Firstly, it can provide a lot of information and some kinds of entertainment for us. Instead of using the traditional media like newspapers, we can use the Internet to surf websites to get information. When we have free time, we can relax by listening to music or play games. Secondly, through the Internet, we can not only keep in touch with our friends and family but also share opinions or photos with each other. Besides the advantages, it also has some disadvantages. It can make us lazy because we only want to use the Internet to get the solutions to problems instead of thinking independently. In addition, we can waste too much time sitting in front of the computer to read newspapers or play games, which can easily have a negative effect on our eyes. In general, I think the Internet will be useful to us if we know how to use it effectively.

Theme 4: Nature

Topic IV.1

One of the biggest environmental effects of human activities is air pollution. Smoke from aircrafts, factory chimneys, bonfires, different kinds of vehicles on streets, and many other factors damage clean air every day. Industrial factories throw into the air huge amounts of pollutant gases. The air in many areas is so unclean that people have to wear masks when going out on the streets. Air pollution leads to the greenhouse effect, making the temperature of the earth's surface higher. Global warming leads to the polar ice caps melting, the rise of worldwide sea levels, climate changes, and other natural disasters. Everyone living on the earth should have the responsibility to reduce air pollution and

protect clean air for our survival. Worldwide governments should have control measures to reduce air pollution, and protect the natural environment for the future generation.

Topic IV.2

Conservation is the preservation of natural resources so that they can last for future generations. The most important task of conservation is to prevent endangered species from extinction. Conservation projects sponsored by governments, international organizations have made a lot of efforts to help many species in the Red List to survive and develop. Cutting wastes and recycling are also other important tasks of conservation. We should try to cut down on consumption of fossil fuels and look for new kinds of alternative sources of energy. Many nations have launched the projects of solar energy, wind energy or nuclear energy in order to supply enough power for domestic use. Without conservation, we would not maintain biodiversity or good living conditions. Therefore, conservation plays an important role in improving the quality of our lives.

Topic IV.3

Everyone is becoming aware that the environment is a serious issue. There is serious air and water pollution everywhere and we also know that the greenhouse effect is changing our weather. First of all, people can make sure that they are responsible in the way they dispose wastes. If people throw rubbish like plastic into rivers and seas, it always stay there, and causes fish to die. People also need to be responsible in the way they use natural resources like water. If people use their cars less, this will help to prevent greenhouse effect and global warming. Everyone can try to use public transportation more, or use bicycles or even walk for short distances. Finally, the most important thing is to raise people's awareness of protecting the environment. Otherwise, it will soon be too late. Vietnam's natural and cultural potential for ecotourism is well known. However, eco tours involve mainly travel to natural places and the activities are not based on the ecotourism principle. In Ha Long Bay, for example, tourists just visit the bay and some caves, without learning about the environment or taking part in any local cultural activities. In addition, in some national parks, tourists are not fully aware of environmental protection. They may throw rubbish or break tree branches. As a result, some tourist areas have suffered from some environmental damage. What's more, most tour guides have poor knowledge of the ethnic culture. Therefore, ecotourists have little or no understanding of Vietnam's cultural diversity.

Topic IV.5

On the one hand, governments should encourage people to use public transport. On the other hand, they should increase the tax on petrol. This will help to reduce the use of fossil fuels. They should either use renewable sources of energy like the wind and solar energy to solve the problem of pollution. Scientists are trying to find and use other alternative sources of energy. Moreover, more hydropower stations should be built to solve the problem of the energy shortage. They should raise people's awareness of saving energy and reducing wastes. Governments should use sources of energy wisely for the future of our planet.

Topic IV. 6

It is believed by many that the earth is being damaged by human activity. First, human activity has damaged natural environment and almost exhausted natural resources. Modern industry needs more and more resources, including minerals, fuels, etc. Ecological balance is damaged because factories occupy many places for animals and plants. Another serious problem is the greenhouse effect. Due to the effect, icebergs in the poles melt and the sea levels have risen in recent years. Furthermore, we have less chance to approach nature and less space for leisure. In fact, if we want to have a picnic with our friends, we have to drive a long distance to find a good place. In short, human activity brings the earth a lot of damage. Fortunately, many people are aware of the problem. I believe that the earth will become a better place to live with our ceaseless efforts.

Topic IV. 7

First, I would like my hometown to become a beautiful city. As a big industrial city, my hometown has made a great deal of contribution to the country's economic development, but the natural environment of the city has been badly damaged. The quality of the atmosphere becomes worse and worse, and people seldom see the blue sky during most of the time. Next, the city's development needs clean and tidy environment to attract investors because the environment plays an important role in the city's future. In addition, nowadays people have paid more and more attention to their health. If air pollution problem cannot be solved as quickly as possible, people will not have a good health. In my opinion, solving the air pollution problem will apparently be the priority if I can change something about my hometown. Fortunately, more people are aware of the serious problem.

Topic IV. 8

Human activities are the main causes of the worsening of the nature such as the global warming. We should be aware of the need to protect our environment for not only our own lives but also the next generations. First, we can save energy by using less heat and air-conditioning, using energy-saving products. Another way is to recycle paper, plastic, glass, etc. When recycling is practised, it helps to reduce the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. In addition, we should plant more trees because as we know, trees can absorb carbon dioxide and give off oxygen. All countries in the world should co-operate to better the situation. The government should educate the community and encourage everyone to join hands to plant trees, recycle and conserve energy. Then, stricter laws on environmental problems should be passed and enforced to better our neighbourhood. People all over the world must co-operate to stop the global warming process.

Theme 5: Recreation & Travelling

Topic V. 1

There are several reasons why television is an essential part in our lives. First, television helps us see more of the world and learn useful things because TV programmes can provide us with general knowledge about many fields. For example, we can know and understand different cultures and customs around the world just by staying at home to watch TV programmes. Second, television can also entertain us with interesting and exciting

programmes such as comedy shows or films. It is one of the best ways to help us relax and have fun after work. Finally, TV can make things memorable because it presents information in an effective way with moving images and sounds. In conclusion, television has many benefits because it is not only a source of information but also a means of entertainment.

Topic V.2

Since I was young, my parents have bought me a lot of books. At first, I thought reading was boring; however, I soon learn to love reading. The comic books I read offer me a lot of pleasure and delight. Reading has improved my command of English, I also gain a lot of general knowledge, especially from reading non-fiction books. I like reading books on subjects that I am interested in school. Reading also provide a world where we can experience things which we may never meet in real life. In short, I think reading is both fun and beneficial.

Topic V.3

Music is a very important part of our lives. Music is used for dancing, loving, and thinking. Some songs remind us of our childhood or youth. Others remind us of the people we love. Many important occasions, like weddings and funerals have special music. Music can be used to communicate. Music can express ideas, thoughts and feelings. In fact, it can express one's anger, love, hate or friendship. Above all, music is a great way to entertain. It makes people happy and excited, and it delights the senses. Music can be considered as the same language for all people, and understanding music helps you understand other cultures, history and people.

Topic V.4

My favourite leisure activity is reading. I like reading because it is a hobby that is useful and interesting. You can gain a lot of knowledge of all fields that you need, and books can give you the joy and help you relax after a hard-working day. When you join the forum for people who have interests similar to you, you can share the comments on the books or novels that interest you or participate in discussions on the forum about reading. I often read books at the weekend or on holiday. I also help some friends select the genres of books that they like. I hope that I will have my own library in the near future. I love books very much, and I couldn't live without them.

Topic V. 5

Health is considered to be the most valuable thing one possesses. The most effective way to better one's health is doing regular exercise. One advantage of doing exercise is to reduce stress. People who exercise are likely to feel more relaxed, healthier, and happier. Doing regular exercise helps the body produce certain chemicals which will reduce the worry about life. Another benefit exercising brings us is that we will feel more energetic to overcome our daily problems. Doing exercises helps us reduce the possibility of being ill, protects us from some fatal diseases as heart diseases. Spending time doing exercise will ensure us a longer, healthier and happier life. Another good thing is that doing exercise

helps us feel more self-confident. With good health, we will think positively, do confidently, and lead an optimistic life. To sum up, doing exercise regularly enables people to have good body-building, keep fit and brings us other benefits.

Topic V.6

An airplane is a form of transportation that has changed people's lives. Thanks to the plane, our lives are now faster, more exciting, and more convenient than before. We cannot deny that flying is fast. For example, a businessman can leave Ha Noi at 11 am and arrive in New York in 17 hours later. It is always exciting to take a plane trip. When you take a trip by plane, you know that you may cross many time zones, oceans, and countries, meeting people from different cultures. Last but not least, travelling by plane is the safest way with the minimum accidents while the accidents on the roads or on the rivers are far much higher than those by air. Although other forms of transportation may be also comfortable, none has changed the way we do business and the way we live our lives more than the plane.

Đề thi đè nghi

(Kỳ thi Trung học Phổ thông QG)

ĐỀ THI ĐÈ NGHỊ 1

SECTION A

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1.A | 2.C | 3.B | 4.A | 5. B | 6. A | 7. B | 8. A | 9. A | 10. D |
| 11.A | 12.B | 13.C | 14.B | 15. D | 16. A | 17. D | 18.C | 19. D | 20.A |
| 21.D | 22.A | 23.D | 24.D | 25. C | 26. A | 27. D | 28.D | 29. B | |
| 30. A → on | | | | | 33. C → which | | | | |
| 31. D → other | | | | | 34. D → political | | | | |
| 32. D → industries | | | | | | | | | |
| 35. D | 36. A | 37. C | 38. B | 39. D | 40. A | 41. C | 42. B | 43. D | 45. B |
| 46. D | 47. C | 48. A | 44. B | 49. C | 50. D | 51. B | 52. A | 53. C | 54. D |
| 55. D | 56. A | 57. B | 58. C | 59. D | 60. C | 61. B | 62. B | 63. C | 64. C |

SECTION B

I. Viết tiếp câu.

65. Is it the first time you have (ever) used gestures to communicate?
66. He reminded me to return the survey the next/following Saturday.
67. She wanted to know what she should do with her heavy luggage.
68. After he had had a light breakfast, he went to work.
69. Tom accused Mike of damaging/ having damaged the television set in the living room.

II. Gợi ý chi tiết cho viết đoạn văn:

I would like to become a teacher of Maths after finishing my high school education. I have had the great interest and passion in the subject of Maths since Grade 6. It was the teacher of Maths in Grade 6 who made me feel that studying and teaching Maths would be my future career. I also get great encouragement from my family. Both my parents are teachers, and they would like me to follow the traditional and noble career. I have made constant progress in Maths. Throughout secondary education, especially in Grade 12, I have been at the top in this subject in my class. We always need to have good students to serve our nation. Vietnamese students have gained high achievements in international contests in Maths. It is the motivation that helps me to study the subject better. With all my determination, I would like to pass the college entrance examinations in order to become a teacher of Maths.

Notes:

25. **hint** (n.) = lời gợi ý; **suggestion** (n.) = sự đề nghị, lời gợi ý; **effect** (n.) = hậu quả; **symptom** (n.) = triệu chứng (của căn bệnh); **demonstration** (n.) = sự thể hiện, sự chứng minh.

29. **remove** = chặt bỏ (cây); **eliminate** = loại trừ ra; **fertilize** = làm cho màu mỡ; **transfer** = dời, chuyên.

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 2

SECTION A

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|------|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. A | 3. A | 4. D | 5. D | 6. D | 7. D | 8. B | 9. B | 10. C |
| 2. C | 12.B | 13. B | 14. C | 15.B | 16.C | 17. D | 18.B | 19.D | 20. D |
| 21.C | 22.B | 23. A | 24. B | 25.D | 26.B | 27. C | 28. D | 29.D | |
| 30.A → are making | | | | | 33. B → he hadn't done | | | | |
| 31.D → spoken words | | | | | 34. B → when | | | | |
| 32.C → is | | | | | | | | | |
| 35. C | 36.D | 37. D | 38. B | 39. A | 40. A | 41. B | 42. A | 43. C | 44. D |
| 45. D | 46.A | 47. C | 48. D | 49. C | 50. A | 51. B | 52. B | 53. C | 54 D |
| 55. C | 56 D | 57. C | 58. C | 59. C | 60.C | 61. D | 62. D | 63. B | 64. C |

SECTION B

I. Viết tiếp câu:

65. If it hadn't been for the low salary, John would have accepted the job at the computer company.
66. Were Tom not to be working on two jobs right now, he would have time to help you.
67. The thief was thought to be still in the house.
68. He wasn't allowed to enter the restricted area.
69. I spoke to the man whose wife had been admitted to the hospital.

II. Gợi ý chi tiết cho viết đoạn văn:

There are many reasons why we should learn English. First, English is an international language which is spoken by millions of people in the world. At school, English is the compulsory subject of many school curriculums. Therefore, if students want to get good results in class, they will have to make efforts to study English well. Second, learning a foreign language helps learners understand and discover other customs and cultures. For example, people can read books, magazines and news to learn about various countries because most of them are written in English. In addition, many universities in Vietnam and in other countries require students to use English proficiently. Finally, learning English can help us communicate effectively with people around the world. In conclusion, English plays an important part in the modern world.

Notes:

18. **priceless** (adj.) = vô giá; **worthy** (adj.) = đáng coi trọng; **worthless/ valueless** (adj.) = không có giá trị.
22. **as different as chalk and cheese** = hoàn toàn khác nhau; (**rain**) **cats and dogs** = mưa như trút nước; **salt and pepper** = pha trộn trắng đen; **here and there** = đó đây.

25. **on top of that** = thêm vào đó.
26. **flock** (v.) = lũ lượt kéo đến; **boredom** = nỗi buồn chán.
28. **in common with sb/ sth** = giống như/ cũng như ai/ cái gì.
27. **substantially** (adv.) = nhiều, đáng kể; **proportionally** (adv.) = cân xứng.

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 3

SECTION A

1. B 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. C
11. C 12. C 13. D 14. A 15. A 16. B 17. A 18. A 19. C 20. A
21. D 22. B 23. B 24. A 25. B 26. D 27. D 28. A 29. A
30. C → when 33. B → was
31. B → not to 34. A → residents
32. C → whom
35. B 36. A 37. D 38. C 39. A 40. D 41. C 42. D 43. C 44. B
45. D 46. C 47. D 48. A 49. A 50. D 51. D 52. C 53. A 54. D
55. B 56. B 57. D 58. A 59. C 60. B 61. C 62. A 63. B 64. C

SECTION B

I. *Viết tiếp câu.*

65. They have put *off the meeting/ put the meeting off until next Friday*.
66. We have run *out of ice-cream*.
67. Bob's training accident prevented *him from taking part in the race*.
68. Young pupils *must wear uniform at all times*.
69. Michael took *no notice of what his doctor told him/ no notice of his doctor's advice*.

II. *Gợi ý chi tiết cho viết đoạn văn:*

Thousands of species have been vanishing, and many other thousands are being threatened with extinction. People should be educated¹ to become more aware of the importance of the wildlife and rare animals in the ecosystem. It seems that some projects to save endangered species do not have sufficient funds, so our mission is to raise enough funds. Next, we should protect their habitats from being degraded and then help build up good habitats for all species to live in. Furthermore, governments should raise the living standards of local people by providing them with jobs, and help them live in harmony with nature. Finally, governments all over the world had better pass and enforce laws to protect endangered species, make the purchasing products related to wild species illegal!, and build up more wildlife reserves for endangered species to survive and develop. To save the endangered species means to save the earth and the mankind.

Notes:

16. **read a book from cover to cover** = đọc quyển sách từ đầu đến cuối.

17. **sincere** = chân thành; **original** = nguyên bản, gốc; **estimated** = được đánh giá; **completed** = được hoàn thành.
 18. **reserve** = đặt trước chỗ; **respond** = trả lời; **connect** = kết nối; **appoint** = hẹn (ngày, giờ...).
 19. **precise** (adj.) = chính xác; **precision** (n.) = sự chính xác; **precisely** = một cách chính xác; **precisely at seven** = vào lúc 7 giờ đúng; **preciseness** (n.) = tính tì mì.
 20. **facility** = cơ sở vật chất; **category** = loại, hạng; **quality** = chất lượng; **supply** = sự cung cấp
 21. **necessarily** (adv.) = nhất thiết; **highly** (adv.) = ở mức độ cao; **barely** (adv.) = rất ít; **gradually** (adv.) = dần dần.
 22. **continuous** (adj.) = liên tục; **prosperous** (adj.) = thịnh vượng; **straight** (adj.) = thẳng, liền một mạch; **mature** (adj.) = (thương nghiệp) đến kì hạn phải thanh toán.
 25. **prior to** = before = (có) trước; **subsequent to** = tiếp theo, xảy ra sau.
 26. **evidence/ proof** (n.) = chứng cứ, bằng chứng; **clue** (n.) = gợi ý; **dispute** (n.) = cuộc tranh luận; **exhibit** (n.) = vật trưng bày.

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 4

SECTION A

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. B | 4. D | 5. D | 6. C | 7. C | 8. D | 9. A | 10. C |
| 11. D | 12. D | 13. C | 14. C | 15. C | 16. B | 17. B | 18. A | 19. C | 20. C |
| 21. A | 22. C | 23. C | 24. C | 25. C | 26. A | 27. B | 28. D | 29. A | |
| 30. D→ low resistance to disease | | | | | 33. B→ good advice/ | | | | |
| 31. B→ manned | | | | | a piece of good advice | | | | |
| 32. A→ provides | | | | | 34 B→ your help | | | | |
| 35. C | 36. B | 37. C | 38. C | 39. A | 40. D | 41. C | 42. A | 43. B | 44. D |
| 45. C | 46. D | 47. B | 48. A | 49. A | 50. A | 51. B | 52. C | 53. A | 54. C |
| 55. D | 56. A | 57. D | 58. D | 59. A | 60. B | 61. C | 62. C | 63. D | 64. A |

SECTION B

I. Viết tiếp câu.

65. During *his* childhood, Nam went swimming almost every day.
 66. All the witnesses said that I was to blame for the accident.
 67. I have no intention of telling you my plans.
 68. She left without thanking us for our help.
 69. I don't know anyone else apart from/ except for/ but Jane who enjoys collecting coins.

II. Gợi ý chi tiết cho viết đoạn văn:

I do not support the use of personal electronic devices in learning because I see a lot of their disadvantages. First of all, electronic devices distract students from their studies. Many students may play games, text, chat and cheat on their smartphone or tablets. Second, when

students use the Internet, they have access to inappropriate information, videos, and pictures. They may spend hours surfing the Net for unnecessary things to their studies, forgetting about their projects or assignments. Last but not least, students might take embarrassing pictures of others, share them on the web or use them for a bad purpose. In short, personal electronic devices may bring more harm than good to students.

Notes:

17. **qualified** (adj.) = đủ trình độ chuyên môn; **examined** (adj.) = được kiểm tra; **approved** (adj.) = được tán thành.
18. **simultaneously** (adv.) = đồng thời, xảy ra cùng một lúc; **communally** (adv.) = có tính cách cộng đồng; **uniformly** (adv.) = giống nhau, đồng đều; **jointly** (adv.) = cùng nhau.
22. **demand for sth** = (kinh tế) nhu cầu; **requirement** = nhu cầu, yêu cầu; **command** = mệnh lệnh; **necessity** = sự cần thiết.
25. **get the better of** = thắng thế; **gain an advantage over** = giành được lợi thế.
28. **hostility** (n.) = thái độ thù địch; **friendliness** (n.) = sự thân thiện; **disease** (n.) = bệnh tật; **offence** (n.) = sự vi phạm; **hazard** (n.) = mối nguy hiểm.
29. **vague** (adj.) = mơ hồ; **recollection** (n.) = kí ức; **apparent** (adj.) = rõ ràng; **indistinct** (adj.) = không rõ ràng; **imprecise** (adj.) = không chính xác; **ill-defined** (adj.) = mập mờ.

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 5

SECTION A

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. B | 4. B | 5. B | 6. B | 7. A | 8. D | 9. A | 10. A |
| 11.D | 12. C | 13.D | 14.A | 15.D | 16. D | 17.D | 18.B | 19.A | 20.C |
| 21.D | 22.C | 23.B | 24.D | 25.A | 26.D | 27.C | 28.C | 29.A | |
| 30. C → did he realize | | | | | | 33.C → than those | | | |
| 31. C → sensitivity | | | | | | 34.A → moving to | | | |
| 32. B → typically | | | | | | | | | |
| 35. C | 36. B | 37.C | 38. A | 39. C | 40. C | 41.A | 42. D | 43. D | 44. D |
| 45. B | 46. D | 47.B | 48. A | 49. B | 50. D | 51.A | 52. C | 53. C | 54. C |
| 55. C | 56. B | 57. D | 58. D | 59. A | 60. B | 61.D | 62. B | 63. C | 64 B |

SECTION B

I. Viết tiếp câu.

65. If we *had central heating*, the house would be warmer.
66. He said (*that*) he *had just received a message* and would have to go home.
67. He is *thought to have information* which will be useful to the police.
68. In spite of *getting up early*/of the fact that he got up early, he missed the first bus.
69. Lately your work *has definitely improved*/ improving.

II. Gợi ý chi tiết cho viết đoạn văn:

Most Vietnamese students and their parents think that university is the only way for

students who have just graduated from high school. It ensures that they will get success in their later career. However, our nation lacks a great number of skilled workers and technicians in almost all sections of the economy. Many engineers have become unemployed just after graduation because they cannot satisfy the demands of their work. The technical college is the correct option for students who are good at practical side, but do not have high academic qualifications. This direction can bring good career prospects to everyone. Later, technicians with a lot of experience can come back to university to follow higher education. The way we choose to follow our career depends on our interests, academic qualifications, and financial conditions.

Notes:

9. **germinate** (v.) = nảy mầm.
21. **promote** = đẩy mạnh; **grow** = phát triển; **upgrade** = nâng cấp; **spring up** = nhảy.
22. **acquire** (v) = kiếm được; **command** (n) = mệnh lệnh; **obstacle** (n) = sự cản trở, vật trờ ngại; **investor** (n) = nhà đầu tư; **demonstration** (n) = sự biểu hiện, sự thuyết minh.
24. Help yourself = Xin mời anh; **Do it yourself** = Hãy tự làm lấy.

TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO

1. *Cáu trúc đề thi môn: Ngữ văn, Lịch sử, Địa Lý, Ngoại ngữ năm 2010 - Dùng để ôn thi Tốt nghiệp THPT và thi Tuyển sinh Đại học, Cao đẳng năm 2010*, Nguyễn An Ninh (Chủ biên), Nhà Xuất bản Giáo Dục Việt Nam.
2. *A Practical English Grammar*, 1990, A. J. Thomson, A. V. Martinet, Oxford University Press.
3. *English Grammar In Use*, 2nd Edition, Raymond Murphy.
4. *Oxford Guide to English Grammar*, 1994, John Eastwood, Oxford University Press.
5. *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, Betty Schrampf Azar, Prentice Hall Regents.
6. *LinguiForum TOEFL iBT*, 2006, LinguaForum, Inc.
7. *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 3rd Edition, 2008, Cambridge University Press.
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 8th Edition, Oxford University Press.

MỤC LỤC

<i>Lời nói đầu</i>	<i>Chuyên đề</i>	<i>Đáp án</i>
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: NGỮ ÂM.....	5.....	414
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: TỪ VỰNG.....	22	427
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: NGỮ PHÁP	64	438
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP.....	215	450
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC	239	451
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: KĨ NĂNG VIẾT	289.....	452
ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ.....	374	485
(Trung học Phổ thông Quốc gia)		
<i>Tài liệu tham khảo.....</i>		490

SÁCH PHÁT HÀNH TẠI
***HỆ THỐNG NHÀ SÁCH & SIÊU THỊ CỦA**
CÔNG TY CỔ PHẦN CTC GIA LAI TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC
***HỆ THỐNG NHÀ SÁCH & SIÊU THỊ CỦA**
CÔNG TY CỔ PHẦN VĂN HÓA PHƯƠNG NAM TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC
Website: hongantructuyen.vn

CÔNG TY CP SÁCH THIẾT BỊ GIÁO DỤC BÌNH DƯƠNG
88 Trần Bình Trọng - Phường Phú Thọ Hòa - TP. Thủ Đức Mật

QUẢNG TRỊ: NS GIÁO DỤC - 283 Trần Hưng Đap - TP Quảng Trị

HUẾ: CÔNG TY CP SÁCH & TBTII HUE - 76 Hán Thuyên - TP. Huế

ĐÀ NẴNG: CÔNG TY CP SÁCH & TBTH - 76 - 78 Bạch Đằng
NS LAM CHÂU - 129 Phan Chu Trinh

QUẢNG NAM: NS GIÁO KHOA - 341 Phan Chu Trinh - Tam Kỳ

QUẢNG NGÃI: CÔNG TY SÁCH & TBTII - 939 Quang Trung

BÌNH ĐỊNH: CÔNG TY SÁCH & TBTII - 219 Nguyễn Lữ - TP Quy Nhơn

PHÚ YÊN: CTC PHÚ YÊN - ô phố B8 - Khu dân dụng

KHÁNH HOÀ: SIÊU THỊ TÂN TIỀN - 11 Lê Thành Phương - TP Nha Trang
NS NHA TRANG - 2202 Lường Vương - Ba Ngòi - Cam Ranh

NINH THUẬN: NS HÙNG VƯƠNG - 58D Đường 21/8 - Phan Rang-

BÌNH THUẬN: NS HƯNG ĐẠO - 328 Trần Hưng Đạo - TP Phan Thiết

ĐỒNG NAI: NS BIÊN HÒA - 35 Cách Mạng Tháng 8 - TP. Biên Hòa

VŨNG TÀU: NS HOÀNG CƯỜNG - 161 Nguyễn Văn Trỗi - TP Vũng Tàu

BÌNH DƯƠNG: NS 277 - 518 Cách Mạng Tháng 8 - TX Thủ Đức Mật

BÌNH PHÚC: NS HUY NAM - QL14 Xã Tiên Thành - Đồng Xoài

TÂY NINH: NS VĂN NGHỆ - 295 Đường 30/4

GIA LAI: CÔNG TY CP SÁCH & TBTII - 40B Hùng Vương - TP Pleiku

DAKLAK: CÔNG TY VĂN HÓA DAK LAK - 01 Hai Bà Trưng

KONTUM: NS HƯỚNG TRIỀU - 105 Trần Hưng Đạo

LÂM ĐỘNG: NS CĨI THIÀNII - 72D Bùi Thị Xuân - TP Đà Lạt

DẮK NÔNG: NS GIÁO DỤC GIA NGHĨA - 30 Trần Hưng Đạo - Gia Nghĩa

LONG AN: CÔNG TY PHS - 04 Võ Văn Tân - TP. Tân An

TIỀN GIANG: CÔNG TY CP SÁCH & TBTII - 22 Hùng Vương - TP. Mỹ Tho

VĨNH LONG: NS HƯỚNG ÂN - 15 Lê Thái Tổ

TRÀ VINH: CÔNG TY SÁCH & TBTII - 3A Trưng Nữ Vương

ĐỒNG THÁP: NS THÀNH - 113C Phạm Hữu Lầu - TP Cao Lãnh
BẾN TRE: NS PHƯƠNG ANH - 161A Đoàn Hoàng Minh
NS MINH CHIÂU - 14 Nguyễn Trãi
SÓC TRĂNG: NS TIANII TÂM - 146 Quốc lộ 1A - Phú Lộc
KIÊN GIANG: CÔNG TY SÁCH & TBTH - Lô E16 - Số 30-32 Đường 3 tháng 2
CÀ MAU: NS MINH TRÍ - 44 Nguyễn Hữu Lễ
AN GIANG: NS TIANII KIÊN - 496 Võ Thị Sáu - TP Long Xuyên
BẠC LIÊU: NS VĨNH LIÊM - 105 Võ Thị Sáu
NS TRẦN PHÚ - 25/6 Trần Phú

SÁCH CÓ BÁN LẺ TẠI CÁC CỬA HÀNG SÁCH TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC